

CORPUS FONTIUM HISTORIAE BYZANTINAE

CONSILIO SOCIETATIS INTERNATIONALIS STUDIIS
BYZANTINIS PROVEHENDIS DESTINATAE EDITUM

VOLUMEN LIII

SERIES BEROLINENSIS

EDIDIT
ATHANASIOS KAMBYLIS

Made from an existing file at Internet Archive, [here](#).

DE GRUYTER

CHRONOGRAPHIAE
QUAE
THEOPHANIS CONTINUATI
NOMINE FERTUR
LIBRI I–IV

RECENSUERUNT ANGLICE VERTERUNT INDICIBUS
INSTRUXERUNT
MICHAEL FEATHERSTONE ET JUAN SIGNES CODOÑER
NUPER REPERTIS SCHEDIS CAROLI DE BOOR
ADIUVANTIBUS

ISBN 978-1-61451-598-2
e-ISBN (PDF) 978-1-61451-504-3
e-ISBN (EPUB) 978-1-61451-959-1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

A CIP catalog record for this book has been applied for at the Library of Congress.

Bibliografische Information der Deutschen Nationalbibliothek

Die Deutsche Nationalbibliothek verzeichnet diese Publikation in der
Deutschen Nationalbibliografie; detaillierte bibliografische Daten sind im Internet über
<<http://dnb.dnb.de>> abrufbar.

© 2015 Walter de Gruyter Inc., Boston/Berlin

Satz: Dörlemann Satz GmbH & Co. KG, Lemförde
Druck und buchbinderische Verarbeitung: Hubert & Co. GmbH & Co. KG, Göttingen
∞ Gedruckt auf säurefreiem Papier,

Printed in Germany

www.degruyter.com

This material is presented solely for
non-commercial educational/research purposes.

CYRILLO MANGO

HONORE PROVOCAT MAGISTERIO DOCET
INVITAT EXEMPLO

FOREWORD

In the late winter of 1975 Ihor Ševčenko came to the weekly meeting of his Byzantine Seminar at Harvard University carrying a parcel wrapped in brown paper. On the table before all members of the seminar he opened the parcel revealing an unbound book composed of yellowed sheets folded in half, with cut-out printed pages pasted in the upper half and notes in purple ink written in the side and lower margins. After recognition of the pasted pages as Immanuel Bekker's edition of *Theophanes Continuatus* – excised from two original copies of Bonn! – everyone guessed that Carl de Boor's unpublished edition, sought after for many months by Ševčenko without success, had been found. 'But how did you get hold of it?', exclaimed Peggy Thorne with her infectious enthusiasm; to which the answer was: 'Proof of the generous friendship of Hans-Georg Beck'. Then professor and director of the Byzantine Institute in Munich, Beck came that year to Harvard with his wife Erni, and he recounted how de Boor's papers had been recovered from the place where they had been kept for safety during the War.

It was at once clear to all that this discovery would insure the realisation of Ševčenko's project for a new edition of *Theophanes Continuatus*. After the seminar, Peggy Thorne, who had worked in decoding secret documents during the War, insisted on photocopying the entire manuscript straightway in the basement of Widener Library – her fingers are to be seen in the copies. It was with these copies of de Boor and others from a microfilm of the *Vaticanus graecus* 167 that Ševčenko followed the text as members of the seminar read aloud from Bekker's edition of the *Vita Basilii*; and it was on the copies of de Boor's manuscript that he made his original notes for the new edition of the text which would appear thirty-six years later in the same series as the present volume.

Nearly a decade before the publication of the *Vita Basilii*, in the spring of 2003, Ševčenko and Michael Featherstone met in Paris after some twenty years. Reminiscing on the old seminar at Harvard, Ševčenko suggested that Featherstone should take over the re-edition of the remaining parts of *Theophanes Continuatus*, Books I–IV and 'VI'. Athanasios Kambylis, general editor of the Berlin Series of the CFHB, agreed, and Featherstone set to work. Three years later, in the summer of 2006, at Ševčenko's request for help in finishing the edition of the *Vita Basilii*, Featherstone returned to Harvard. The work consisted mainly of bibliographical researches; text, translation and indices had long been typeset by the publisher. Unfortunately, the introduction would remain unwritten until Ševčenko's death three years later.

To Featherstone's request for copies of de Boor's papers, Ševčenko recounted that, at the demand of Armin Hohlweg, the original manuscript had been sent back to Munich, though he had been informed by Albrecht Berger that it had somehow gone missing. Fortunately, Ševčenko still had Peggy Thorne's photocopies, assuring de Boor's appearance in the present edition.

Later that same summer, in Bedford Square Gardens during the Byzantine Congress in London, through the good offices of a mutual friend, Otto Kresten, Featherstone made the acquaintance of Juan Signes Codoñer. Signes had also worked intensively on *Theophanes Continuatus*, in Paul Speck's seminar in Berlin in the late 1980's, and in the early 1990's with Antonio Bravo García in Madrid. That afternoon in Bedford Square was the beginning of the friendship and fruitful collaboration – supported throughout by the benevolent Kambylis and the excellent staff of de Gruyter – which has led to the present volume.

We are grateful for the grant FFI2012-37908-C02 from the Spanish Ministry of Economy and Competitiveness in support of work on the edition.

Michael Featherstone and Juan Signes Codoñer
Michaelmas 2014

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword	VII
--------------------	-----

PROLEGOMENA

1. The texts in <i>Vat. gr.</i> 167	3*
2. The manuscripts	5*
3. The sources of Text I	10*
4. Authorship of Texts I–III and subsequent compilation of Theophanes Continuatus	14*
5. Reception: John Skylitzes (and Ps-Symeon)	20*
6. Proposed stemma, including sources and adaptations	27*
7. The present edition	29*
a) Principles	29*
b) Explanation of the apparatus	30*
c) Indices	31*
8. Bibliography	33*

ΧΡΟΝΟΓΡΑΦΙΑ ΣΥΓΓΡΑΦΕΙΣΑ ΕΚ ΠΡΟΣΤΑΞΕΩΣ ΚΩΝΣΤΑΝΤΙΝΟΥ ΤΟΥ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΩΣ

Tabula notarum in apparatibus adhibitarum	3
Textus et versio anglica	7
Titulus generalis totius operis	8
Λόγος α'. Περὶ Λέοντος τοῦ ἐξ Ἀρμενίας	10
Λόγος β'. Περὶ Μιχαήλ τοῦ ἐξ Ἀμορίου	64
Λόγος γ'. Περὶ Θεοφίλου υἱοῦ Μιχαήλ	124
Λόγος δ'. Περὶ Μιχαήλ υἱοῦ Θεοφίλου	212

INDICES

1. Index nominum propriorum	305
2. Index verborum ad res Byzantinas spectantium	329
3. Index grammaticus	341
4. Index locorum	356

PROLEGOMENA

1. The Texts in *Vat. Gr.* 167

The nature of the three separate texts comprised in the historical compilation known commonly as Theophanes Continuatus (hereafter ThCont) has been discussed recently by Cyril Mango in his introduction to Ihor Ševčenko's edition of the second text, the *Vita Basilii* (hereafter VBas), in this same Berlin series of the CFHB.¹ We limit ourselves here to a recapitulation of the main points, with a few complementary remarks.

The compilation is preserved in only one Byzantine manuscript, *Vat. gr.* 167 (XI c.), of which more details will be given below in section 2. The first of the three texts – let us call it Text I – a new edition of which we present here, consists of four Books numbered I–IV in the manuscript and in the previous editions by François Combéfis in the Paris corpus (1685) and Immanuel Bekker in the Bonn corpus (1838). The four Books, divided by reigns of the emperors Leo V (815–820), Michael II (820–829), Theophilus (829–842) and Michael III (842–867) respectively, are preceded by separate titles in majuscule, but the preface intended for all four is inserted after the title of the first book, not before it, as in the previous editions.²

Following the four Books of the first text, Combéfis and Bekker numbered the second text – let us call it Text II – which continues the historical narrative with the reign of Basil I (867–886), as ‘Book V’. There is no such number in the manuscript, but the text is separated from the previous four books on f. 72v by an undulating line and a title in majuscule followed by another preface, ostensibly written by the emperor Constantine VII himself.

Finally, on f. 124 begins Text III – Combéfis's and Bekker's Book VI – which, again, is unnumbered in the manuscript but separated by an undulating line from the previous narrative. This text has no preface to inform the reader of the author or purpose, but simply brief titles announcing the reigns of Leo VI (886–912), Alexander (912–913), Constantin VII (913–920), Romanus I Lekapenos (920–944), Constantine VII as sole ruler (944–959) and Romanus II (959–963), in whose reign the text breaks off in AD 961 with the loss of a final folio (or bifolium) at the end of the manuscript.³ Despite the apparent unity of this work divided into reigns, scholars have noted that Text III is a composite of two texts. The first part (Text IIIa), treating the

¹ Mango 2013; cf. Signes 1995, vii–xiii; Featherstone 2011, 115–122; Featherstone 2012, 123–125; Featherstone 2014, 359–361.

² *Infra* I. Prooem, 1–36.

³ See section 2 below.

period from the reign of Leo VI to the exile and death of Romanus I (886–948), is critical of the Macedonian dynasty, whereas the second part (Text IIIb), the account of the sole rule of Constantine and his son Romanus II (944–963), is quite favourable to the Macedonians.⁴

The presentation in the *Vaticanus* indicates that Texts II and III were perceived as separate works when they were put together in the final compilation. Mango stresses also that Texts I and II were ‘*originally* ... conceived as independent works’ (his italics).⁵ This is of course correct, but it was surely not the compiler of ThCont as we have it in the *Vaticanus* who first combined Texts I and II as part of his wish to provide a continuous historical narrative from 813 until the 960’s. Both these texts were clearly composed under the supervision of Constantine VII, in distinction to Text III (most particularly Text IIIa). The preface to Text II, allegedly by Constantine himself, as well as the reference to him by the author – ostensibly only an amanuensis – of the preface to Text I, states that Constantine had commissioned both works. The identification of the real authors of these texts remains a desideratum,⁶ but these latter were certainly parts of the same project. The references in Text I to events in the narrative of Text II⁷ are evidence that Text II was either composed *before* Text I, or that the author of Text I already knew what would be recounted in Text II. Moreover, for certain episodes the authors of Texts I and II used the same sources. In contrast, as we have said, Text III was composed in a completely different style after the death of Constantine and was only added to Texts I and II in the final compilation.

⁴ Text IIIa: ThCont 353.6–435.21; Text IIIb: *ibid.*, 436.1–481.12. The best treatment of Text III remains Kazhdan 1961, 89–96; cf. Wahlgren 2006, 45*, 84*; Mango 2013, 4*.

⁵ Mango 2013, 4*.

⁶ See section 3 below.

⁷ Below II.28.4 ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἡ ἐκείνου δηλώσει ἱστορία and IV.43.10–11 ἡ κατ’ αὐτὸν ἱστορία δηλώσει. Cf. Signes 1989; Mango 2013, 9*; Featherstone 2012, 125.

2. The Manuscripts

As explained in the introduction to Ševčenko's edition of the VBas, all later MSS of ThCont are descended from *Vat. gr.* 167 (V) (XI s.), whereas the published editions of Combéfis (Comb) and Bekker (Bekk) are based on later MSS; in the case of Text I, on *Barberinianus* 232 (B), a copy of V made ca 1628.⁸

Written in *Perlschrift* of the early eleventh century, V consists of 168 folia (+ 5 guard leaves of paper added at the beginning), comprising 21 complete quires, and contains exclusively Texts I, II and III of ThCont. Detailed descriptions of V have been published in an article by Stefano Serventi and, of both V and B, in the new edition of the VBas;⁹ we thus dispense with repeating the exercise here. We emphasise only the parenthetical remark in both descriptions that the pages have been cropped¹⁰: the evident loss of many of the later marginal remarks, as we shall see presently, indicates that the trimming was of considerable dimension.

As noted by Mango in the introduction to the VBas, Text III breaks off at the end of f. 168v, in the year 961, during the reign of Romanus II. Mango suggests that the text may not have extended to the end of Romanus's reign (963), citing the prophesy by Constantine VII in Text III that Romanus would have a long reign.¹¹ Mango concedes that this may have been meant ironically, and indeed, it would seem to us that this is the case. For earlier in Text III, in the account of the reign of Alexander, son of Basil I, Nicephorus Phokas is referred to as the 'victorious emperor'.¹² However, even if Text III did extend to Romanus's death, other evidence in V suggests that the part missing at the end was not very long.

In his description of the various marginalia in V Stefano Serventi discusses the numerous scholia by what appears to be a twelfth-century owner of the manuscript.¹³ Written in what Herbert Hunger called *Epigraphische Auszeichnungsmajuskel*, the orthography of this annotator ('adnotator B') is eccentric, with a predilection for replacing *iota* with *beta*, and *o-mega* with *o-mikron*. The names of the Bulgars and Rus', Βούλγαροι and Ρώς in the text, are consist-

⁸ Ševčenko 2013, 17*–31*.

⁹ Serventi 2001; Ševčenko 2013, 14*–29*.

¹⁰ Ševčenko 2013, 14*

¹¹ ThCont, 458, 6–7; Mango 2013, 3*.

¹² ThCont 378, 16–17.

¹³ Serventi 2001, 286–299.

ently written ΒΟΥΓΓΑΡΟΙ and ΡΟΥΝ. There is, however, no strict geographical evidence for these variants.

Throughout the manuscript this annotator has noted various persons and things, e.g. ΝΑΟΣ, ΠΟΛΕΜΟΣ, ΧΡΟΝΟΣ, and has marked series of passages on various subjects – we have counted fifty – apparently for his own reference and according to personal fancy. This activity of marking passages apparently extended over a long time, as the annotator often changed his mind or forgot what he had already marked. Some of the series are associated with dates, some not.

The series are marked in the upper or lower margin of the folio on which they begin by their title followed by a list of numerals indicating how many folia [$\Phi(\Upsilon\Lambda\Lambda)$] each passage comprises. Numerals under a horizontal stroke are used when a passage extends further than the recto and verso of one folio. Passages which are confined to two sides of one folio are indicated by a vertical hasta under a horizontal stroke; those which extend to no more than one side of a folio are indicated by a dot under a horizontal stroke. These indications, however, are not always strictly correct.

Each subsequent passage of the series is similarly indicated in the upper or lower margin of the folio on which it begins, with the word ΑΡΧ(Η), the number in the series, the title of the series, and the indication of the length of the passage. These titles in the upper or lower margins are also marked with various signs (crosses etc) which are repeated in the side margins, with or without ΑΡΧ(Η) and numeral such-and-such, on the line where the corresponding text begins.¹⁴ At the end of each passage there is an indication in the margin of how many folia one should skip to the next passage in the series: ΥΠ(ΕΡΒΑΙΝΕ) $\Phi(\Upsilon\Lambda\Lambda)$ numeral such-and-such.¹⁵ At the end of the last passage of the series there is a marginal remark ΤΕ(ΛΟΣ) accompanied sometimes by the title of the series.

In the text, the beginning of each passage is marked above the line of writing by either four dots placed on a horizontal and vertical axis (\therefore) or two dots on a vertical axis (\therefore); and the end is marked under the line of text with two dots placed on a vertical axis followed by a hyphen (\therefore). In some cases parts of these series titles have been cut off by later trimming of the manuscript's margins, and many of the titles have thus disappeared altogether.

Some of the titles and dates have a clear ecclesiastical connexion, as if perhaps for readings on days of saints' feasts in a religious institution, as suggested by Ševčenko;¹⁶ for example the 13 March,¹⁷ concerning the patriarch Nicephorus of Constantinople. This might also be the case of the three pas-

¹⁴ On f. 128 passages in five different series are so marked with various crosses.

¹⁵ The numeral of how many folia to skip has often been left out.

¹⁶ Ševčenko 1978, 96.

¹⁷ Containing passages on ff. 1v, 5, 8, 13v, 28.

sages marked 20 January, the day of Theophilus's death, perhaps with a view to his final absolution, though the text here relates the story of the widow who told Theophilus that the horse he was riding had belonged to her late husband.¹⁸ Likewise, the annotator's extraordinary interest in Theophilus's buildings in the Palace, all of whose names he has copied out in the margins, would appear of a more secular nature.¹⁹

As an example of the confusion in these annotations we might cite the marking of a single passage, on f. 152, ThCont 434.2–24, under the title '5 or 6 August'. The text here, however, tells of the arrival in Constantinople of the Image of Edessa on the 15 of August and the procession from the Golden Gate to St Sophia and the Palace on the following day.

The confusion is worse in series of many passages. For instance, one series, concerning political conspiracies under Romanus Lekapenos and Constantine VII, is announced on f. 137v under the title '24 March', with a list of seven passages.²⁰ But then on f. 139 another series begins under the title '24 March ΠΕΡΙ ΕΠΗΒΟΥΛΟΝ', with a list of nine other passages.²¹ The marking of the passage on 137v includes also the remark in the side margin: ΤΙΜΗ Μ(Ε)Γ(ΑΛΟΥ) ΡΟΜΑΝΟΥ (beside ThCont 390.22); but it is only on f. 138v, after the end of the first passage and before the beginning of the second, that we discover the reason for the choice of date: Romanus Lekapenos's coup d'état (ThCont 393.11sq.). In the margin here we find the word ΗΜΕΡΑ, which, occurs throughout the text where any precise date is given.

In other cases one can only guess why the reader has chosen a particular date. For instance, two passages are marked 24 April, on ff. 129v and 131v (ThCont 368.21–369.5 and 374.3–19). No date is mentioned in the text here, which tells the story of Eustathius Argyros. Perhaps the date was chosen because Eustathius is said to have been buried in the monastery of his family in honour of St Elizabeth, whose memory is celebrated on the 24 April.

Or, take the series of six passages marked with the date 12 May, with the title ΤΑ ΕΠΗ ΛΕΟΝΤΟΣ ΦΗΛΟΣΟΦΟΥ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΩΣ ΓΕΓΟΝΟΤΑ, beginning with a passage on f. 126–126v (ThCont 359.17–360.8). We cannot find any reason for this date, unless it was meant to be the day of Leo's death; but then it is a mistake, for Leo VI died on 11 May.²²

The reader's many interests give no easy clue to his identity. Aside from his interest in the Bulgars and the Rus', as already noted, he also notes passages

¹⁸ Containing passages on ff. 31, 41, 47

¹⁹ Ff. 47–50.

²⁰ Passages on ff. 137v, 140, 141, 141v, 142, 144, 146.

²¹ Passages on ff. 139, 140, 142, 144, 145v, 146v, 148, 153, 168. About the title ΠΕΡΙ ΕΠΙΒΟΥΛΩΝ see below, 8*, n. 23.

²² Subsequent passages marked on ff. 127, 128, 129v, 130v, 131v.

concerning the Jews, the Italians (Calabrians, Lombards, Sicilians) and the Saracens. He appears to have been equally interested in ecclesiastical and secular subjects. The mixture includes such disparate subjects as the celebration of the Sunday of Orthodoxy, the drowning of Heraclius's son in a cistern beside the sea walls, the location of the church of St Maria of τὰ Μητροπολίτου, or the buildings of the Palace.

A careful study of these marginalia would no doubt provide an insight into reading habits in Byzantium; the passages may well have been intended to be excerpted for some sort of collection.²³ However, for the purposes of our edition we shall examine only those series which occur at the very end of V, in the search for an indication of how many folia have gone missing after f. 168v, the last folio of the last (twenty-first) gathering.

The series ΠΕΡΙ ΕΠΗΒΟΥΛΟΝ is of no help because the final (ninth) passage (of only four lines: ThCont 479.12–15) begins and ends on f. 168. Another series, entitled ΑΠΡΗΛΗΩ, also ends before the manuscript breaks off: it contains three passages of less than one side of a folio concerning raids of the Turks. The first passage, on f. 148v–149, corresponds to ThCont 422.20–423.7, where we see the reason for this date: the first raid occurred in the month of April. The second passage is on f. 162v (ThCont 462.19–463.7), and the third begins and finishes on 168v (ThCont 480.13–17), the last preserved folio of the text.

²³ In personal correspondence, Luca Pieralli has suggested that the ecclesiastical content of much of the later marginalia as well as the remains of a red coloured book-mark pasted together over the edge of the lower right margin of ff. 130/130v (originally sticking out beyond the folio, later trimmed even with the folio) might indeed confirm Ševčenko's argument for reading aloud in a monastic context. However, Pieralli stresses that this would represent a unique example of a secular text being used in such a way. Indeed, the object of the book-mark would appear to be the fifth passage in the series mentioned in the previous note: '12 May on events of the reign of Leo [VI]' (ThCont 371.20–374.2), here with an expanded title: ΑΡΧ(Η) Ε ΤΑ ΕΠΗ ΛΕΟΝΤΟΣ ΚΕ Η ΣΥΚΟΦΑΝΘΑ ΣΑΜΟΝΑ Η ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΑΝΔΡΟΝΙΚΟΝ ΔΟΥΚΑ: ΚΕ Η ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΗΛΗΟΝ ΕΑΥΤΟΥ ΠΑΤΕΡΑ ΚΑΚΗ ΒΟΥΛΗ: ΚΕ ΣΥΚΟΦΑΝΘΑ ΚΩΝΣΤΑΝΗΝΟΥ. In the same vein, it is our opinion that the confused nature of the marking of passages – with or without the aid of book-marks – as well as the annotator's obvious great interest in purely secular topics, e.g. conspiracies, foreign nations, wars, the palace, would indicate personal secular, rather than congregational religious use. Further, it is remarkable that one of the most conspicuous topics of these series, Περὶ ἐπιβουλῶν, is also the title of one of the extant books of the *Excerpta* of Constantine VII: the *De Insidiis*.

The final series is of more use. It begins on f. 146 under the title ‘18 June.’²⁴ Eight passages are indicated: Φ(ΥΛΛΑ) Α Α Ι Α Ι Α Α+:, that is, two of more than one folio, one of more than one side of a folio, one of more than a folio, two of more than one side of a folio, and two of more than one folio. The first passage, which ends on f. 146v corresponds to ThCont 415.10–417.2, and the second, which begins on f. 150 and is labelled as being of one folio, ends on f. 151, corresponding to ThCont 426.3–429.6. However, the third is marked on f. 155 not, as in the list at the beginning of the series (f. 146) as comprising more than one side of a folio (Ι), but more than one complete folio (Α); and indeed the passage here extends to f. 156, corresponding to ThCont 441.15–443.12. It would appear, then, that our reader missed out the third passage announced at the beginning of the series (f. 146), and that this passage, labelled on f. 155 as the third in the series, is in actuality the fourth, labelled accordingly on f. 146 as comprising more than one folio (Α). Thus, the series in fact contained only seven, not eight passages. The two subsequent passages, on ff. 161v and 162, marked as the fourth and fifth, are of more than one side of a folio in length (Ι), as indicated for the fifth and sixth passages in the list on f. 146. These latter, then, became the fourth and fifth in the actual series, after the original third one had been missed out. The sixth passage, on f. 168–168v (ThCont 479.15–480.12), and the seventh, beginning on 168v (ThCont 480.18), are both marked as being of more than one folio (Α). This corresponds to the last two passages – the seventh and eighth – in the series in the original title on f. 146, and suggests again that the series contained only seven passages. Thus the seventh and last passage would have extended to no more than one folio after f. 168v.

Considering, then, the plethora of passages marked by the later annotator throughout V, particularly toward the end of Text III, it is highly unlikely that we should find no indication of further passages in the listings of folia in the final series, if the missing text extended beyond a single folio – or bifolium – added on after the last (twenty-first) quire of V.

²⁴ This date was also given to an earlier series on wars with the Arabs which begins on f. 124v under the title ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΥ ΕΚ ΤΡΙΠΟΛΕΟΣ ΣΤΟΛΟΥ, with six passages listed: the first two of less than one side of a folio, the third of more than a folio, and the last three of less than a folio. The first passage corresponds to ThCont 354.11–14; the third, on f. 128v–129v, to ThCont 366.11–368.20. The marking of the second and last three – all listed as being of less than one side of a folio – have been lost, apparently through the subsequent trimming of the margins.

3. The sources of Text I

A major task for an editor of any text is the identification of the text's sources, particularly when dealing with an historical work. If the editor is able to identify the sources he can compare the text with them and determine not only the author's working methods but also his stylistic patterns. This enables the editor to correct corrupt passages or, at least, to make a conjecture in the apparatus criticus.

Unfortunately only very few of the multifarious texts used by the author of Text I have been preserved. For instance, the lost Greek version of the *Epistula ad Ludovicum*, preserved only in Latin, seems to be the ultimate source of some passages in ThCont II.12–14, 18–20; the verses tattooed in the forehead of the brothers Graptoi as rendered in ThCont III.14 are taken from one of the various hagiographical sources which contain them; the report of the embassy of Petronas to the Khazars mentioned in ThCont III.28 is coincidental in its wording with *De administrando imperio* 42.22–55; versions A and Z of the *Acta Martyrum Amoriensium* edited by Vasilevsky and Nikitin were closely followed by ThCont III.35; and the *Acta Davidis, Symeonis et Georgii* were apparently consulted for the composition of ThCont IV.2–4, as well as the *Vita Ignatii* for ThCont IV.30–34, 38. In contrast, the use of the chronicle of Theophanes, the *Vita Nicephori* (for the beginning of ThCont I) or the chronicle of George the Monk and his continuators for various sections of all four Books is more conjectural. In consequence, only a few passages can be improved with recourse to these sources, and even then the *direct* use of them by the author is uncertain. We have, however, carefully noted all these hypothetical sources in the *apparatus fontium*, as explained below in section 7b.

Of a very different nature are the coincidences of Text I with the so-called *Basileiai* of Genesisius, who composed his work by order of Constantine Porphyrogenitus at approximately the same time as our author. Though we know nothing of Genesisius except the mention in his work of other Genesisioi who may have been related to him, it is clear that he and our author were contemporaries and, most important for our purpose here, wrote very similar accounts of the period, that is, the Second Iconoclasm and the Amorian dynasty.²⁵ Not only are

²⁵ On Genesisius, see Kaldellis 1998 and Markopoulos 2009a with previous bibliography. The only evidence for him being the author of the *Histories* is the mention of him in the Leipzig manuscript of the *De Cerimoniis*, see Kolovou 2010. On the Genesisioi, see Markopoulos 1986, though the interpretation of *Genesisius* as a family name is erroneous, as will be shown below in Section 4.

the historical episodes recorded essentially the same and depend on the same sources, but also the structure of the sentences, even if not the actual wording, is to a great extent identical. This cannot be a coincidence and raises the question of the exact nature of the relationship of the two works.²⁶ Rejecting the easily disproved argument that Text I was used as a source by Genesisius,²⁷ scholars have taken one of two positions: either that Genesisius was the source of Text I, or that both went back to a common source (henceforth *CS).

It was Ferdinand Hirsch who first studied the question systematically and argued that Text I was dependent on Genesisius. To explain the many passages in Text I which have no correspondence in Genesisius, Hirsch suggested that these were 'additions' made from oral sources. There is however little basis for this supposition, for the wording of certain of these same passages is very close to the sources of Text I listed above. Nevertheless, Hirsch was followed by the majority of scholars in the last century²⁸ and his position taken over in the handbooks, though defenders of Genesisius's primacy were obliged to admit that the author of Text I also occasionally used Genesisius's sources.²⁹

This admission paved the way for the theory of a common source. Alexander Kazhdan and Patricia Karlin-Hayter, on the basis of a thorough analysis of the sources for the reigns of Basil I and Michael III respectively, laid the foundations of this approach.³⁰ Finally, Jakob Ljubarskij proved without any doubt that both Text I and Genesisius depended on the *CS. Leaving aside the major additions in Text I, taken from other sources, Ljubarskij centred his analysis on the episodes shared by both authors, where he noticed small details recorded in Text I but omitted by Genesisius and *vice versa*. As neither of them could have added these bits of information perfectly embedded in the narrative from complementary sources, this could only mean that both used the same source.

After Ljubarskij no one questioned the dependence of Genesisius and Text I on the *CS, though some problems remained concerning the exact nature of this latter. In 1995 Juan Signes Codoñer published a study of the sources for the history of three iconoclast emperors in Text I, reinforcing with further arguments Ljubarskij's theory of the *CS. Signes further suggested that the *CS was not a chronicle, as argued by Ljubarskij and others before him, but

²⁶ Signes 1995, xiii-xxi.

²⁷ Papadopoulos-Kerameus 1889a, 27-28 and 1889b, 24-26.

²⁸ Amongst others mainly by Barišić 1959.

²⁹ E.g. Bury 1912, 460-461, who wrote that 'it can be proved ... from a number of comparisons, that the Continuators of Theophanes used, along with Genesisius, the source of Genesisius'; and Barišić 1961, 267, 'en partant de Génésios, le Continuateur complète ses textes sur Michel et sur Thomas ... par des extraits provenant des mêmes sources dont s'est servi également Génésios.'

³⁰ Kazhdan 1962; Karlin-Hayter 1971.

rather a dossier of manuscript quires with excerpts compiled from various sources for the composition of a chronicle.³¹ This dossier of sources would have been used first by Genesius and then by the author of Text I, who expanded it with new material, mostly of hagiographical provenance. The fact that Genesius in his preface boasts of being first to treat the period in question makes sense only if we assume that the *CS was not a chronicle or any finished work but a preparatory dossier of sources which was lost after use on the intended work.³²

Further, Signes argued that the author of Text I created a chronological sequence and coherent narrative out of the disparate excerpts in the *CS – often distributing the material related to each emperor according to leitmotifs³³ – whereas Genesius was in general more respectful of the ‘autonomy’ of the original excerpts and was not much bothered about chronology. This characterisation of the two works should suffice to show that the *CS could not have been a chronicle. Signes further observes that, whereas Genesius attempted to re-write his sources in ‘Attic’ style, substituting new words, the author of Text I was more conservative. He may have upgraded the Greek of his sources, but avoided Genesius’s exaggerated preciosity.

Varona Codeso accepted Signes’s assessment of the *CS on several points; however, she argued that it never existed as a text on its own, but that both Genesius and the author of Text I worked directly from complete manuscripts of the sources, on the basis of marginal remarks.³⁴

Most recently, Paul Magdalino has also argued for a dossier of source material (ὑποθέσεις): ‘sequential but unconnected excerpts and abridgements resembling his [Constantine VII’s] historical encyclopedia, except that the texts were much more diverse and probably included saints’ lives in addition to shorter secular narratives’.³⁵

³¹ Signes 1995 passim; Signes 1994. Ljubarskij 1996 equated this dossier with that advanced by Paul Speck, e.g. Speck 1988. However, though Signes uses the word ‘dossier’ for the *CS, he rejects Speck’s concept of corrupt papyrus cards (‘Zetteln’) collected in folders (‘Mappen’).

³² The fact that no dossier of sources for the composition of any historical work has been preserved, or better, identified as such, does not rule out the existence of such a compilation. In his preface Theophanes clearly refers to a dossier of sources collected by Synkellos as the basis of his chronicle, and Signes 2015 has argued that the so-called *Chronographia Brevis* attributed to Nikephoros was Synkellos’s draft for arranging his material. For another dossier of sources collected for the composition of an historical work, see Odorico 2014.

³³ For instance, the narrative of Theophilos’ reign is structured in four main sections: justice, iconoclasm, wars and buildings.

³⁴ Varona Codeso 2010, esp. 314–317. This does not, however, sufficiently explain why Genesius and the author of Text I present the excerpts in the same order. Moreover, it is clear (e.g. in the case of most of the hagiographical sources) that the *CS contained summaries of the sources, not word-for-word excerpts.

³⁵ Magdalino 2013b, 200–206, esp. 201

Amongst other questions which still remain unanswered are those concerning the physical transmission of the *CS from Genesius to the author of Text I, and the nature of the oral sources mentioned in the preface to this latter.³⁶

³⁶ For some reflections on oral epic tradition in our text see Signes 2014, 95–99.

4. The Authorship of Texts I–III and the subsequent compilation of Theophanes Continuatus

Texts I and II of ThCont were produced in the literary circle of Constantine VII during the latter's sole rule (944–959) with the purpose of exalting the Macedonian dynasty and its founder, Basil I, at the expense of the four emperors who preceded him. As we have seen, these two texts and *Genesisius* were all based on the earlier *CS. In answer to why *Genesisius* and the author of Text I wrote on the same subject, beside the usual explanation that *Genesisius* did not sufficiently pursue the political programme of Constantine VII we might also consider literary aesthetics. All three texts, *Genesisius* and Texts I and II, represent a revival, or better, a reinvention, of the genre of History which had given way to that of the chronicle in the 'Dark Age' of the seventh and eighth centuries. *Genesisius*, who seems to have adhered closely to the *CS, was apparently deemed too pedantic in the profusion of Classical citations and unusual verbal forms, e.g. the ubiquitous pluperfects. The more elegant style of Texts I and II eschews these latter and alters details of the narrative not simply for political purposes but also to obtain a more entertaining, sometimes gossipy style which might have appealed to members of the imperial court.³⁷

Seeing that the author of Text I used the same dossier of sources as *Genesisius*, it would follow that he belonged to the same literary circle under Constantine VII. His identity remains unknown, but because the later historian Skylitzes made extensive use of both Text I and *Genesisius*,³⁸ we should expect to find the author of Text I in the list of sources cited by Skylitzes in the preface to his work. If our *Genesisius* and that mentioned by Skylitzes were indeed the same person, it is likely that the author of Text I also figures amongst the Constantinopolitan historians whom Skylitzes names as his predecessors:

Ἰωσήφ, Γενέσιος καὶ Μανουήλ, οἱ Βυζάντιοι
Joseph, *Genesisius* and Manuel, the Byzantines

³⁷ Featherstone 2012, 125–133.

³⁸ For the alternating use of *Genesisius* and Text I by Skylitzes see Kiapidou 2010, 65–76 and 153–218.

Most scholars, including the editor of Skylitzes in the CFHB³⁹ and recent translators,⁴⁰ have seen here a reference to just two historians, Joseph Genesius and Manuel. But since Skylitzes *never* omits the article before a family name, Genesius must in fact be a first name.⁴¹ We have here, then, not two, but three historians working in the Capital; and one of them was probably the author of Text I. Unfortunately, we have no further clue to the identity of this Joseph or Manuel.⁴² Stylistic parallels, for instance between Text I and Arethas of Patras (who may have lived well into the 950's) are perhaps striking, but may simply reflect a common cultural background.⁴³

ThCont is interspersed with word-for-word citations from antique Greek historians which are not to be found in Genesius. Taken out of context, these citations are intended to convey general ideas or enhance the style of the narrative.⁴⁴ It is doubtful that the author had them from direct reading of the sources. Rather, one might suspect that they come from the historical *Excerpta Constantiniana*. Could our author, then, have been involved in the compilation of these latter?

³⁹ Thurn (Genesius 3.28) punctuated the text without a comma before Genesius: 'Ἰωσήφ Γενέσιος, καὶ Μανουὴλ οἱ Βυζάντιοι.

⁴⁰ Flusin–Cheynet 2003, 2: 'Joseph Génésios et Manuel, qui étaient Byzantins'.

⁴¹ Signes 1995, xxviii–xxxii. Markopoulos 2009a and 2009b does not answer this argument. Cheynet 2015 traces the history of the *Genesioi* on the premiss that Genesios was a family name. This, however, is not attested until the eleventh century. The first three members of the family in Cheynet's list are Constantine Maniakes and the two brothers Thomas and Genesios. The fourth is the *Phantomgestalt* Joseph Genesios.

⁴² The identification of this Joseph with Joseph Bringas in Signes 1995 was purely speculative and has been rejected by Markopoulos 2009a, 137 n. 3 and 2009b, 698 n. 5. As for Manuel, it has now been shown that this was the *protospatharios* and judge who wrote eight books on the deeds of John Kourkouas mentioned in ThCont VI.40, 427.20–428.2; see, e.g., Markopoulos 2009b, 703. However, this identification does not exclude Manuel from being the author of Texts I, II or even III. Though Skylitzes (230.33–37) takes information about him from ThCont, his mention of him in the preface may also have been derived from other sources.

⁴³ ThCont and Arethas share many proverbs and phrases, e.g. ThCont I.5.22 *κενήν ... ἐψηλαν* = Arethas Opus 76.124 *κενήν σοί φασι ψάλλειν περιγέγονε τούτοις*; ThCont I.11.24 *πνεύματι Πύθωνος* = Arethas Opus 21.202 *τὴν κατὰ Πύθωνος πνεῦμα ψυχὴν τοῖς ἀνοήτοις φοιβάζουσιν*; ThCont I.13.25–26 *πυρφόρον ... διασωθῆναι* = Arethas Opus 47.316 *ὡς μηδὲ πυρφόρον, τὸ τοῦ λόγου, τῇ παρεμβολῇ διατηρηθῆναι*; ThCont I.21.12–13 *ὡς ἂν διὰ τινος πορθμείου διαβιβάζοντο λόγοι οἱ αὐτοῦ* = Arethas, Schol. in Arist. schol. 214, ln. 3939 *δεῖται οἶόν τινος πορθμείου τοῦ λόγου, ᾧ τὰ ἀγώγιμα τῆς διανοίας ἀλλήλοις διαβιβάσσομεν*; ThCont II.15.12–13 *εἰς πίθον τετρημένον, τὸ τοῦ λόγου, τοῦτους ἐναπορράνας τοὺς λόγους* = Arethas Opus 3 29 *εἰς τετρημένον πίθον, τὸ τοῦ λόγου, ἀντλῶν*. But such parallels are certainly not conclusive.

⁴⁴ E.g. Dionysius Halicarnassus in I.7.4–5, Plutarch in I.9.2–4 and Polybius in I.11.5–8.

Text II, though its preface is written in the first person, as if by Constantine himself, is surely the work of a ghost-writer, whom Ševčenko identified with the author of the anonymous *De imagine Edessena*.⁴⁵

Text III is also anonymous, but for our purposes here we are not so concerned with its composition as with the circumstances of its addition to Texts I and II by the compiler of ThCont As has been suggested elsewhere, this compiler might be identified with Basil the Nothos (d. 985), bastard son Constantine VII's father-in-law and co-emperor, Romanus I Lekapenos (920–944).⁴⁶ Head of the civil service as parakoimomenos, or chamberlain under Constantine, Basil is known to have commissioned manuscripts and was in all likelihood an habitué of the literary circle in which Texts I and II had been produced. Indeed, the addition of Text III in the final compilation fits with the intention expressed in the preface to Text II, where Constantine – or rather, his ghost-writer – states that he originally wanted to relate the history of all the Roman emperors who had ruled at Constantinople, that is, since Constantine the Great, down to his own day. Since, however, there is not enough time to do all this, he has begun with the reign of his illustrious grandfather, Basil I; and if possible, he will write up the subsequent history later.⁴⁷ This, then, was done by the final compiler: Text III brings the narrative down to the reign of Constantine VII's son, Romanus II (959–963).

A composite of two texts, Text III is written, in stark contrast to Texts I and II, in the simpler style of the chronicle. There was apparently neither the perceived necessity nor enough time for the composition of a text in high, classicising style. The compiler added Text III with the purpose of filling the gap between the death of Basil I and the reigning emperor of the time, Nicephorus Phokas (963–969). In so doing, he has followed Constantine VII's original wish of bringing the narrative down to the present.⁴⁸ But, if we are right in the identification of Basil the Nothos as the compiler, the reason for adding Text III and 'publishing' ThCont was hardly compliance with the wish of Constantine. For, perhaps because of a lingering suspicion of the entire family of Romanus I Lekapenos, Constantine, on his death-bed in 959, had passed over Basil and appointed his rival Joseph Bringas as parakoimomenos and regent for his young son Romanus II. Basil bided his time for four years until Romanus's death in 963, but then colluded in the coup d'état of Nice-

⁴⁵ See Mango 2013, 13*; parallels with *De imagine Edessena*, Ševčenko 2013, Index locorum, 484–485.

⁴⁶ On Basil the Nothos, see most recently Wander 2012, 93–132; for the identification of him with the compiler of ThCont, see Featherstone 2014.

⁴⁷ VBas, 8.1–10.22.

⁴⁸ Featherstone 2012, 133–135; Featherstone 2014, 359–360. The identification of Basil as the final compiler is of course dependent on the dating of Version B of the *Logothete Chronicle*, which is closely related to Text III and of which the earliest manuscript, Vat. gr. 163, is dated to 1013. See Wahlgren 2006, 3*–8*.

phorus Phokas against Bringas, whom Romanus II, following his father's example, had left as regent of his two sons, Basil II and Constantine VIII. In return for Basil the Nothos's help, Phokas restored him to the office of *parakoimomenos* and also created a new dignity for him, that of *proedros*, or president of the Senate.⁴⁹

Just as Texts I and II had been intended to bring the historiography down to the reign of Basil I, Constantine VII's grandfather and founder of the dynasty, so did the addition of Text III bring the story down to the accession of Phokas, Basil the Nothos's protector. Because the new compilation could not contain a chapter on Phokas, since his reign had apparently only just begun, Basil contrived to include Phokas in a new compilation – prepared, we believe, in tandem with *ThCont* – of another work begun earlier in Constantine VII's circle, the *De Cerimoniis*.

Again, as in the case of *ThCont*, Basil must have been involved from the beginning in the composition of the *De Cerimoniis* and would have been acquainted with the dossier of texts that had been gathered for work on it under Constantine VII. It was surely Basil who, in his later compilation, appended the account of Phokas's coup and accession at the end of Book I of the *De Cerimoniis*, working it in for good effect with excerpts from Peter the Patrician on the accession of the emperors from Leo I down to Justinian. Then, placing also himself in the spotlight, Basil ended Book I with a description of the ceremonies for his promotion as *proedros* of the Senate.⁵⁰ After these additions to Book I, Basil relegated to the end of Book II various other texts which, like Peter the Patrician, would have been in the original dossier for work on the *De Cerimoniis*. Amongst these was a list of emperors who reigned in Constantinople (II 41), and another on the emperors' tombs (II 42). Tellingly, both of these texts have been brought down to Romanus II.⁵¹ We are reminded here of the intention of writing up the reigns of all emperors who reigned in Constantinople in the preface to the *Vita Basili*.⁵² Indeed, one might ask whether

⁴⁹ The contemporary Leo the Deacon describes Basil's special relation to Phokas: ... Βασίλειος ὁ Νόθος, Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ πάλαι αὐτοκράτορος ἐκ Σκυθίδος νιός, τῷ τοῦ προέδρου ἐκδιαπρέπων ἀξιώματι. Νικηφόρος δὲ μόνος τῶν λοιπῶν σεβαστῶν, ἐς γέρας τῷ ἀνδρὶ ταύτῃ ἐκαινοτόμησε τὴν τιμὴν. (Leo Diaconus, 94.3–6).

⁵⁰ Phokas's coup: *De Cer.* Reiske I 96 [105], about which more below; promotion of *proedros*: *De Cer.* Reiske I '97' (not numbered in the *Lipsiensis*), 441.12–443.22.

⁵¹ The folia containing II 41 were cut out of the *Lipsiensis* I, 17 before any edition of the text. The end of the list is preserved in the Istanbul fragment of the second manuscript of the *De Cerimoniis*, the palimpsest *Chalcensis S. Trinitatis* (125) 133, f. 126, where Romanus II is the last emperor mentioned: Mango–Ševčenko 1962, 62. Further on the palimpsest: Featherstone–Gruskova–Kresten 2005. In the list of tombs in II 42, the last emperor is Constantine VII, *De Cer.* Reiske, 643.7.

⁵² We might also note that sarcophagus of Michael II in the list of tombs corresponds literally with that in Book II of *ThCont*: *De Cer.* Reiske 645.17–18 and below II.28.20–21, see above 16*. Further, the *Life* of Alexander the Great added by the compiler at the end of Book II of

the original working dossiers for the *De Cerimoniis* and ThCont could not have been related.

But however it may be with the dossiers, we observe similarities of method in the final compilation of the two works. Just as the compiler borrowed from the text of Peter the Patrician for his account of Phokas's accession in 963 and added this and other excerpts from Peter at the end of Book I of the *De Cerimoniis*, so did he use Version B of the *Logothete Chronicle* to bring ThCont down to the reign of Romanus II.⁵³ The dating of Version B is disputed, the only certain date – terminus ante quem – being that of the earliest dated manuscript, *Vat. gr.* 163: AD 1062.⁵⁴ We must await the decision of Staffan Walgren in his forthcoming edition. But the case can be made that the work dates from the reign of Phokas, just after his succession to Romanus II, with whose reign Version B in *Vat. gr.* 163 and in Text III of ThCont ends. Text IIIb, which begins with the sole reign of Constantine VII and is full of his praise, is thought by some to be the work of Theodore Daphnopates. Interestingly, Basil the Nothos is very much in evidence here; however the author's assessment of him is ambiguous, and there is outright praise for his hated rival Bringas.⁵⁵

The choice of Text IIIa, with its anti-Macedonian bias, could be explained by Basil's displeasure with Constantine VII for having favoured Bringas over him as regent for Romanus II. The inclusion of Text IIIb, with its ambiguous treatment of Basil and praise for Bringas, is certainly surprising. But again, Basil's use of the *Logothete Chronicle* appears to have been an expediency: he was in a hurry and needed a ready text to bring ThCont down to the time of his new protector, Phokas, the 'victorious emperor'.⁵⁶ The descriptions of Basil's part in the ceremonies for Constantine's funeral, with literal correspondence to protocols in the *De Cerimoniis*, would have pleased Basil.⁵⁷ Still, one might well ask why the praise of Bringas and apparent criticism of Basil

the *De Cerimoniis* fits well with ThCont where, in the VBas, Basil I is compared with Alexander (VBas, 18.26–27). The *Vita* has been lost with the end of the Leipzig manuscript, but it mentioned in the *Pimax*, or list of contents of Book II, see Featherstone 2004, 115.

⁵³ One might wonder whether Basil could not have commissioned Version B, which displays a penchant for description of the Palace and ceremonial that is wholly absent in Version A, see Featherstone 2012, 133. Against this is the apparent criticism of Basil which was allowed to stand in the new version. But for another example of Basil's seeming indifference, see below and n. 59.

⁵⁴ See Walgren 2006, 4*–8*.

⁵⁵ Kazhdan 2006, 152–153; Featherstone 2014, 360, n. 20 and Appendix 1.2, 1.3, 1.4.

⁵⁶ ThCont 378.16–17.

⁵⁷ Description of funeral: ThCont 466.11–468.14; cf. Featherstone 2014, 360 and Appendix 1.1.

were allowed to stand.⁵⁸ But perhaps Basil was not particularly bothered about details of the text, for there is a similar case in the *De Cerimoniis*, Book II 55–56 [55], which is also a composite of two very different texts, the second containing praise of a *praipositos* Joseph, presumably Bringas.⁵⁹

⁵⁸ For instance, Angelidi 2012, 24, doubts Basil's active participation in the redaction of Text III. But even if he was not connected with Version B of the *Logothete Chronicle*, he could still have commissioned the final compilation of ThCont. Whoever was responsible, it is obviously a hasty, careless job of combining two contradictory texts.

⁵⁹ *De Cer.* Reiske II, 798–808; cf. Featherstone 2004, 117–120. A much more polished job is Book I 96 of the *De Cerimoniis*, mentioned above, concerning the accession of Phokas. Here we posit that the scissors-and-pasting crosses over from one of Basil's compilations to the other. Since ThCont could not properly include a chapter on Phokas, in as much as he was still alive, Basil has created a sort of hybrid chapter in the *De Cerimoniis* by grafting on there a text which begins as a chapter on the reign of an emperor might have done in Text III of ThCont, with a detailed account of the circumstances of Phokas's advent to power. Then, with the description of the accession ceremonies, the chapter finishes in keeping with the preceding chapters in the *De Cerimoniis*, excerpted from Peter the Patrician, on imperial accessions, including the acclamations copied from those for Leo I: *De Cer.* Reiske, I 96 [105], 439.7–17 and I 91 [100], 410.11–411.3; cf. Featherstone 2014, 361 and Appendices 2.3 and 2.4.

5. Reception: John Skylitzes (and Ps-Symeon)

5.1. John Skylitzes made extensive use of the first four books of ThCont for his *Historical Synopsis*, as we have already noted. In the end Skylitzes's work replaced our history and became a text of reference in later times for the history of the ninth century, as attested by the large number of manuscripts; and Skylitzes was in turn used by later historians such as George Cedrenus and John Zonaras, whose chronicles were to have an even greater diffusion. In consequence, the text we call *Theophanes Continuatus* lost interest for generations of scholars and readers, which explains its preservation in only one manuscript, *Vat. gr.* 167.

The obvious errors and many lacunae in the *Vaticanus* make Skylitzes of utmost importance for the present edition, in so far as the text can be reconstructed from his usually close paraphrase. However, although contemporary with Skylitzes, *Vat. gr.* 167 does not belong to the same family as the manuscript used by him, but represents, as we shall see, another branch of the textual tradition.

The editor of ThCont is faced with a difficult problem when using the variants in Skylitzes for the *constitutio textus*, for Skylitzes follows no set pattern in his rewriting of ThCont. Sometimes he reproduces it literally, though most often he changes words and syntax, depending on his own stylistic perception of the original and also, apparently, on difficulties in certain passages of the manuscript he had. It is therefore often very likely that a better reading in Skylitzes is due to an improvement by him of the original text based on other sources or even his own wit. However there are reasons to suppose that Skylitzes had a better text of ThCont than that preserved in the *Vaticanus*, so that his reading may be accepted in the edition as the correct one.

5.2. In certain corrupt passages in *Vat. gr.* 167 Skylitzes appears to have preserved the correct original reading, for his text makes perfect sense and cannot have been taken from other sources. Thus, the manuscript which Skylitzes had must have been better than the *Vaticanus*, and in these cases we have used Skylitzes to emend the text.

I.21.42 ἀπεφοίασέται V: ἀπεφοίβασέ τε edd e Scyl 20.59

II.7.9 πράττει V edd: προστάττει Boor, cf. Scyl 26.55 ἐναποτάττει: – the text of Scyl provides the clue for correcting πράττει into τάττει, the scribe of V has missed out three letters (οστ).

II.8.39–40 τοσοῦτον γὰρ ἔρρει πρὸς τὴν μίξιν τῶν γραμμάτων V: τοσοῦτον γὰρ ἦργει πρὸς τὴν μίξιν τῶν γραμμάτων edd Boor e Scyl 28.13–14

II.18.10 ὡς ἔοικε ἐγκρατῆς V: ὡς ἔοικε <δαιμόνων> ἐγκρατῆς edd e Scyl 38.7–9 ὁ δ' ἀποστάτης ἐς τοῦτο ἀφῆκτο μανίας παρὰ τῶν συμμαχούντων, ὡς ἔοικε, αὐτῷ δαιμόνων, καὶ τὴν τῆς βασιλείας εἰσέτι ὠνειροπόλει κατὰσχεσιν, ὅτι: post ἔοικε scripsit θαρους (sic) παρὰ τῶν αὐτῷ συμμαχούντων et postea cancelavit V: post ἔοικε lacunam postulavit Boor

II.20bis.1–4 οὐκ ἔμελλε δὲ ἄχρι τούτων ἡ φορά πως οἶόν τινος κεφαλῆς καὶ οὐρᾶς, εἰ καὶ μὴ συνίσταν, παιδευθέντων φόνους, ἐμπρησμοῖς, σεισμοῖς V: οὐκ ἔμελλε δὲ ἄχρι τούτων ἡ φορά πως <στήσεσθαι τῶν κακῶν, ἀλλὰ τῶν δύο ἡπείρων, Ἀσίας φάμεν καὶ Εὐρώπης>, οἶόν τινος κεφαλῆς καὶ οὐρᾶς etc. nos e Scyl. 41.2–3, om. V propter homeoteleuton inter φορά πως et Εὐρώπης: <στήσεσθαι – Εὐρώπης, ἐν θυμῷ κυρίου> add. edd Boor itidem e Scyl. 41.2–3, sed verba ἐν θυμῷ κυρίου additionem Scylitzae putamus – the lacuna in V does not occur in Skylitzes

II.25.15 ἀντέστρεψέως V B: ἀντέστρεψεν τελέως Boor e Scyl 45.13 ἀνέτρεψε (ἀνέστρεψε ms. B) τελέως: ἀντέστρεψεν ὡς in marg. B Comb: ἀνέστρεψεν ὡς Bekk

III.32.20–21 τῷ δ' ἡμερανουνῇ ἀκηκοῦσι νίκης οὐ μικρᾶς καὶ κατὰ τοῦ Ἀμορίου καταδρομῆς V: τῷ δ' ἡμερανουνῇ ἀκηκοῦσι νίκης οὐ μικρᾶς καὶ κατὰ τοῦ Ἀμορίου καταδρομῆς nos, sed lacunam post μικρᾶς conii. Boor, cf. Scyl 77.92–94 τῷ δ' ἡμερμουνη ἀκηκοῦσι τὴν νίκην ἔδοξε μὴ μέλλειν, ἀλλ' ἀπιέναι πρὸς τὸ Ἀμόριον

IV.16.21–22 πόλεις τε κτίζειν ἐπιχειροῦσιν αὐτοῖς, τὴν οὕτω καλουμένην Ἀργαοῦν V: πόλεις τε κτίζειν ἐπιχειροῦσιν αὐτοῖς, τὴν τὴν οὕτω καλουμένην Ἀργαοῦν <καὶ τὴν Ἀμαραν> nos e Scyl 93, 26 (Ἀμάραν edd e Cedreno) – ThCont refers to cities in the plural, but V has only one; Skylitzes can only have found the name of the second city in his manuscript of ThCont, for this episode does not appear in any other source.

IV.20.15–18 ὅπερ ἐκείνη καταφωράσασα καὶ γὰρ ἦν ἰδεῖν φόνους τε ἀνθρώπων καὶ ὁμοφύλων βλάβας ἐκφεύγουσα V: ὅπερ ἐκείνη καταφωράσασα – καὶ γὰρ ἦν ἰδεῖν <καὶ στοχάσασθαι δυνατὴ – ἀντιπράττειν οὐκ ᾔετο δεῖν>, φόνους τε ἀνθρώπων καὶ ὁμοφύλων βλάβας ἐκφεύγουσα edd Boor e Scyl 95.13–96.1 – clearly an omission in V through homeoteleuton (ἰδεῖν – δεῖν).

IV.28.5–6 ὡς ἡ θάνατον κατεπείγεσθαι V: ὡς <τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας ἡ μετανάστας γενέσθαι ἐλπίζειν> ἡ θάνατον κατεπείγεσθαι conii. Kamb, cf. Scyl 104.76–77 καὶ πάντες ἡ μετανάσται γενέσθαι τῆς πατρίδος, ἡ λιμῷ καὶ ἐνδείᾳ τῶν ἀναγκαίων διαφθαρῆσθαι ἡλπίζον: lac. statuit Boor

5.3. When a variant reading in Skylitzes is found in both Genesius and Ps-Symeon, it can only be the original text; it would be too much of a coincidence that an error in the manuscript tradition of the text used by Skylitzes and Ps-Symeon occurs also in Genesius. In any case, these variants are few.

I.8.1 Ἐξαβούλλιον + II.19 Ἐξαβούλλιον V: Ἐξαβούλιος Gen 4.46, 5.54, 15.61, 68, 22.54, 31.57 et Scyl 7.43, 47 (AVMN), 19.32, 40.64, cf. Ἐξαβούλης PsSym 613.16

I.15.9 Συμβάτιος V: Σαββάτιος nos e Gen 10.24, PsSym 604.23 et Scyl 14.61 – One might be puzzled how the corrupt reading also found its way into the marginal notes of V, which would appear to have been taken over from the prototype (and perhaps go back to the archetype). Presumably, the scribe of V – or of the prototype – reproduced the name in the notes as it was in the text.

III.27.16–17 μήτε τὸν Ἰαννὴν ὑπερορίας τυχεῖν μήτε V: μετὰ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ θάνατον fort. ante μήτε inserendum, cf. μετὰ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ θάνατον μήτε Scyl 74.64 et etiam μετὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ τελευταίην Gen 50.11 et μετὰ θάνατον αὐτοῦ PsSym f. 242v

III.27.21 Τριφύλιον V edd: Τριφύλλιον Boor e Gen 49.88 Τριφύλλιος et Scyl 73.69 Τριφυλλίους, cf. PsSym f 242v Τριφιλίω

5.4. If a variant reading in Skylitzes is confirmed only by Genesius, this is in itself no proof of genuineness, for Skylitzes may have simply used Genesius

to emend the text he found in his own manuscript of ThCont. However, we accept such a reading if it offers the solution to a textual problem. Again, such cases are few and occur only in the first two books of ThCont. Thereafter Skylitzes appears to have ceased collating the text with Genesius.

I.1.16 γενναῖον ἀνάστημα ἔχοντα V edd: γενναῖον κατάστημα ἔχοντα Boor in app. e Gen 6.10 et Scyl 9.7

I.3.20–21 τὴν κόμητος ἀρχὴν V: τὴν κόμητος <κόρτης> ἀρχὴν Boor e Gen 8.54 et Scyl 11.60 – the recurrence of the syllable κο – would appear to have led to the omission of κόρτης, though Skylitzes may have found the correct reading in Genesius.

I.10.2 τὸ τοῦ θεοτόκου τεμένισμα V: θεοτόκου Boor in app. e Gen 6.90 et Scyl 8.82: θεῷ V: θεοῦ edd – Skylitzes may have known that the temple was dedicated to the *Theotokos*, not just to God, and therefore his reading here need not have come from Genesius.

I.20.37–38 σύνες ὁ τοι φησὶν V: ὁ τι <λέγει>,” φησὶν Bekk Boor e Gen 13.5 et Scyl 17.65 σύνες τοῖς λεγομένοις: ὁ τι Comb – λέγει was missed out in V through proximity to φησιν, but it is to be inserted on account of the agreement of Skylitzes and Genesius.

II.10.11–12 ἔτος γάρ που διηνέτο τούτῳ πέμπτον καὶ εἰκοστὸν V: ἔτος γάρ – εἰκοστὸν: add. verba ἐν τῇ πρὸς ἐκείνους διατριβῇ Scyl 29.33, quae Boor suspicatur excidisse, cf. Gen 25.59–60 συχρὸν χρόνον ἐν αὐτοῖς διατρίψας ὥσει εἰ καὶ κ' παρελκυσθῆναι ἐνιαυτούς

II.12.17 Ἰακώβ V edd: Ἰωβ Boor e Gen 24.17 et Scyl 31.9 – the correct name of the patriarch of Antioch is given by both Genesius and Skylitzes, but the scribe of V probably mistook the accent as a sign of abbreviation for a longer name. We cannot rule out the possibility that Skylitzes found the correct reading in Genesius.

II.19.27–28 τις Ἰωάννης ἀνὴρ V: τις Ἰωάννης ἀνὴρ <πατρίκιος> add. Boor e Gen 31.57 Ἰωάννης ἀνὴρ ἐπικλήσιν Ἐξαβούλιος, ἐν πατρικίοις τελῶν et Scyl 40.63–64 ὁ πατρίκιος Ἰωάννης: τις ἀνὴρ Ἰωάννης edd

5.5. There are also cases where Skylitzes and Ps-Symeon have a common reading at variance with V for which the explanation is unclear. It could be that both Skylitzes and the Ps-Symeon emended the original text in the same way, independently of each other, or – more important for us here – that their manuscripts of ThCont had the same reading. Moreover, Ps-Symeon's manuscript of ThCont may not have belonged to the same family as V, but to another which was closer to Genesius. Ps-Symeon would then have used this common source to supplement the text of the Logothete, on which he mainly depends.

I.24.3–4 Μιχαὴλ τινα ἐξ ὀνόματος διακοῦσαι ἐπιπηδήσαντα προτρεπομένου V: διακοῦσαι <καλέσαντος καὶ> Boor e Scyl 21.85–86 καλεῖν ἐξ ὀνόματος et PsSym 611.21 ἤκουσε ... ἐξ ὀνόματος καλέσαι – despite the probability that the common reading of Skylitzes and Ps-Symeon is the original, the sentence in V makes sense as it stands.

III.5.25 ἔρρωμένος V: ἔρρωμένος edd e Scyl 52.88 et PsSym 628.17

III.6.11 διαβάντος V: διαβάντα Scyl 53.14 et PsSym 629.14 – the subject of the genitive absolute is not explicit, and the version of Skylitzes and Ps-Symeon substitutes an accusative for clarity.

IV.7.29 ὑπειπὼν V: ἐπειπὼν Boor e Scyl 85.24 et PsSym 650.11

IV.7.34 ὄλην τοῦ σκηνώματος ἐναπέτεμεν V: ὄλην τοῦ σώματος ἀπέτεμεν, post quae verba add τὴν κεφαλὴν edd e Scyl 86.28–29 sed cf. PsSym 651.14 σκηνώματος ἐναπέτεμεν – here Ps-Symeon indicates an addition by Skylitzes.

IV.11.17 καὶ ταῦτα ... ἢ ὑπόσχεσις V: αὐτὴ ... ἢ ὑπόσχεσις Scyl 89.29: αὐταὶ PsSym 653.21

IV.21.7 πεντήκοντα, δὲ καὶ τεσσαράκοντα, καὶ τὸ ἐλάχιστον ἐκάστω τριάκοντα V: ἑκατὸν καὶ ὀγδοήκοντα, καὶ τοῦλάχιστον πεντήκοντα Scyl 96.34–35, cf. PsSym 659.7 ρ' ἢ τὸ ἐλάχιστον ν' – the difference between 50 in V and 100 in Skylitzes and Ps-Symeon might be explained by confusion of the minuscule numeral 50 (ν) for 100 (ρ) in the first sum. It is more difficult to explain the change from 40 (μ) to 80 (π), but again, the minuscule forms 30 (λ) and 50 (ν) are similar. Skylitzes apparently chose 80 as a number in the middle, whereas Ps-Symeon simply abridged the text.

5.6. Likewise, the testimony of Ps-Symeon alone is insufficient against V. To cite just one instance:

IV.3.18 κατὰ τὸ προάστειον αὐτοῦ τὸ οὕτω λεγόμενον περιορισθεὶς τὰ Ψυχὰ V: κατὰ τινὰ μονὴν ἐν τῷ Κλειδίῳ περιορίζεται. ἐν ἣ ἀγίων εἰκόνας ξέσας, τοῦτον ἡ βασιλίςσα μάλιστα διακοσίαις παιδεύει, καὶ κατὰ τὸ προάστειον αὐτοῦ, ὃ λέγεται Ψυχὰ, ἀποστέλλεται (ἀπὸ στέλλοιται f 245v) PsSym 649.2–5 – it could be that the scribe of V has missed out the sentence concerning the monastery in Kleidion by homoioteleuton; but as the text in V makes perfect sense, we cannot be sure that Ps-Symeon has not, as he often does, added to his source.

5.7. Skylitzes sometimes appears to use other sources to correct a faulty passage in the text of ThCont as it stands in V. Here, however, we cannot be sure that he did not have an annotated or interpolated manuscript of ThCont

II.8.7–8 ἕκαστος οὖν αὐτῶ ποιεῖτω καὶ ἐφετόν V: ἕκαστος οὖν <τὸ δοκοῦν> αὐτῶ ποιεῖτω καὶ ἐφετόν edd e Scyl 27.77 et Vita Nicephori 209 – Skylitzes may have improved the text on the basis of the *Vita Nicephori*, though this seems unlikely.

III.14.33 ἔστησαν εἰς σύστημα τῆς οἰκουμένης V B in marg. Acta Davidis 239.7 Scyl 62.79 (AEV) Comb in marg. Bekk: σύστασιν B Vita Michaelis Syncelli 86.8 Vita Theodori Grapti 673D PsSym 641.22 Scyl 62.79 (CBMN), Comb – preserved in a number of historical sources, these verses have come down in two versions in different branches of the tradition of Skylitzes.

IV.8.20 καὶ ἐκ βάρων ἡ τοῦ ἁγίου μεγαλομάρτυρος ἀνιδρῦθη μονή V: post μεγαλομάρτυρος fortasse <Φωκᾶ> addendum, cf. Scyl 86.47–48 εἰς μονὴν κατεσκευάσθη ἐπ' ὀνόματι Φωκᾶ τοῦ μεγαλομάρτυρος – we cannot know whether Skylitzes found the monastery's name in his manuscript of ThCont or in another source.

IV.16.6–7 ὁ τοῦ Ἀργυροῦ καὶ ὁ τοῦ Δουκὸς καὶ ὁ Σουδάλης οἱ ἀποσταλέντες ἐλέγοντο V: cf. Scyl 92.11 ὁ τοῦ Ἀργυροῦ δὲ ἦν Λέων καὶ ὁ τοῦ Δουκὸς Ἀνδρόνικος καὶ ὁ Σουδάλης – Skylitzes gives the first names of two of the three persons mentioned, whereas V gives none. If this is an addition by Skylitzes, one asks from which source. Perhaps there were marginal notes in Skylitzes's manuscript of ThCont

IV.22.22–27 ἀδελφαὶ δὲ τρεῖς, ἡ τε εὐφύμω οὕτω καλουμένη ὀνόματι Καλομαρία καὶ Σοφία καὶ ἡ <Εἰρήνη>. ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν Σοφία εἰς κοίτην ἐδίδοτο Κωνσταντίνῳ τῷ κατὰ τὸν Βαβουζικόν, ἡ δὲ Καλομαρία Ἀρσαβῆρ τῷ τηνικαῦτα μὲν πατρικίῳ ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ μαγίστρῳ, τῷ Εἰρήνησιν τῆς μητρὸς τοῦ μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν πατριαρχικὸν θρόνον ἀντιλαβομένου Φωτίου ἀδελφῶ nos: Εἰρήνη suppl. taciter edd, cf. Scyl 98.72: spatium ca. duodecim litterarum praebet V: lacunam statuit Boor, suspiciens Scylitzae fictionem // τῷ Εἰρήνης V Boor: fortasse <ἡ δὲ> Εἰρήνη Σ<εργίω> τῷ vel simile scribendum cf. Scyl 98.73 Εἰρήνη δὲ Σεργίω: <ἡ δὲ Εἰρήνη> τῷ Εἰρήνης edd – for a discussion of this passage, see Mango 1977.

IV.34.10–11 Νίκην ἐγκαθιδρυμένην κατὰ τὴν ἁγίαν Ἄνναν στερεῶς ἱσταμένας ἐγκατασεύσαντες V: post ἐγκαθιδρυμένην add. καὶ τὰς ἐν τῷ Δευτέρῳ Boor e Scyl 107.55–56

5.8. The reasons for some of the corrupt passages in V are obvious, either on account of syntactical or morphological error, or imprecision of reference.

Thus, even when Skylitzes provides a reading of the passage which can be accepted in the edition, we cannot be sure whether he emended the text *ophe ingenii* or simply found the correct reading in his manuscript.

I.3.19 τὴν Φοιδεράτων V: τὴν ἀρχὴν τῶν Φοιδεράτων Boor in app. e Scyl 30.56 – Skylitzes easily supplies the obvious substantive.

I.22.4–6 βίβλω ... καὶ μορφὰς καὶ σχήματα ἔχοντι V edd: ἔχουσα Boor e Scyl 20.63–64 βιβλίω ... ἔχοντι: ἔχουσα V edd – Skylitzes substitutes ἔχοντι for ἔχουσα for the syntax. This procedure is very common and we note here further examples without comment.

I.26.1–2 κατὰ τὸν μῆνα V: Δεκέμβριον add. edd e Scyl 23.56 – it is evident in the previous narrative that Leo the Armenian died in December; thus Skylitzes could easily have made this addition.

II.2.20 τῶν ἡμετέρων ἔνεκεν λύτρων ἀμαρτιῶν V: λύτρον edd e Scyl 25.93

II.4.1–2 τὰ δὲ ἦν συὼν μὲν τῶν ἀρτιτόκων προλέγειν ὅσοι τε ἔσονται ἐντραφεῖς V: εὐτραφεῖς edd Boor e Scyl 25.19, Ptolemaeus, Apotelesmatica 2.2.4.8 σώματα μεγάλοι καὶ εὐτραφεῖς τοῖς μεγέθεσι

II.11.1 Ἄτερος δὲ τοῦτον εἶναι τὸν Θωμᾶν V: post εἶναι add. φησι Boor e Scyl 30.53 – Skylitzes supplies the main verb.

II.14bis.25 ἡ τοσαύτη δυνάμει V: ἡ τοσαύτη δύναμις edd e Scyl 35.96

II.20.2–3 τὰ τοῦ τυράννου φρονῆσαι V edd Boor: φρονῶσαι nos e Scyl 40.78

II.21.17 ἔχον V: ἔχων edd Boor e Scyl 42.19

II.22.7–8 δύναμιν τινα ... τὴν ἐκείθεν ἀποσοβήσουσαν τοὺς ἀγροὺς V: Ἀγαρηνοὺς conl. Boor: ἐχθροὺς edd e Scyl 43.57 – the correct reading would appear to be Ἀγαρηνοὺς, of which ἀγροὺς would be an abbreviation; ἐχθροὺς is probably a conjecture *ad sensum*.

III.3.8 ἕκαστον V Bekk in app. Boor: <περί> ἐκάστου nos e Scyl 51.39: ἐκάστου edd

III.4.29 ἔκ τε V: ἔκτοτε edd e Scyl 51.66

III.9.30 πρὸς τὸ ἀναπαύσεως καταγώγιον V: <τῆς> post τὸ suppl. Boor e Scyl 57.12

III.13.26 ἐκείνου δὲ τὸ μῖσος καὶ τὴν ὑπερβάλλουσιν μανίαν V: ἐκείνου δὲ τὸ μῖσος <προτιμῆσαι> καὶ τὴν ὑπερβάλλουσιν μανίαν Boor e Scyl 61.44: καὶ τὴν ὑπερβάλλουσιν μανίαν καὶ προτιμῆσαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὕστερον edd, fortasse recte addentes ultimam sententiam e Scyl 61.45

III.18.4 τὴν πασῶν ἐσχάτην Μαρίαν ἡγαπημένην οὖσαν τῶν ἄλλων V: add. ὑπερβαλλόντως ante ἡγαπημένην edd e Scyl 64.21–22 – Skylitzes adds ὑπερβαλλόντως, apparently to heighten the comparison.

III.22.21 ὁ περὶ αὐτῶν πόλεμος V: αὐτὸν edd Boor e Scyl 68.29

III.24.16 τοὺς περὶ αὐτῶν ἀναθαρρύνας V: αὐτὸν edd Boor e Scyl 70.87

IV.18.10–11 κατὰ τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ κάτεισι κατὰ τὴν Ἀσπαρον ὄντα V: κάτεισι εἰς τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ κατὰ τὴν κιστέρναν τοῦ (τὴν Scyl) Ἀσπαρος (Ἀσπαρον Scyl M) edd e Scyl 94.58–5 – κιστέρναν added *ad sensum*.

IV.21.31 ἀλμάντους V: ἀλυμάντους ἀνεκαλέσατο καὶ edd e Scyl 97.55

IV.21.32 μὲν τὴνάρια V: μὲν <κεν> τήναρια Boor e Scyl 97.56: κεντηνάρια edd

IV.22.10 βασιλεῦσιν ἀοίδιμος V: <Βασίλειος ὁ ἐν> βασιλεῦσιν ἀοίδιμος nos: βασιλεὺς ὁ ἀοίδιμος Βασίλειος edd: βασιλεῦσας Βασίλειος ὁ ἀοίδιμος conl. Boor, cf. Scyl 97.68 – Skylitzes either found the correct reading in his manuscript, or he supposed the reference to Βασίλειος to have gone missing, since the play on his name is frequent in the text.

IV.40.18 οὕτω κατονομάσας V: τὸν βασιλέα add. post οὕτω edd e Scyl 111.71

5.9. More problematic are passages in which the text of ThCont presents no apparent problem, but Skylitzes provides either supplementary information or a more appealing variant. The editor is tempted to reject Skylitzes's reading as revision or embellishment of the original; but considering the numerous

errors and, more importantly, omissions in V, it is always possible that Skylitzes preserves readings that have disappeared without trace from V. However, we have rarely accepted these variants or additions in the text, unlike Combéfis, who tacitly followed Skylitzes (or rather, Cedrenus) and Bekker who, in his 'reprint' of the edition of Combéfis, perpetuated these additions. In contrast, our edition relegates most of them to the apparatus.

I.11.28 λέγει τῶν γενομένων οὐδέν V edd Boor: ἐγνωσμένων conl. Boor in app. e Scyl 12.89–90 ἀπήγγειλε τῶν ἐγνωσμένων οὐδέν – ἐγνωσμένων is perhaps more elegant, but not necessarily the original reading.

I.24.11–13 καὶ <αὐ>τοῦ τὸν κατάκριτον ἐν σκίμποδι τῷ τοῦ παπίου περιδεξίως, τὸν δὲ παπίαν ἐπ' ἐβάφους κοιμώμενον εὗρισκεν nos (καὶ <αὐ>τοῦ τὸν Boor: καὶ τοῦ τὸν V): θέαμα ὁρᾷ εἰς ἐκπληξιν οὐ τὴν τυχεύσαν ἄγον αὐτόν· εἶδεν γὰρ τὸν μὲν κατάκριτον κλπ. edd e Scyl 21.94–95 – the sentence in Skylitzes is a dramatic amplification.

I.25.35–36 παῖει κατὰ χειρὸς V: post παῖει add. e Scyl 23.53 – the adverb in Skylitzes is superfluous, as in most of the following examples.

II.7.1 τὴν τοῦ Ἀθιγγάνου μάντεως πρόρρησιν V: post μάντεως add. φωνὴν ὡς θείαν τινὰ edd e Scyl 26.48

II.11.7 τὰς περὶ αὐτοῦ προρρήσεις V: τὴν (τὰς Comb) περὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἐν τῷ Φιλομηλίῳ μοναχοῦ πρόρρησιν edd e Scyl 30.59–60

II.13.3 ἐκπέμπει στρατὸν V: ἐκπέμπει στρατιὰν καὶ στρατηγὸν dubitanter e Scyl 32.18 (ACVN) restituit Boor in app., sed Scyl (M) στρατιὰν καὶ om.

II.14.19–20 τὸν κατὰ θάλατταν δὲ στόλον αὐτῷ γενόμενον εὐτρεπισάμενος V: post εὐτρεπισάμενος add. καὶ ἕτερον αὐτῷ ἐπιστήσας στρατηγὸν edd e Scyl 33.57–58

II.14bis.19–20 πετροβόλοις V: post πετροβόλοις add. πανταχόθεν χρώμενος edd e Scyl 34.92–93

II.15.10 καθυπισχνούμενος V: ὑπισχνούμενος δώσειν ἀγαθὰ πολλὰ edd e Scyl 35.21

II.18.4 σκεδαννύμενοί πως: σκεδαννύμενοι ἐσκόπουσιν πῶς edd e Scyl 38.3

II.19.24 ἐπὶ κοντοῦ τε θεατρίζει V, cf. Gen 31.53: ἐπὶ ὄνου edd, cf. Scyl 40.60 ὄνω

II.21.51–52 ἀποδοχῆς κρίναντες τὰ λεγόμενα V: post ἀποδοχῆς add. ἄξια edd e Scyl 43.49

II.27.3 τὸ μοναχικὸν ἐκ πάλης ἀναλαβοῦσης σχῆμα V: ἐκ παιδὸς Scyl 46.37 – perhaps a change in interpretation, or simply an error by Skylitzes.

II.27.29 προσερχόμενον V: μεμονωμένον in app. conl. e Scyl 47.59 Boor, qui putavit ut librarii oculus ad sequens προσέρχονται aberravit

III.3.5–6 τὰ αὐτῶν ἐκτραγωδεῖν αἶε V: τὰ αὐτῶν ἐκτραγωδεῖν ἀδικήματα edd e Scyl 50.37

III.4.13–14 ὁ τούτου ὁρμος V: ὁ τοῦ πλοίου ὁρμος edd e Scyl 51.53 – explanatory substitution.

III.4.18–19 σίτου ἢ τιнос ἄλλου V Boor: σίτου <ἢ οἴνου> ἢ τιнос ἄλλου edd e Scyl 51.56

III.9.67–10.1 ὀνόματα. Περί δὲ V: ὀνόματα. Καὶ περὶ μὲν τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔδοκει τε καὶ ἐνομίζετο μεγαλοπρεπὴς ὁ Θεόφιλος καὶ θαυμαστός· περὶ δὲ suppl. edd e Scyl 58.48–50 – once again, the sentence preceding περὶ δὲ could have been added by Skylitzes for ease of transition; conversely, the scribe of V may have missed out the first sentence.

III.10.15 τὴν ἀνδραποδῶδη V: τὴν θηριῶδη καὶ ἀνδραποδῶδη edd e Scyl 59.64 – the use of synonyms is very common in ThCont, and thus we cannot be sure whether Skylitzes found this in his manuscript or has added it.

III.11.11 οὔτοι γοῦν V: οὔτοι γοῦν οἱ θεϊότατοι ἄνδρες edd e Scyl 59.92 – Skylitzes's explanation.

III.11.15–16 τῆς ἄνω <λή>ξεως ταῖς τῶν μαστίγων ἀφορήτοις φοραῖς ἡξιώθησαν nos: πεφευγότες, καὶ ταῖς τῶν μαστίγων ἀφορήτοις φοραῖς τελείως καταπονηθέντες, τῆς ἄνω λήξεως (τῆς ἄνωξεως V) ἡξιώθησαν edd e Scyl 60.2–3 – we accept the obviously correct reading ἄνω λήξεως, but reject the rest of the Skylitzes's text as amplification.

III.12.9–10 ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦτον οὐ τοῖς σοφιστικοῖς V: ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦτον ὁ γενναῖος ἀγωνιστῆς οὐ ταῖς σοφιστικαῖς καὶ διαλεκτικαῖς ἀποδείξεσι edd e Scyl 60.14–15

III.15.6–7 κατὰ πάντα δὲ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ χρόνον τῆς ζωῆς V: post ζωῆς add. ἐκάκου καὶ ἀνηκέστοις ὑπεβάλλετο συμφοραῖς edd e Scyl 63.3–4

III.22.33 περὶ τὸν Θεόφοβον V: περὶ τὸν Θεόφοβον ἐγέειρεν edd e Scyl 68.40

III.30.3 ἐκ Παλαιστίνης τε καὶ τῆς κάτω Λιβύης V: ἐκ Παλαιστίνης τε καὶ τῆς κάτω Λιβύης V Boor, cf. Gen 47.5 ἐξ Αἰγυπτίου καὶ Παλαιστίνης: ἐκ τε Βαβυλωνίας καὶ Φοινίκης καὶ Κοίλης Συρίας Παλαιστίνης τε (τε, Comb) καὶ τῆς κάτω Λιβύης edd e Scyl 74.26–27 – clearly amplification by Skylitzes, to include all regions of the Caliphate as providers of soldiers for the Muslim army.

III.31.16 τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν V: τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν πλῆθος edd e Scyl 76.69

III.32.19–20 γέγονεν αἰτία καὶ ἀφορμὴ V: post ἀφορμὴ add. εὐκαιρος εἰς διαβολὴν edd e Scyl 77.92

IV.7.32–33 καὶ οἱ μὲν δύο τὰς δύο τοῦ ἀνδριάντος κεφαλὰς ἀπέκοψαν· ὁ δ' ἕτερος μικρὸν μὲν κατέκλινεν V: post δύο add ἰσχυροτάταις χρησάμενοι καταφοραῖς edd e Scyl 86.26 // post ἕτερος add μαλακώτερον ποιήσας τὴν πληγὴν edd e Scyl 86.27

IV.15.5–6 μοναχὸν τινα τῶν καθ' ἡμᾶς Ῥωμαίων ζωγράφον V: Ῥωμαῖον conl. Boor in app. e Scyl 91.74–75 Ῥωμαῖον τὸ γένος, ζωγράφον τὴν τέχνην

IV.19.34–35 κατὰ γαστέρα βληθεὶς V: κατὰ γαστέρα πληγείς edd e Scyl 95.93

IV.30.1–3 καὶ τοῖς τοῦ ἵπποδρόμου δὲ συνεχῶς ἑαυτὸν ὁ Βάρδας ἐδίδου κριτηρίοις καὶ <τῇ φιλοπρωτείᾳ>, ἐραστῆς νομίζεσθαι ταύτης φιλοτιμούμενος nos: post κριτηρίοις lacunam statuit Boor, coniciens quaedam veluti e Scyl 105.10 τὴν τῶν νόμων ἀκρίβειαν ἀνηβᾶν ποιῶν // τῇ φιλοπρωτείᾳ add. Kamb, cf. Scyl 106.13 ὁ τῆς φιλοπρωτείας ἔρως et 107.43 τῆς φιλοπρωτείας τὰ νεανίσματα

IV.34.6 οἱ συνεχεῖς τῶν σεισμῶν ἐκυμαίνοντο V: post σεισμῶν add. <κλόνοι> Boor e Scyl 107.51

IV.37.8 μυστικά ἀνδράρια V: πορνικά ἀνδράρια Scyl 109.12 – again, a change (μυστικά/πορνικά) for greater effect.

5.10. Finally there are instances in which Skylitzes clearly has a reading at variance with V which is obviously incorrect, either because his manuscript of ThCont was corrupt or – more probably – because he misinterpreted the text.

I.21.12–13 ὡς ἂν διὰ τινος πορθημίου διαβιβάζοντο λόγοι οἱ αὐτοῦ V: cf. Scyl 19.31 προθύμως, qui fortasse facilius reddidit

I.22.2–3 τῆς Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν κάτω ταύτης γεννήσεως V: κατὰ σάρκα edd e Scyl 20.61

I.23.7 πολυετὴ χρεῖαν nos: πολυετήχρειαν V: πολυετὴ χηρεῖαν edd Boor e Scyl 21.78: πολὺν ἐτίαν PsSym f. 236v (πολυετίαν 611.12)

III.1.1–2 ἑπτὰ ἔτεσι πρὸς μηνὶ ὀκτώ V Boor: ἑννέα Comb in marg. Bekk, cf. supra II.28.5–6 μῆνας ὀκτώ καὶ ἔτη ... ἑννέα, quod pro lapso calami Continuatores habemus, cui Scyl 47.72 (VBMN) ἐπὶ μῆνας ὀκτώ καὶ ἔτη ἑννέα itidem secutus est, sed apud Gen 35.78–79 et Scyl 47.72 (ACE) tempus regni ut 8 annorum et 9 mensium recte constat

III.10.2 ὡς βάρβαρος τις καὶ αὐστηρὸς V: βαρὺς Scyl 58.51

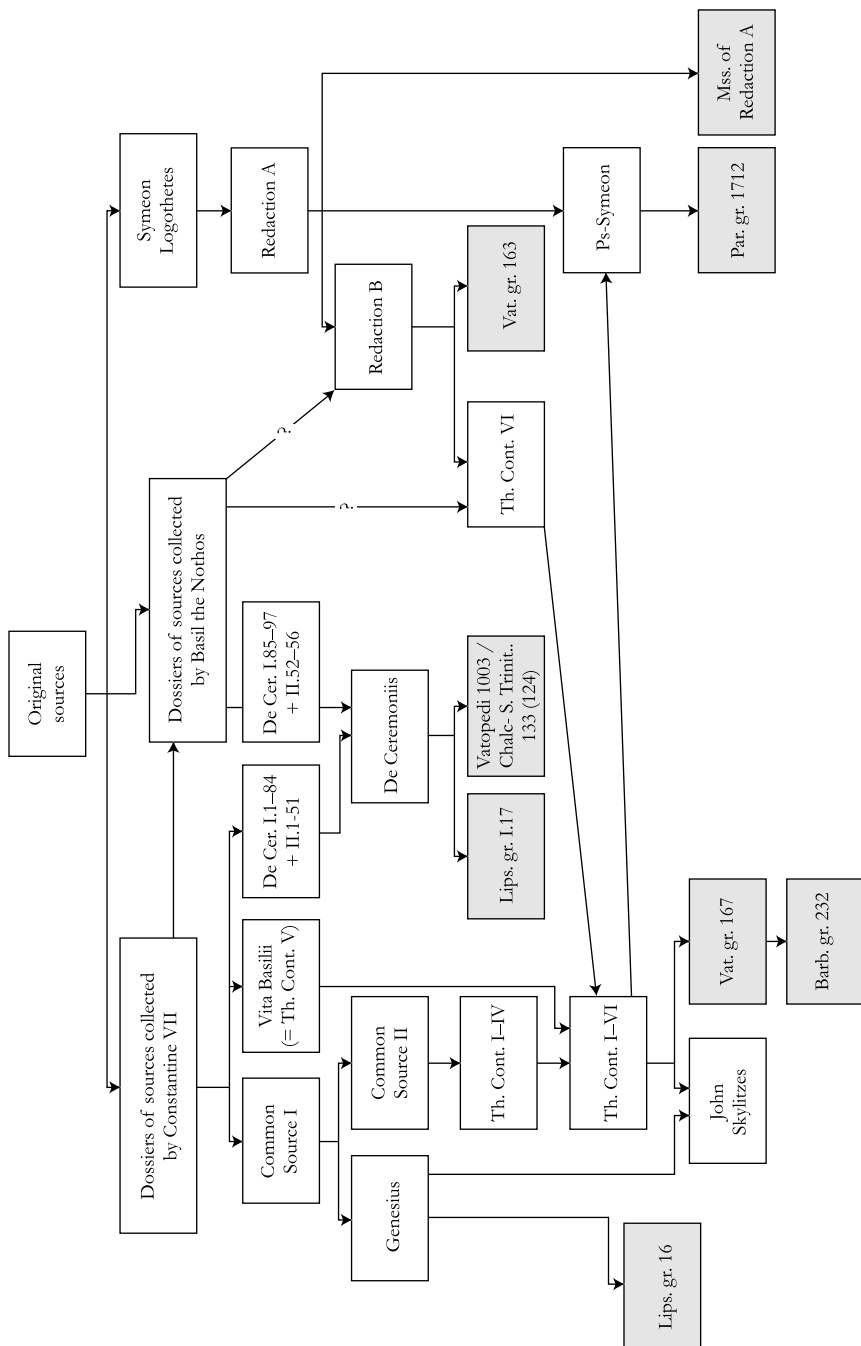
III.14.18 ἐκείνην ἔλεγε προστεθῆναι πρὸς αὐτὸν nos (προτεθῆναι Kamb): cf. Scyl 62.61–62 ἔλεγε προτιθεὶς ἰέναι: ἔλεγε προστιθεὶς ἔλεγε V: ἔλεγε προστιθεὶς τὴν βίβλον ἰέναι edd e Scyl: ἔλεγε προστιθεὶς κομισθῆναι Scyl 62.61–62 (B): ἔλεγε προστιθεὶς <ἰέναι> Boor

IV.35.8–9 τὴν Σάμον V: τὴν Σάμον V Boor, cf. Ps. Sym 682.11: fortasse τὸν Σάμον scribendum, cf. Const Por Tres, II.621 (R492.12–13) ὁ βουνὸς ὁ Σάμος: τὴν Ἰσαμόν edd: τὸν Ἰσαμόν Scyl 108.71 (Ἰσαβον M)

6. Proposed stemma, including sources and adaptations

By the principles of Textual Criticism a stemma of the manuscript tradition of ThCont would appear impossible, for we have only one manuscript, the *Vaticanus*, and a later direct copy, the *Barberinianus*, with relevance only to the editorial history of the text. However, as we have used many other sources, older, contemporary and also later, for the edition, it is easiest for us to summarise our conclusions by means of a stemma combining references to *manuscripts* (in grey boxes) with the textual tradition of the corresponding *works* (in white boxes). It is hoped that the resulting table, which combines *Quellenforschung* and *Textkritik*, will serve as a summary of the history of the text and the editorial principles outlined in the previous sections.

As is shown, the transmission of the Logothete texts and that of ThCont I–VI is connected in at least three points: 1) the original sources used by the Logothete were also used by the compiler of the original dossier of sources for Constantine Porphyrogenitus; 2) the author of Redaction ‘B’ and/or of ThCont VI used the dossier prepared by Basil the Nothos, who had been a close collaborator of Constantine Porphyrogenitus; 3) Ps-Symeon used the final dossier of ThCont I–VI to supplement the text of Redaction A of the *Logothete Chronicle*. Through these points of connexion it is clear that the tradition of Genesis + ThCont (left side of the stemma) and the Logothete texts (right side) are much closer to each other than generally assumed, despite their pro- or anti-Macedonian bias. Any definitive solution of the problem must wait until the text of Redaction B is properly edited. Only then will we be able to appreciate the network of relations linking court historians recording the events of the ninth and tenth centuries.



7. The present edition

a) Principles

As noted in Ševčenko's edition of the VBas, Carl de Boor in his unpublished edition of ThCont mainly followed V; and for his edition of the VBas, Ševčenko used V and de Boor. Whilst we, too, have noted de Boor's emendations and conjectures in the present edition of Books I–IV,⁶⁰ we have followed *Vat. gr.* 167 as closely as possible, correcting/emending on the basis of sources and later authors who clearly had better manuscripts of the text. We have had recourse to B only for a few folia at the beginning of V where the original text was apparently more legible at the time B was copied. Otherwise we use B solely to explain the text of the editions.

Following Ševčenko's edition of the VBas, we have indicated the folia of V and the page numbers in Bekker's edition in the margins. Likewise, we have maintained Bekker's chapter divisions, though they do not always correspond to the divisions in V; and references are given to the line number within each chapter, not pages.

We have followed the text and orthographic practice of the original text in so far as it can be determined from V and the MSS of the sources and related texts.

We have kept the *v ephelkystikon* as it appears in V, where it is for the most part consistently used before vowels or syntactic pause.⁶¹ However, because we do not always follow the punctuation of the manuscript, some of these pauses will not be evident.

Enclitics have been treated according to 'classical' rules, because there is no consistency in V of later Byzantine usage.⁶² The one exception to this is in compounds of the particle *πέρ* (e.g. *ὥσπερ τινος*), where we have retained the consistent accentuation of V.

⁶⁰ Our work is based on photocopies made in the 1970's of de Boor's manuscript (ca 1900) for a new edition. The manuscript was amongst de Boor's *Nachlass* brought by A. Heisenberg from Breslau to Munich and deposited in the library of the Byzantine Institute. It was lent in 1975 by H.-G. Beck to Ševčenko for work on a new edition of ThCont at Harvard. Later sent back to Munich by Ševčenko at the request of A. Hohlweg, it has gone missing. Concerning de Boor and other would-be editors subsequent to Bekker, see Ševčenko 1978, 104–105.

⁶¹ For the diverse usage of this *ny* in Classical times and its later standardisation, see Hämmig 2013, esp. 14–18 for the Byzantine period.

⁶² On Byzantine accentuation of enclitics, see most recently Noret 2014, 121–145.

Another exception to the standard orthography is that of separating the components of $\mu\eta\ \delta\acute{\epsilon}$ ($\mu\eta\ \delta$ before vowels); again, this is the consistent usage in V.

We have however standardised the orthography of the word $\omicron\chi$ before rough vowels, instead of $\omicron\chi'$. The latter indeed occurs often in V, but not consistently.

We have retained what appears to have been standard orthography for titles at court, as the accute accentuation of $\alpha\lambda\gamma\acute{o}\upsilon\sigma\tau\alpha$, $\kappa\alpha\lambda\acute{\iota}\sigma\alpha\rho$, and the retention of omega in the oblique cases of Latinate words, e.g. $\pi\rho\omega\tau\omicron\sigma\tau\rho\acute{\alpha}\tau\omega\rho$ (- $\omega\rho\omicron\varsigma$), also found in *Lipsiensis* II 17 (X s.) of the *De Cerimoniis*.

We have followed the consistent usage in V of writing $\sigma\acute{\omega}\zeta\omega$ without the iota-subscript.

We have not maintained the punctuation of the text in V, but have changed it according to the sense of the text as we understand it. We have used capitals only at the beginning of paragraphs, not individual sentences.

b) Explanation of the apparatus

The apparatus consists of three parts: (1) an apparatus historicus, (2) an apparatus fontium and (3) an apparatus criticus.

1. Apparatus historicus

Here we simply give dates whenever possible. When there is uncertainty, reference is made to the relevant bibliography.

2. Apparatus fontium

In the apparatus fontium we have distributed the texts in three different categories:

1) First come what we can properly call ‘sources’, that is, works that were used or consulted either directly or, more frequently, through excerpts from the original texts collected in the *CS of ThCont and Genesius. In this category we also include works which made use of the same sources as ThCont, such as Genesius or the *Logothete Chronicle* (A), because the loss of many of the original texts used by ThCont – above all the *CS – renders these later texts, written by contemporary authors, the only extant witnesses, indispensable for the *constitutio textus*.

2) Second, divided by a single vertical bar, come works which copied directly from ThCont and in many cases have preserved the original wording, in particular the so-called Ps-Symeon and Skylitzes. As in the case of Genesius and the *Logothete Chronicle* (A), who copied from the sources of ThCont, the importance of the authors in this second category to the *constitutio textus* is enormous, for the MSS they used were older and better than *Vat. gr.* 167.

3) Third, after a double vertical bar we have identified, in so far as possible, Biblical and Classical citations, as well as parallel passages. We have been extremely conservative in this section and have admitted only texts which the author of ThCont is sure to have had in his mind when writing. Obviously, the exact source of a proverb or a commonplace or phrase cannot be established with certainty, and thus the problem frequently arises of identifying a given expression with either a classical text or a later anthology, gnomologium or collection of proverbs. In such cases we have given preference to both coincidence of form and presentation of the passage in the corresponding work (e.g. a quotation or proverb), referring to the ultimate source with the customary ‘cf.’, to indicate that the author did not cite it directly but only through intermediaries. Finally, we have considered it pointless to be exhaustive in the recording of common phrases, such as Biblical citations or proverbs, found often in literary works.

3. Apparatus criticus

The apparatus is negative. We have reported variants in spelling even when not relevant to the *constitutio textus*. We have noted the marginal remarks in semi-uncials in Book I, which appear to have been taken over from the prototype, but not the ubiquitous later annotations described in section 2 above. References are made to recent editions of Genesius, Skylitzes and the *Logothete Chronicle* (A), insofar as they contribute to the *constitutio textus* in difficult or corrupt passages in *Vat. gr.* 167. For Skylitzes, we have noted the readings of individual manuscripts when relevant. Although Combéfis did not read Skylitzes directly but only through Cedrenus (ed. A. Fabrot, Paris 1647), we refer to Skylitzes for Combéfis’s emendations; as Thurn states in the prolegomena to his edition: ‘Aus Kedren ist kaum die Emendation einer Stelle im Skylitzes’ text zu erwarten’.⁶³ For Ps-Symeon we have noted the readings of *Par. gr.* 1712 when at variance with Bekker’s edition of 1838. References to other texts, such as George the Monk, are seldom.

c) Indices

There are four indices: (1) Index nominum propriorum, (2) Index verborum ad res Byzantinas spectantium, (3) Index grammaticus and (4) Index locorum.

1) Index nominum propriorum

Here are listed the names of people and places and of particular things: for instance, Σχολαί for the buildings so-named in the Palace, whereas σχολαί in

⁶³ Skylitzes, xxvii.

the sense of divisions of the guards on campaign is to be found in the *Index verborum ad res byzantinas spectantium*; and σχολή in the Classical sense of ‘school’ is not listed in either index.

2) *Index rerum byzantinorum*

Here are included only the occurrences of words with reference to specific Byzantine reality, for instance, βιβλος for a physical book; εἰκών for an icon; θάλασσα for a tunic with a sea pattern; θρόνος for an episcopal see; λέων (and γρύψ) for automata; ὄργανον for a *musical* instrument; στρατηγός and cognates for the head of a theme, etc.

3) *Index grammaticus*

The relevant linguistic data have been classified by the traditional *partes orationis* of Greek grammar, as the most impartial manner of presenting the evidence collected. Note is taken of morphologic and orthographic deviations from standard Attic forms, but special attention is given to the syntactic use of the *partes*, inasmuch as syntax, though often neglected, is of utmost importance in the analysis of the author’s style and the evolution of the language.

4) *Index locorum*

Here are listed citations identified in the text, as well as cases of μίμησις where the author clearly draws his vocabulary from a particular classical text, sometimes directly, sometimes – as we suspect but are not able to prove – through such collections as the *Excerpta historica* of Constantine VII. The few (mostly historical) sources used by the author in writing his history are not included here on account of the complexity of their use, as explained above in sections 3–5 of these Prolegomena. The same applies to parallel texts. Reference to both, however, is made in the apparatus fontium.

8. Bibliography

- Angelidi 2012: Angelidi, Ch., Basile Lecapène. “Deux ou trois choses que je sais de lui”, in: Gastgeber, Ch. – Messis, Ch. – Muresan, D. – Ronconi, F. (eds.), *Pour l’amour de Byzance. Hommage à Paolo Odorico. Eastern and Central European Studies* 3, Frankfurt-am-Main, 11–26.
- Barišić 1959: Barišić P., Génésios et le continuateur de Théophane, *Byzantion* 28, 119–133.
- Barišić 1961: Barišić P., Les sources de Génésios et du Continuateur de Théophane pour l’histoire du Règne de Michel II, *Byzantion* 31, 257–271.
- Bury 1912: Bury, J. B., *A History of the Later Roman Empire from the Fall of Eirene to the Accession of Basil I (802–867)*, London.
- Cheyne 2015: Cheynet, J. Cl., “Les Génésioi”, in: Antonopoulou Th. – Kotzabassi, S. – Loukaki, M. (eds.), *Myriobiblos. Essays in Byzantine Literature and Culture*, Berlin, 71–83.
- Featherstone 2004: Featherstone, J.M., Further Remarks on the *De Cerimoniis*, *Byzantinische Zeitschrift* 97, 113–121.
- Featherstone 2011: Featherstone, J.M., Theophanes Continuatus VI and *De Cerimoniis* I,96, *Byzantinische Zeitschrift* 104, 109–116.
- Featherstone 2012: Featherstone, J. M., Theophanes Continuatus: A History for the Palace, in: Odorico, P. (ed.), *La face cachée de la littérature byzantine. Le texte en tant que message immédiat. Actes du colloque international, Paris, 5–6–7 juin 2008. Dossiers Byzantins* 11, Paris, 123–135.
- Featherstone 2014: Featherstone, J.M., Basileios Nothos as Compiler: the *De Cerimoniis* and *Theophanes Continuatus*, in: Signes Codoñer, J. – Pérez Martín, I. (eds.), *The Transmission of Byzantine Texts between Textual Criticism and Quellenforschung*, Turnhout, 353–372.
- Featherstone–Gruskova–Kresten 2005: Featherstone, J.M – Gruskova, J. – Kresten, O., Studien zu den Palimpsestenfragmenten des Sogenannten “Zeremonienbuchs”. I. Prolegomena, *Byzantinische Zeitschrift* 98, 423–430.
- Flusin–Cheynet 2003: Flusin, B. – Cheynet, J.-Cl., *Jean Skylitzès. Empereurs de Constantinople. Réalités byzantines* 8, Paris.
- Hämmig 2013: Hämmig, A.E., *Nŭ ἐφελευστικόν. Untersuchung zur Vorbereitung und Herkunft des beweglichen Nasals im Griechischen*, Hamburg.
- Hirsch 1876: Hirsch, F., *Byzantinische Studien*, Leipzig (reprint Amsterdam 1965).
- Kaldellis 1998: Kaldellis, A., *Genesios on the reigns of the emperors*, Canberra.
- Karlin–Hayter 1971: Karlin–Hayter, P., Études sur les deux histoires du règne de Michel III, *Byzantion* 41, 452–496.

- Kazhdan 1961: Kazhdan, A.P., Iz istorii vizantijskoj xronografii X v. 1. O sostave tak nazyvaemoj 'Xroniki prodolz'atelja Feofana', *Vizantijskij Vremennik* 19 (1961) 76–96.
- Kazhdan 1962: Kazhdan, A.P., Iz istorii vizantijskoj chronografii X v. 3. *Kniga Tsarej i Zbizneopisanie Vasilija*, *Vizantijskij Vremennik* 21, 95–117.
- Kiapidou 2010: Kiapidou E.-S., *Η Σύνοψη Ιστοριών του Ιωάννη Σκυλίτζη και οι πηγές της (811–1057): συμβολή στη βυζαντινή ιστοριογραφία κατά τον ΙΑ' αιώνα*, Athens.
- Kolovou 2010: Kolovou, Ph., Die griechischen Handschriften der Universitätsbibliothek Leipzig, in: Bravo García, A. – Pérez Martín, I., with the assistance of Signes Codoñer, J., *The Legacy of Bernard de Montfaucon: Three Hundred Years of Studies on Greek Handwriting*, Turnhout, 377–393.
- Ljubarskij 1987: Ljubarskij, J., Theophanes Continuatus und Genesios. Das Problem einer gemeinsamen Quelle, *Byzantinoslavica* 48, 12–27.
- Ljubarskij 1996: Ljubarskij, J. review of Signes 1995, *Byzantinische Zeitschrift* 90, 162–163.
- Magdalino 2013a: Magdalino, P., Constantine VII and the Historical Geography of Empire, in: Bazzaz, S. – Batsaki, Y. – Angelov, D. (eds.), *Imperial Geographies in Byzantine and Ottoman Space*, Washington, 23–42.
- Magdalino 2013b: Magdalino, P., Knowledge in Authority and Authorised History: The Imperial Intellectual Programme of Leo VI and Constantine VII, in: Armstrong, P. (ed.), *Authority in Byzantium*, Ashgate, 187–209.
- Mango 1977: Mango, C., The liquidation of Iconoclasm and the Patriarch Photios, in: Bryer, A. – Herrin, J. (eds.), *Iconoclasm*, Birmingham, 133–140.
- Mango 2013: Mango, C., Introduction, in: Ševčenko 2013, 3*–13*.
- Mango–Ševčenko 1962: Mango, C. – Ševčenko, I., Additional Note on the Tombs and Obits of the Byzantine Emperors, *DOP* 16, 61–63.
- Markopoulos 1986: Markopoulos, A., Quelques remarques sur la famille des Genesioi aux IXe–Xe siècles, *Zbornik radova vizantološkog instituta* 24–25, 103–108.
- Markopoulos 2003: Markopoulos, A., Byzantine history writing at the end of the first millenium, in: Magdalino, P. (ed.), *Byzantium in the year 1000*, Leiden-Boston, 183–197.
- Markopoulos 2009a: Markopoulos, A., Genesios: a study, in: Kotzabassi, S. – Mavromatis, G. (eds.), *Realia Byantina*, Berlin-New York, 137–150.
- Markopoulos 2009b: Markopoulos, A., From narrative historiography to historical biography. New trends in Byzantine historical writing in the 10th–11th centuries, *Byzantinische Zeitschrift* 102, 697–715.
- Markopoulos 2013: Markopoulos, A., Οι μεταμορφώσεις της “μυθολογίας” του Βασιλείου Α', in: Leontaritou, V. A. – Bourdara, K. A. – Papagianni (eds.), *ANTECESSOR. Festschrift für Spyros N. Troianos zum 80. Geburtstag*, Athens, 945–970.

- Noret 2014: Noret, J., L'accentuation byzantine: en quoi et pourquoi elle diffère de l'accentuation "savante" actuelle, parfois absurde, in Hinterberger, M. (ed.), *The language of Byzantine learned literature. Byzantios: Studies in Byzantine History and Civilization* 9, Turnhout, 96–146.
- Odorico 2014: Odorico, P., Dans le cahier des chroniqueurs. Le cas d'Eustathe d'Antioche, in: Signes Codoñer, J. – Pérez Martín, I. (eds.), *Textual Transmission in Byzantium: between Textual Criticism and Quellenforschung*, Turnhout, 373–389.
- Papadopoulos-Kerameus 1899a: Papadopoulos-Kerameus, A., Ψευδονικήτας ὁ Παφλαγῶν καὶ ὁ νόθος βίος τοῦ πατριάρχου Ἰγνατίου, *Βizantijskij Vremennik* 9, 13–38.
- Papadopoulos-Kerameus 1899b: Papadopoulos-Kerameus, A., Ἡ ψευδωλυμία καὶ νοθεία τοῦ φερομένου ἐπ' ὀνόματι Νικήτα Παφλαγόνος βίου τοῦ πατριάρχου Ἰγνατίου, Trieste.
- Serventi 2001: Serventi, St., Il Vat. Gr. 167, Testimone della Continuatio Theophanis e i marginalia di un anonimo lettore bizantino, *Aevum* 75, 267–302.
- Ševčenko 1978: Ševčenko, I., Storia Letteraria. *La civiltà bizantina dal IX all' XI secolo. Università degli Studi di Bari, Centro di Studi Bizantini, Corsi di Studi – II*, 1977, Bari, 91–127. Reprint: *La Biographie de l'empereur Basile Ier. Harvard Ukrainian Research Institute. Offprint Series* no. 26. Cambridge (Massachusetts), 1978.
- Ševčenko 1992: Ševčenko, I., Re-reading Constantine Porphyrogenitus. in: Shepard, J. – Franklin, S., (eds.), *Byzantine Diplomacy: Papers from the Twenty-fourth Spring Symposium of Byzantine Studies, Cambridge, March 1990*, Aldershot, 167–195.
- Ševčenko 1998: Ševčenko, I., The Title of and Preface to Theophanes Continuatus. in: Lucà, S. – Perria, L.: Ὁπώρα. *Studi in onore di Mgr Paul Canart per il LXX compleanno. Bollettino della Badia Greca di Grottaferrata*, N.S. 52, 77–93
- Ševčenko 2013: Ševčenko, I., *Chronographiae quae Theophanis Continuati nomine fertur liber quo vita Basilii imperatoris amplectitur (Corpus Fontium Historiae Byzantinae 42)*, Berlin.
- Signes 1989: Signes Codoñer, J., Algunas consideraciones sobre la autoría del Theophanes Continuatus, *Erytheia* 10, 17–28.
- Signes 1994: Signes Codoñer, J., Constantino Porfirogéneto y la fuente común de Genesio y Theophanes Continuatus I–IV, *Byzantinische Zeitschrift* 86/87, 319–341.
- Signes 1995: Signes Codoñer, J., *El periodo del segundo iconoclasmo en Theophanes Continuatus*, Amsterdam.
- Signes 2013: Signes Codoñer, J., Dead or alive? Manuel the Armenian's (after)life after 838, in: Gastgeber, Ch. – Messis, Ch. – Muresan D.I. – Ronconi, F. (eds.), *Pour l'amour de Byzance. Hommage à Paolo Odorico (Eastern and Central European Studies 3)*, Frankfurt am Main, 231–242.

- Signes 2014: Signes Codoñer, J., *The Emperor Theophilos and the East (829-842). Court and Frontier in Byzantium during the last phase of Iconoclasm* (Birmingham Byzantine and Ottoman Studies 13), Aldershot.
- Signes 2015: Signes Codoñer, J., Theophanes at the time of Leo VI, in: *Travaux et Mémoires* 19.
- Speck 1988: Speck, P., *Das geteilte Dossier. Ποικίλα Βυζαντινά* 9, Bonn.
- Varona Codeso 2010: Varona Codeso, P., *Miguel III (842–867): Construcción histórica y literaria de un reinado. Nueva Roma* 33, Madrid.
- Wahlgren 2006: Wahlgren, St., *Symeonis Magistri et Logothetae chronicon* (*Corpus Fontium Historiae Byzantinae* 44.1), Berlin.
- Wander 2012: Wander, St., *The Joshua Roll*, Wiesbaden.

Tabula notarum in apparatibus adhibitarum

Codices

- V *Vaticanus graecus* 167 (XI s.)
 V² secunda manus (XI s.)
 adnotator B (XII s.)
B *Barberinianus* 232 (ca a. 1628)

Editiones Theophanis Continuati

- Bekk Bekker, I., *Theophanes continuatus* (Libri I-IV), *Joannes Cameniata, Symeon Magister, Georgius Monachus*, Bonn 1838, pp. 3-211
Comb Combéfis, F., *Historiae Byzantinae scriptores post Theophanem*, Paris 1685
edd Editiones Combéfis-Bekker
Sev Ševčenko 1998
ThCont *Theophanes Continuatus* (Liber VI), ed. Bekker, pp. 353-481
VBas *Vita Basilii* (=ThCont, Liber V) ed. Ševčenko 2013

Coniecturae nondum editae

- Boor de Boor
Kamb Kambylis

Byzantini fontes et fontes paralleli

- Acta Davidis *Acta Graeca Davidis, Symeonis et Georgii*, ed. Van den Gheyn, *Analecta Bollandiana* 18 (1899)
Acta Mart Amor *Acta Martyrum Amoriensum*, versiones A-Z, ed. Vasilevsky - Nikitin
Anonymus Professor Anonymus Professor, *Epistulae*, ed. Markopoulos
Arethas Opera Minora *Arethas, Opera Minora*, ed. Westerink
Cedrenus *Georgius Cedrenus, Compendium historiarum*, ed. Bekker

Chron Min	<i>Chronica Minora</i> , ed. Schreiner
Const Porph Tres	Constantinus Porphyrogenitus, <i>Three treatises on imperial military expeditions</i> , ed. Haldon
DAI	Constantinus Porphyrogenitus, <i>De Administrando Imperio</i> , ed. Moravcsik-Jenkins
De Cer	Constantinus Porphyrogenitus, <i>De Cerimoniis Aulae Byzantinae</i> , ed. Reiske
De Theophili absolutione	<i>De Theophili absolutione</i> , ed. Regel, <i>Analecta</i> 1891
De Teophili benefactis	<i>De Teophili benefactis</i> , ed. Regel, <i>Analecta</i> 1891
Encomium Theodori	Theophanes Caesariensis, <i>Praise of Theodore Graptus</i> , ed. Featherstone, <i>Analecta Bollandiana</i> 98 (1980)
Epist ad Ludovicum	<i>Epistula ad Ludovicum Pium</i> , ed. Werminghoff
Epist ad Theophilum	<i>Epistula ad Theophilum</i> , ed. Munitiz - Chrysostomides
Gen	Genesius, <i>Regum libri</i> , ed. Lesmüller-Wiener
GeorgMon	Georgius Monachus, <i>Chronica</i> , ed. Boor-Wirth
GeorgCont (Istrin)	<i>Georgius Monachus Continuatus</i> , ed. Istrin
Leo Sapiens Tactica	Leo VI Sapiens, <i>Tactica</i> , ed. Dennis
Log A	Symeon Magister et Logotheta, <i>Chronicon</i> , Versio A, ed. Wahlgren
Nicephorus Refutatio	Nicephorus I patriarcha, <i>Refutatio et eversio</i> , ed. Featherstone
PatriaConst	<i>Patria Constantinoupoleos</i> , ed. Preger
Petrus Historia	Petrus Monachus, <i>Historia utilis et refutatio Manichaeorum</i> , ed. Papachrysanthou, <i>Travaux et Mémoires</i> 4 (1970)
Photius Contra Man.	Photius, <i>Contra Manichaeos</i> , ed. Wolska-Conus, <i>Travaux et Mémoires</i> 4 (1970)
Photius Bibl	Photius, <i>Bibliotheca</i> , ed. Henry
Photius Epist	Photius, <i>Epistulae</i> , ed. Laourdas-Westerink
Photius Homiliae	Photius, <i>Homiliae</i> , ed. Laourdas
Photius Lexicon	Photius, <i>Lexicon</i> , ed. Theodoridis
PsKod	Ps-Kodinus, <i>De officiis</i> , ed. Verpauw
PsSym	Ps-Symeon, <i>Chronica</i> , ed. Bekker (lectiones in Par. gr. 1712 secundum fol. citamus)
Scrip Inc	<i>Scriptor Incertus de Leone Armenio</i> , ed. Bekker, emendationes in Browning, <i>Byz</i> 35 (1965)
Scyl	Ioannes Scylitzes, <i>Synopsis historiarum</i> , ed. Thurn (mss. in app. critico citamus)
Suda	Suda, <i>Lexicon</i> , ed. Adler
Synaxarium Const	Synaxarium Constantinopolitanum, ed. Delehay

Theod Stud Epist	Theodorus Studita, <i>Epistulae</i> , ed. Fatouros
Theoph	Theophanes, <i>Chronographia</i> , ed. de Boor
Vita Euthymii	Methodius, <i>Vita Euthymii</i> , ed. Gouillard, <i>Travaux et Mémoires</i> 10 (1987)
Vita Ignatii	Nicetas David Paphlagon, <i>Vita Ignatii</i> , ed. Smithies
Vita Ioannicii	Petrus Monachus, <i>Vita Ioannicii</i> , ed. Van den Gheyn, <i>AASS</i> Nov. II.1
Vita Methodii	<i>Vita Methodii</i> , PGM 100, cols. 1243-1262
Vita Michaelis Sync	<i>Vita Michaelis Syncelli</i> , ed. Cunningham
Vita Nicephori	Ignatius Diaconus, <i>Vita Nicephori</i> , ed. de Boor
Vita Tarasii	Ignatius Diaconus, <i>Vita Tarasii</i> , ed. Efthymiadis
Vita Theodoraе	<i>Vita Theodoraе</i> , ed. Markopoulos, <i>Symmeikta</i> 5 (1983)
Vita Theodori Grapti	<i>Vita Theodori Grapti</i> , PGM 116, cols. 653-684
Zonaras	Ioannes Zonaras, <i>Epitome historiarum</i> , ed. Din-dorf

- Χρονογραφία συγγραφεῖσα ἐκ προστάξ<εως Κω>νσ<ταντίνου> τοῦ
 φιλοχρίστου καὶ πορφυρογεννήτου δεσ<πότου ἡμῶν, υἱοῦ> Λέοντος τοῦ
 σοφωτάτου δεσπότη καὶ <αἰοδίου ἡμῶν βα>σιλέως, ἀρχομένη ἔνθεν
 κατέληξεν <ὁ κατὰ γένος προ>σῆκ<ων> τῷ βασιλεῖ μακαρί<τη>ς
 5 Θεοφάνης <ὁ> τῆς <Σιγριανῆς>, ἥγουν ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος τοῦ ἐξ
 Ἀρμεν<ίας>· ἥς <τάς τε> καθ' ἕκαστα ὑποθέσεις ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς
 Κων<στ>αντ<ίνος> φιλοπόνως συνέλεξε καὶ εὐσυνόπτως ἐξέθετο <πρὸς
 εὐκρι>νῇ τοῖς μετέπειτα δῆλωσιν

Tit. gen. 1 Χρονογραφία συγγραφεῖσα ἐκ προστάξ<εως Κω>νσ<ταντίνου> Boor Sev surrentibus scripsimus : post προστάξ cernitur in V rasura 28 mm. in qua litterae νσ sub luce ultravioacea parent et linea superna nomen proprium indicat : Χρονογραφία – προστάγματος <...> rescripsit V² : Χρονογραφία – προστάγματος Κωνσ<αν<τίνου> B : Χρονογραφία – προστάγματος Κωνσταντίνου edd : Χρονογραφία – προστάγματος **** Hase 2 δεσ<πότου ἡμῶν, υἱοῦ> Sev qui sigma ante rasuram dubitavit : post litteras δεσ rasura 24 mm. V : Δεσπότη υἱοῦ <...> (spatium ad 4 litteras) B : Δεσπότη, υἱοῦ edd : δεσ*** Hase : Δεσ<πότου υἱοῦ> Boor, sed rasurae mensura in V amplius quid apparet 3 <αἰο>δι<μου ἡμῶν βα>σιλ<έως> Sev (cf. αἰοδίου in VBas tit.3 in App. Font. ad loc.) : ante litteras σιλ<έως> [abbrev. σιλ<ε>] in V rasura 33 mm. in qua litteras δι non comperimus : καὶ αὐτοκράτορος <...> B (spatium ad 8 litteras, linea subter tracta) edd : καὶ αὐτ*** Hase : <... βα>σιλ<έως> Boor qui αἰωνίου vel αἰοδίου ad rasuram supplendam coniecit 3 ἀρχομένου Comb 3 ἔνθεν V : ὅπου B edd Hase 4 κατέληξεν Boor Sev : κατέλη<...>εν (rasura 2 mm.) V : κατέληξε B : ἔληξε edd Hase, sed cf. κατὰληξιν et κατέληγε infra I. Prooem. 26 et 30 4 <ὁ κατὰ γένος προ>σῆκ<ων> Boor Sev (qui sigma ante litteras ἦκ dubitavit) secuti scripsimus, cf. infra I. Prooem. 26–27: ante litteras σηκ rasura 32 mm. V : Θεοφάνης <...> B (spatium ad 4 litteras) edd : Θεοφάνης***ηκ ** Hase 5 μακαρ<ί>της Θεοφάνης <ὁ> τῆς <Σιγριανῆς>] Boor in app. (cf. infra I. Prooem. 25 et Vitam Theophanis Confessoris, ed. de Boor in Theoph. II.3.3) Sev : μακαρί<...>ς (rasura 3 mm.) Θεοφάνης (super hoc nomen linea tracta) τῆς <...> (rasura 18 mm.) V : Μιχαήλ υἱοῦ Θεοφίλου τοῦ κουροπαλάτου (sic) B (cf. infra I. Prooem. 28–29) : Μιχαήλ υἱοῦ Θεοφίλου τοῦ κουροπαλάτου edd Hase 6 τοῦ ἐξ Ἀρμεν<ίας> Boor Sev secuti scripsimus, cf. infra notam in marg. V ad I. titulum τοῦ ἐξ Ἀρμενίας : τοῦ ἐξ Ἀρμεν<...> (rasura 5 mm) V : τοῦ Ἀρμενίου B edd 6 ἥς <τάς τε> καθ' ἕκαστα coniecturae Kamb secuti scripsimus : ἥς <...> (rasura 5 mm.) καθ' ἕκαστα V : <...> (spatium ad 5 litteras) B : ἥς <τάς> καθ' ἕκαστα Boor Sev : <...> (9 puncta) Τῶν δὲ Comb : *** τὰ δὲ καθ' ἕκαστα Hase qui postea asteriscos expunxit, nihil deesse adfirmans maleque Comb lacunam indicavisse : Τῶν δὲ καθ' ἕκαστα τὰς Bekk qui ad Hase retulit 7 Κων<στ>αντ<ίνος> Sev (qui tamen litteras αντ dubitavit) : post litteras Κων in V rasura 20 mm. in qua litterae αντ sub luce ultravioacea parent : Κωνσταντίνος B edd Hase : Κων<σταντίνος> Boor 8 ἐξέθετο <πρὸς εὐκρι>νῇ Sev qui vestigia litterarum υ et ρ sub luce ultravioacea vidit in rasura post ἐξέθετο (19 mm.) in V atque εὐκρινῆς apud GeorgMon (1.8) adtulit : ἐξέθ<το> <...>νῇ (ante litteras νῇ spatium ad 6/7 litteras) B : ἐξέθετο <...> (8 puncta) ἴνα Comb : ἐξέθετο* νῇ Hase : ἐξέθετο, νῇ (sic) Bekk : ἐξέθετο <εἰς τρα>νῇ Boor, sed litteram ε ante rasuram in V videri non potest et illius mensura plures litteras indicat 8 τοῖς coni. Kamb, cf. I. Prooem. 34–35 τοῖς ... ζῶσι διαβιβάζομεν et VBas 1.15 τοῖς μετέπειτα : τῶν V : τῆς Comb 8 δῆλωσιν V Boor Sev : in V finis versus et tituli generalis : δῆλα γιν<...> B edd Hase

Chronicle Written by Order of Constantine,
Our Christ-Loving Lord Born in the Purple, Son of
Our Most Wise Lord and Glorious Emperor Leo, Beginning Where
the Blessed Theophanes of Sigriane, Related by Race to the Emperor, Left off,
that is from the Reign of Leo the Armenian; of Which
This Same Emperor Constantine Laboriously Compiled and Adeptly Set
Forth the Various Subjects in Detail for
Clear Demonstration to Later Generations

<Π>ερί τῆς βασιλείας Λ<έοντ>ος τοῦ ἐξ <Ἀρμενίας>. Λόγος α΄

- Prooem.** Καὶ τοῦτο πάντως τῶν σῶν, ὦ φιλοσοφώτατε βασιλεῦ, καλῶν, μετὰ γε πολλῶν ἄλλων τε καὶ μεγάλων, τὸ τὰ τῷ χρόνῳ παραρρυνέντα καὶ κεχωρηκότα πρὸς τὸ μὴ ὄν πρὸς παλινζῶϊαν αὐθις καὶ | παλιγ- B 4
γενεσίαν ἀναγαγεῖν, καὶ τοῦ τῆς ἱστορίας ἐπιμεληθῆναι καλοῦ, ἀλλὰ μὴ
5 τοῖς πρὸ σοῦ τὴν βασιλικὴν ἐπιμελημένοις ἀμιλληθῆναι ἀρχήν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ
ζῆλον ἐζηλωκότες τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς ἀζήλωτον ὑπεξηρήσθωσαν τοῦ λόγου,
οἵτινες διενηνοχένοι ἐσπουδάκασιν τῶν πολλῶν κατ' οὐδέν, ὅτι μὴ λόγου
σύντροφοι ἀλλ' ἀγροικίας γεγόνασιν κατεντρύφημα. τί γὰρ τοιοῦτον
ἐξασκεῖν αὐτοκράτορα δεῖ, ὃ μὴ <τῇ> πολιτείᾳ ἐπιφέρει τὴν ὄνησιν μετὰ
10 λόγου γινόμενον, δέον ἐπιμελεῖσθαι ἀνδρῶν καὶ τῆς λογικῆς ὅτι μάλιστα
ἐπιστήμης, ἐξ ὧν τὸ κράτος βασιλείας, ὥς ἂν μὴ λάθοιεν καταπρανοῦς
φερόμενοι ἀλογωθέντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ κινδυνεύσῃ τοῦτο, ᾧ πάντων
διαφέρομεν, ἀφανίᾳ παραδοθέν;
- Ἄλλ' ὅσα μὲν σοι πεπόνηται, πραότατε βασιλεῦ, περὶ τὴν λογικὴν καὶ
15 τὴν τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐπιμέλειαν, ἵνα τᾶλλα παρῶ, ἱστορήσουσι μὲν οἱ σοφοί,
ὅτι γε δὴ καὶ σοί, μᾶλλον δὲ δὴ σοί σοφῶς, ὅτι γε καὶ σοφοί· ἱστορεῖς δὲ
αὐτός, χεῖρα μόνον λαβὼν ἡμᾶς διακονουμένην σοι, ὅσα τοῖς πρὸ σοῦ
βεβίωται, κἄν ἀποχρῶντως ἔχωσι τὸ φαῦλον καὶ οὐ λαμπρόν, ἐπεὶ κάκ

I. tit. <Π>ερί τῆς βασιλείας Λ<έοντ>ος τοῦ ἐξ <Ἀρμενίας>. Λόγος α΄ secundum V ante Prooemium apposuimus: <.ερί τῆς βασιλείας Λ<...>ος (rasura 7 mm.) τοῦ ἐξ <...> (rasura 19 mm) Λόγος α΄ V : Περί τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος <...> (4 puncta) B : om. Comb : **** τῆς βασιλείας ***** Hase qui hic titulum generalem operis desinere putavit : <Π>ερί τῆς βασιλείας Λ<έοντ>ος <τοῦ ἐξ Ἀρμενίας. Λόγος> α΄ Boor Sev **I. Prooem.** 3 παλιγενεσίαν V 5 σοῦ : τοῦ B edd 5 ἀμελληθῆναι B : ἀμεληθῆναι edd, ideo τοὺς ... ἐπιμελημένους (In. 4–5) proposuit Bekk in app. 5 οἱ μὲν Sev 7 οἵτινες Bekk in app. Boor Sev : τινὲς V Comb : oi-add. V² 8 κατ' ἐντρύφημα V 8 τί γὰρ edd : τι γὰρ V B Sev qui ad e.g. VBas 23.3 τοιοῦτόν τι rettulit, necnon τί γὰρ recepit, aut τοιγὰρ sive τοιγὰρ<τοι> proposuit in app. 9 μὴ <τῇ> scripsimus : τῇ (pro μὴ) dubitanter Sev, qui πολιτεία quasi semper cum articulo usurpari notavit 9 πολιτεία V Boor Sev : spatium ad 10 litteras vacat in B : om. edd, sed κοινήν ad lacunam supplendam proposuit Bekk in app. 9 ἐπιφέρει V : ἐπισφέρει Boor in app. 10 μεταλόγου V 10 γινόμενων, ut vid. B² : -ον, ut vid. B : γινόμενων edd, sed γινόμενον Bekk in app. : γινόμενῃ Sev in app., an recte? 11 λάθοι ἐν V 11 καταπρανοῦς V 13 ἀφανίᾳ V B² in marg. Sev : ἀφωνίᾳ B edd : ἀφανείᾳ Boor 14 ὅσα V B² in marg. : B ὅσω : ὅσον edd 15 παρῶ, ἱστορήσουσι V : <...> (spatium ad 2 litteras) παραθεωρήσουσι B : θεωρήσουσι edd 16 γε om. edd 16 σοί V : σ<οφ>οί Sev 16 σοί Boor : σύ V edd Sev 16 σοφῶς nos : σαφῶς V B edd Boor Sev Kamb 16 ὅτι γε καὶ σοφοί (sic) V : post ὅτι γε καὶ spatium ad 5 litteras vacat in B ante litteras φοί : ὅτι γε καὶ ἐκεῖνοι σοφοί edd : haec utpote prompta e versu superiore, ubi ὅτι γε δὴ καὶ σ<οφ>οί proposuit, seclisit Sev 17 μόνος B : μόνως edd 17 ἡμᾶς : ἡμῶν edd 18 κάκ : καὶ B edd

Concerning the Reign of Leo the Armenian. Book 1.

<PROEM> This, also, O most wise Emperor, is most certainly one of your good deeds, together with others many and great: the recalling to life and re-birth of things lost in the current of time which have passed into non-existence and the cultivating of the virtue of History, whilst coming into no contention with those who held the imperial office before you. For let these latter, who were fired with zeal unsuited to good men, be excluded from our speech: they who strove in no wise to distinguish themselves from the many, having become not companions of learning but the plaything of boorishness. For what ought a sovereign practise except that which brings benefit to the State through learning, given that care ought to be taken for men and especially for literary knowledge, whence the power of empire is derived, lest men should pass unnoticed behaving like senseless creatures on all fours, and this thing, whereby we are distinguished from all else, risk falling into oblivion?

Now, all that has been achieved by you, O most mild Emperor, in your solicitude for literature and for men – not to speak of other things – will be recounted by wise men, precisely because this was done by you, or rather, was done by you wisely, and because these others are also wise. But you yourself, using us simply as an assisting hand, recount all that occurred in the lives of those who preceded you, even though they were for the most part mean and in no wise brilliant, since even from these things is it possible for serious men

- τούτων ἔνεστι θηρᾶσαι τοῖς σπουδαίοις τὰ χρήσιμα. ἀμέλει τοιγαροῦν
 20 πάσης ἀσχολίας καὶ ἀργίας τὴν περὶ λόγους προτετιμηκῶς σπουδὴν, ἅτε
 δὴ τούτου μάλιστα τοῖς ὑπηκόοις | φιλομαθοῦσί τε καὶ φιλιστοροῦσιν f.1v
 ζῆλον καὶ ἀρετὴν ἐγγεννῶντος, τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῶν γεγραμμένων σποράδην
 τισὶ τὰ δὲ ἐκ τῶν ἀκοῇ | παραδεδομένων συνηθροικῶς, ὥσπερ τι κοινὸν B 5
 διδασκαλεῖον προθεῖναι πᾶσιν ἐβουλεύσω καλῶς, ἐκείνην ταύτης ἀρχὴν
 25 εἶναι νομίσας τῆς ἱστορίας ἀρίστην, τὴν τῷ μακαρίτῃ Θεοφάνει γενομένην
 κατάληξιν· ὃν κατὰ συγγένειαν καὶ ἀγγιστεῖαν τὸ εἶναι υἱωνὸς λαχὼν
 ἀποσεμνύνεις τε ἐκ τῶν σῶν ἱκανῶς καὶ ἀντιλαμβάνεις αὐτῆς παρ’ αὐτοῦ
 τινὰ εὐκλειαν. ἐκείνος μὲν οὖν εἰς τὴν τοῦ κουροπαλάτου Μιχαὴλ βα-
 30 σιλείαν καὶ ἦτταν τὴν ἐκ τῶν Βουλγάρων συμβᾶσαν αὐτῷ καταπρο-
 δοθέντος ὑπὸ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ κατέληγε, τῆς τοῦ Λέοντος μόνον μνησθεὶς
 ἀναρρήσεως, μηδὲν μήθ’ ὅθεν ἦν μήθ’ ὅπως ἐτράφη δῆλον τοῖς ἀναγινώ-
 σκουσι πεποιηκῶς. ἡμεῖς δὲ ὥσπερ εἰ τῇ κεφαλῇ τὰ ἄλλα μέρη συνάπ-
 35 ττοντες, αὐτὴν τε τὴν ἱστορίαν ὁλόσωμον ἀλλ’ οὐχ ἡμιτελῇ ἀποδείκνυμεν,
 καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἐξῆς καὶ κάτω χρόνον τοῖς μὴ ῥαθυμότερον ζῶσι διαβι-
 βάζομεν, κέρδος ἀλλ’ οὐ ζημίαν αὐτοῖς ποριζόμενοι, εἴγε δὴ καλὸν καὶ
 πρὸς ἀσφάλειαν εὖοδον τῶν ἀγαθῶν τε καὶ μὴ τὸν βίον διαγινώσκειν.
 1. Πατρὶς μὲν οὖν τοῦ δηλωθέντος Λέοντος Ἀρμενία, γένος δὲ τὸ μὲν ἐξ B 6
 Ἀσσυρίων τὸ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν Ἀρμενίων, οἱ καὶ τοὺς ἰδίους ἐξ ἀνοσίου
 γνῶμης σφαγῇ μαιφόνῳ παραδόντες γεννήτορας ὑπερορίας κατεδι-
 κάστησαν, κάκεισε δὴ τὸν πένητα βίον, ἅτε δὴ καὶ φυγάδες, διαθλοῦντες
 5 τὸν εἰρημένον θῆρα ἀπέτεκον. ἄρτι γοῦν εἰς ἐφήβους ὁ Λέων ἐτάττετο, καὶ
 κώμην Πίδραν κατονομαζομένην, ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα τελοῦσαν τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν,

Cap. 1: Vita Nicephori 162.23–30; GeorgMon 780.13–781.21; Gen 6.8–7.12; 21.39–43 |
 Scyl 9.6–8; PsSym 603.6–9

19 θηρᾶσαι V 19 τοιγαροῦν secludendum fortasse putavit Sev 20 λόγους sic V Sev :
 λόγου B edd Boor, sed cf. supra I. Prooem. 15 περὶ τὴν ... ἐπιμέλειαν 20 προτετιμηκῶς V
 B² in marg. Bekk Boor Sev : προτετιμηκας B Comb, sed proposuit προτετιμηκῶς in marg.
 21 φιλομαθεῖ edd 23 σποράδην τισὶ om. edd 24 προθῆναι V 24 ταύτην Comb, sed
 ταύτης eiusdem Comm 24 ἀρχὴν V 25 Θεοφάνη V 26 post κατάληξιν verba πάντων
 τῶν βασιλέων ἕως τοῦ νυνὶ καιροῦ καὶ τῆς βασιλείας σου τὰ πεπραγμένα διὰ λόγου, συλ-
 λαβεῖν· εἰ καὶ τοῦ αἰοδίου σου πάπου τοῦ ἐν βασιλεῦσι εὐκλεοῦς Βασιλείου τὰ παρὰ σοῦ
 ἱστορούμενα, καὶ μετὰ πάσης σαφηνείας καὶ λόγου εὐκοσμίας κατὰ τὸ τῶν γενομένων ἀληθές
 καὶ εἰληκρινές εἰς τὸ φανερόν παρὰ τῆς σῆς πολυμαθεστάτης εἰδήσεως ἐξαγορευθέντα, περιτ-
 τὸν ἂν εἴη οὐδοτιοῦν διηγῆσασθαι add. Goar apud Comb 26 τὸ : τῷ Comb in marg.
 27 τὲ V 28 τινὰ V 28 κοροπαλάτου V 30 κατὰ προδοθέντος V : καταπροδοθέντι
 Bekk in app. 30 κατέληξε Sev in app. 32 ὥσπερ Sev : ὡς περὶ V B : ὥσπερ edd Boor
 35 ποριζόμενοι V 36 διαγινώσκειν : add. Περί τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος, Λόγος α΄ edd, cf.
 supra I. tit. 1.1 Περί Λέοντος βασιλέως τοῦ ἐξ Ἀρμενίας V maiusc. in marg. 6 κώμη
 Πίδρα θέμα Ἀνατολικῶν V maiusc. in marg.

to cull that which is profitable. For this reason you have preferred literary study to all other occupation or leisure, as this above all brings forth zeal and virtue in the hearts of your subjects fond of learning and History. You have gathered some things from scattered sources written by certain men, and others from reports transmitted orally, with the noble intention of setting forth a sort of common instruction for all; and you deemed as the best beginning of this history the closing point in the work of the blessed Theophanes, whose grandchild you are by consanguinity and kinship, honouring him fittingly through your works and in turn receiving from him a certain renown. Theophanes leaves off with the reign of Michael Curopalates and the defeat undergone by him at the hands of the Bulgars when he was betrayed by his own men. He merely mentions the proclamation of Leo, telling his readers nothing of where he was from or how he was brought up. We, however, as if attaching the other members to the head, set forth this history in full body, not half-finished; and we pass this on to subsequent and later generations for those who do not live in indifference, affording them no harm but only gain, if indeed it be good and a viaticum to security to distinguish the lives of men who are noble from those who are not.

1. The homeland of the Leo in question was Armenia, though his family were partly from Assyria and partly from Armenia itself. With impious intent they had delivered their own parents to a murderous death and were therefore condemned to banishment; and living a poor life there in drudgery as refugees they gave birth to the beast just mentioned. Now scarcely had Leo taken his place amongst youths when he left his homeland to go to the village called Pidra, which belonged to the theme of the Anatolics. There, reaching the age

- τῆς πατρίδος ἀλλάσσεται· ἔνθα δὴ καὶ ἀνδρὸς ἡλικίαν δεξάμενος, τοῖς
μαχιμωτάτοις καὶ φονικωτάτοις καταριθμούμενος δόξης εὐμοίρησεν ἐπὶ
γενναιότητι καὶ χειρὸς κραταιότητι. Νικηφόρος τότε τὰς τῆς βασιλείας
10 ἴθυνεν ἡνίας, ὁ τρόπαιον ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ γενόμενος, καὶ μονοστράτηγον
τὸν Βαρδάνιον, ᾧ Τοῦρκος ἐπὶ κλην, τῶν πέντε θεμάτων τῶν κατὰ τὴν
ἀνατολὴν τὴν ἐφορείαν καὶ πρόνοιαν διοικούμενον διὰ τε τὴν ἐν πολέμοις
τόλμαν καὶ τὰς ἄλλας ἐπανθούσας αὐτῷ ἀρετὰς ἐξαπέστειλεν· ὃς ἅτε δὴ
15 τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἀγαπῶν κατακυριεύειν καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν ἐκάστοτε ὀνειρο- f. 2
πολῶν, τοῦτόν τε, περὶ οὗ ὁ λόγος, τὸν Λέοντα καταπληκτικὸν βλέποντα
καὶ γενναῖον κατάστημα ἔχοντα | καὶ ἄλλως ἀστεῖον ἐν ταῖς ὁμιλίαις B 7
δοκοῦντα τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ δορυφόροις ἐγκαταλέγει καὶ διακόνους, καὶ πρό γε
τούτου ἢ μετὰ τοῦτον μικρὸν Μιχαήλ τε τὸν τραυλὸν καὶ Θωμᾶν τὸν
ἀπὸ λίμνης Γαζουροῦ, ταπεινοὺς πάντας καὶ ἀζήλους ὄντας καὶ ἀρτίως
20 εἰς γνῶσιν ἀγομένους τοῖς τὰς πολεμικὰς ἐγκεχειρισμένοις ἀρχάς.
2. Ἐκρέμαντο γοῦν οὗτοι τοῦ Βαρδανίου καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ τὰς κοσμικὰς
ἐλπίδας ἐσάλευον. καὶ οὗτος τῆς βασιλείας ὧν ἑραστής ἀνδρὶ τινι μο-
νάζοντι κατὰ τὸν τοῦ Φιλομηλίου χώρον καὶ ἐνδιαιωμένῳ τὴν ταύτης
ἀνακοινοῦται γνώμην αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιθυμίαν, καὶ πρὸς θεὸν εὐχὰς
5 ἱκετηρίους παρεκάλει τοῦτον ἀναπέμψειν, τὰ αὐτοῦ διαβήματα κατευθυ-
νούσας καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν ἐπιβραβευούσας αὐτῷ. ἀλλ’ ἤκουσεν αὐθωρὸν
ὥς οὐ δέοι τοιούτων κατατολμᾶν πραγμάτων, “Βαρδάνιε, δι’ ὧν ἀπώλειά
τε περιουσίας καὶ ὁμμάτων ἐκκοπή καὶ δυστυχία ἄλλως οὐ καλῶς
σοι γενήσεται, ἀλλ’ εἴ τι ἔχοις ἐμοὶ πεισθῆναί σοι συμβουλεύοντι,
10 ἀποπῆδησον τούτων διὰ τραχέων ἀρχήν τινα μὴ δ’ ὅλως τῶν τοιούτων
σου πραγμάτων βάλλων εἰς νοῦν.” ἐπληρώθη κατηφεῖας καὶ ἀχλὺς ὁ
ἄνθρωπος τούτων τῶν λόγων ἀκηκῶς, καὶ τέλος ἐξῆι τοῦ δωματίου
πλήρης ἀθυμίας καὶ θλίψεως. ὥς δὲ τοὺς εἰρημένους ἄνδρας, Λέοντά τε καὶ
Μιχαήλ καὶ Θωμᾶν, τὸν ἵππον ἄγοντας ἀναβῆναι τούτῳ ὁ μοναχὸς ἐθε-
15 άσατο, τὸν στρατηγὸν ὑποστρέφειν παρεκελεύετο· καὶ ὃς καινῶν τινων
καὶ ξένων ἀκούσεσθαι προσδοκῶν θάπτον ἦ | λόγος ὑπέστρεφεν. ἀλλ’ B 8
ἐκεῖνον μὲν αὖθις ἐξελιπάρει μὴ πρὸς τὰ ἐλπιζόμενα αὐτομολῆσαι δεινὰ
καὶ τὴν ἀποῦσαν κακοπραγίαν τῆς παρούσης εὐδαιμονίας ἀλλάξασθαι·

1.10 : die 26 Iul. a. 811 Nicephorus in proelio a Bulgaris occisus est, cf. infra I.4

Cap. 2: Gen 6.2–7.36 | Scyl 9.89–10.44 || 5–6 cf. Ps 36.23

9 καὶ χειρὸς κραταιότητι om. edd 9 ὅτι ἐπὶ Νικηφόρου ἦν ὅτε Λέων οὗτος καὶ ὁ Βαρ-
δάνιος καὶ Μιχαήλ ὁ τραυλὸς καὶ Θωμᾶς ὁ ἐκ λίμνης Γαζουροῦ V maiusc. in marg. 13 ἐξαπέ-
σταλκεν B edd 13 ἅτε δὴ : post ε primo scripsit litteram ρ deinde in δ corr. V, ut vid.
14 κυριεύειν edd 16 κατάστημα Boor in app. e Gen 6.10 et Scyl 9.7 : ἀνάστημα V edd
18 τοῦτο edd 18 τὲ V 2.1 οὖν edd 3 καὶ secl. Boor 5 ἀναπέμπτειν edd 8 περι-
κοπή edd 9 ἔχεις edd 9 ἐμοὶ om. edd 10 βραχέων edd 15 ὃς : ὥς edd 15 τινῶν V

of manhood, he was counted as one of the most warlike and murderous men and enjoyed renown for bravery and might of hand. Nicephorus, who became a monument of defeat in Bulgaria, then held the reins of empire, and he dispatched Bardanios, known as the Turk, as sole general to oversee the administration and care of the five themes in the east on account of his daring in war and the other virtues whereby he excelled. And Bardanios, as he loved prevailing over enemies and each time cherished dreams of empire, enlisted this Leo about whom we now speak amongst his own guards and servants, for Leo was of striking appearance and noble demeanour and seemed also to have a certain wit in conversation; and before him, or shortly afterwards, he also enlisted Michael the Stammerer and Thomas from Lake Gazouros. All of them were of low and unenviable estate, having only just come to the attention of those charged with military office.

2. Thus, these men were the subordinates of Bardanios, anchoring their wordly hopes in him. And he, in his eagerness for empire, imparted his intent and desire for this same to a certain man living as a monk and dwelling in the region of Philomelion, bidding him send up supplicatory prayers to God to *order his steps* and grant him the empire. But he heard straightway that he ought not dare such things, ‘whereby, O Bardanios, you will wretchedly suffer loss of your wealth and the putting out of your eyes and other misfortune. But if you would heed my counsel, turn away from this at once, and in no wise set your mind on making a start of such things.’ When the man heard these words he was filled with dejection and clouded thoughts, and at last he went out of the room full of despondency and affliction. When the monk saw the aforementioned men, Leo and Michael and Thomas, bringing the horse for him to mount, he bade the general return; and the other, expecting to hear something new and unusual, returned more quickly than one can say. But again he implored him not to pass into action with the dangerous things he hoped for nor exchange his present good fortune for distant wretchedness. About the

- αὐτοὺς δὲ τούτους προφήτιδι γλώττη διεμαρτύρετο, βεβαιῶν ὥς
 20 “ὁ πρῶτος τούτων καὶ δεύτερος τῆς σοὶ πεποθημένης βασιλείας
 γενήσονται ἐγκρατεῖς, ἀλλ’ οὐ σύ,” ὁ τρίτος δὲ εὐφημίας μόνης καὶ
 ἀναρρήσεως μετασχῶν οὐδ’ ὅλως εὐδωθήσεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ κακῶς τὴν ψυ-
 χὴν ἀπορρήξει τὴν ἑαυτοῦ. τούτοις βαλλόμενος τὴν ψυχὴν ποικίλως f. 2v
 25 βλάσφημά τινα κατὰ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ ὕβρεις ἀπορριπτῶν, ὁμοῦ δὲ τούτοις
 τὰς ἐκείνου δι’ αὐτοὺς ἐξαγγέλλων προρρήσεις, καὶ γέλωτα πολὺν κα-
 ταχέων τῶν εἰρημένων.
3. Χαίρειν οὖν εἰπὼν τοῖς ἐκείνου λόγοις, τῇ ἑννεακαιδεκάτῃ τοῦ Ἰου-
 λίου μηνὸς τῆς ἑνδεκάτης ἰνδικτιῶνος κατὰ τοῦ βασιλεύοντος Νικη-
 φόρου χεῖρα συναθροίσας πολλὴν καὶ τὰ ὑφ’ ἑαυτὸν θέματα τέσσαρα τοῖς
 5 ἑαυτοῦ λόγοις ὑπαγαγών, τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν χωρὶς – οὐδὲ γὰρ ὑπεῖξαν
 αὐτῷ –, τῆς ἐπαναστάσεως ἄρχεται. ἐμίσει μὲν οὖν καὶ ἄλλως τότε τὸν
 Νικηφόρον τὸ ὑπήκοον τῷ βάρει πιεζόμενον τῶν δημοσίων τελῶν, ὃ
 γέγονέ πως καὶ ἀφορμὴ καὶ σύνδρομον ἐκείνῳ τῆς τοιαύτης ἐπανα-
 στάσεως· γέγονε δὲ τι καὶ ἕτερον αἴτιον. ὥς γὰρ κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ὁ
 10 Βαρδάνιος ἠνδραγάθησεν καὶ τῆς γενομένης πολλῆς λαφυραγωγίας
 δικαίᾳ προνοίᾳ πεποίηκε τὴν διανομὴν, κατάλληλα τοῖς ἀγωνισαμένοις B 9
 ἐν πολέμῳ ἀλλ’ οὐ | κατὰ πρόσωπον τὰ ἄθλα προθεῖς, ἔδοξε καὶ βασι-
 λείας τούτοις ἄξιος εἶναι μεταλαχεῖν. ὅθεν ἀναρρηθεὶς δημοσίᾳ φωνῇ βα-
 σιλεὺς καὶ πολλῶν ἄλλων ἀπολαύσεων τε καὶ γερῶν ἐκ τοῦ δήμου κατ-
 αξιωθεὶς, ὥς καὶ ναὸν ἐπ’ ὀνόματι αὐτοῦ ἀνεγείραι τε καὶ κατασκευάσαι,
 15 τὴν ἐπὶ Νικομήδειαν φέρουσιν ἦει ὁδόν. ἀλλ’ ἀποχρῶσαν καὶ ἐφάμιλλον
 ὁ βασιλεύων Νικηφόρος δύναμιν ἐκστρατεύσας καὶ περὶ τοῦ μέλλοντος
 δύσελπιν ποιήσας αὐτὸν τῷ πλήθει τῶν ἀντιπαραταττομένων, ἔπεισεν
 αὐτὸν συγγνώμην φθάσαντα ἐξαιτήσασθαι. ἄρτι μὲν γὰρ Λέων ἄρτι δὲ
 20 καὶ Μιχαὴλ ἀπορρυνέντες πρὸς βασιλέα, ἄθλον ὁ μὲν τὴν Φοιδεράτων καὶ
 βασιλικὸν οἶκον τοῦ Ζήνωνος καὶ τὸν Δαγισθέα, ὁ δὲ τὴν κόμητος
 <κόρτης> ἀρχὴν καὶ τὸν τοῦ Καριανοῦ οἶκον ἀπενεγκάμενοι, οὐκ ἀγαθὰ

3.1–3: die 19 Iul. a. 803 usurpatio Bardanis accidit

Cap. 3: Theoph 479.15–480.9, 480.15–24, 488.22–26; GeorgMon 77.7–25; Gen 7.37–8.55;
 Log A 205.26–37 | Scyl 10.44–11.61

25 ἀπορρίπτων edd 3.1 περὶ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν ὅτι οὐκ ἐκοινώνησε τῆς
 ἀνταρσίας V maiusc. in marg. 2 τῆς : τὴν V 3 θέματα a. corr. V, ut vid. (α seu σ in ras.)
 3 τέσσαρα θέματα edd 5 post ἄρχεται 4 seu 5 litterae in ras. V 5 καὶ ἄλλως om. edd
 7 τοιαύτης om. edd 8 τῶν : τὸν V 10 ἀγωνισαμένοις V : ἀγωνιζομένοις edd 12 εἶναι
 om. edd 12 φωνῇ V 13 ἀπολαύσεων τε V 14 κατεσκευάσαι V 17 ἀντιπαρατα-
 ττομένων V 19 Μιχαὴλ V 19 τὴν ἀρχὴν τῶν Φοιδεράτων Boor in app. e Scyl 30.56
 20 καὶ : κατὰ Boor in app. 20 τὸν Δαγισθέα V maiusc. in marg. 20 κόμητος V
 21 <κόρτης> Boor e Gen 8.54 et Scyl 11.60, cf. infra I.4. 33–34 κόμητα τῆς κόρτης 21 τὸν
 τοῦ Καριανοῦ V maiusc. in marg.

others, however, he bore witness with prophetic speech affirming that ‘The first of these and the second will gain possession of the empire you long for, but not you; and the third will attain merely acclamation and proclamation though he *shall in no wise prosper* but he shall depart from his soul wretchedly.’ Stricken in his soul by these words, Bardanios became red in the face and went off again on his way home, now uttering blasphemies and insults against the man, and now announcing to the others his predictions about them whilst pouring forth great laughter over what had been said.

3. Thus dismissing the words of the monk, on the nineteenth of July in the eleventh indiction, having gathered a great force against the reigning emperor Nicephorus and won over to his side four of the themes under his command – without the Armeniacs, who did not submit to him – he began the rebellion. The subjects of the empire then hated Nicephorus anyway on account of the weight of public taxes which bore down upon them, and this was a sort of pretext for him concurrent with the rebellion. But there was another reason. For when Bardanios had won victory over the Hagarenes and distributed the great spoils with just foresight, granting reward according to the deeds of those who had struggled in battle, not in equal shares, he was deemed worthy by these men to attain imperial office. Whereupon, once he had been acclaimed emperor by public voice and had been granted many other privileges and honours by the people, a church even being built and fitted out in his name, he set out upon the road to Nicomedia. But the reigning emperor Nicephorus raised a sufficient and equal force and, filling Bardanios with doubt concerning the outcome on account of the multitude of the opposing army, persuaded him to come first and ask pardon. For already Leo and Michael had both run off to the emperor – the former obtaining as reward the charge of the Phoideratoi and the imperial house of Zeno and the Dagistheus, the latter the office of Comes <of the Court> and the house of Karianos – and they persuaded Bardanios that he had been mistaken with regard

- φρονεῖν αὐτὸν πεπεικάσιν περὶ ἑαυτοῦ. ὅθεν αὐτῷ τε καὶ τῷ λαῷ συ-
 γνώμην αἰτούμενος ἐκ βασιλείως μέχρι τῶν Μαλαγίνων ὑπέστρεφεν· κάκει
 25 τοῦ Νικηφόρου φορούμενον αὐτῷ ἐξαπέσταλτο πρὸς ἀσφάλειάν τε καὶ
 πίστῳσιν, πρὸς τὴν τοῦ Ἡρακλείου μονὴν νύκτωρ, τὸν Θωμᾶν μόνον
 συγκινδυνεύοντα ἔχων, ἀπέφυγεν, τὸν τῆς κεφαλῆς κόσμον ἀφαιρῆσαι f. 3
 σπουδάζων. καὶ ὁ μὲν τῆς μονῆς προεστὼς τοῦτο | δρᾶσαι τοῦτον οὐ
 συνεχώρει· αὐτὸς δὲ ἡ περιεζώνοντο σπάθη τὸν πλόκαμον αὐτοῦ ἀφελῶν
 30 καὶ πενιχρὰν ἐσθῆτα ἀμφιασάμενος εἶχετο τῆς πρὸς τὴν Πρώτην νῆσον
 πορείας, ἔνθα δὴ τούτῳ κτῆμα καλῶς πεπονημένον ἐνῆν, καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς
 ἐκέισε μένιν | περιωρισμένον ἐπέτρεψεν. ἐκέισε γοῦν περαιωθεῖς, καὶ τὰς B 10
 συνήθεις εὐχὰς καὶ τὸ τῶν μοναχῶν θεῖον σχῆμα δεξάμενος, μετωνομάσθη
 Σάββας, ἀγῶνας ἀσκητικούς πολλοὺς ἐνδεικνύμενος. οὐ πολὺ τὸ ἐν μέσῳ,
 35 καὶ τινες τῶν ἐκ τῆς Λυκαονίας αὐτῷ ἐπιθέμενοι καὶ ποιήσαντες ἔρημον
 τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν, γνώμη καὶ εἰδήσει τοῦ βασιλεύοντος, τῷ τοῦ θεοῦ προσ-
 φεύγουσι θεῷ καὶ μεγάλῳ ναῷ· καὶ τέλος ἔσχεν ἡ πρόρρησις τοῦ κατὰ τὸ
 Φιλομήλιον ἐνδαιτυμένου μονάζοντος. ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνος μὲν ὡς εὐεργέτας
 αὐτοὺς ἐπευξάμενος τῆς σκληροτέρας εἶχετο ἀγωγῆς, οἶνου τε καὶ ἰχθύων
 40 καὶ ἐλαίου ὀλοσχερῶς ἀπεχόμενος, γυμνὴν τε φέρων ἅει τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ
 τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ πόδας, κἂν εἴ τις σφοδρότερος ἐγεγόνει χειμῶν. ἔτι δὲ μο-
 νοχίτων διετέλει, τῷ θέρει μὲν δερμάτινον χιτῶνα ἀμφιεννύμενος, τῷ χει-
 μῶνι δὲ τρίχινον περιβαλλόμενος. ἔζη δὲ οὐ σιτίνῳ, κριθῆς δὲ ἀλεύρῳ
 ἐγκρυφίαν ποιῶν. καὶ οὕτω παρέπεμπεν τὸν ἑαυτοῦ βίον, διαρκέσας ἕως
 45 ὁ Λέων τῆς βασιλείας ἐγένετο ἐγκρατῆς. ἀποκαρῆναι δὲ καὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
 σύμβιον Δομνίκαν ἅμα τῇ θυγατρὶ καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ παισὶν ἐν τῷ ἰδίῳ
 οἴκῳ ἐποίησεν, μετονομάσας αὐτὴν Ἀθανασίαν, ἅπαντα δηλαδὴ τὸν
 πλοῦτον διανείμας πτωχοῖς. καὶ τὰ μὲν κατὰ τὸν Βαρδάνιον οὕτω τε καὶ
 τοιαῦτα.

22 περὶ ἑαυτοῦ πεποιήκασιν edd 24 σταυρίδιον edd 25 ἀπέσταλτο edd 29 post δὲ
 habent τῇ V edd : expunxit V² : secl. Boor 31 ὅπως ὁ Βαρδάνιος μοναχὸς τὲ γέγονε καὶ
 Σάββας μετονομάσθη (sic) τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς τὲ ἐξεκόπη καὶ βίον μετῆλθε βιαιότατόν τε καὶ
 σκληρότατον V maiusc. in marg. 31 ἐν ἣν V 32 ἐκεῖ edd 32 γ' οὖν V 33 μετῶνο-
 μάσθη V 34 Σάββας edd 36 γνώσει edd 37 ἔσχεν : εἶχεν καὶ edd 37 κατὰ Boor, cf.
 supra I.2.3 : καὶ V : om. edd 39 εὐεργέταις αὐτοῖς edd 39 τὲ V 40 ἅει φέρων edd
 42 ἀμφιεννύμος V 43 τρίχινον V 43 κριθῆς edd 44 οὕτως edd 46 τῇ om. edd
 47 μετωνομάσας V

to himself. Whereupon, asking pardon from the emperor for himself and his army he withdrew to Malagina; and there receiving promises of impunity and the small gold cross which Nicephorus wore and which was sent to him as a security and confirmation, he sought refuge by night, with Thomas as his only companion in danger, in the monastery of Heraclius, eager to be rid of that which adorned his head. As the superior of the monastery would not allow him to do this, Bardanios cut off his own hair with the sword he wore and, putting on poor clothing, he set out on the way to the island of Prote, for there he owned a prosperous estate, and the emperor commanded that he should remain there in banishment. Thus, having crossed over thither, he received the usual prayers and the holy habit of the monks, changing his name to Sabas, and demonstrated many feats of asceticism. Not long thereafter some men from Lykaonia set upon him and, depriving him of his eyes, with the agreement and knowledge of the emperor, they fled for refuge to the holy Great Church of God; and the prediction of the monk dwelling near Philomelion was fulfilled. But Bardanios prayed on their behalf as for benefactors, and he pursued an even harsher way of life, abstaining completely from oil and fish and wine, and went about always with bare head and feet, even if there happened to be the severest winter. Moreover, he persevered with a single garment, wearing a leather garment in summer and donning one of hair in winter; and he lived making his bread not with corn but with barley. And thus he passed his life, enduring until Leo took control of the empire. He also had his wife Domnica, together with his daughter and sons, tonsured in the same house, changing her name to Athanasia and, to be sure, distributing all his wealth to the poor. So much, then, for Bardanios.

4. Ὁ δὲ Λέων εἶχετο τῆς δόξης καὶ ἐγαυρία ἐκ ταπεινοῦ καὶ ἀδόξου
περίβλεπτος ὁραθεὶς κατὰ τὴν τῶν Φοιδεράτων ἀρχήν. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τῆς
ἀχαριστίας ἀπείχετο τοιοῦτος περὶ τὸν εὐεργέτην | φανείς. πλὴν εἶχετο, B 11
καὶ μάχαις μάχας ἐπισυνάπτων κατὰ τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν ἠνδραγαθίζετο,
5 αἷτε μεγάλην ἐν τῷ τοιοῦτῳ μέρει καὶ φύσει καὶ τριβῇ προσφερόμενος
δύναμιν. καὶ ποτε στρατιωτικῶν χρημάτων διανομὴν παρὰ τοῦ τὰ
σκῆπτρα διέποντος Νικηφόρου ἐγχειρισθείς, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲν ἔμελεν αὐτῷ τῶν
βασιλικῶν ἐντολῶν, οὐδ' ἐξεπέραινέν τι, ἀλλ' ἐν πολίχνῃ Εὐχαΐτων τὸν | f. 3v
καιρὸν ῥαστώνῃ καὶ ἀμελείᾳ κατατρίβων ἀνεβάλλετο τὰ νενομισμένα τῷ
10 στρατῷ παρασχεῖν, καὶ φυλακῆς οὐδεμιᾶς πρόνοιαν ἔχων οὔτε μὴν τῶν
κοινῶν χρημάτων καὶ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ σώματος, οὐδ' αὐτῶν τῶν ὑπὸ χεῖρα,
τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐκδραμόντων καὶ τὰ Ῥωμαίων ληϊζομένων, τὴν λείαν
αὐτοῖς οὗτος ἀλλ' οὐκ ἄλλος τις ἀπεπλήρου ἀταλαιπώρως, ἀλλὰ δι'
αὐτοῦ μὲν οὐ – ὀξείᾳ γὰρ φυγῇ τὴν σωτηρίαν ἐπραγματεύσατο –,
15 τὰ στρατιωτικά δὲ προδοὺς καὶ μονονουχὶ χερσὶ πολεμίοις ἐμβαλὼν
χρήματα. οὗ δὴ ἕνεκα δίκας, εἰ καὶ μὴ τὰς ἀξίας, τῷ καταπιστεύσαντι δοὺς
Νικηφόρῳ πλῆγαῖς τε ταῖς κατὰ νώτου ὑπήχθη καὶ στέρνων καὶ φυγῇ
ἀΐδιῳ τὴν ζημίαν ἀπέτισεν. ἀλλὰ τοῦ Νικηφόρου κατὰ Σκυθῶν ἐκστρα-
τεύσαντος καὶ τραυματίου κατὰ τὴν παρεμβολὴν τοῦ πολέμου πεσόντος
20 μηνὶ Ἰουλίῳ εἰκάδι ἔκτη τῆς τετάρτης ἰνδικτιῶνος, καὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ
Σταυρακίου κατὰ τὸν πόλεμον καιρίαν τρωθέντος, ὥς δύο μὲν μόνους
μῆνας καὶ ἡμέρας ἐπιζῆσαι ὀκτώ, συμβασιλεύσαντος δὲ πρότερον τῷ πα-
τρι ἔτη ἑπτὰ μῆνας ἑπτὰ, καὶ Μιχαὴλ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου μετὰ τὴν τοῦ B 12

4.19–20: die 26 Iul. a. 811 Nicephorus in proelio a Bulgaris occisus est 21–22 a die 26 Iul. usque ad 2 Oct. a. 811 Stauracius solus imperator regnavit 22–23 : a Dec. a. 803 Stauracius cum patre Nicephoro septem annos et septem menses regnavit, cf. Theoph 480.11–12

Cap. 4: Theoph 489.17–22, 490.8–494.8, 495.15–18; Scrip Inc 336.5–14; GeorgMon 774.18–776.11; Gen 8.55–58; Log A 207.64–208.11 | Scyl 5.61–74, 11.61–67

4.2 περίβλεπτος a. corr. V 2 τῆς : τοῖς V 4 ἐπισυνάπτων V 7 ἔμελλεν V 8 ἐξεπαίρενέν V 8 ὅτι ἐν Εὐχαΐτοις διέτριβε Λέων ὁ Ἀρμένιος τοὺς πόλεμους (sic) ἀγώνας (sic) ἀναβαλλόμενος καὶ τὰ τοῦ στρατοῦ χρήματα κατεσθίων V maiusc. in marg. 9 κατὰ τρίβων V 9 ἀνα βαλλετο ante corr. V, ut vid. (secundum α in ras., sine acc.) 10 οὐδεμίαν edd 11 χρημάτων, οὐδὲ edd 11 ὑποχεῖρα V 12 λείαν V 15 μόνον οὐχὶ edd 16 ἕνεκα V 17 τὲ V 18 ὅπως Νικηφόρος ἀναιρεῖται παρὰ Βουλγάρων, μετὰ μικρὸν δὲ καὶ Σταυράκιος ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ τελευτᾷ V maiusc. in marg. 20 αὐτοῦ om. edd 22 μῆνας V 22 ὀκτώ V 22 συμβασιλεύσαντος B² in marg. edd Boor : συμβουλευσαντος V 23 ἑπτὰ Boor in app. e Theoph, qui septem annos septemque menses, a Decembri a. 803 usque ad Iulium a. 811, imperium cum patre habuisse dicit (cf. App. Font., ad loc.), utpote ὀκτώ errore promptum e versu superiore : ὀκτώ V edd 23 Μιχαὴλ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου ἀναγόρευσις V maiusc. in marg.

4. Leo was eager for glory and, coming from humble and obscure origins, he prided himself on his illustrious appearance as chief of the Phoideratoi. Nor did he desist from ingratitude, shewing himself in such a wise toward his benefactor. But he persisted, and adding battles upon battles he fought bravely against the Ismaelites, as if deriving great strength in this regard from his nature and practice. Once he was charged by the reigning emperor Nicephorus with the distribution of the soldiers' pay. But because he took no care for imperial commands, he did nothing; and passing his time in ease and indifference in the town of Euchaita he put off giving the army the usual pay. He made no provision for defence, either of the common money or of his own person or of those under his command; and when the Hagarenes invaded and ravaged the Roman lands, it was he and no one else who delivered the spoils to them, without any concern, even if not by himself in person – for he had procured safety through swift flight! – nevertheless, having abandoned the soldiers' pay, he all but put it in the hands of the enemy. For this reason he received punishment, albeit insufficient, from Nicephorus who had trusted him, and he was sentenced to scourging on the back and breast and to perpetual banishment. But Nicephorus took the field against the Scyths and fell wounded in the ranks of battle on the twenty-sixth of July of the fourth indiction, and his son Staurakios, mortally injured in the battle, survived him by only two months and eight days, having previously reigned with his father for eight years and seven months. And when, after the death of

- Σταυρακίου κατὰ τὴν δευτέραν τοῦ Ὀκτωβρίου μηνὸς ἀποβίωσιν, γαμ-
 25 βροῦ μὲν τοῦ Νικηφόρου τελούντος, ἐκ γενεᾶς δὲ καταγομένου τοῦ Ῥα-
 γαβὲ καὶ κατὰ τὴν θέσιν τῶν Μαγγάνων σκηνοῦντος, τὴν τῆς βασιλείας
 δεξαμένου ἀρχὴν κατὰ τὸν Ὀκτώβριον μῆνα τῆς πέμπτης ἰνδικτιῶνος,
 ἀπολύεται ὁ Λέων τῆς ὑπερορίας κατὰ τὸ ἐπικρατήσαν ἔθος
 30 χρηστότητος ἕνεκεν τοῖς Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῦσι, καὶ τῆς φυγῆς κατάγεται.
 καὶ τοῖς αὐτοῦ τούτου δὴ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ῥαβδούχοις τοῖς κατὰ τὰ
 ἀνάκτορα συντάττεται ἐφεδρεύουσι, καὶ πατρικίων τιμᾶται μετ’ οὐ πολὺ
 τιμῇ καὶ στρατηγὸς τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν ἀναδείκνυται· ἡνίκα καὶ τὴν πα-
 λαιὰν φιλίαν τοῦ σὺν αὐτῷ δὴν τραφέντος Μιχαὴλ ἀνανεῶν, ὃν κόμητα
 τῆς κόρτης ἢ ἐκ τοῦ Βαρδανίου μετάταξις προετίμησεν, καὶ τῶν
 35 ἀπορρήτων μύστην λαμβάνων τῶν ἔνδον τε εἶχε πιστότατον καὶ τῶν
 ἑκτὸς πρακτικώτατον.

5. Ἄλλ’ ἔμελλεν αὐθις ἀχαριστίας ἀλῶναι γραφῇ, ὡμότητι συντραφεῖς
 καὶ ἀγριότητι ἐκτραφεῖς, καὶ τοῖς δευτέροις | τὰ πρῶτα καλύψαι ὁ f. 4
 ἀλιτήριος. ὅθεν ἄρτι Κρούμνου τοῦ τῶν Βουλγάρων ἡγεμόνος συμβάσεις
 καὶ φιλίας ὑποκρινόμενον καὶ σπονδὰς ζητοῦντος εἰρηνικὰς, εἰ μόνον τὰ
 5 κατ’ ἔτος διδόμενα εἰς τάξιν οἶμαι δοθῶσιν φόρου αὐτῷ, ὥς τοῖς πρότερον
 ἔδοξε, καὶ προστιθέντος ὥς καὶ τοὺς πρόσφυγας Βουλγάρων, πρὸς δὲ καὶ
 Ῥωμαίων εἰς τοῦπίσω ἐκδίδοσθαι τῷ ἑαυτῶν ἔθνει, ἄτοπον ἐφάνη τὸ τῶν
 | προσφύγων τοῖς τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς, εἰ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς Μιχαὴλ B 13
 ὅλως ἐγένετο τῆς δόξης τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῷ γε δὴ τῆς εἰρήνης βούλεσθαι μὴ
 10 ἀποτυχεῖν. ἀλλ’ ἐκράτησεν ἡ βουλὴ Θεόκτιστον μάγιστρον ἐπικυροῦντα
 καὶ συντιθέμενον ἔχουσα τῇ δόξῃ, καὶ διελύθησαν πάλιν εἰς ἔργα πολέμου
 τοὺς λόγους καταλιπόντες γυμνοὺς. καὶ τοῦτ’ εἰκότως ἐφάνη καλὸν – πῶς
 γὰρ ἂν τις φιλάνθρωπος δόξῃ καὶ συμπαθῇς τὸν γε διὰ τινὰ σφαλέντα δὴ

4.23–24 : die 11 Ian. a. 812 Stauracius obiit 26–27 : die 2 Oct. a. 811 Michael Rhangabe coronam imperialem accepit 5.3 : ca. a. 802 usque ad Apr. a. 814 Bulgarorum chaganus Krum regnavit

Cap. 5: Theoph 497.16–498.4, 498.14–499.4, 500.10–12; Gen 9.84–90; Log A 209.9–14 | Scyl 12.4–23

25 τοῦ om. edd 26 Ῥαγγαβὲ Bekk 26 περὶ τοῦ οἴκου τῶν Μαγγάνων V maiusc. in marg. 26 ἐνσκηνοῦντος Boor in app. 27 πέμπτης V 28 ὅπως ὁ Λέων ἐν τῇ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἀναγορεύσει ἀνακαλεῖται τῆς ὑπερορίας V maiusc. in marg. 28 ἔθος τῆς edd 29 ἕνεκεν V 29 βασιλεῦση V 32 τῶν om. edd 33 δὴν τραφέντος nos : δεῖν τραφέντος V : συντραφέντος B in marg. Boor : τραφέντος ἀνδρὸς edd 35 εἶχε B secuti scripsimus : εἶχετ (ligatum cum π quod sequitur) V : εἶχεν edd 36 πρακτικώτατον post corr. V (una littera post π in ras.) 5,1 γραφῇ V 2 ἐντραφεῖς Bekk in app., sed cf. VBas 92.10 ἐκτρέφουσαι 3 συμβιβάσεις V² (βι sscr.) 4 ὑποκριναμένου edd 4 εἰρηνικὰς V 5 κατέτος V 9 ὅλος Bekk in app. 13 συμπαθεῖς V

Staurakios on the second day of the month of October, the curopalates Michael, the son-in-law of Nicephorus, who was descended from the race of Rague and dwelt in the district of Mangana, received the imperial power in the month of October of the fifth indiction, Leo was released from banishment in accordance with the prevailing custom of clemency by emperors of the Romans and returned from exile. He was enrolled amongst the staff-bearers of this same Michael who had their quarters in the Palace, and soon afterwards he was awarded the dignity of patrikios and made general of the Anatolics. It was then that he renewed his old friendship with Michael who had of old grown up with him and whom the rebellion of Bardanios had afforded the dignity of comes of the court. Accepting him as an initiate in his secrets Leo held him as most faithful in intimate matters and most practical in external ones.

5. But this scoundrel, bred in cruelty and nourished in savagery, was once again to prove himself guilty of the charge of ingratitude and to surpass his earlier deeds with new ones. For Krum, the ruler of the Bulgars, feigning accord and friendship, now sought a treaty of peace, under the condition, I think, that the yearly sum be given him in payment of tribute, as had seemed reasonable to earlier generations; and he added that Bulgar as well as Roman refugees should be given back to their own countries. This demand concerning the refugees seemed unreasonable to the Senate, though the reigning emperor Michael was completely of the same opinion as the Bulgar ruler out of his desire not to fail in obtaining peace. But the Senate prevailed, through the assistance and agreement of the magister Theoktistos, and abandoning unarmed words they proceeded again to acts of war. And this, rightly, was seen as noble – for how could anyone humane and compassionate think it good to

- περιπέτειαν καὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μὲν ἀρνησάμενον ἐνεγκαμένην, ἥς οὐδὲν
 15 γλύκιον, ὥς φασι, πρὸς δὲ καὶ γαμετὴν τε καὶ ἔκγονα, ὥς εἰς ἄσυλον δὲ
 καταφυγόντα βωμὸν τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων πολιτείᾳ, τοῦτον ἐκδίδοσθαι
 ὠμότητι Σκυθῶν θηρίων διενηνοχότων οὐδέν; – οἷς γὰρ τὸ φοβερὸν καὶ
 20 ἀγριον ὀρώσιν αὐτῶν τοὺς πολλοὺς μὴ ὑποφέροντας καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
 ἀπορρέοντας πρὸς τὸ ἡμερον καὶ πρᾶον ἡμῶν συχινῶς, ἅτε δὴ, μὴ κατὰ
 μικρὸν μάθωσιν ἑαυτοὺς πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐκκενώσαντες, δεδιότες οἱ σφῶν
 ἀρχηγοὶ τὸν πολὺν περὶ τούτων λόγον πολλάκις καὶ μέχρις ἡμῶν κε-
 κινήκασιν. ἀλλὰ κενήν, τὸ δὴ λεγόμενον κατὰ τὴν παροιμίαν, ἔφηλαν,
 ἀνθρώποις ἐντυχόντες στερροῖς.

6. Τοιγαροῦν μικρὸν διαλιπόντες κατ' ἀλλήλων ὀπλίζονται. καὶ Μι-
 χαὴλ μὲν τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποστράτηγον Λέοντα ἐγγίζειν καὶ διαπεραιοῦσθαι
 ἐκ τῆς ἀνατολῆς θάττον ἡξίου μετὰ καὶ τῶν δυνάμεων· καὶ βοηθῶ μέλλων
 5 χρῆσθαι αὐτῷ ἐχθρὸν κατέλαβεν ἄσπονδον. | ὥς γὰρ ἐκ τῶν μεγα- B 14
 λαύχων ῥημάτων καὶ ἀπειλῶν ὧν κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ὁ Κροῦμνος ἀπέπεμπε,
 φθόρους σωμάτων ἐπαπειλῶν καὶ γῆς δῆλωσιν καὶ δένδρων ἐκτομὰς καὶ
 οἰκημάτων πυρπόλησιν, καὶ ὅλως καθ' ἡμῶν οἶα τις χειμάρρους ποταμὸς
 φερόμενος πάντας ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν ποιῆσαι διεβεβαίου, ἄρτι δὴ τοῦ βασιλέως
 ἐκστρατεύσαντος καὶ συστείλαντος τὰς ὑπερορίους ἐκείνας | ἀπειλὰς, καὶ f. 4v
 10 μονοῦ τοῖς οἰκείοις ὅροις ἐμμένειν καταναγκάζοντος ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐκπηδᾶν
 καὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν ληΐζεσθαι. καὶ πολλάκις ἐκ παρατάξεως προσκα-
 λουμένου μὲν τοῦ Μιχαήλ, ἐκείνου δὲ μὴ ἀπαυθαδιαζομένου ἀλλὰ τὴν
 οἰκίαν ἐπιγινώσκοντος ἀσθένειαν καὶ μὴ πρὸς βασιλέα χεῖρα ἀντᾶραι
 κατατολμῶντος, ἐδόκει μὲν τῷ Μιχαήλ ἀρκεῖσθαι τὸ προπετὲς ἐκείνου καὶ
 15 αὐθαδὲς ἐν τοῖς ἐπ' αὐτοῦ κατακλείσαντα, μὴ καὶ μάχην ἐπισυνάψαι, ὥς
 ἀδήλου ὄντος τοῦ μέλλοντος· “ἐπεὶ γάρ”, ἔλεγεν, “ἐκ παρατάξεως ἡμῶν
 οὐκ εἰς πόλεμον οἰοί τε ἐσμέν ἐκκαλέσασθαι, ἀλλὰ φυγομαχεῖν καὶ ἐφ'
 ἑαυτοῦ μένειν ἀναγκάζομεν, τί καὶ δράσαιμεν βιαζόμενοι;” διὰ τοῦτο οὖν
 παλινδρομεῖν ἡρέμα πῶς καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν βασιλείαν

|| 14–15 Arsenius Apostolius *Paroemiae* cent. XVIII, sect. 66c, Etym. Magnum 607, ln. 10, cf. Homerus Od. 9.34; 22 Diogenianus Gramm. *Paroemiae* cent. VII sect. 60, Arethas Opera Minora no. 76 p. 124.2 Cap. 6: Theoph 500.10–502.19; Scrip Inc 336.14–340.10; Vita Nicephori 162.31–163.12; GeorgMon 776.17–20; Gen 3.21–4.39, 9.90–95; Log A 209.14–17 | Scyl 5.75–7.36

15 ἔκγονα ante corr. B : ἔγγονα edd 15 δὲ om. edd 16 τὴν... πολιτείαν Boor in app. 18 διατοῦτο V 19 ἅτε V 20 λάθωσιν edd 6.2 μὲν om. edd 2 ἐγγίζειν : ἐπαγγελλίζειν ante corr. B, ut vid. : ἐπανάγειν edd 5 Ῥωωμαίων V 10 μόνον οὐ V edd Boor 13 βασιλέα Bekk Boor, cf. infra IV.23.13 : βασιλέως V Comb 14 κατατολμῶντος ante corr. V (τα sscr. V²) 15 ὑπ' αὐτοῦ edd, quod accipiens αὐτῷ coni. Bekk in app. 17 ἐκκαλεσάσθαι V 18 ἐφ' ἑαυτοῦ Bekk Boor : ἐφ' ἑαυτὴν V Comb 19 πῶς V 19 καταμικρὸν V

deliver to the brutality of the Scyths, in no wise different from beasts, another who on account of some mishap has renounced the country that bore him (than which, as they say, nothing is sweeter!) as well as his wife and offspring, and has fled for refuge, as to an inviolate altar, to the the Roman state? – in the view of those, I mean, who consider the many men who, unable to bear the dreadfulness and savagery of the Scyths, therefore fled continuously to our civility and mildness; and it was through fear of this, lest they should shortly see themselves depopulated to our advantage, that their leaders have often, up to our own time, initiated long tractations concerning these matters. But as the proverb has it, they *sang in vain*, for they came up against men of firmness.

6. Therefore the two sides spent little time before taking up arms against one another. Michael ordered his second in command Leo to approach and cross over quickly from Asia with his forces; but, whilst intending to use him as an ally, he acquired an implacable enemy. For, because of the boastful words and threats Krum had lanced against the Romans, when he threatened the destruction of men, the devastation of land, the cutting of trees and the burning of houses, and declared that he would sweep down against us in every wise like a torrent and would bring all under his sway, the emperor had at once taken the field and put a stop to these threats from beyond the borders, well nigh forcing him to remain within his own borders and not to attack or lay waste to our land. Many times did Michael call to Krum from the ranks, but the latter, displaying no insolence, acknowledged his own weakness and dared not raise his hand against the emperor; and Michael was satisfied to have contained the precipitation and presumption of the other in his lands without engaging battle, since the outcome is always uncertain. ‘Seeing that’, he said, ‘from our ranks we are unable to call the enemy out to battle, but have forced him to shun battle and remain on his own ground, what else should we do perforce?’ Now, whereas on this account Michael wished to return in a

- 20 βουλομένου, ἀπρεπὲς ἐφάνη τῷ Λέοντι καὶ οὐ κατὰ βασιλεία Ῥωμαίων
νῶτα διδόναι τοῖς ἐχθροῖς, οὕτω καλοῦντι τὴν καλλίστην ἐκείνην βουλὴν
τῷ μὴ ὀρθὰ μὴ δ' ὑγίᾳ φρονεῖν σεσαθρωμένα δὲ καὶ δόλια, καὶ ὅλην ὑφ'
ἑαυτὸν ποιῆσαι τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων μελετῶντι ἡγεμονίαν. “ἀλλ' ἱτητέον”,
ἔφη, | “πρὸς αὐτούς, ὦ βασιλεῦ, καὶ ὅψει με σήμερον τὸ κράτος καθαρῶς B 15
- 25 ἀναδούμενον κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν καὶ νικηφόρον δεικνύμενον, τῇ σῇ κατα-
θαρροῦντα καὶ προπολεμοῦντα πεποιθήσει τε καὶ εὐχῇ”. τούτοις ὁ Μι-
χαὴλ τοῖς λόγοις ἐκτραπείς τε καὶ παρασαλευθεὶς συρρῆξαι παρεκε-
λεύσατο τὸν πόλεμον. ὥς δὲ μόνον ἐγένετο συμβολή, νῶτα δούς ὁ Λέων
τὴν φυγαδεῖαν ἡσπάσατο, τὴν βασιλείαν αἰεὶ πως ἐπιζητῶν. καὶ τοῦτο
- 30 τέως ἄδηλον ἦν αὐτῷ τε τῷ Μιχαὴλ καὶ τοῖς ὑπεναντίοις· μήπω γάρ
τινος γεγονότος, οἷα φιλεῖ κατὰ πόλεμον, μὴ δ' ἐτέρῳ ἀνδραγαθήματος,
ἀλλ' ἔτι κατ' ἀρχὰς οὐσης τῆς μάχης καὶ μικροῦ ὅτι καὶ συνερράγησαν
ἀγνώστου, αὐτοῖς τε τοῖς Βουλγάροις καὶ πᾶσιν ἐφάνη τρόπος εἶναι τὸ
- 35 πρᾶγμα, ὥς μέλλουσιν αὐτοὺς διασπᾶν καὶ αὐθις ἐξ ὑποστροφῆς κατα-
πολεμεῖν. ὥς δ' ἀμφοτέροι οὐ κατὰ τρόπον ἀλλ' ἀληθῆ ἔγνωσαν εἶναι δὴ
τὴν φυγὴν, τότε προσπεσόντες οἱ μὲν ἐναντίοι φόνον πολὺν ἐνεργάζοντο
τῶν φευγόντων νεανικῶς, ὁ δὲ Μιχαὴλ ἑαυτὸν σώζειν ἀλλ' οὐκ
ἀντιτίπτειν μετ' ὀλίγων ὧν διεπείραζε. καὶ οὕτως μὲν ταύτην γενέσθαι
- 40 τὴν μάχην τινὲς ἡμῖν ἐγγράφως παραδεδώκασιν· εἰσὶ δ' οἱ καὶ τὰς δυ-
νάμεις μᾶλλον τῷ Λέοντι διδόασιν | διασῶσαι καὶ καρτερῶς ἀγωνίσασθαι, f. 5
τῶν βασιλικῶν ταγμάτων ἐθελοκακησάντων καὶ τὴν οἰκίαν προ-
δεδωκότων παράταξιν, ἀλλ' οὐ τοῦ κατὰ τὸν Λέοντα μέρους. πλὴν καθ-
υπερτερεῖ μὲν τὰ Βουλγάρων δυσελπίστως, τὰ δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἥττη
- 45 συνεχόμενα βαρεῖα καὶ | φοβερᾶ τὸν βασιλέα ἔπεμπον ἀγωνιῶντα περὶ B 16
ψυχῆς. ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνος μὲν πρὸς τὰς βασιλείους αὐλὰς παρεπέμπετο, τὸν
Λέοντα οἷόν τινα πρόβολον καταλιπὼν ἔξωθεν ἐφεδρεύειν τοῦ μή τινα
γενέσθαι λαφυραγωγίαν πλείονα παρὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν. ὁ δὲ καιροῦ
λαβόμενος ἐπιτηδεῖον τὸν στρατιώτην ὄχλον ἡρέθιζε τε καὶ δύσφημά
- 50 τινα ῥιπτεῖν κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἠνάγκαζε, καὶ μὴ ἂν ἔλαφον, ἐκεῖνο δὴ τὸ
τοῦ μύθου, ἡγείσθαι λεόντων καλὸν ἔλεγεν εἶναι, τὴν φυγὴν ἀσπασάμενον
νῦν καὶ πρὸς τοὺς κόλπους φυγόντα τῆς γυναικός, τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἡμᾶς κα-
ταλιπόντα λαὸν παρανάλωμα τῶν ἐχθρῶν. οὕτω πέρας πρὸς τοὺς
κοινωνοὺς τῶν λόγων ὁ λόγος ἐλάμβανε, καὶ εἰς ἔργον ἦν τοῦτον
ἀπεκβάντα ἰδεῖν τῇ τῶν κολάκων κατασπαρέντα στωμυλίᾳ καὶ συν-

6.43–44 : die 22 Iun. a. 813 strages Byzantinorum ad Versiniciam accidit

|| 49–50 Plutarchus 187D ln. 8, Stephanus Byz. 961E ln. 11, Leo Sapiens, Tactica 2.32

21 ἐκείνην ante τὴν καλλίστην edd 22 ὑγία V 25 κατὰ V 25 νικηφόρων V 26 τὲ
V 32 καταρχὰς V 34 ἐξυποστροφῆς V 35 δὴ ἔγνωσαν εἶναι B edd 38 οὕτω edd
44 βαρεῖα V 48 προοίμια τῆς τοῦ Λέοντος τυραννίδος V maiusc. in marg. 48 δύσφημα :
βλάσφημα edd 49 τὸ om. edd 52 καταλιπόντά V 53 ἔργον B² in marg. edd : ἔρ (sic) V

quiet way, little by little, to his own empire, Leo considered it unseemly and unbefitting a Roman emperor to turn his back on the enemy, and he thus criticised the other's excellent counsel with reasoning by no means correct or sound, but rotten and devious, all the while taking thought as to how to bring the entire realm of the Romans under his own control. 'But we must go out to them, O emperor', he said, 'and you will see me gain power in honest wise against the enemy and emerge victorious, emboldened and urged on to battle by your trust and prayer.' Astonished and won over by these words Michael commanded that battle should be engaged. But no sooner had the combat begun than Leo turned his back and took flight, though nonetheless still in pursuit of empire. At first this manoeuvre was unclear to Michael himself and to the enemy, for no acts of bravery, as is usual in war, had yet been accomplished on either side. As the uncertain battle was just beginning and it was scarcely known that the ranks had been broken, it seemed to the Bulgars and to everyone that this was a trick: that the others intended to divide them and then to return and attack. When they had both understood that the flight was no trick, the enemy attacked with vehemence and wrought great carnage upon those who were fleeing; Michael, however, together with several others tried to save himself, putting up no resistance. Thus have certain men recounted this battle for us in their written reports; but there are others who on the contrary relate that Leo preserved his lines and fought vigorously, whereas the imperial divisions let themselves be beaten and betrayed their own ranks, unlike those under Leo. But, however, the Bulgars unexpectedly got the upper hand, and on the side of the Romans grave and frightful defeat bore down, sending the emperor off in despair of his life. The latter, then, went off to the imperial court, leaving Leo to lie in wait in the field as a sort of guardian lest the enemy should take any more booty; but Leo, seising this suitable opportunity, provoked the assembled soldiery and constrained them to utter words of abuse against the emperor, saying that it was not right, as the fable has it, that lions should be ruled over by a hart 'who has now taken flight to the bosom of his wife, leaving us his army as prey for the enemy.' This speech to his comrades was not yet finished when already one could see that it had come into action, spread abroad through the chatter and tumult of his

- 55 δρομῇ. καὶ τέλος ἀνάρρησις αὐθωρόν, καὶ τὸν αὐτὸν εἶχε τὸ βραχύτατον μόριον τῆς ἡμέρας ἰδιώτην ἅμα καὶ αὐτοκράτορα.

7. Ἄρτι γοῦν ἀνηγορεύετο παρὰ τοῦ στρατοῦ, καὶ φόβοι τοῦτον καὶ δέη ὑφεῖρπον, εἴτε σκηνὴν ὄντως ὑποκρινόμενον, ἢν ἀπολογίαν σχοίη εἰς ὕστερον, εἴτε καὶ ἀληθεῖα τὰ ταῖς τηλικαύταις πράξεσιν ἀκολουθοῦντα ἀντίπαλα διαλογιζόμενον – ἐπεὶ καὶ τοῖς ἀρπάσαι τὰ ἀλλότρια προθυ-
 5 μουμένοις μαλακώτεροι πρὸς τὰ δεινὰ τόλμαι φιλοῦσι γίνεσθαι – καὶ τὸ μέγιστον, ὅπως τῶν βασιλείων μετὰσχη αὐλῶν, θυραυλῶν τε καὶ πόρρω-
 10 που αὐλιζόμενος. ἀλλ’ ἔμελλε πάντως καὶ αὐτὸς ἐνσκηνησάτωι τοῖς βασι-
 λείοις, καὶ | διὰ τοῦτο πνεῦμα πονηρότατον διεγείραν Μιχαὴλ τὸν τραυ- B 17
 λὸν καιρίαν οἱ καθικέσθαι διηπείλει, εἰ μὴ τὴν ἀνάρρησιν ἀσμένως προσ-
 10 δέξοιτο· ὡς αὐτῷ γε πάντων μελήσειν τῶν νομιζομένων δυσχερῶν καὶ αὐτῆς γε ταύτης τῆς πρὸς τὰ βασιλεία ἀφίξεως. ὃ δὲ καὶ γέγονεν.

8. Ὡς δέ τις ἀνὴρ – Ἰωάννης οὗτος ὁ κατὰ τὸν Ἑξαβούλιον – τὴν τῶν τειχῶν ἐπιμέλειαν καὶ πρόνοιαν ποιούμενος ἤσθετο τὸν Λέοντα τοῦτον καταλελειμμένον πρὸς φυλακὴν ἅμα τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰσόδῳ – δεινὸς δὲ ἄρα ἀνδρὸς φύσιν στοχάσασθαι | πόρρωθεν –, οὐκ ἐν καλῷ τὴν ἐκείνου f. 5v
 5 ἔφησε γενέσθαι προστασίαν τῶν στρατευμάτων· ὅθεν σύμβουλος γίνεται τῷ βασιλεῖ διανοήσασθαι τι καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα μεταστήσαι καλῶς. πλὴν ἔδει τὸν τέως τῷ κωδίῳ θῆρα κρυπτόμενον ἀνακαλυφθῆναι ποτε καὶ δοκιμα-
 σθῆναι ὡς ἐν χοάνῳ χρυσὸν τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκλεκτοῦ· συγχωρεῖται δὲ
 10 πολλάκις τοῦτο κατὰ τινὰ τοῦ χρόνου κυκλικὴν περίοδον γίνεσθαι, ἐξ αἰτήσεως οἶμαι δαιμονικῆς, καθάπερ ἐπὶ Ἰώβ, εἰς γνῶσιν μὲν καὶ διάκρισιν τῶν εὐσεβῶν, ἀλλοτρίωσιν δὲ καὶ ἀποποίησιν τῶν κακῶν.

9. Οὐπω γὰρ πέρας ἔσχον οἱ λόγοι, καὶ φήμη προθέουσα τὴν τοῦ τυράννου ἐμήνυνεν ἀναγόμευσιν. προσπεσούσης δὲ ταύτης, ἡ μὲν πόλις

6.55–56 : die 11 Iul. a. 813 Leo Armenus imperator proclamatus est, cf. infra I.12.1–2

Cap. 7: Gen 4.39–44 | Scyl 7.36–41 || 4–5 Dionysius Halicarnassus, *Antiquitates Romanae* 14.9.3 τοῖς δ’ ἀρπάσαι τὰ ἀλλότρια προθυμουμένοις μαλακώτεροι πρὸς τὰ δεινὰ τόλμαι φιλοῦσι γίνεσθαι. Cap. 8: Gen 4.45–5.55 | PsSym 604.2–4; Scyl 7.42–49 || 7 Ioannes Grammaticus *Adversus Manichaeos* I ln. 275 et Nicephorus *Refutatio et eversio* cap. 4 ln. 39, cf. Matt. 7.15; 7–8 Gregorius Nazianzenus, *Carmina dogmatica* col. 445 ln. 12, *Carmina moralia* col. 568 ln. 3, col. 914 ln. 11 et col. 967 ln. 5, *Carmina de se ipso* p. 1345 ln. 4, cf. 1 Pet 1.7; 10 Iob 2.4–6 Cap. 9: Theoph 502.19–26; Scrip Inc 340.10–12; Vita Nicephori 163.12–17; Gen 5.55–6.87 | PsSym 604.15–18; Scyl 7.49–8.74 || 2–4 cf. Plutarchus *Cato Minor* 59.1 τούτων προσπεσόντων ἡ μὲν πόλις ... πρὸς τοιοῦτον ἄγγελμα μικροῦ δεινῆς ἐκφρων γενομένη μόλις ἑαυτὴν ἐντὸς τειχῶν κατεῖχεν;

55 τὸν: τῶν V 7.1 γ’ οὖν V 3 εἴ τὲ V 7 ἐνσκηνώσαι edd 8 διατοῦτο V 8 πνεῦ α. corr. V (μα add. V²) 9 περὶ Μιχαὴλ τοῦ τραυλοῦ V maiusc. in marg. 9 διειπείλη V 8.1 Ἑξαβούλιον V et infra I.21.16, II.19.28 sed cf. Gen 4.46, 5.54, 15.61, 68, 22.54, 31.57 Scyl 7.43, 47 (AVMN), 19.32, 40.64 : Ἑξαβούλης PsSym 613.16 7 κρυπτόμενον V 9 τοῦτο πολλάκις edd

flatterers. Forthwith came the acclamation, and the briefest part of a day saw the same Leo as private citizen and as emperor.

7. Now he had hardly been acclaimed by the army before fears and terrors crept over him, be it that he was in fact acting a part so as to have an excuse later, or that he was in truth reckoning the adverse consequences of his actions at that time – for courage even of those eager to despoil others is wont to slacken in the face of danger – and, above all, how he was going to get to the imperial palace, being as he was outside and encamped far away. But Leo was at all events to dwell in the palace, and for this reason a most evil spirit roused Michael the Stammerer to threaten him with a mortal blow unless he immediately accepted the proclamation, and Michael would see to all the expected difficulties including also getting to the palace. And so it came to pass.

8. When a certain man in charge of the care and protection of the walls – this was John Exaboullos – learnt, upon the entry of the emperor, that this Leo had been left behind for the defence, he said – for he was adept by nature at divining things long before – that Leo's superintendence of the army was not for the good; and for this reason he advised the emperor to reconsider the matter and replace the man in advantageous manner. But the beast concealed under the *sheepskin* was to be revealed and God's chosen ones *be tried as gold* in a furnace: this is often allowed to occur according to a cyclical period of time and by petition, I think, of the demons, as in the case of Job, for the recognition and distinction of the pious and the alienation and rejection of the wicked.

9. His speech was not finished when the rumour went round reporting the usurper's proclamation. And when this occurred, the city all but went mad at

- πρὸς τοιοῦτον ἄγγελμα μικροῦ δεῖν ἔκφρων γενομένη μόλις ἑαυτὴν συνει-
 χεν, τοὺς ἐμφυλίους κατορρωδοῦσα πολέμους, ἐξ ὧν πολλάκις αὐτάνδρῳι
 5 πόλεις κατεβαπτίσθησαν· ὁ δ' αὐτοκράτωρ ἐξεπλάγη μὲν τὴν ψυχὴν, οὐκ
 ἑταράχθη δὲ τὴν γνώμην, | ἀλλ' ἄχαριστίαν αὐτοῦ μόνον κατεγνώκως, B 18
 ἡρέμα πως ὑποψιθυρίσας ὡς καλὸν τῷ θεῷ θελήματι ἔπεσθαι, ἀφήρει τῆς
 πόλεως τὸ περιθαμβῆς καὶ ταραχῶδες, ἅπαντας προτρεψάμενος χωρῆσαι
 10 τούτου πρὸς ἅπαντήν, ἵνα μένουσαν σῶζῃ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ πόλιν ἐμφυλίου
 αἵματος ἄχραντόν τε καὶ καθάραν. ἴστασθαι δέ τινων πρὸς τὰ δεινὰ καὶ
 πρὸς τὸν διὰ μάχης ἀγῶνα παρακελευομένων χωρεῖν, καὶ μένειν αὐτῶν
 ὑπισχνουμένων βεβαίῳ ὑπὲρ βασιλέως πράου τε καὶ πιστοῦ, ἀλλὰ καὶ
 αὐτῆς ἀποδεχομένης τοῦτο τῆς γαμετῆς Προκοπίας καὶ Μανουὴλ τινος
 15 τῶν ἐξ Ἀμαληκитῶν πρωτοστράτωρος τηνικαῦτα τυγχάνοντος, οὐκ ἔφη
 χρῆζειν τὴν βασιλείαν αἵμασι καταρρεομένην ἀδελφικοῖς. ὅθεν καὶ τινι
 τῶν πρὸς θεραπείαν αὐτοῦ γνησίων παράσημά τινα δούς τῆς βασιλείας
 φοιτᾶν ἐκέισε ἐξεβιάσατο. ἐφ' οἷς καὶ δεινοπαθήσασα καὶ οἶον ἐκβακ-
 χευθεῖσα ἢ τούτου δὴ γαμετῇ δεινὸν λέγεται ἀνακραγεῖν, εἰ Βάρκα, οὕτω
 20 δὴ τὸ τοῦ Λέοντος καλέσασα γύναιον, τῇ κεφαλῇ ἐπίθοιτο τὸν μοδιόλον.
 ὁ δὲ στερροῖς λόγοις ταύτην ἐπιρραπίσας, καὶ ὅλον δὴ ἀναθεὶς ἑαυτὸν τῷ
 θεῷ, ἑκαραδόκει τὰ μέλλοντα. ἄρτι γοῦν κατηγγέλλετο τὸν τύραννον
 εἰσιέναι διὰ πύλης τῆς χρυσηλάτου, | καὶ πᾶσα ἡ σύγκλητος κατὰ τὸν f. 6
 25 τοῦ προδρόμου νεών, ὃν ὁ Στούδιος ἐκ βάθρων ἀνήγειρεν, ἀπῆντα
 καὶ ὑπτίαις ἐδέχετο ταῖς χερσί, προπέμπουσά τε καὶ ἐκθειάζουσα. ὥς δὲ
 τοῖς βασιλείοις ἡγγίξε καὶ κατὰ πρόσωπον δὴ τῆς θείας εἰκόνος τοῦ | δι' B 19
 ἡμᾶς ἐνανθρωπήσαντος θεοῦ λόγου, κατὰ τὸν οὕτω κατονομαζόμενον
 τόπον Χαλκῆν, ἔμελλε στήναι τὰς εὐχὰς ἀποδώσων, ἐπεὶ τι φοινικοβαφὲς
 θοιμάτιον κατὰ τι στρατιωτικὸν ἔθος ἄζωστον ἐπημφίετο – ἀετὸν τοῦτο
 30 καλοῦσιν ἢ θάλασσαν οἱ περὶ ταῦτα κομποί –, τοῦτο μὲν αὐτίκα ἀπα-
 μφιέννυται, καὶ Μιχαὴλ ὁ τὴν γλῶτταν φέρων παράσημον, ἐπιμελητῆς
 τῶν τοῦ Λέοντος ἵππων τηνικαῦτα τυγχάνων, ἐπὶ χεῖρας λαβὼν αὐθω-
 ρὸν ἐπαμπίσχεται. ἔδοξεν οὖν τοῦτο τοῖς πολλοῖς οἰωνὸς ἐξ ἐκείνου δεύτε-
 ρον τῆς βασιλείας τυχεῖν. ὥς δὲ κατὰ τὰ Σκύλα ἐγένοντο, οὕτω δὴ τινα
 35 τόπον κατὰ τὰς βασιλείους εἰσόδους λεγόμενον, ἀκρατῶς πως ἐπιρρέων
 καὶ κατ' ἵχνος θέων αὐτοῦ τὸ πρὸς τῇ πέζῃ λῆγον τοῦ ἱματίου ἄκροις
 ἐπέβη ποσίν, ὥς καὶ αὐτὸν αἰσθῆσθαι τὸν Λέοντα καὶ τινα παράβολον
 κίνησιν ἐξ αὐτοῦ προσδοκᾶν. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν ὕστερον ἐγένετο.

7–8 cf. Plutarchus Cato Minor 59.2 ἀφήρει τοῦ δέους τὸ περιθαμβῆς καὶ ταραχῶδες

9.4 ὦν : οὐ edd 5 ἐξεπλήγη edd 7 πῶς 7 θεοσέβεια καὶ μεγαλοφροσύνη Μιχαὴλ
 βασιλέως τοῦ κουροπαλάτου V maiusc. in marg. 7 ἔπεσθαι V 12 βεβαιῶν edd
 13 τινὸς V 14 ἐξαμαληκитῶν V 14 πρωτοστράτορος B edd 15 post βασιλείαν coni.
 ἰδεῖν Bekk in app. 19 τὸν Boor e Gen 5.67 Scyl 8.65 : τὸ V 27 Χαλκῆν V 33 τὰ Bekk, cf.
 infra IV.19.30 : τὴν V Comb 35 κατίχνος V 36 αἰσθῆσθαι corr. Boor : αἰσθῆσθαι V :
 αἰσθάνται B : αἰσθάνεσθαι edd

the news and hardly held itself together from dread of civil war which often submerges whole cities, men and all. As for the sovereign, he was astonished in his soul but was not confused in his judgement. He merely condemned Leo's ingratitude, whispering quietly that it was good to obey divine will, and assuaged the city's alarm and turbulence, exhorting all to go out to meet Leo, in order to save his city intact and unstained by kindred blood. There were some who urged him to stand against the dangers and to go forward to the trial of battle, promising to remain loyal to their mild and faithful emperor; but although the emperor's wife Prokopia herself accepted this, together with a certain Manuel of the Amalekites who was protostrator at the time, the emperor said he did not want the empire to be soaked in fraternal blood. Whereupon he gave certain insignia of the empire to one of his trusted servants and forced him to go out thither. Whereupon the emperor's wife, infuriated and as if seized with Bacchic frenzy, is said to have cried out that it was a terrible thing if Barka – thus she called Leo's wife – put the modiolus on her head. But reproving her with harsh words and commending himself wholly to God, he awaited what would come. Already the news had come that the usurper had entered through the gold-wrought gate, and all the Senate had gone to meet him at the divine church of the Forerunner which Stoudios erected from its foundations and greeted him with hands held high, escorting and extolling him as divine. When he neared the palace and was about to stand, in the place called Chalke, to offer prayers in front of the divine image of the Word God who for our sake was made man, because, in accordance with military custom, he was wearing a certain purple-dyed garment without a belt – experts in these things call this an *eagle* or *sea* –, he took this off forthwith, and Michael – the one whose tongue was defective, who at the time looked after Leo's horses – taking it in his hands straightway put it on. This appeared to the many as a sign that he would attain the empire from him in second place. When they came to the Skyla, as the place by the entrance to the palace is called, carelessly rushing and hurrying in the steps of Leo he trod with his feet on the border of the latter's garment, so that Leo himself felt this and expected some sort of audacious move from him. This later came to pass.

10. Τότε δὲ τοῦ Λέοντος ἐπιφανέντος, Μιχαὴλ ἅμα παισί τε καὶ γυναικὶ τὴν κόμην ἀποθέμενοι πρὸς τὸ τοῦ θεοτόκου τεμένισμα, ὃ Φάρος κατονομάζεται ἀπὸ τοῦ φῶς ἀνάπτειν πᾶσι καὶ κατὰ τὰς νύκτας χειραγωγεῖν ἐπὶ καταγωγὰς τινὰς ἀσφαλεῖς, ἀντίμιμον τοῦ κατὰ τὴν
- 5 Ἀλεξάνδρειαν ὄντα τε καὶ γενόμενον, τὴν αὐτοῦ εὐμένειαν χωρεῖ ἔκκαλούμενος. ὃ δὲ συλῆσαι μὲν ἐκ θεοῦ καὶ ἔρημον θεῖναι ψυχῆς οὐκ ἐν καλῷ θέμενος, ἐκεῖνον μὲν ἐν τῇ Πλάτῃ νήσῳ ὑπερόριον θεὸς ἡσυχάζειν ἐπέτρεψεν, χρυσὸν τινα κατ' ἔτος ἐπιχορηγῶν, ἔνθεν καὶ τὸ μοναχικὸν σχῆμα λαβόντα καὶ Ἀθανάσιον μετονομασθέντα ἐπιβιῶναί φασιν ἔτη δύο καὶ
- 10 τριάκοντα. συνῆν δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ Εὐστράτιος ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ὃ καὶ ἀποκαρεῖς καὶ εὐνουχισθεὶς ὢν ἑτῶν εἴκοσι προστάξει τοῦ Λέοντος, καὶ Νικήτας, ὃς πρότερον μὲν παῖς ὢν τὴν τῶν ἱκανάτων διεῖπεν ἀρχὴν ἅτε δὴ φίλιος τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἐν ὑπαίθρῳ διάγουσιν εἶναι τε θέλων καὶ τῶν πολλῶν πραγμάτων ἔμπειρος, τότε δὲ τὴν κόμην καὶ αὐτὸς ἀποθέμενος |
- 15 Ἰγνάτιος ἐκαλεῖτο καὶ τῷ πατρὶ συνεῖναι ἐλαγχανεν τῷ μονήρῃ βίῳ προσκείμενος. τὴν αὐτοῦ δὲ σύνευνον ἀπεσχοίνισε καὶ ἀπέσπασε καὶ πρὸς τὴν μονὴν τὴν οὕτω λεγομένην Προκοπίας μετέθηκεν, καίτοι γε τοῦτο μὴ γενέσθαι πολλὰ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἱκετεύσαντος. καὶ ὁ μὲν Μιχαὴλ τοῦ βίου ἔξω γενόμενος μηνὶ Ἰαννουαρίῳ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἔτους ἑξακισχιλιοστοῦ τριακο-
- 20 σιοστοῦ <πεντηκοστοῦ> δευτέρου τὸν χοῦν ἀποθέμενος ἐν αὐτῇ τῇ

B 20

f. 6v

10.18–20 : 32 annos post abdicationem, die 11 Ian. a. 844, Michael Rhangabe obiit

Cap. 10: Theoph 502.26–29; Scrip Inc 340.12–14; Vita Nicephori 163.17–25; Vita Ignatii 492AC; GeorgMon 776.20–24; Gen 6.88–1; Log A 209.17–19, 263.52–55 | Scyl 8.79–9.88

10.1 ὅπως Μιχαὴλ ὁ κουροπαλάτης ἅμα γ<υ>ναικὶ καὶ τέκνοις τ<α> τοῦ μοναχοῦ ἤδη <ᾧ>παντες βαλλόμενοι· ὑπερορίαν παρὰ τοῦ τυράννου Λέοντος ἐν τῇ ν<ή>σῳ ἢ Πλάτῃ λέγεται κατακρίνεται<αι> V maiusc. in marg. 2 κόμην V 2 θεοτόκου Boor in app. e Gen 6.90 et Scyl 8.82 : θῦ V : θεοῦ edd 2 τεμένισμα edd Boor : τένισμα V 4 καταγωγὰς τινὰς V 5 λεγόμενον edd 7 Πλάτῃ : fortasse corrigendum, cf. Scyl 8.85 κατὰ τὴν νῆσον Πρώτην 7 ὑπερόριαν V 10 ὅτι τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Εὐστράτιον ὁ τύρα<ν>νος ἐντὸς ἤδη τοῦ κ' χρόνου γενόμενον εὐνουχίζει V maiusc. in marg. 11 ὅτι καὶ Νικήτας ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὃς καὶ τὴν τοῦ ἱκανάτου μετῆλθεν ἀρχὴν μοναχὸς τε γέγονε καὶ Ἰγνάτιος μετεκλήθη καὶ τῷ πατρὶ συνῆν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ, ὕστερον δὲ καὶ πατριάρχης ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει χειροτονεῖται V maiusc. in marg. 11 Νικήτας V 13 θέλλων V 14 κόμην V 15 Ἰγνάτιος V 15 ἐλάγχανεν : ἐτύγχανεν edd 15 μονήρῃ edd 16 τὴν δ' αὐτοῦ edd 17 καὶ τοί γε V 20 ἔτους ἑξακισχιλιοστοῦ τριακοσιοστοῦ <πεντηκοστοῦ> δευτέρου Boor, cf. supra I.10.9–10 ἐπιβιῶναι – ἔτη δύο καὶ τριάκοντα et Ph. Grierson, *Bjz* 32 (1962) nota 168 : ἔτους ἑξακισχιλιοστοῦ τριακοσιοστοῦ δευτέρου V : ἔτους ζτβ' edd

10. Then, after Leo had made his appearance, Michael withdrew with his wife and children, ridding themselves of their hair, to the sanctuary of the Mother of God – which is called Pharos on account of its kindling of light for all and guidance by night unto safe landings, having been and being still a close imitation of the Pharos in Alexandria –, and there he made entreaty for the other's goodwill. Leo, thinking it not good to drag one away from God and bereave him of his soul, sent Michael into banishment on the island of Plate and commanded that he should dwell in solitude, providing him with a certain sum per year; and they say that he, after taking the monastic habit and changing his name to Athanasius, lived another thirty-two years. Together with Michael was his son Eustratios, who was tonsured and made a eunuch at the age of twenty by Leo's order, as well as Nicetas who formerly, though still a boy, had had charge of the Ikanatoi, in as much as he liked being with his soldier friends even when they stayed in the open country and was very experienced in many matters; now he too was shorn of his hair and was called Ignatius, obtaining as his lot to be with his father, in devotion to the monastic life. Leo also separated and took away Michael's consort, sending her to the monastery called Procopia's, even though Michael greatly pleaded that this should not be done. Michael left this life on the eleventh of the month of January in the year six-thousand-three-hundred-<fifty>-two, putting off this

- νήσω, ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ μέρει τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἐτέθαπτο· ὁ Εὐστράτιος δὲ μετὰ τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς τελευτὴν ἔτη ἐπιβιούς πεντεκαίδεκα καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκοιμήθη κατὰ τὴν πεντεκαίδε<κά>την τοῦ Ἰαννουαρίου μηνὸς ἔτους ἑξακισχιλιοστοῦ τριακοσιοστοῦ <ἐξηκοστοῦ> ἑβδόμου ἐν τῷ εὐωνύμῳ μέρει τῆς ἐκκλησίας πεσών. ὁ δ' Ἰγνάτιος ὁ καὶ πρότερον Νικήτας καλούμενος, τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως πρόεδρος εἶναι λαχών, πολλοῖς ὕστερον χρόνοις ἐν τῇ μονῇ τῇ καλουμένη Σατύρου, ἣν ἄρτι ἐκ βάθρων δειμάμενος ἔτυχεν, τὸ ἱερὸν αὐτοῦ σῶμα κατέθηκεν. αὕτη δὲ ἡ μονὴ καὶ τοῦ Ἀνατέλλοντος κέκληται τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. ἀλλὰ Σάτυρος μὲν, ὅτι ἐκ μικροῦ διαστήματος τῆς τοιαύτης μονῆς ὁ παλαιὸς ὀνομάζεται Σάτυρος, ἐν ᾧ ἦν ἱερὸν παρ' Ἑλλήνων οἰκοδομηθὲν τῷ αὐτῷ Σατύρῳ, οὐ καθ' ὁμωνυμίαν, διὰ τὸ πλησίον εἶναι τὴν εἰρημένην μονήν, τῷ τοιοῦτῳ καλεῖται ὀνόματι· ἐξ οὗπερ καὶ ὁ τὰ παλάτια τοῦ Βρύου κτίσας Θεόφιλος βασιλεὺς τὴν ὕλην ἀφελόμενος ταῦτα ἐδείματο. ἀνατέλλων δὲ δι' αἰτίαν τοιαύτην. κυνηγετοῦντι ποτε Νικηφόρῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐν οἷς ἀρτίως ἐστὶν ἡ μονὴ μέρεσι, διὰ τὸ ἀλσώδη καὶ δύσβατον εἶναι καὶ πρὸς θήραν ζώων ἐπιτηδεῖαν, ἐλάφου μεγίστης φανείσης καὶ καταδιωκομένης καὶ χειρωθείσης ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ τόπῳ ἐν ᾧ νῦν τὸ τῆς μονῆς θυσιαστήριον ἱδρύται, εὐρέθη τράπεζα παλαιὰ ὑπὸ κίονος βασταζομένη γράφουσα οὕτως· “τοῦτὸ ἐστὶ τὸ ἅγιον θυσιαστήριον τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου Μιχαὴλ τοῦ Ἀνατέλλοντος, ὅπερ ἐνεθρόνισεν ὁ ἀπόστολος Ἀνδρέας”. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν οὐ τότε, χρόνου δὲ παρεληλυθότος πολλοῦ ὕστερον.
11. Ἐπανακτέον δὲ τὸν λόγον, καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν ζητητέον τὴν οὕτως ὡς ἐξ ὁμολόγου πείσασαν ἀμφοτέρους, τὸν μὲν Μιχαὴλ μὴ δ' ὅλως ὑπὲρ τῆς βασιλείας ἀντισχεῖν – ἐνεστι γάρ, ἡ παροιμία, κὰν μύρμηκι χολή –, τὸν

10.21–24 : a. 859 Eustratius filius Michaelii obiit 25–26 : Ignatius patriarchatu Constantinopolitano a 4 Iul. a. 847 usque ad 23 Oct. a. 858 et iterum a 23 Nov. a. 867 usque ad eius mortem die 23 Oct. a. 877 functus est

Cap. 11: Epist ad Theophilum 110.13–113.11, 177.20–179.5; Gen 8.59–9.83 | PsSym 605.5–10; Scyl 11.68–12.98 || 3 Diogenianus Paroemiae cent. I sect. 12, Zenobius Paroemiae cent. III sect. 70 et alii, Photius Lexicon E no. 901, Suda E no. 1266, Σ no. 256;

22 καὶ δέκα (sic edd) dubitavit Comb in marg. : del. Bekk : restituit Boor ; cf. Signes 1995, 87 23 πεντεκαίδε|την V : ιε' edd 24 ἔτους ἑξακισχιλιοστοῦ τριακοσιοστοῦ <ἐξηκοστοῦ> ἑβδόμου Boor, cf. Signes 1995, 87 : ἔτους ἑξακισχιλιοστοῦ τριακοσιοστοῦ ἑβδόμου V : ἔτους 5τ' edd 25 δὲ edd 25 ὅτι τὴν τοῦ Σατύρου μονὴν ὁ πατριάρχης Ἰγνάτιος οἰκοδομεῖ V maiusc. in marg. 25 Νικήτας V 27 τῇ post μονῇ om. edd, sed con. Bekk in app. 31 παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων edd 31 ὁμωνυμίαν V 33 τὰ παλάτια τοῦ Βρύου V : τοῦ Βρύου παλάτια edd 34 ὅτι ἡ τοῦ Σατύρου αὕτη μονὴ καὶ τοῦ Ἀνατέλλοντος ἐλέγετο καὶ ἡ αἰτία δι' ἣν οὕτως ἐκαλεῖτο V maiusc. in marg. 35 κυνηγετοῦντι ποτὲ V 36 θήραν V 36 δύσβατα – ἐπιτηδεῖα Bekk in app. Boor 39 ἅγιον om. edd 40 θυσιστήριον V 11.2 ἐξομολόγου V 3 γάρ, ὡς edd, quod accipiens φησὶν dubitanter complevit Boor in app. 3 κὰν V

dust on this same island, and was buried on the right side of the church. Eustratios survived fifteen years after his father's decease, and he fell asleep on the fifteenth of the month of January of the year six-thousand-three-hundred-<sixty>-seven, being laid on the left side of the church. Ignatius, formerly called Nicetas, whose lot it was to become bishop of Constantinople, deposited many years later Eustratios's holy body in the monastery known under the name of Satyros which he had just then constructed from the foundations. This same was also called after the Rising One (*Anatellon*) in such a wise. First it was indeed called 'Satyros,' because at a short distance from the monastery was the ancient so-called Satyros, in which there was a temple built by pagans to this Satyros; and, by homonymy, because the monastery was near by, it was called by the same name. From this Satyros did the emperor Theophilus, the constructor of the palace of Bryas, take material when he built the latter. And it was called 'The Rising One' (*Anatellon*), for such a reason. Once when the emperor Nicephorus was hunting in the parts where the monastery is now, on account of their wooded and impassable nature well-suited to the pursuit of animals, a very large deer appeared and was chased and caught in the very place where the monastery's altar has now been constructed; and there an ancient table supported by a pillar was discovered with such writing on it: 'This is the holy altar of the Archistratege Michael, the Rising One (*Anatellon*), which the apostle Andrew consecrated.' These things, however, did not occur then, but later, after much time had passed.

11. But let us return to our account and let us enquire as to the reason which thus, as if by consensus, prevailed upon both of these men: on Michael not at all to stand his ground for the empire – for, quoth the proverb, there is

- Λέοντα δὲ θαρρούντως ἐπιβῆναι καὶ κατατολμῆσαι αὐτῆς. καὶ γὰρ
 5 ταύτην μόνην εἵποιοι ἂν ἐγὼ εἶναι ἀληθινωτάτην παιδείαν τε καὶ γυμ-
 νασίαν πρὸς τὰς πολιτικὰς πράξεις, τὴν ἐναργεστάτην αἰτίαν καὶ τὸ μὴ
 τήνδε ἀλλὰ τήνδε τὴν ἐπικεκαλυμμένην καταφωρᾶν, ἧς πᾶσα δὴ βίβλος B 22
 ἱστορικὴ στερουμένη καὶ ἀπογυμνουμένη οὐκ οἶδ' εἴ τινα καὶ ὄνησιν
 παράσχη τοῖς ἐντυγχάνουσιν. ὑπῆρχε δὴ τῷ Μιχαήλ θεραπαινίδιον τι
 10 πρόσοικον, ὃ κατὰ τινὰς ἐκβακχευόμενον τε καὶ ἐνεργούμενον περιόδους
 ἀπεφοίβαζε τε καὶ ἐμαντεύετο, καὶ πρὸς τῷ τοῦ Βουκολέοντος αἰγιαλῷ
 προσφοιτῶν “κατάβηθι ἐκεῖθεν, κατάβηθι”, γεγωνότερον, “ὦ Μιχαήλ”,
 ἐπεβόα, “καὶ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων ἀφίστασο”, πρὸς αὐτὸν δὴ τοῦτον ἀπορ-
 15 ριπτοῦσα φωνάς. οὐκ ἔλαθε γοῦν τοῦτο πολλάκις γενόμενον οὐδὲ τοὺς
 ἐθελοκωφεῖν ἐθέλοντας καὶ τὸν βίον παραπέμπειν εὐφρόσυνον, ἀλλ' ἔφθα-
 σεν ὅψε γοῦν εἰς τὰς βασιλικὰς ἀκοάς, θροῦν καὶ λαλίαν τινα οὐκ εὐελπιν
 ἐμποιοῦν. καὶ ὅς – φιλεῖ γὰρ ἕκαστος τὸ φιλοῦν ἐκπομπεύειν τοῖς φι-
 20 λουμένοις – Θεοδότῳ τινὶ τῷ κατὰ τὸν Μελισσηνὸν γνησίῳ δοκοῦντι, ᾧ
 ἐπώνυμον ὁ Κασσιτερᾶς, τὰ τῶν λόγων ἀνεκοινοῦτο, καὶ τινα βουλήν
 ἐξανύεσθαι συνεβούλευεν αἰσίαν ὄντως καὶ ἀσφαλῆ. ἡ δὲ ἦν τοῦ κατὰ τὸν
 καιρὸν ὅτε δὴ φοιβόληπτον γένηται τὸ κοράσιον ἀκριβολογῆσαι τρόπῳ
 παντὶ τίς τε εἴη οἰκία τοῦ βασιλεύοντος καὶ κλῆσιν ἥντινα φέρει καὶ
 25 ὁποῖος τούτου ὁ χαρακτήρ. ἐδόκει ταῦτα ποιεῖν, καὶ ἡ ἐνεργουμένη
 πνεύματι Πύθωνος οὐδὲν ὑποστειλαμένη “κατὰ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν”, φησί,
 “γενομένῳ σοι κατὰ τὸν δεῖνα καιρὸν δύο τινὲς ἄνθρωποι εἰσελεύσονται·
 Λέων ὄνομα τῷ ἐνὶ ἐποχουμένῳ ἡμίονον, θατέρῳ δὲ ἑτερον· οὗτος δὴ τῆς
 βασιλείας κατευμοιρήσειεν.” ταῦτα γοῦν ἐκεῖνος ὁ θεομιστῆς ἀνὴρ
 30 ἐξόμνυταί τε πρὸς | τὸν βασιλέα καὶ λέγει τῶν γενομένων οὐδὲν, λήρους B 23
 δὲ τοὺς λόγους ἀποκαλεῖ καὶ μηδὲν ἔχοντας ὑγιές. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐκείνῳ λῆροι ἢ
 ἔμετος ἄλλως· ἅπεισι γὰρ εὐθύς, καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα, ὡς ἀκηκόει, καταλαβὼν ἐν
 τῷ τοῦ θείου Παύλου σηκῷ τῷ ὀρφανούς τρέφειν λαχόντι, συνεδριάσας | f. 7v
 καὶ ὁμολογίαις κατεμπεδώσας καὶ ὀχυρώσας καὶ θαρρεῖν καὶ χαίρειν πα-

5–9 Polybius I 2 φάσκοντες ἀληθινωτάτην μὲν εἶναι παιδείαν καὶ γυμνασίαν πρὸς τὰς πολι-
 τικὰς πράξεις τὴν ἐκ τῆς ἱστορίας μάθησιν, ἐναργεστάτην δὲ καὶ μόνην διδάσκαλον τοῦ
 δύνασθαι τὰς τῆς τύχης μεταβολὰς γενναίως ὑποφέρειν; 24 Acta 16.16, cf. Photius Lexicon
 E no. 20, Suda E no. 45;

6 ἐναργεστάτην edd Boor : ἐνεργεστάτην V 7 τήνδε sic bis V 7 τὴν om. edd
 7 καταφωρᾶν Boor : καταφορὰν V edd 8 καὶ om. edd 9 παράσχοι edd 9 δὴ : δὲ
 edd 9 τῷ V : om. edd, sed con. Bekk in app. 9 αἰτία δι' ἣν οὗτος ὁ Μιχαήλ εὐχερῶς
 ἐξέστη τῆς βασιλείας καὶ περὶ τῆς θεραπαινίδος τῆς τὸ πνεῦμα τοῦ Πύθωνος ἐχούσης V
 maiusc. in marg. 14 γ' οὖν V 16 ὅψε γ' οὖν V 17 φιλοῦν V : λυποῦν edd Boor
 20 ἐσυμβούλευεν edd 22 βασιλεύοντος edd Boor 26 ἡμίονῳ edd 26 δὴ : δὲ B edd
 27 γ' οὖν edd 28 ἐγνωσμένων con. Boor in app. c Scyl 12.89–90 ἀπηγγεῖλε τῶν
 ἐγνωσμένων οὐδὲν 28 λῆρον edd 32 ὁμογίαις V 32 κατεμπαίδώσας V 32 θαρεῖν V

wrath even in the ant – and on Leo to proceed boldly and make a bid for it. For I should say that the sole really true teaching and training in political affairs is this, to discover both the most evident reason and that which is not evident but rather hidden. I know not what, if any, profit a book deprived and stripped of this might afford its readers. Now Michael had a serving maid dwelling nearby who, being periodically roused and affected with Bacchic frenzy, pronounced prophecies and predictions. Frequenting the shore of the Bucoleon she would cry out quite loudly, ‘Come down from there, come down, O Michael, and withdraw from the places that belong to others,’ thus uttering her speech to him himself. This occurred many times and did not escape the notice even of those who desired to turn a deaf ear and lead a merry life; finally it came also to the ears of the emperor, provoking murmur and no cheerful talk. And Michael – for everyone loves to parade his love before those whom he loves – communicated the matter of these words to a certain Theodotos Melissenos, called Kassiteras, who seemed a genuine friend, and solicited him, in order to obtain some opportune and sound counsel. Now, the other’s counsel was that he should ascertain by every means, at the time when the maiden was inspired by prophecy, which was the house of the emperor, and what name he bore and how he was of figure. It was resolved to do this, and she who was affected by the spirit of Pytho in no wise refraining said, ‘If you go to the acropolis at such and such a time, two men will enter: Leo is the name of one, riding on a mule, and the other’s another; this one would be well off for the empire.’ But that God-hating man abjured these things before the emperor and told him nothing of what he had found out, calling her words nonsense, containing nothing sound. But for this Theodotos they were not nonsense or mere vomit; for he went off straightway and came upon the man, as he had heard, in the sanctuary of the divine Paul which had become a home for orphans, and after deliberating with him and fortifying and emboldening him with admissions and bidding him take heart

- ρακελευσάμενος, “ἐκ θείας φωνῆς”, ἔλεγεν, “διδασχθῆναι με ἀπορρήτως τὰ μέλλοντα τῆς σέ βασιλείᾳ διαπρυσίως κηρηττούσης”. ταῦτα γοῦν ὑπο-
 35 λαληθέντα καὶ οἷον δευτέρᾳ τινι χρώματα ὡς ἐν ζωγραφίᾳ ταῖς προ-
 τέραις ἐμμορφωθέντα σκιαῖς – ἐκείνας λέγω πρώτας τὰς ὑπὸ τοῦ κατὰ τὸ
 Φιλομήλιον μοναχοῦ ἐκφανθείσας – οὐκέτι ἐν εἰδώλῳ καὶ ἐμφάσει τινὶ
 40 ἐποίει τὴν βασιλείαν ὄραν, γυμνὴν δὲ καὶ οἷον ἐκβάσει σαφῶς. τοῦτο
 οὖν τὴν τε ἤδη κατηθαλωμένην τοῦ Λέοντος καὶ οἷον ἀπομαρानθεῖσαν
 φλόγα τῆς ἐλπίδος ὑποτύφεσθαι τε καὶ ἀναζωπυρεῖσθαι ἐποίησεν καὶ τὸν
 Μιχαὴλ ἐν ἀβύσσῳ ἀθυμίας καταδῦναι πολλῇ, καὶ τοῦ μὲν τὸν τῆς ψυχῆς
 πύργον ἀνέστησε, τοῦ δὲ ἐγκατέσεισεν· οὐ τοῦτο δὲ μόνον τὸ γύναιον,
 ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ὁ πιστευθεὶς καὶ ἐξαπατήσας τῷ ὄντι Κασσιτερᾶς. ἀλλ’ αὖθις
 ἐπὶ τὴν ἱστορίαν ἰτέον.

12. ‘Ὡς δ’ οὖν τὴν αὐτοκράτορα ἐπανείληφεν ὁ Λέων ἀρχὴν ἀναρρηθεὶς
 δημοσίᾳ κατὰ τὸν Ἰούλιον μῆνα τῆς ἕκτης ἰνδικτιῶνος, Μιχαὴλ μὲν τὸν
 τὴν γλῶτταν ὑποσυρίζοντα τῇ τῶν πατρικίων ἐγκαταλέγει τιμῇ,
 τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ πρότερον ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ λουτροῦ | υἱοποιησάμενος, B 24
 5 Θωμᾶν δὲ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ διαφερόντως ὁμήλικα καὶ συμπαίστωρα τῶν Φοι-
 δεράτων τουρμάρχη ἐγκαθιστᾷ. καὶ Μανουὴλ δὲ τὸν <τοῦ> Μιχαὴλ
 πρωτοστράτωρα πατρικίῳ ἐγκαταλέξας καὶ στρατηγὸν τιμήσας τῶν
 Ἀρμενίων, “οὐκ ἔδει σε”, ἔφη, “πρὸς τὸν κατ’ ἐμοῦ ὀπλίζεσθαι πόλεμον,
 σύμβουλον τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τῆς Προκοπίας γενόμενον”. καὶ ὅς εὖ μάλα
 10 παρρησιασάμενος “ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ σὲ ἔδει”, ἀντέφησεν, “κατὰ τοῦ εὐεργέτου,
 ἔτι δὲ καὶ συντέκνου σου, χεῖρα ἀντᾶραι”. τότε μὲν οὖν τούτοις κατεσι-
 γάσθη τὴν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς αἰδεσθεὶς ἀρετήν.

12.1–2 : die 11 Iul. a. 813 Leo Armenus imperator proclamatus est, cf. supra I.6.55–56

35–36 Gregorius Nazianzenus Epist. 30 sect. 1; 41–42 *Analecta Hymnica Graeca*, *Canones Septembris dies 9*, canon 13, oda 4, ln. 10 οὐκ ἔσεισαν τῆς ψυχῆς σου τὸν πύργον sive *Canones Martiij dies 14*, canon 17, oda 5, ln. 10 οὐκ ἔσεισε τὸν πύργον ὁ ἄθεος τῆς ψυχῆς σου Cap. 12: Gen 9.94–10.2 | Scyl 13.25–32

33 παρακελευσάμενος V 34 τῆς σε – κηρυττούσης Kamb : τὴν σε – κηρύττουσαν V : τὴν σε – κηρύττουσαν edd 34 γ’ οὖν V 36 πρώτας τὰς Bekk Boor : πρώτας (sic) V : πρώτας Comb 37 οὐκ ἔτι V 38 ἐμποιεῖ edd 39 ἀπομαρανθεῖσα V 40 τε καὶ ἀναζωπυρεῖσθαι om. edd 41 τὸν Μιχαὴλ edd : τοῦ Μιχαὴλ V 41 καταδύναι edd Boor : καταδοῦναι V 41 τὸν om. edd 42 ἀνέστησεν edd 43 καὶ om. edd 43 Κασσιτερᾶς V 12.1 εἰληφεν edd 1 Λέ α. corr. V (ον add. in marg. V²) 2 περὶ Μιχαὴλ τοῦ τραυλοῦ καὶ ὅτι ὑπὸ τοῦ τυράννου Λέοντος τιμᾶται πατρικίος V maiusc. in marg. 3 τιμῇ V 5 ὁμήλικα V 5 συμπαίστωρα edd Boor 6 τουρμάχην V 6 <τοῦ> nos add. 7 πρωτοστράτορα edd 10 μάλιστα παρρησιαζόμενος edd 11 ἀντᾶραι V

and rejoice, he said, 'I have been secretly taught future events by a divine voice, which in thrilling wise proclaims you emperor.' These words spoken in a whisper, like second layers in painting which give form to the earlier sketches – by these I mean those revealed by the monk in Philomelion – made it possible to see the empire no longer as some vague image or impression, but in uncovered wise, as if something clearly accomplished. This caused the already spent and, as it were, extinguished flame of Leo's hope to smoulder and be rekindled, whereas it caused Michael to sink in a great abyss of despair; it raised up the rampart of Leo's soul and threw down that of Michael. Nor was this due only to the woman, but also the trusted and yet deceiving Kassiteras. But we must return to our history.

12. Now, when Leo assumed the imperial office, being acclaimed in public in the month of July in the sixth indiction, he bestowed the dignity of patrikios on Michael who lisped in his speech, having earlier sponsored his son in divine baptism, and as turmarch of the Phoideratoi he appointed Thomas who was above all others close to him in age and was his playmate. And he enrolled Michael's protostrator Manuel amongst the patrikioi, granting him the rank of general of the theme of the Armenians: 'You ought not,' he said, 'to have taken up arms against me being as you were the advisor to the emperor and Procopia.' But the other, speaking quite boldly, replied, 'And you ought not to have raised your hand against your benefactor and fellow godparent.' Thereupon he fell silent from a sense of shame before the man's virtue.

13. Ὡς δὲ τὸν τῶν Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντα τῇ προτεραίᾳ νίκη φρονημα-
τιζόμενον διακήκοεν καὶ αὐθις δηοῦντα μὲν τὴν γείτονα γῆν, κείροντα δὲ
καὶ λεηλατοῦντα τοὺς ἀγροὺς καὶ πολλὰ μὲν σώματα πολλὰ δὲ
15 βροσκήματα καθαρπάζοντα, οἰκήσεις δ' ἐτέρωθεν κατεμπιμπρῶντα καὶ
ὅλως ὄντα ἀφόρητον, πρῶτον μὲν δεῖν ὡθήθῃ διὰ πρεσβείας εἰρήνης ἀνα-
μνησαι αὐτόν, ὥς δ' οὐκ ἔπεισεν, τὰ τῶν τειχῶν διερρυηκότα δι' ἑαυτοῦ
ἀνοικοδομησάμενος ἐξεβοήθει διὰ ταχέων, καὶ γενόμενος ἐν Μεσημβρίᾳ | f. 8
τῇ πόλει τοιοῦτῳ τινὶ ἐχρήσατο στρατηγήματι. ἡμέρας ἱκανὰς ἔν τινι
τόπῳ ἐπιταφρώσας ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τὸν στρατὸν ἐκαθέζετο ἐκάστοτε σι-
10 τιζόμενος ἀπὸ τῆς ἡμετέρας καὶ λειπόμενος τῶν ἀναγκαίων, ἀλλὰ καὶ
<τῶν> πρὸς τρυφήν, οὐδενός. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς παρακειμένους καὶ κατ' αὐτοῦ
καθωπλισμένους Βουλγάρους ἐν στενότητι εἶναι καὶ τῶν ἀναγκαίων
ἀκήκοεν, τοῦ μὲν οὐ ἐφήδρευε τόπου νύκτωρ ἀπάνεισι μετὰ στρατιωτῶν
15 ἱκανῶν καὶ ῥώμῃ τε καὶ | καρτερία γεγυμνασμένων, ἐνὶ μόνῳ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ B 25
παραγυμνώσας γνώμην, καὶ πρὸς λόχον ἐπὶ τινος βουνοῦ χωρεῖ,
σύνθημα τοῦ πολέμου καὶ ὥραν εἰπών· ὥς δ' ἡμέρα ἀνέλαμπε καὶ ὁ
στρατηγὸς ἐγυμνοῦτο τοῦ βασιλεύοντος, φυγῇ χρῆσασθαι τοῦτον, τὸν
βασιλέα δηλονότι, πάντες καθωμολόγουν, τῶν γεγονότων εἰδότες οὐδέν.
20 ὅθεν ἀναθαρρήσαντες οἱ ἐναντίοι μένειν ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν οὐδ' ὅλως ἠδύναντο,
ἀλλὰ καὶ κατεξανίσταντο καὶ ἐπὶ χεῖρας ῥοντο τὸ στράτευμα ἔχειν.
νυκτὸς οὖν ἐπιγενομένης κάτεισιν ἐκ τοῦ λόχου ὁ Λέων ἀπροσδοκίτοις
οὔσι κακῶν, καὶ συμμίξας αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν ὅπλων γυμνοῖς καὶ διαλε-
λυμένοις ὕπνῳ τε καὶ θάρρει τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως φυγῆς τοσοῦτον ἐνειρ-
25 γάσατο φθόρον καὶ φόνον πάντοθεν ἐκχυθέντων τῶν Ῥωμαίων κατὰ τὸ
σύνθημα, ὥς πανδημεὶ αἰρήσai τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ μὴ δὲ πυρφόρον, τὸ
δὴ λεγόμενον, διασωθῆναι. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ πᾶσαν ἡλικίαν ἐκ κατα-
δρομῆς τε καὶ προνομῆς ἀνάρπαστον θεῖς καὶ τὰ τέκνα τούτων ταῖς
πέτραις καὶ τῇ γῇ προσκροτῶν, τὴν ἑαυτοῦ κατέλαβεν ἐν βραχεῖ. ὅθεν ἐκ-

13.23–29 : ca. a. 815–816 Leo Armenus Bulgaros apud Montem Leonis vinxit, cf. Treadgold, *Rin. St. Biz. e Slavi* 4 (1985) 217–220 et Signes 1995, 107–110

Cap. 13: Gen 10.4–19 | Scyl 13.32–14.54 || 1–2 Diodorus Siculus 12.48.3 Φορμίων δὲ
τῇ προγεγεννημένῃ νίκη φρονηματισθεῖς; 25–26 Cassius Dio *Historiae Romanae* lib. 39
cap. 45 sect. 4 ln. 4, Michael Apostolius *Paroemiae* cent. XIII sect. 34a, cf. Herodotus 8.6, Suda Π
no. 3251

13.2 διοῦντα V 4 καθ' ἀρπάζοντα V 4 κατεμπιμπρῶντα edd 5 ἀφόρητον V 7 δια-
ταχέων V 7 ἐμ Μεσημβρία V 8 διεχρήσατο edd 9 τὸν στρατὸν ante corr. B edd Boor :
τῷ στρατῷ V (et B post corr.) 11 <τῶν> conī. Boor in app. 12 καθ' ὠπλισμένους V
12 καὶ om. edd 14 τὲ V 17 στρατὸς conī. Comb in app. 17 στρατήγημα καὶ
τρόπαιον τοῦ τυράννου Λέοντος κατὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων V maiusc. in marg. 17 χρῆσασθαι
V 18 δηλον (sic) ὅτι V 18 καθ' ὠμολόγουν V 19 ἠδύναντω V : ἐδύναντο edd
23 διαλελυμένοις V 23 τὲ V 24 ἐκχυθέντων τῶν : ἐκχυθέντων V 25 πανδημεὶ V
25 πυρφόρων V 28 βραχεῖ : τάχει edd

13. When Leo heard that the ruler of the Bulgars, filled with presumption by his earlier victory, was again devastating the neighbouring country, cutting down and ravaging fields and carrying off a great many people and livestock, but also burning down inhabited districts and thus becoming completely intolerable, he first thought it good to remind him of the peace by means of an embassy; and when he failed to persuade him, he restored through his own efforts the parts of the walls that had collapsed and marched out in haste, and arriving at Mesembria he employed such a stratagem as this. Digging himself and his army in for a number of days in a certain place he encamped there, being continuously provisioned from our lands and lacking none of the necessities of life or even luxuries. And when he learnt that the Bulgars who were nearby and who had taken arms against him were in need of the very necessities of life, he withdrew by night from where he had been lying in wait with a good number of soldiers practised in strength and endurance, revealing his intention only to one man; and telling him the signal and hour for battle, he went off to a certain hill to wait in ambush. When day dawned and the general was left without the emperor, it was the consensus of all, knowing nothing of what had happened, that he, that is the emperor, had taken flight. Therefore the enemy, regaining their courage, could in no wise restrain themselves where they were and, taking the offensive they thought to have the army in their hands. But when night fell Leo descended from his hiding place upon them, unsuspecting of any evil; and joining battle with these men who were without their arms and were slackened through sleep and confidence in the emperor's flight, he wrought such destruction and slaughter as the Romans poured forth on all sides at the signal that he captured their army to a man and, as the saying goes, not even the fire-bearer was spared. Moreover, through attack and incursion he took captives of every age, dashing their children upon the rocks and ground, and quickly regained his own country.

30 τότε ἐκεῖνός τε ὁ βουνὸς Λέοντος ἐπωνομάσθη· καὶ οἱ αἰεῖ ἐκέῖσε διαβρι-
βαζόμενοι τῶν Βουλγάρων τὴν κεφαλὴν ἐπισείοντες δακτυλοδεικτοῦσι,
καὶ λήθην λαμβάνουσι τῶν τότε κακῶν οὐδαμῶς.

14. Τοῦτο γοῦν θρασύτερόν πως αὐτὸν καὶ ἱταμώτερον ἐνειργάσατο
τὸ προτέρημα, καὶ εἰς τὴν σύντροφον ὠμότητα ἐναπέρραξε. μικροῦ γὰρ
καὶ μείζονος οὐκ ἦν αὐτῷ διαφορὰ ἀμαρ|τήματος, ἀλλὰ κατὰ πάντων ἐφ’ B 26
ᾧ τινι καταλαμβανομένων μία ψῆφος, τὸ ἀκρωτηριάζεσθαι τῶν ἀναγ-
5 καίων μέλος ὅποιονοῦν καὶ πάντων ἐπ’ ὅψεσι τίθεσθαι ἐκκρεμές. ἃ καὶ
πᾶσιν † πεποικηκότων τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐνέτικτον μῖσος δὲ τούτου καὶ δει-
νὴν ἀπέχθειαν· οἷς γὰρ ἄκρατον τὴν ἐγχώριον θηριωδίαν ἐνήσκησε, | f. 8v
ἀλλ’ οὐ κεκολασμένην τινὰ καὶ πρὸς τὸ πραότερον ἀπονεύουσαν, τὴν
συγγενίδα φύσιν ἐκφαυλίζων ἀνηλεῶς, μισθὸν τὸ ἐχθος ἀλλ’ οὐ τὴν
10 φιλίαν ἡμπόλησεν.

15. Ταῦτ’ οὖν ἔπραττεν, καὶ κατὰ νοῦν λαμβάνει τὸν ἐπὶ τῷ Φι-
λομηλίῳ μονάζοντα, καὶ ἀμείβεσθαι οἱ δοκεῖ τῆς προρρήσεως, εὐχα-
ριστήριά τινα προπέμπων αὐτῷ, τὰς τοῦ κράτους νίκας δῆθεν αἰτῶν.
ἀλλ’ ἐκεῖνος μὲν ἤδη φθάσας ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο, πονηρὸς δέ τις δαίμων
5 καὶ βάσκανος – οὐ γὰρ ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον καλέσαιμι τὸν πάντα
συγχέαντα καὶ ταράξαντα καὶ κατὰ τὸν παλαιὸν ὄφιν τὸν ἰὸν τοῖς τοῦ
ταλαιπώρου Λέοντος ὥσιν ἐκχέαντα ἀνεπίστατον κεκτημένου ὄλον τὸν
νοῦν – τῷ τοῦ γέροντος οἰκίσκῳ ἐν εὐλαβείας προσχήματι ἐγκατέλαβεν.
Σαββάτιος οὗτος ἐλέγετο, ὃς καὶ τὸν βασιλικὸν ἄγγελον πολλὰ προσ-
10 ονειδίζων καὶ δύσφημα κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς πρόσωπον ἀλλ’ οὐχ ὑπὸ
κόλπον λαλῶν – ἥ μὴν ἐξελιπάρει μηδὲν καθυποσπελλόμενον ἐξειπεῖν – ὥς
“οὐκ ἔσται σοι τὸ βασιλεύειν ἐπὶ πολὺ εἰδῶλοις” – ὦ τῆς καταράτου
γλώσσης ἐκείνης – “προσανέχοντι καὶ τολμῶντι τοῖς ὑπὸ τῆς παρ|δοῦς B 27
καὶ θυάδος καὶ ταραξίου σεβομένοις”, τὴν βασιλεύσασαν Εἰρήνην καὶ

Cap. 14: Gen 13.83–91 | Scyl 16.43–17.52 Cap. 15: Epist ad Theophilum 115.1–28,
179.6–183.2; Gen 10.20–11.39 | PsSym 604.20–605.5, 605.10–18; Scyl 14.55–81

29 τὲ V : om. edd 29 ἐπ’ ὠνομάσθη V 14.1 γ’ οὖν V 2 ἐν ἀπέρραξε V 4 τὸ edd : τῷ
V 5 ἐπόψεσι V 6 post πᾶσιν coní. ἔλεον μὲν τῶν vel simile Boor in app. 6 πεποικημένα
coní. Comb in marg 6 δὲ : δὴ edd 15.1 κατανοῦν V 2 ἀμείβεσθαι οἱ V 3 εὐχαρ-
ιστήρια τινὰ V 3 προσπέμπων coní. Bekk in app. 7 ἐγχέαντα Bekk 8 προσσχέματι
(sic) V 9 Σαββάτιος nos e Gen 10.24 PsSym 604.23 Scyl 14. 61 : Συμβάτιος V edd περὶ τοῦ
μοναχοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ ἐξάρχου τοῦ τυράννου Λέοντος· τὰ κατὰ τῶν ἁγίων εἰκόνων ἀθέως
καὶ δυσσεβῶς ὑποσπείραντι V maiusc. in marg. 9 καὶ τὸν : τὸν om. Comb : καὶ del. Bekk
11 ὑποκόλπον V : ὑπὸ κόλπου Boor in app. 11 μὴδὲν V 11 καθ’ ὑποσπελλόμενον ἐξ
εἰπεῖν V 12 ἔσται σοι V 12 ἐπιπολὺ V

And from that time on the hill there was given the name of Leo, and Bulgars who pass by shake their heads and point with their fingers, in no wise able to forget the woes of that time.

14. This success rendered him yet bolder and more audacious and brought out his innate cruelty. For he made no distinction between great and minor offences but passed one and the same sentence against all who were apprehended on whatever charge: the cutting off of a vital limb and its exhibition, suspended in the sight of all. These deeds instilled <pity [?]> in all men for those who carried them out them but hatred and abject loathing for Leo. For by exercising his inborn ferocity in unbridled and in no wise restrained fashion, indisposed toward any mildness, mercilessly abasing the nature of his fellow men, he reaped the reward of enmity, not friendship.

15. Now he did these things; and he was reminded of the monk in Philomelion, and he thought fit to reward him for his prophecy, sending him gifts in thanks, as if soliciting victories for his reign. But the other had already left the company of men and in the monk's little dwelling there lived, in the guise of piety, an evil, envious demon – for I should not call this a man who confounded and disrupted everything, who after the manner of the serpent of old poured his venom into the ears of the wretched Leo whose mind was wholly without judgement. This person was called Symbatios, and he heaped many reproaches upon the imperial messenger and spoke words of ill omen against the emperor, directly to other's face and not under his own bosom – indeed, the other had entreated him to speak out, withholding naught: 'You will not reign for long if you devote yourself to idols' – Oh, how accursed his tongue! – 'and make bold in the things venerated by the Leopard and Bacchante and the Stirrer', for it was thus that he disparaged the empress Irene

- 15 τὸν ἐν ἁγίοις Ταράσιον ἀφέτω γλώττη περὶ τῶν θείων εἰκόνων οὕτως ἀποκαλῶν. ὁ δὲ Λέων, τὸ ὄντως δαιμόνων εἶδωλον, τὸ τῆς ἀμαθίας ἀνδράποδον, τὸ σκιᾶς ἀφωρότερον, δέον τούτων κατολιγωρῆσαι, ἢ <εἰ> μὴ τοῦτο, ἐκπομπεύειν γοῦν καὶ θεατρίζειν ταῦτα τῷ τὰς τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἡνίας ἰθύνοντι, καὶ σύνοδον συγκροτῆσαι περὶ μεγάλων μεγάλως ἀνερευ-
 20 νῶν, ἀλλ’ οὐκ ἀνδράσι μηδὲν ὑγιᾶς φρονοῦσι, μὴ δὲ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ – φεῦ τῆς μετὰ δόλου φιλίας – ἀλλὰ τὰ οἰκεῖα προμηθουμένων καὶ προδιοικουμένων, τῷ φιλουμένῳ ἀνακοινοῦται Κασσιτερᾷ καὶ τὰ ἐπεσταλμένα ἄγει τούτῳ εἰς φῶς. ὁ δὲ κακῷ τὸ κακὸν καὶ λύσση λύσσαν οὐ θεραπεύων ἀλλ’ ἐπεγεῖρων, ἕτερόν τινα τῇ ὁμοίᾳ δόξῃ περὶ τῶν θείων εἰκόνων
 25 ἐνισχημένον κατὰ τὸν Μαυριανοῦ ἔμβολον ἐνσκηνοῦντα ἀναγνωρίζει, ἀπέραντά τινα καὶ μετέωρα λεσχηνεύων καὶ ὑπὲρ ἄγγελον τοῦτον εἶναι διαβεβαιούμενος. “τούτῳ οὖν, ὦ βασιλεῦ, χρῶ περὶ τῶν τοιούτων μυσταγωγῶ· καὶ ὃ ἂν εἴπῃ σοι ποιῶν οὐχ ἁμαρτήσεις τοῦ δέοντος”.

16. Ὡς οὖν ἐπεράνατο τὰ τῆς συμβουλῆς, μεταθέειν ἔγνω πρὸς τὸν μονάζοντα, καὶ τοῦτον καταντλήσας ταῖς φληναφίαις | προσέθηκεν ὥς f. 9
 “κατὰ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα ἰδιώτου σχῆμα ἀναλαβόμενον αὐτὸν ἐνταῦθα τὸν βασιλέα ἀγάγω σοι, περὶ τε πίστεως καὶ ἄλλων οὐκ εὐκαταφρονήτων
 5 πραγμάτων συμβουλευσόμενον. τοῦτον οὖν ἔτη δύο καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα | B 28
 τὴν βασιλείαν κατευθύνειν καθυπισχνοῦ, καὶ τρισκαίδέκατον ἀρίθμει τῶν ἀποστόλων, καὶ παῖδας παίδων ἐπὶ θρόνου τῆς βασιλείας ἰδεῖν, εἴ γε Λέοντος τοῦ ἐξ Ἰσαυρίας συστοιχεῖ πως τῷ δόγματι. μὴ ὑπισχνουμένου δὲ ἀλλ’ ἀπαναινομένου, ἐξώλειαν καὶ ἀπώλειαν καὶ κρημνούς καὶ βάραθρα
 10 ἠπειλῆσθαι τούτῳ ἐπόμενον ἐκ θεοῦ”. ταῦτ’ οὖν ἐκ σκαιωρίας καὶ γνώμης πονηρᾶς ἀναδιδάξας, τὸν βασιλέα ἤγεν κατὰ τὸν δηλωθέντα καιρόν. καὶ ἐπεῖπερ εἰσήεσαν μετὰ τοῦ Θεοδότου καὶ τῶν ἀπορρήτων ἀπήρχοντο, “οὐ χρή σε”, ἔφη ὁ μοναχός, “τὴν ἀλουργίδα καταλιμπάνοντα, βασιλεῦ, ἰδιώτου σχῆμα ἀλλάσσεσθαι καὶ τρώγειν γνώμας οὕτω τὰς τῶν πολ-
 15 λῶν”. καὶ ὃς ἐκπαθῆς ἅμα καὶ παραπλήξ τῷ ῥήματι τούτῳ γενόμενος, καὶ ἄλλως οἰηθεὶς ἐκ θείας εἶναι προγνώσεως, ὥς σκιά τῷ ἀνδριάντι εἶπετο

|| 17 Aelius Aristides Πρὸς Πλάτωνα ὑπὲρ τῶν τεττάρων 309, cf. Photius, Bibl. cod. 248 p. 438a Cap. 16: Gen 11.40–59 | Ps.Sym 605.18–606.10; Scyl 14.81–15.7

15 Ταράσιον V 17 τὸ τῆς σκιᾶς edd 17 εἰ add. Bekk Boor 20 ἀνερευνῶντα vel ἀνερευνῶσαν con. Bekk in app. 22 fortasse προμηθουμένοις καὶ προδιοικουμένοις 22 Κασσιτερᾷ V 22 ἀπεσταλμένα edd 25 τὸν: τοῦ edd: τὸ Bekk in app. 26 ὑπὲρ ἄγγε-
 λον Boor in app.: ὑπεράγγελον V edd. 28 δ: ὦ V 28 εἴποι edd. 16.1 ἐπεραίνετο Boor in app. 2 κατάντλήσας V 2 φλυαρίαις edd 4 τὸν om. edd 4 ἀνάγω (vel ἄγω) Boor in app. 5 συμβουλευόμενον edd 6 κατευθυνεῖν edd 6 ἀρείθμει V: ἀριθμεῖσθαι Boor in app. 8 τοῦ om. edd 9 τὴν ἐξώλειαν edd 9 καὶ ἀπώλειαν iteravit V 10 ἠπειλῆσθαι 12 εἰσήεσαν V 13 ὦ βασιλεῦ edd 16 εἶπετο V

and saintly Tarasios¹ with loose speech concerning the divine images. Now Leo, who was indeed the idol of the demons, the slave of ignorance, muter than a shadow, ought to have made light of these words, or else to have dispatched and held them up for show to the person charged with directing the Church, convoking a council and making enquiry into serious matters in serious wise, rather than to men with no sound thinking, for they were concerned and preoccupied not with his affairs – alas, what friendship in treacherous wise! – but with their own; but instead he communicated with his beloved Kassiteras and made known to him what had been enjoined. And this latter, not assuaging but rousing evil with evil and fury with fury, acquainted Leo with another person who held a similar opinion of the divine images and who dwelt in the portico of Maurianos; and with endless and vapid chatter he assured him that this same was greater than an angel: ‘Consult this man, O emperor, as an initiator in these matters, and in doing whatever he says you shall not go wrong.’

16. When this advice was given he decided to go off to the monk, and pouring a flood of words over him he concluded: ‘This coming night I shall bring to you, in the habit of a private person, the emperor himself, in order that he may take counsel with you concerning the faith and other matters of no little importance. Promise him that he will reign over the empire for seventy-two years, and count him as the thirteenth apostle, and that he will see his childrens’ children on the throne, if only he agrees with the doctrine of Leo the Isaurian. And if he does not so promise but rather refuses, swear by God that he is threatened with utter destruction and ruin and precipices and abysses.’ Thus instructing him with mischief and evil intention he brought the emperor at the time indicated. When they entered with Theodotos and began the consultation, the monk said, ‘You ought not, O emperor, to put off the purple cloak, exchanging it for the habit of a private person in order thus to sample the opinions of the rabble.’ By this speech Leo was at once excited and deranged; moreover, believing it to be by divine foreknowledge, he indeed obeyed the monk’s words, as the shadow follows a statue, and was wholly

¹ Play on Ταράσιος and Ταράξιος, from τάραξις/τάρασσω

ἀληθῶς, καὶ ὅλος ἤρτητο καὶ ἐκρέματα, ἐξ ὧτων ὥσπερ τι κεραμεοῦν ἀγγεῖον, τοῖς λόγοις τοῦ μοναχοῦ. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν εἴρηται καὶ τοῖς πρὸ ἡμῶν δι' ἐμμέτρου ποιήσεως.

17. Αὐτίκα γοῦν τὴν τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων ἀναγορεύει καθαίρεσιν, καὶ τὸν πατριάρχην – Νικηφόρος δὲ οὗτος ἦν – γραφῇ αὐτοχείρῳ ἡξίου τούτῳ συγκατατίθεσθαι, εἴ γε μὴ μέλλοι ὑπερορίαν καταψηφίζεσθαι. ὁ δὲ καὶ ἄλλοθεν τεκμηράμενος τὴν τοῦ τυράννου πρὸς τὸ θεῖον ἀπέχθειαν, 5 ἄγεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ συνεῖναι τοιούτῳ κρίνας ἀπήγετο πρὸς τὴν καταψηφισθεῖσαν ὁμολογίαν· καὶ Θεόδοτος ὁ Κασσιτερᾶς τὸν τῆς ἱεραρχίας θρόνον ἄθλον | ἐλάμβανε κατὰ τὸν τοῦ θεοῦ πάσχα καιρόν. ἄξιον δὲ μὴ δὲ τὸ B 29 τεκμήριον παραδραμεῖν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ θεῖος Νικηφόρος, ἅτε τῆς ἱερωσύνης προϊστάμενος, ἐζήτει τὴν διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ συμβόλου πρὸς τὴν θεῖαν πίστιν 10 κατάρθεσιν· ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἔφη νῦν τοῦτο ποιήσιν, ὑπερθέσθαι δὲ μέχρις ἂν ἡ τῆς βασιλείας αὐτῷ τελείως ἀνάρρησις γένηται, δηλούσης τῆς ἀναβολῆς ὡς καὶ αὐτοῦ γε προενισχημένου τῇ τῆς αἰρέσεως μανίᾳ ἐκ γενετῆς.
18. Ἔτερον δὲ τοῦ λεχθέντος σαφέστερον· ὡς γὰρ ἄρτι τὸ πρῶτον | f. 9v ἀνηγορευμένος ἐδεῖτο τοῦ διαδήματος, καὶ τοῦτο ἔδει τὸν ἀρχιερέα τῇ καταπτύστῳ ἐπιθεῖναι κεφαλῇ, προσήγγισεν δὲ ταύτῃ κατεπαφώμενος οὐ τριχῶν, ὅπερ ἐδόκει, μαλακῶν, ἀκανθῶν δὲ καὶ <τρι>βόλων, ὅπερ τῇ 5 ἀληθείᾳ ἐνῆν, ἐν αἰσθήσει ἐγένετο, ἀκίσιν οἷον κατακεντούμενος καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ὀδύναις περιπειρόμενος. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν πρότερον. τότε γοῦν ὁ πατριάρχης ὑπερόριος, τὴν καταχειροτονήσασαν ψῆφον δεξάμενος, ἐπορεύετο· ὅτε δὴ καὶ λέγεται ἐφ' ὀλκάδος αὐτῷ φερομένῳ μακρᾶς κατὰ τινὰ τόπον παραθαλάττιον ὀρρωθεν ἰδεῖν Θεοφάνην τὸν μακαρίτην, θυμιά- 10 μασί τε καὶ λαμπάσι δεξιούμενον καὶ οἷον τινὰ προπομπὸν τῇ καλῇ ἐκείνῃ

17.5–6 : Mart. a. 815 Nicephorus patriarcha depositus et deportatus est 6–7 : die prima Apr. ad Pascham 815 Theodotus Cassiteras patriarcha designatus est

||17–18 cf. Plutarchus, De vitioso pudore 536A Cap. 17: Theoph 502–19–22; Scrip Inc 340.15–341.7; Vita Nicephori 163.26–164.7, 164.20–25 et passim; GeorgMon 777.5–780.18; Gen 20.2–9; Log A 210.2–4, 211.35–47 | PsSym 604.1–2, 607.10–609.13; Scyl 15.7–17, 16.36–42 Cap. 18: Vita Nicephori 164.7–19; Gen 12.60–13.82 | PsSym 604.2–6; Scyl 15.17–16.36 | 4 cf. Gn 3.18

17 ὅλως edd 17 κεραμοῦν B edd 19 δι' ἐμμέτρου Boor : δι' ἐμέτρου V : διαμέτρου Comb : διὰ μέτρου Bekk 17.1 ἄρνησις τῆς τῶν ἁγίων εἰκόνων προσκυνήσεως καὶ ὑπορία τοῦ ἁγίου Νικηφόρου τοῦ πατριάρχου καὶ ἀντισταγωγῇ τοῦ Κασσιτερᾶ V maiusc. in marg. 3 τούτῳ B in marg. Bekk in app. Boor : τοῦτο V edd 8 θεῖος om. edd 10 συγκατάθεσιν edd 18.2 ἀνηγορέμενος V 3 ταύτῃ καὶ edd : ταύτην V 4 βόλων V 6 ὅπως ὁ θεῖος Θεοφάνης ὁ τῆς Σιγριανῆς Νικηφόρον τὸν θεοσεβέστατον πατριάρχην εἰς τὴν ὑπερορίαν στελλόμενον μακρόθεν ἰδὼν προσέπεμπε maiusc. in marg. V 8 δὴ edd Boor : δὲ V 8 ἐφολκάδος V 8 μακρὰν edd 10 λαμπᾶσι V 10 καὶ om. edd 10 προπομπὴν edd

taken up and dependant on him as a ceramic vessel on its handles. But all this has been related by those before us in metric composition.

17. Forthwith, therefore, he proclaimed the destruction of the venerable images, and he demanded that the patriarch – Nicephorus it was – should assent to this in writing by his own hand; if not, he should be sentenced to banishment. Nicephorus, who had had other signs of the tyrant's enmity toward the Divinity, judging it better to leave than to have relations with such a one, went off toward the confession to which he was sentenced; and at the time of divine Easter Theodotos Kassiteras received as a prize the hierarchical throne. Nor is it fitting to omit this evidence from our account. For the divine Nicephorus, in as much as head of the priesthood, had sought Leo's promise with regard to the divine faith through the holy creed; Leo, however, said that he would not do this at the time, but would put it off until his proclamation as emperor had been fully accomplished, his hesitation demonstrating how he was even formerly, from birth, held fast by the madness of heresy.

18. And there was something yet more manifest than that which has already been related. For when Leo had first been proclaimed and sought the crown, the hierarch had to place it on his accursed head; and drawing near to touch this latter, he felt not soft hair, as it appeared, but thorns and prickles – which indeed they were – as if being pierced through with needles and wracked with pain in his hand. But this had occurred earlier. Now the patriarch was going off into banishment, after receiving the sentence of condemnation. And it was then, they say, as Nicephorus was being borne in a long ship, that he saw from afar, somewhere along the coast, the blessed Theophanes who received him with incensings and lights, like an attendant escorting

- ὁμολογία προπέμποντα. ὃν ὡς εἶκος ἀποδοχῆς ἀξιώσας καὶ θεῶ παρα-
δούς δι' εὐχῆς, τὰς χεῖρας οἶον ἄρας ἐμεταρσίως περιεβάλετο τοῦτον,
πόρρωθεν τὸν τελευταῖον ἀποδοὺς ἀσπασμόν. ἐρομένου δέ τινος τῶν B 30
συνεπομένων ὡς δὴ “τίνι τοῦτον ἀποδίδως εὐ|κτῶς τε καὶ ἐφετῶς;”, “τῷ
15 ὁμολογητῇ”, φάναι, “Θεοφάνει”, προφήτιδι γλώττη, “μονῆς προσεστῶτι
τοῦ Ἀγροῦ”. ὃ καὶ συνέβη μετ' οὐ πολὺ· αὐτὸς τε γὰρ τοῦτον ἐώρακεν
οὐδαμῶς, κἀκεῖνος τὸν τῆς ὁμολογίας στέφανον ἀνεδήσατο. καὶ τὰ μὲν
τοῦ ἀρχιερέως οὕτως.
19. Αὐτὸς δὲ οἶόν τινα τῆς αὐτοῦ βασιλείας ἀρχὴν ἐπιθείς δεξιὰν τῷ τὰ
τῆς ἐκκλησίας οὕτωςι διοικονομῆσαι, καὶ τὴν φιλοτιμίαν εἴπερ τις νοσῶν,
τῶν κοινῶν πραγμάτων ἀντελαμβάνετο, πανταχοῦ τὸ κέντρον κατὰ τοὺς
σφῆκας φέρων μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ, τὸν στρατιώτην τε ὄχλον γυμνάζων αὐτὸς,
5 καὶ πόλεις πολλαχοῦ τῶν κατὰ Θράκην καὶ Μακεδονίαν δι' ἑαυτοῦ ἐκ
βάθρων ἀνεγείρων καὶ περιπορευόμενος πανταχοῦ, ὡς φοβερός εἶναι καὶ
καταπληκτικός καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἐχθροῖς. ὑπὲρ ὧν καὶ τὸν ἅγιον Νικηφόρον
φασὶν εἰπεῖν ποτε μετὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀποβίωσιν ὡς, εἰ καὶ ἀλάστορα,
ἀλλ' οὖν ἐπιμελητὴν τῶν κοινῶν ἢ πόλιν ἄνδρα ἀπώλεσεν. καὶ περὶ τὰς
10 ἀρχὰς δὲ καὶ ἡγεμονίας, οὐ τὰς πολιτικάς δὴ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰς στρατη-
γικὰς, διεπτόητο ἰσχυρῶς καὶ χρημάτων <οὐχ> ἥττων αὐτὸς ὧν τοὺς
ἄδωροτάτους πάντων προέκρινεν, ἀριστίνδην πάντας ἀλλ' οὐ κατὰ f. 10
πλοῦ|τον τιμῶν. καὶ δικαιοσύνης λέγεσθαι μὲν ἐραστής ἐβούλετο, οὐκ
ἐγίνετο δέ· πλὴν ἀντεποιεῖτο ταύτης, καὶ πολλὰς τῶν κρίσεων δι' ἑαυτοῦ
15 ἐξεπέβαινε κατὰ τὸν Λαυσιακὸν ἐγκαθήμενος. καὶ ποτε δὴ τινος ἔγκλησιν
πρὸς αὐτὸν ποιη|σαμένου περὶ γυναικὸς ἀρπαγῆς, ὡς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τις B 31
τῶν ἐπιφανῶν ἐκδίκως ἀνηρπάκει ἀνδρῶν, καὶ ὅτι “οὐδὲ λόγων ἡξίωμαι
τῷ ὑπάρχωι πολλακίς διενοχλῶν”, ἐκεῖνον μὲν, ἐπέπερ αὐθωρόν πα-
ραστάντα οὕτως ἔχειν ἐπεμαρτύρησεν, εἰς εὐθύνας ἦγε τῆς ἀρχῆς με-
20 ταστήσας καὶ πικρίαν πολλὴν καταχέας αὐτοῦ, τὸν δὲ μοιχὸν τῷ νόμῳ
ἐκδοθῆναι προστέταχεν.

Cap. 19: Gen 14.11–37, 21.34–38 | Scyl 17.74–18.3

12 μεταρσίως edd 13 ἐρωμένου V 15 μονῆ edd 16 αὐτὸς τὲ V 19.1 τῇ αὐτοῦ
βασιλείᾳ conl. Boor in app., cf. infra IV.2.5 1 ὑποθείς conl. Bekk in app., sed idem et infra
IV.2.5 1 τῷ : τὸ edd 2 ὅτι τῶν κοινῶν ἐπιμελητῆς ἐτύγχανεν ὧν ὁ τύραννος Λέων
maiusc. in marg. V 9 ὅτι καὶ χρημάτων αὐτὸς ἥττων ὧν τοὺς ἀδωροτάτους ἐν ταῖς ἀρχαῖς
προέκρινεν V maiusc. in marg. 11 καὶ om. edd, quamobrem deinde post χρημάτων conl. γὰρ
Bekk in app. 11 <οὐχ> ἥττων Boor e Gen 14.35 : ἥττων V : κρείττων edd 12 ἀριστίνδην
V 13 καταπλοῦτον V 13 μὲν ἐραστής λέγεσθαι edd 15 τὸ edd 16 ἀρπαγῆς V
17 ἐκδίκως om. B edd 20 τῷ om. edd

him in his noble confession. And Nicephorus, according him favour, as is right, and commending him to God in prayer, raised his hands aloft as if to embrace him, giving him a last greeting from afar. When one of those accompanying him asked 'To whom do you give this greeting with such desire and longing?', he replied, with prophetic tongue, 'To the confessor Theophanes, superior of the monastery of Agros.' And so it came to pass soon afterwards. For Nicephorus saw him nevermore, and the other obtained the crown of a confessor. So much for the patriarch.

19. But Leo, as if making a dextrous beginning of his reign in thus administering the affairs of the Church, being possessed of an inordinate craving for honour, set about the affairs of state by carrying with him everywhere a sting, after the manner of wasps: he himself trained the army of soldiers, and through his own efforts he raised up cities everywhere in Thrace and Macedonia from the foundations and made acquisitions everywhere, so that he became fearsome and terrifying even to enemies. On this account they say that the holy Nicephorus once said after Leo's demise that even if he was a scourge, nevertheless the city had lost a man who took care for the affairs of state. He inspired great fear in those in positions of rank and authority, both civil and military, and being himself insusceptible to money he preferred to all others those who offered no gifts, bestowing honours on everyone by merit and not according to wealth. He wished to be called a lover of justice, though he was not one; nevertheless, he sought after this and, sitting in the Lausiakos, he delivered many judgements by himself. Once someone brought before him a charge concerning the theft of a wife, to wit that a certain notable person had unjustly stolen this person's wife and that 'Despite many attempts I have not even been allowed to speak to the prefect.' And when the prefect, who presented himself forthwith, avowed that the case was thus, Leo brought him to account, dismissing him from office and venting great anger upon him; and he commanded that the adulterer should be handed over to the law.

20. Ἀλλὰ τούτοις μὲν τὴν πολιτείαν οἷον ὑπέσαινε καὶ τὴν πρὸς αὐτόν, ὡς ἂν εἴποι τις, εὖνοιαν ἐκαπήλευσε· περὶ δὲ τὴν πίστιν ἐμαίνετο κραταιῶς, καὶ τοσοῦτον, ὡς μὴ δὲ θεὸν ὀνομάζειν ἐδόκει τούτῳ καλόν. καὶ γὰρ τὰς τριακοντούτας σπονδὰς τοῖς Οὐννοῖς δὴ τούτοις τοῖς κα-
- 5 λουμένοις Βουλγάροις ἐνωμότως ποιῶν καὶ εἰρηνικὰς συμβάσεις καταπραττόμενος, ἐπεὶ δι' ὅρκων ταύτας ἐμελλε βεβαιοῦν τε καὶ ἐμπεδοῦν, οὐ τούτοις δὴ τοῖς ἡμετέροις ἐχρῆτο, θεὸν καὶ οὐρανίους δυνάμεις ἢ τὴν κατὰ σάρκα γενομένην μητέρα Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ, τῶν λεγομένων τε καὶ πρατ-
- 10 τομένων ἐφόρους καὶ μάρτυρας· ἀλλ' οἷα τις ψυχὴ βάρβαρος θεοσεβείας ἀπρωκισμένη, κύνας μὲν καὶ οἷς τὰ ἄνομα ἔθνη θύουσιν ἐχρῆτο μάρτυσι τῶν πραττομένων, καὶ ἀπέτεμνε καὶ διὰ στόματος ἄγειν οὐκ ἐμυσάττετο εἰς βεβαίωσιν οἷς ἐκεῖνοι χαίρουσιν ἐμφορούμενοι, τὴν τῶν Χριστιανῶν δὲ πίστιν ἐκείνοις μέλλουσί ποτε ἐφ' ἡμῶν διαβιβάζεσθαι πρὸς ἐκείνην, ὡς
- 15 εἴοικε, κατεπίστευσεν. καὶ σαφῶς οὕτως οὐκ ἡσχύνετο ἀσεβῶν· οἷς τε γὰρ τοὺς τῆς πίστεως μαργαρίτας κατὰ τὴν τοῦ κυρίου φωνὴν ἐμπροσθεν ἠφίει τῶν χοίρων καὶ χρῆσθαι τούτοις ἐπὶ στόματος ἐξεβιάζετο, ἄξιος βδελυρίας ὁ ἀνὴρ | ἀσεβῶν· καὶ οἷς τὰ ἐκείνων αὐθις αὐτὸς τὴν τῶν B 32
- Ῥωμαίων διέπων βασιλείαν τε καὶ ἀρχὴν οὐκ ἠρυθρία μυσταγωγούμενος καὶ τελούμενος ἐν πανδήμῳ θεάτρῳ καὶ οὕτω γε δὴ πλήρει τῶν ἀπίστων
- 20 τε καὶ πιστῶν, τοῦ αἰωνίου σκώληκος καὶ πυρὸς ἀλλ' οὐκ ἄλλων ἐπάξιος. καὶ ὅσους δὴ τὸν ὀρθὸν εὗρισκε λόγον τηροῦντας, τούτους πικρῶς κατήκιζε καὶ δεινῶς· ἐτέρωθεν δὲ τὰ τῶν ὁμοφρόνων οἱ στίφη τε καὶ συστήμα|τα συνεκρότει τε καὶ συνήγειρεν ἐν ταύτῳ παρὰ πλευρὰν f. 10v
- αὐτοῦ τιθεὶς καὶ προσεπικλύζων ταῖς ὠφελείαις. τούτοις καὶ Ἰωάννης ὁ γραμματικὸς ἐγκατέλεκτο, παντὸς ἀνάσκητος ὑπάρχων καλοῦ. οἷς καὶ
- 25 τινα γραφὴν ὁ Λέων νεαρᾷς τινος καὶ μιαρᾷς ἐξερχομένην πίστεως

20.4–5 : ca. 816 foedus triginta annorum inter Bulgaros et Byzantinos ictum est

Cap. 20: Scrip Inc 349.18–352.1; Vita Nicephori 164.25–27, 165.20–166.11, 206.27–207.22; Epist ad Theophilum 75.21–77.8, 171.9–14, 191.14–24; GeorgMon 777.20–778.15; Gen 13.91–10, 20.9–21.33; Log A 211.25–35, 212.47–57 | PsSym 606.11–607.9; Scyl 17.53–73 || 14–16 Matt 7.6; 20 cf. Matt 18.8, Eusebius Comm. in Isaiam lib. 2 sect. 58, Ioannes Chrysostomus In Genesim vol. 53 p. 158 etc.;

20.2 τίς V 2 ἐκαπήλευσεν V 3 καὶ om. edd 5 ἐν ὠμότως V 6 διόρκων V 7 ἢ : εἰ V 8 τὲ V 9 μάρτυρας ποιούμενος vel ἐπικαλούμενος con. Boor in app. 11 κύνας μὲν ἀπέτεμνε καὶ οἷς – τῶν πραττομένων καὶ διὰ στόματος con. Boor in app. (fortasse recte) 12 χαίρουσιν om. edd 12 χρι|ανῶν V 13 ἐφ' : ὑφ' edd 14 καταπίστευσεν V 16 ἐπιστόματος V 17 βδελυρίας V 18 τὲ V 18 μυσταγωγούμενος V 20 τὲ V 20 αἰωνίου V 21 ὅσους V 21 δὴ Boor : δὲ V edd : μὲν Bekk in app. 21 εὗρισκε V 22 τὲ V 23 ταυτῷ V 23 παραπλευρὰν V 25 ἐγκατέλεκτο edd 26 καὶ τινα V 26 ἐξαρχομένην edd

20. By these actions he pandered, as it were, to the citizenry and, one might say, bought their good will; however, in matters of the faith he was affected with a mighty rage and to such an extent that he thought it wrong even to utter the name of God. For, arranging in sworn manner the thirty-year treaty and negotiating the accords for peace with those Huns who are called Bulgars, when it came time to confirm and ratify these through oaths, he did not use our oaths by God and the heavenly Powers or by her who became the mother of Christ God in the flesh as overseers and witnesses of what was said and transacted. But, like some barbarous soul estranged from the reverence of God, he used dogs and the things to which lawless nations make sacrifice as witnesses of what was transacted, and he cut off the bits whereof the latter delight in taking their fill and did not feel disgust at putting these in his mouth as confirmation; and he thus commended to the Bulgars, so it seemed, the Christian faith, to which they would one day be brought through us. Thus clearly he had no shame in his impious action. For unto them he cast the *pearls* of the faith, *before swine* in accordance with the saying of the Lord, and he compelled them take these in their mouths, this man deserving of abomination through his impious action; and though ruler of the Roman state and empire, he did not blush from being initiated by them and performing their rites in view of all the people and multitude of both infidels and believers, he who deserves nothing other than the eternal worm and fire. Moreover, all those whom he found who observed the correct teaching he tortured relentlessly and dreadfully, whereas he assembled the masses and companies of those who were of the same mind as himself and gathered them together, placing them at his side and lavishing benefits upon them. Amongst these was ranged John the Grammarian who was unpractised in any good thing; and pursuing his way against the divine images Leo commanded these men to compose a

- ἀναγράψαι κελεύσας τὸν κατὰ τῶν θείων εἰκόνων δρόμον ἐδίωκεν. ἀνερρίπτε δέ πως καὶ οἶον ἐξεφύσησεν εἰς ὕψος αἴρων αὐτὸν – καὶ γὰρ ἦν κοῦφος καὶ πρὸς οὐδὲν ἐφέρετο λελογισμένῳ τῷ νῶ – ὁ τοῦ ἱεροῦ
- 30 συστήματός τε καὶ κλήρου τῶν βασιλικῶν αὐλῶν ἀρχηγός. λοχῶν γὰρ αὐτὸν ἐκ πολλοῦ καὶ οἶον ἐξ ἐνέδρας ὡς τὸν Πρωτέα αἰρήσειν ἐρῶν, ἐπεὶ κατὰ τινὰ καιρὸν τὸ θεῖον ἐκεῖνο εἰς ἐπήκοον ῥητὸν ἐκκλησιαζόμενον ἐκηρύττετο “τίνι ὁμοιώσατε κύριον, καὶ τίνι ὁμοιώματι ὁμοιώσατε αὐτόν; μὴ εἰκόνα ἐποίησε τέκτων, ἢ χρυσοχόος χωνεύσας χρυσίον πε-
- 35 ριεχρύσωσεν αὐτόν, ἢ ὁμοίωμα κατεσκεύασεν;” – ἐπεὶ γοῦν τοῦτο κατὰ τὸν φωσ<φόρον> τοῦ Φάρου ναὸν ἐξηχεῖτό τε καὶ διεβεβόητο, ἡρέμα πως ὑποσυρεῖς καὶ ἑαυτὸν εἰς προϋπτὸν ἀγαγών, “σύνες ὃ | τι <λέγει>”, B 33 φησίν, “ὦ βασιλεῦ, τὸ ἱερὸν λόγιον· καὶ μηδεὶς σοι μετάμελος ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐναρχθεῖσιν ἔστω, ἀλλ’ ἅπαν θεῖον δοκοῦν ἐκποδῶν ποιήσας εἰκόνισμα
- 40 τῆς ὀρθῆς ἔχου λατρείας τῶν μὴ σεβομένων αὐτά”. τοῦτοις, ὡς εἶπον, ἀσυλλογίστως ὑπεκκαῖς καὶ τὴν ἄθλιον ἐκείνην ψυχὴν προσεκπυρωθεὶς ὅλην ἐκίνησε κατὰ μὲν τῶν εὐσεβῶν τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μανίαν, κατὰ δὲ τῶν ἀσεβῶν τὴν θεῖαν καὶ δικαίαν ὀργήν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ θεσπίσματι πάντας τοὺς ἀρχιερεῖς ἐκ τῆς ὑπερορίας μετεπέμπετο συλαγωγῶν τούτους καὶ τῆς τοῦ
- 45 πατριάρχου θεάς πόρρωθεν καθιστῶν καὶ ἀποκρύπτων αὐτούς, ὡς τῷ οἰκείῳ βουλήματι πειθηνίους κατεργασόμενος, πολλοὺς τὴν καλὴν ἀναιρήσασθαι μαρτυρίαν πεπεικῶς τῷ γε μὴ πεισθῆναι αὐτῷ· θεὸς δὲ οἷος τρόπος ἐκείνου οὐ σύντονός τις ἀλλὰ μακρόθυμος, τὴν ῥομφαίαν ἐστίλβου μὲν, οὐκ ἡφίει δὲ νῦν μὲν γὰρ αὐτοῖς λοιμοὶ καὶ αὐχμοὶ καὶ διά-
- 50 πυροὶ ἥλιοι, νῦν δὲ σεισμοὶ καὶ ἀναβρασμοὶ, καὶ ἄλλοτε φλογὸς οἷα κατὰ τοῦ ἀέρος ἀκοντίσεις καὶ ἐτέρωθεν ἐμφύλιοι στάσεις τῶν δεινῶν τὰ ἀκμαιώτατα ἐπεσεῖοντο.

20.43 : Ian. a. 815 Leo decreto imperiali sacerdotes in synodum vocat

33–35 Is 40.18–19; 48–49 cf. Ps 7.13

27 τῶν : τὸν V 28 καὶ οἶον : οἶον καὶ edd 28 αὐτῶν V 36 φωσ<φόρον> nos, cf. supra I.10.2–3 Φάρος ... ἀπὸ τοῦ φῶς ἀνάπτειν πᾶσι : φως (sic) V : om. edd 36 φάρου V 36 ἐξηχεῖτο V 36 πῶς V 37 προϋπτρον ante corr. V 37 ὃ τι <λέγει> Bekk Boor e Gen 13.5 et Scyl 17.65 σύνες τοῖς λεγομένοις : ὁ τοι V : ὁ τι Comb 40 ὧς V 41 πρὸς ἐκπυρωθεὶς V 44 καὶ om. edd 45 ἀποκηρύττων edd fort. e Scyl 17.68 κηρύττειν 46 κατεργαζόμενος edd 47 περὶ τῆς ἐν τῷ ναὸ τοῦ παλατιοῦ ἡμέρας τῆς Χριστοῦ γεννήσεως σφαγῆς Λέοντος τοῦ ἐξ Ἀρμενίας · φζ' in marg. infer. cum signo apud textum V adnotator B : ut titulum capitis 21 hic adiunxit Comb 49 ἐστίβου ante corr. V (λ sscr)

work setting out a new and polluted faith. And also the superior of the holy orders and clergy of the imperial palace somehow fanned and, as it were, puffed Leo up, carrying him aloft – for he was light-spirited and was not moved to anything by reasoned thought. He lay in wait for him over a long time, desiring as it were to seize Proteus by ambush, when, on one occasion, that divine phrase was proclaimed in church: *‘To whom then did ye liken God? or to what likeness did ye liken Him? Did not the workman make an image? or the goldsmith having melted gold not spread it over, or fabricate a likeness?’* – When this had been shouted and proclaimed aloud in the light<-bringing> church of the Pharos, this man, somehow quietly slipping through and bringing himself to the front, said: ‘Hear, O emperor, what the divine word says! Have no regret for the things you have begun, but do away with every seemingly divine image and hold fast to the correct worship of those who do not revere these things.’ Inflamed by these words, as I said, in an irrational way and burning with ardour in his wretched soul, he set into motion all his own rage against the pious and also divine and righteous wrath against the impious. By decree he summoned all the hierarchs from foreign parts, suborning them and keeping them hidden, out of sight of the patriarch, so as to make them obedient to his own will, though he persuaded many to bear the good witness of the martyrs in that they were not persuaded by him; but God, whose manner is not impetuous, but rather, patient, *whetted his sword* but did not strike. For there were now famines and droughts and burning sun, now earthquakes and eruptions; and at other times darts of fire, so it seemed, in the air and, from another side, civil uprisings threatened the most extreme dangers.

21. Ἄλλ' οὐκ ἦν ἐκείνην ἐπισχεῖν τὴν ψυχὴν συὸς δίκην κατὰ κρημνοῦ ἐπιβρίσασαν. ἐντεῦθεν ὁπὲ γοῦν καὶ καιρίως πλήττουσα μάχαιρα | παρὰ f. 11
τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκπεπόρευται, ἵν' ἥλω τέως ἥλος ἐκκρουσθῇ καὶ κακὸν τῷ κακῷ
ἰαθῇ. Μιχαὴλ τοῦτο ἦν, ὃς τὴν Φοιδεράτων τότε ἐπειλημμένος ἀρχὴν,
5 ἐγκλήματι καθοσιώσεως | ἀλούς μόγω πολλῶ καὶ κόπω ἀποτρίψασθαι B 34
ἴσχυσεν. ἀλλ' ἔμελλεν ὑπ' ὀδόντα τοῦτον ἔχων αἰ καθάπερ διαπε-
πραγμένον ἱερεῖον δεῖξαι οὐκ εἰς μακράν. ἄλλως μὲν γὰρ ἐξήσκει γλῶσσαν
ὁ Μιχαὴλ πρόλαλόν τε καὶ ἱταμόν, καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἔληγεν ἐκπομ-
πεύων θηριοτροπίαν, ἅτε δὴ αὐτῷ καὶ συναυξηθεὶς καὶ τῇ ἐκ χειρὸς
10 γαννύμενος ἀνδρείοτητι. ὁ Λέων δὲ – οὐ φέρει γὰρ τις πάντων κρατῶν
ἐνὸς ἡττάσθαι μωροῦ, εἰ μὴ γε ὄντως οὐκ ἀνδρῶν ἀλλὰ καὶ θυμοῦ βασι-
λεὺς καταστῇ – ὠτακουστάς τινας τούτῳ λόχον κατέστησεν, ὥς ἂν
διὰ τινος πορθμείου διαβιβάζοιντο λόγοι οἱ αὐτοῦ· καὶ γὰρ ὑπείδετο τὸ
μέλλον, τῆς κατὰ τὸ Φιλομήλιον προρρήσεως ἐξημβλωκυίας τῆς αὐτοῦ
15 ψυχῆς οὐδαμῶς, ἢ τὸν Μιχαὴλ δεύτερον τοῦ Λέοντος ἀναρρηθῆναι διω-
μολόγησεν. τούτων τῶν ἐφεδρευόντων εἰς ἦν καὶ ὁ Ἐξαβούλιος, ἀνὴρ οἶός
τε ὦν ἦθος καὶ φύσιν ἀνθρώπων καταμαθεῖν. ὥς γοῦν χρόνου προϊόντος
οὐκ ἐνεδίδου τῆς ἀθυροστομίας οὐδὲ τοῦ τωθασμοῦ, ἀλλ' οἶόν τις
κυματίας πᾶσαν ἀκαίρως ἰλὺν ἐξέβρασσε ποταμός, ἡπέλιψε τῷ Λέοντι
20 πανώλειαν καὶ ἀλλ' ἄττα, ὑφ' ὧν θυμὸς ἐτρέφετο πονηρός, ἀνεπέμπετο
δὲ ταῦτα πρὸς βασιλέα, ἀνάρπαστος γίνεται ἐξ αὐτῆς, καὶ τέλος,
τῶν ἐλεγχόντων τὰ τῆς κατηγορίας κατεμπεδούντων, κατατίθεται
τυραννίδος ἐπίθεσιν μελετῶν. ἡμέρα ἦν ἡ προτεραία τῆς καθ' ἡμᾶς
τοῦ λόγου Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν ἐπιδημίας τε καὶ σαρκώσεως. ἐπεὶ
25 γοῦν πάντοθεν κατάφωρος ἐγεγένητο αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐν τοῖς B 35
Ἀσηκρητείοις ἐξετάζοντος, καὶ δρασμὸς τῶν | τολμηθέντων οὐκ ἦν, κατα-
χειροτονεῖται τὴν ἐπὶ θάνατον, καὶ θάνατον οὐ τόνδε ἢ τόνδε, ἀλλ' ἵν' ἔχοι
καὶ τὸν βασιλέα αὐτὸν θεατὴν τε καὶ αὐτουργόν, εἴτε τῷ πάθει τῆς ὀργῆς

21.23–24 : die 24 Dec. a. 820 Michael Amoriensis capite damnatus est

Cap. 21: GeorgMon 788.9–12; Gen 15.44–16.94; Log A 213.58–62 | PsSym 609.22–610.12;
Scyl 19.14–20.59 || 1–2 cf. Matt 8.33; 3–4 Diogenianus Paroemiae cent. V sect. 16, Pho-
tius Lexicon H no. 136, Suda H no. 259 etc.; 12–13 cf. Arethas, Schol. in Arist. schol. 214,
In. 39

21.4 περὶ τῆς μελετωμένης Μιχαὴλ τῷ τραυλῷ κατὰ τοῦ Λέοντος ἐπιθέσεως V maiusc. in
marg. 6 ὑποδόντα V 7 διαπρεπραγμένον V 8 ἱταμόν sic V 12 ὠτακουστάς
τινάς V 13 πορθμείου : cf. Scyl 19.31 προθύμως, qui fortasse facilius reddidit 14 ἐξημ-
βλωκυίας V 15 <.>υχῆς V (prima lettera in ras.) 15 οὐδαμῶς : μηδαμῶς edd 16 δι'
ὠμολόγησεν V 16 ὁ om. V 16 Ἐξαβούλιος V, sed cf. supra I.8.1 17 ὦν V 17 ἦθος
V 17 ἀνθρώπων conl. Boor in marg. : ἀνῶν V : ἀνθρώπου edd. 17 γοῦν V : οὔν edd
18 οὐδὲ : μηδὲ edd. 19 ἐξέβρασεν edd 20 ἀλλάττα V : ἀλλ' ἄττα edd. 20 ὑφ' ὧν om.
edd 23 τυραννίδος V 23 ἡ om. edd 24 τέ V 26 ἀσηκρητείοις V 27 ἔχη edd

21. However, it was impossible to restrain that soul which after the manner of a swine rushed *down a steep place*. Therefore a sword was at length dispatched by the Lord which struck in mortal fashion, in order that nail now be driven in with nail and evil cured with evil. This was Michael, then in charge of the Phoideratoi, who had been convicted of lèse majesté but had managed with great pain and effort to clear himself. However he was soon to offer Leo as a victim ready for sacrifice, having had him always between his teeth. For in general Michael was practised in chattering and reckless speech, continually vaunting the other's brutal ways, in as much as he had grown up with him and had exulted in his courage at close hand; and Leo – for one who rules over all cannot bear to be worsted by any fool unless he indeed be master of his own anger as well as of men – set spies in wait for him, so that his words might be conveyed to him as by a sort of ferry. For Leo was wary of the future, the prophecy in Philomelion having in no wise miscarried in his soul whereby it was promised that Michael should be proclaimed emperor second after Leo. One of these spies was Exaboulis, a man capable of understanding the character and nature of men. As time went by Michael did not temper his insolent speech and mocking but, as a billowy river discharges importunately all manner of slime, he threatened Leo with utter destruction and whatever else fed his wicked anger. This was reported to the emperor and Michael was seized on the spot; and, finally, when those examining the charges confirmed them, he was convicted of plotting to usurp power. It was the day before the incarnation and dwelling amongst us of the Word Christ our God. Now, since his guilt was detected on all counts with the emperor himself examining the question in the Asecretia, and there was no way of escape from the things he had dared, he was condemned to death – and to no ordinary death but, in order that the emperor, either because he was overcome with passionate wrath or else delighted in savagery, might himself be

- ἐκνικώμενον, εἴτ' ἄλλως τῇ ὠμότητι ἐφηδόμενον, κατὰ τὴν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
 30 βαλανείου κάμινον δριμύως δεδεμένον ἐκριφῆναι πυρὸς παραβόσκημα.
 ὦριστο ταῦτα, καὶ αὐτὸς προέθεεν τὰ τοῦ δράματος ἐποψόμενος.
 Ἄλλ' ἢ τούτου σύζυγος – Θεοδοσία ἦν, τὸ τοῦ Ἀρσαβῆρ | θυγάτριον – f. 11v
 ἀνασπούδαστα καὶ ὡς ἔτυχε θέουσα, ὡς ἔκ τινος βακχείας ἐξοιστρηθεῖσα,
 ἀπέσπευδε τοῦτον καὶ τῆς ὁρμῆς ἐγκατέπαυεν, ἀλάστορα καὶ θεομάχον
 35 ἀποκαλοῦσα, οἷς οὐδὲ τὴν ἡμέραν ἄγει διὰ φειδοῦς, τοῦ θείου μέλλων
 σώματος μετασχεῖν. ἐκθυόμενος οὖν τὰ δεινὰ καὶ τῷ θεῷ μὴ ἀπὸ θυμοῦ
 γένηται δεδοικώς, τότε μὲν αὐτῷ τὴν σωτηρίαν παλίντροπον
 ἐπεβράβευσε, τῷ παπία τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐπιτρέψας φρουράν, εἰ καὶ τῶν
 σιδηροπέδων δι' ἑαυτοῦ φρουρεῖσθαι ἡξίου τὴν κλεῖν· ἐπηπείλει δὲ καὶ τῇ
 40 γυναικὶ καὶ “οὐκ εἰς μακρὰν ἐπόψεσθε”, ἔφη, “σύ τε, ὦ γύναι, καὶ τὰ τῆς
 ἐμῆς νηδύος βλαστήματα, τὰ ἀποβησόμενα, εἰ καὶ σήμερόν με τοῦ ἐκείθεν
 πυρὸς ἡλευθέρωσας”. τούτοις τὸ μέλλον ἀπεφοίβασέ τε καὶ προεκήρυξε.
 22. Καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ δέος τῇ ψυχῇ ἐγκαθήμενον ἔκ τινος χρησιμο-
 λογίας ὡς κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν τῆς Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν κάτω ταύτης
 γεννήσεως πᾶσαν τὴν αὐξηθεῖσαν εὐδαιμονίαν καὶ βα|σιλείαν ἀποκεί- B 36
 ρεσθαι μέλλοντος. ὁ δὲ χρησμός ἦν Σιβυλλιακός, ἐν τινὶ βίβλῳ εἰς τὴν βα-
 5 σιλικὴν βιβλιοθήκην ἐναποκείμενος οὐ χρησμούς μόνον ἀπλῶς ἀλλὰ καὶ
 μορφὰς καὶ σχήματα ἐχούσῃ τῶν γενησομένων βασιλέων διὰ χρωμάτων.
 ἦν οὖν Λέων θηρίον μεμορφωμένον χι̅ στοιχεῖον κεχαραγμένον ἔχων ἀπὸ
 τῆς ῥάχεως μέχρι τῆς γαστροῦ αὐτοῦ. τούτου κατόπιν ἀνὴρ τις ἐπιθέων
 δόρατι καιρίαν ἐδίδου πληγὴν τῷ θηρίῳ διὰ τοῦ χι̅. πολλοῖς οὖν πρὸς
 10 σαφήνειαν τούτου δειχθέντος, ὁ τηνικαῦτα τὴν τοῦ κοιαιστώρος
 ἐπανηρημένος ἀρχὴν μόνος διετράνου τὸ τοῦ χρησμοῦ, ὡς Λέοντος οὕτω
 καλουμένου βασιλέως τινὸς κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν τῆς Χριστοῦ γεννήσεως
 θανάτῳ ὀλεθρίῳ μέλλοντος παραδίδοσθαι.

Cap. 22: Gen 16.94–17.3 | PsSym 610.12–611.2; Scyl 20.60–72

29 ὁμότητι V 30 δεδεμένον om. edd 30 ἐκ ρίφῃναι V 31 ὦριστο V 33 ἀνασπού-
 δασα edd 35 οὐδὲ : οὔτε edd 35 διαφειδοῦς V 36 ἐκθειόμενος edd : ἐκθυμούμενος conl.
 Bekk in app. 36 ταδινὰ V 36 ἀποθυμοῦ V 37 τὴν παλίντροπον edd 38 παπία
 edd 38 ἐπιτρέψας edd Boor : ἐπιστρέψας V 40 ἐπόψεσθαι V 41 ἐμῆς : σῆς Boor in
 app., sed ἐμῆς Scyl 20.57 42 με τοῦ ἐκείθεν πυρὸς ἡλευθέρωσας nos, cf. Greg. Naz., In laudem
 Caesaris fratris, 22.4.7 τοῦ ἐκείθεν πυρὸς et Gen 16.91–92 τὴν μὲν ἐμὴν ψυχὴν τῆς ἐκείθεν δίκης
 ἀπήλλαξας : με τοῦ ἐκείθεν προσηλευθέρωσας V : με τοῦ ἐκείθεν ἀμαρτήματος προ-
 σηλευθέρωσας edd e Scyl 20.58 με τοῦ ἀμαρτήματος ἡλευθέρωσας : crucem ante προ-
 σηλευθέρωσας statuit Boor qui aliud quid in προσ mutatum suspicatur 42 ἀπεφοίβασέ τε edd
 e Scyl 20.59 : ἀπεφοίβασέται V 22.2 τῆς : τοῦ edd, sed τῆς conl. Bekk in app. 2 κάτω
 ταύτης : κατὰ σάρκα edd e Scyl 20.61 4 ἐν τινὶ V 6 ἐχούσῃ Boor e Scyl 20.63–64
 βιβλίῳ... ἔχοντι : ἔχουσα V edd 7 fort. <τὸ> χι̅ scribendum, cf. 22.9 διὰ τοῦ χι̅ 7 ἔχων
 om. edd 8 ἀνὴρ τίς V 10 κοιαιστώρος edd 11 οὕτως edd

spectator and executor, Michael was to be cruelly thrown bound in the furnace of the imperial bath as fuel for the fire. This had been decreed, and Leo himself rushed off to watch the scene.

But his consort – Theodosia it was, the daughter of Arsaber – running in dismay and disarray, like a woman stung with Bacchic frenzy, dissuaded him and stopped his impulse, calling him a vengeful spirit and enemy of God because he did not observe clemency on the very day before he was to partake of the body of God. Averting evil, then, and fearing lest this should be the cause of anger unto God, Leo granted Michael unexpected salvation, charging the papias to guard him, though he thought best to keep the key of his iron fetters for himself; but he threatened his wife and said ‘It will not be long before you, O wife, and the offspring of my loins see the outcome, even if you have to-day delivered me from the fire thereafter.’ By these things did he foretell and proclaim the future.

22. For fear had lodged in his soul on account of an oracle that on the day of the nativity of Christ our God here below he would be shorn of all his accumulated fortune and empire. Now this was a Sibylline oracle found in a certain book in the imperial library which contained not simply oracles but also the forms and figures in colours of future emperors. Leo, then, was represented as a beast with the letter Ch inscribed between its backbone and its belly. Next after this a man running in pursuit dealt a mortal blow to the beast with a spear through the Ch. After this had been shewn to many for explanation, only the man then charged with the office of quaestor could make sense of the oracle: that a certain emperor called Leo would be given over to a miserable death on the day of Christ’s Nativity.

23. Προσέτι δὲ καὶ ἡ τῆς μητρὸς ὄψις ἐπλήρου φόβου αὐτόν· ἡ τότε μὲν λεχθεῖσα εἰς οὐδὲν τούτῳ λελόγιστο, τὰ νῦν δὲ καὶ σφόδρα δάκνουσα ἐπέκειτο τὴν ψυχὴν. ἐφάνη γὰρ αὐτῇ κατὰ τὸν ἐν Βλαχέρναις θεῖον ναὸν προσφοιτῶση αἰεὶ κόρη τις ὑπὸ πολλῶν λευχειμόνων περιστοιχιζομένη
- 5 καὶ ὁ ναὸς αἵματος ἅπας πλήρης. ταύτην οὖν τὴν κόρην εἶπεῖν τινι τῶν παρεστῶτων, χύτραν ἐπιπληρώσαντα αἵματος ἐπιδοῦναι τῇ μητρὶ τοῦ Λέοντος πιεῖν. αὐτῆς δὲ πολυετῇ χρεῖαν | προβαλλομένης, δι’ ἧς μήτε f. 12
- κρεῶν μήτε τινὸς ἐναίμων γεύσασθαι καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μήτε ταύτης χρῆζειν τῆς χύτρας, “καὶ πῶς”, ἀντέφησεν ἡ κόρη μετὰ θυμοῦ, “ὁ σὸς υἱὸς οὐ
- 10 παύεται ἐμὲ πολλῶν αἱμάτων πληρῶν, καὶ τούτῳ τὸν ἐμὸν υἱὸν | παρ- B 37
- οργίζων τε καὶ θεόν;” πολλὰ τε ἔκτοτε ἐλιτάνευε τὸν ἑαυτῆς υἱὸν τῆς τῶν εἰκονοκαυστῶν αἰρέσεως ἀποστῆναι, τὴν ὄψιν ταύτην ἐτραγωδήσασα.

24. Καὶ τις δὲ ὄψις ἄλλη νυκτερινὴ ἐδειμάτου τοῦτον οὐκ ἔλαττον· αὐτοῦ γὰρ Ταρασίου τοῦ αἰοδίου πατριάρχου πάλαι τὸν βίον μετηλλαχότος Μιχαήλ τινὰ ἐξ ὀνόματος διακοῦσαι ἐπιπηδήσαντα προτρεπομένου ἐπιπληξάει τε καιρίαν καὶ κατὰ κρημονοῦ ὠθήσαι ἄβυσσον
- 5 ἔχοντος.

- Πρὸς τούτοις καὶ τὸ τοῦ μοναχοῦ τοῦ κατὰ τὸ Φιλομήλιον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡ τῆς ἐσθῆτος θάττον μεταμφίσις. ἃ συμφορῆσας ἐπάλλετό τε τῷ δέει καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν ἐκυμαίνετο, τῷ ὕπνῳ κατὰ τὴν νύκτα ἀπεχθανόμενος. ὅθεν ἀκμαζούσης νυκτὸς σοφώτερα ἢ βασιλικώτερα βουλευσάμενος τὰς ἐπὶ
- 10 τὸν παπίαν φερούσας πυλίδας καταρράξας – καὶ γὰρ ἦν εὐσθενὴς τῷ χεῖρε –, τὴν ἐπ’ αὐτὸν διήνυε πρόοδον. ὥς δὲ κατὰ τὸ δωμάτιον εἰσῆι καὶ <αὐ>τοῦ τὸν κατάκριτον ἐν σκίμποδι τῷ τοῦ παπίου περιδεξίως, τὸν δὲ
- παπίαν ἐπ’ ἐδάφους κοιμώμενον εὗρισκεν, τὰς χεῖρας ἐπῆγε πρὸς Μιχαήλ καὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν, μαθεῖν βουλόμενος εἰ ἄρα, ὅπερ τοῖς ἐν συμφορᾷ ἐπακο-
- 15 λουθεῖ, ἀφροντίν τινὰ καὶ ἡδὺν ἢ ἐμμέριμον ὕπνον καὶ κεκολασμένον

Cap. 23: | PsSym 611.5–18; Scyl 20.72–21.83 Cap. 24: Vita Tarasii §67 | PsSym 611.2–5, 611.18–612.2; Scyl 21.84–22.13

23.1 πρὸς ἔτι V 4 προσφοιτῶσης ante corr. V (ς ultimum in ras.) : προσφοιτώσεις PsSym f. 236v (προσφοιτῶσης 611.9) 4 τίς V 5 τινὶ V 5 περὶ τῆς μητρὸς τοῦ Λέοντος καὶ ἧς εἶδε θείας καὶ προαγορευτικῆς ὄψεως V maiusc. in marg. 7 πολυετήχρειαν V : πολυετῇ χηρείαν edd Boor e Scyl 21.78 : πολλὴν ἐτίαν PsSym f. 236v (πολυετίαν 611.12) 8 μή τέ τινὸς V 8 διατοῦτο V 8 μήτε V : μηδὲ edd Boor e Scyl 21.79 et PsSym 611.14 11 τὲ V : del. Boor e Scyl 21.82 et PsSym 611.16 11 πολλὰ τὲ V 11 αὐτῆς edd 24.1 Καὶ τίς V 2 Ταρασίου V 3 Μιχαήλ τινὰ V 3 διακοῦσαι <καλέσαντος καὶ> Boor e Scyl 21.85–86 καλεῖν ἐξ ὀνόματος et PsSym 611.21 ἤκουσε ... ἐξ ὀνόματος καλέσαι 4 τε om. edd : τε Λέοντος Boor in app. e Scyl 21.86 τῷ Λέοντι et PsSym 612.1 Λέοντα 4 κατακρημονοῦ V 6 ἡ om. edd 7 μετάμφιασις V 12 καὶ <αὐ>τοῦ τὸν Boor : καὶ τοῦ τὸν V : θέαμα ὁρᾷ εἰς ἐκπληξιν οὐ τὴν τυχοῦσαν ἄγον αὐτόν· εἶδεν γὰρ τὸν μὲν edd e Scyl 21.94–95 13 πρὸς τὸν edd 14 καὶ V : κατὰ con. Boor in app. (fortasse recte) 15 καὶ κεκολασμένον edd : κεκεκολασμένον V

23. Furthermore, his mother's vision filled him with fear. Though it had been told him before, he had considered it as nothing; but now it weighed greatly upon his soul in biting wise. For always when she visited the divine temple in the Blachernae there appeared to her a certain girl surrounded by many persons clad in white and all the temple full of blood. And this girl told one of those standing beside her to fill a pot with blood and give it to Leo's mother to drink. But when she cited on her own part the usage of many years, whereby she partook of no meat or blood nor, therefore, had any need of this pot, the girl responded with anger: 'How, then, is it that your son does not cease filling me with blood and thereby provoking my son and God to anger?' Thereafter she often begged her son to give up the heresy of the burners of the images, recounting this vision in tragic style.

24. Yet another nocturnal vision frightened him no less: for he heard Tarasios himself, the glorious patriarch who had left this life long before, command someone by the name of Michael to spring to the assault and strike a mortal blow and hurl <another> down from a precipice over an abyss.

Besides this, there was also the episode of the monk in Philomelion, and forthwith, the change of garment. Casting these things together in his mind Leo quivered with fear and was agitated in his soul, and he was loath to sleep in the night. Therefore, in the middle of the night, he formed a plan more cunning than imperial and, breaking down the doors which led to the papias – for he was strong of hand –, made his way to him. As he entered the room and there found the condemned sleeping, conveniently, on the papias's couch, whereas the papias was on the floor, he put his hands on Michael and his head, wishing to know whether his sleep was carefree and sweet, or else, troubled and disturbed, as happens to those in misfortune. And as he found him to be relaxed and removed from all care – for even by touching him he

- καθεύδει. ὥς δ' εὔρεν ἄνετον καὶ πάσης ἀπαλλαγμένον μερίμνης – οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδ' ἐπαφώμενος αὐτὸν διύπνισεν –, μείζονα τὸν θυμὸν ἔθρεψε τοῖς ἀπ' ἐλπίδος τοῦ|τοις θεάμασι, καὶ δεινὸν ἀπήει οὐκ αὐτῷ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ B 38 τῷ παπῖα ἐνείων. οὐκ ἔλαθε γοῦν ταῦτα τοῖς περὶ τὸν παπῖαν, ἀλλὰ τις
- 20 τῶν προκοίτων τοῦ Μιχαήλ ἐκ τῶν φοινικῶν φωρασάμενος ὑποδημάτων ἀπηγγεῖλε πάντα σαφῶς. οἷς ἐκπαθεῖς γενόμενοι καὶ ἀμάχω δέει περιληφθέντες βουλὴν ἐξήρτυον αὐτοῖς τὴν σωτήριον.
25. Ἔως ἄρτι ὑπέλαμπεν, καὶ σκῆψις γίνεται τῷ Μιχαήλ ψυχικὰς τινὰς κηλίδας ἐπαγομένῳ διὰ Θεοκτίστου, ὃν καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα τῷ τοῦ κα- νικλείου τετίμηκεν ἀξιώματι, ταύτας βούλεσθαι τινι προσαναθέσθαι τῶν f. 12v θεοφιλῶν. ἐπετέτραπτο γοῦν καὶ συγκεχώρητο | ταῦτα παρὰ βασιλέως.
- 5 καὶ “ἄγε δὴ”, φησὶν τῷ Θεοκτίστῳ, “τοῖς ἡμῖν κεκοινωνηκόσι τῆς πράξεως πάντα ἀνειπεῖν διαπείλει τῷ βασιλεῖ, εἰ μὴ τι γένηται παρ' ὑμῶν γενναῖον τούτου με διασῶζον τοῦ θανάτου καὶ τῆς εἰρκτῆς”. καὶ οἷ γε δὴ οἱ συνωμόται, ὥς ταῦτα διήκουσαν, βουλὴν τοιαύτην συρράπτου- σιν. ἔθος ἦν τῷ κλήρῳ τῷ ἱερῷ οὐχ ὥς νῦν ἔνδον τοῖς βασιλείοις, ἔκτοτε
- 10 λαβὼν τὴν ἀρχήν, προσμένειν διὰ νυκτός, ἀλλὰ τοῖς σφῶν οἴκοις, ἄρτι δὲ τρίτης ἀρχομένης φυλακῆς κατὰ τὴν Ἐλεφαντίνην συναγείρεσθαι δοξο- λογίαν ἀποδῶσοντας κυρίῳ τῷ θεῷ τὴν ἑωθινήν. τούτοις οἱ συνωμόται ὑπὸ μάλης φέροντες ἐγχειρίδια ἐγκαταμιχθέντες, ἅτε δὴ καὶ κνέφα καὶ ταῖς ἱερατικαῖς λαθόντες στολαῖς, συνεισήεσαν ἀφειδῶς, ἐν τινι σκοτεινῷ
- 15 λοχήσαντες τόπῳ, τὸ σύνθημα προσδεχόμενοι. ὥς δ' ὁ ὕμνος διεπε- ραίνετο καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτοῦ που | πλησίον ἦν τοῖς ἄδουσι, προεξάρχων B 39 πολλάκις τοῦτο δὴ τὸ φίλον αὐτῷ “τῷ παντάνακτος ἐξεφάυλισαν πόθῳ” – ἦν γὰρ φύσει τε εὐφωνος καὶ ἐν ταῖς μελωδίαις τῶν κατ' ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ ἀνθρώπων ἡδύτατος –, τότε δὴ εἰσπηδήσαντες ἀθρόως ἐκ μὲν τῆς
- 20 πρώτης ἡμάρτανον προσβολῆς, πρὸς τὸν τοῦ κλήρου ἑξαρχον ἀποπλα- νηθέντες, εἴτε δὴ τινι ἐμφερεῖα καὶ σώματος ὁμοιότητι εἴτε τῇ κατὰ τὴν κε- φαλήν ὁμοίᾳ περιβολῇ· κρυμώδους γὰρ οὐσης καὶ χειμερίου τῆς ὥρας ἐνὶ περιβλήματι ἀμφότεροι διεκαρτέρουν, πῖλῳ τὴν κεφαλὴν ὀξυτάτῳ περι- καλύπτοντες. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν τοῦ κλήρου καθηγεμῶν τὸν κίνδυνον ἀπεῴσατο –

Cap. 25: Vita Ignatii 493A-B; Acta Davidis 229.3–4, 20–23; GeorgMon 788.12–789.4; Gen 14.37–15.44; LogA 213.62–70 | PsSym 619.3–14; Scyl 18.4–13, 22.13–23.55 || 17–18 Anatecta hymnica, Canones Decembris dies 17, canon 27, oda 7, ln. 1

16 ἀπηλλαγμένον edd 17 δι' ὑπνισεν V 18 ἀπελπίδος V 19 γοῦν V 19 τοῖς V : τοὺς Boor e Scyl 21.9 (ACVF) 19 παπείαν V 20 φωρασάμενος V 25.3 βούλεσθαι τινι V 3 πρὸς ἀναθέσθαι V 4 γοῦν V 4 συγκεχωρητο V 8 οἷ γε δὴ om. edd 9 οὐχ' V 10 λαβῶν V 10 διανυκτός V 10 οἴκοις V 12 συνωμῶται V 13 ἐγχειρίδι V 16 ἄδουσιν edd 16 προεξάρχων V 17 αὐτῷ τὸ edd 18 μελλωδίαις V 18 ἐκεῖνο V 19 ἡδύτατος V 20 ἑπαρχον edd 21 τῇ om. edd 22 κρυμώδους V

did not wake him – his anger grew stronger through these sights of ill-boding and he went out menacing not only Michael but also the papias in terrible wise. Now these things did not escape the notice of those in the company of the papias, and one of Michael's guards who had recognised <Leo's> red boots recounted everything clearly. Whereupon, becoming crazed and seised with irresistible fear, they worked out a plan for their salvation.

25. No sooner had day dawned than a pretext occurred to Michael, whereby, citing certain stains on his soul, he wished to refer these latter to one of the clergy through the agency of Theoktistos, whom he later rewarded with the dignity of the keeper of the Inkpot. This was allowed and granted by the emperor. 'Come now,' said Michael to Theoktistos, 'threaten those who participated with us in the deed that you will report everything to the emperor, "unless something valiant be done by you to save me from this death and imprisonment".' And his co-conspirators, when they heard this, put together such a plan. It was the custom for the holy clergy not, as now, to abide through the night inside the palace – this was begun afterwards –, but rather in their own houses, and to gather by the Ivory Gate at the beginning of the third hour, in order then to offer the morning praise unto the Lord God. Mixing in with these latter whilst carrying weapons under their arms, the conspirators went in together with ease, escaping notice under cover of twilight and sacerdotal vestments; and, lying in wait in a dark place, they awaited the signal. When the hymn was over and the emperor was near to the singers, beginning as he often did his beloved 'By longing for the Almighty did they spurn' – for he was endowed by nature with a good voice and of the men of his time he was the merriest in melody –, then it was that they suddenly rushed in, though they erred in their first assault, mistaking the chief of the clergy, whether through some resemblance or likeness of body, or similar covering of the head; for it being the icy-cold, wintry season, they both persevered wrapped up in garments, covering their heads with the roughest felt. But the superior of the clergy repulsed the danger – for baring his head

- 25 αὐτίκα γὰρ γυμνώσας τὴν κεφαλὴν τῷ φαλακρώματι τὴν σωτηρίαν
ἐθήρασεν —, ὁ Λέων δὲ τοῖς ἀδύτοις ἐπεισρῦνεις οὐ σώζεσθαι ἀλλ’ ἀμύνα-
σθαι διεσπούδαζεν. ὅθεν τὴν τοῦ θυμιατηρίου σειρὰν διαρπάσας, ἡ κατὰ
τινας θεῖον σταυρόν, τοῖς ἐπερχομένοις ἀντιπαράταττεσθαι ἐβουλεύετο.
30 ἀλλ’ οὗτοι πολλοὶ καὶ οὐ καθεῖς ἐπιδραμόντες κατετίτρωσκον καὶ ὡς
ἀμυνόμενον καὶ τῇ τοῦ σταυροῦ ὕλῃ τὰς τῶν ξιφῶν ὁρμὰς ἀποπέμποντα.
ἀλλ’ ἔκαμεν πάντοθεν ὡς θηρίον βαλλόμενος · ὅτε δὴ καὶ ἀπογνοὺς ὄρκῳ
τῆς ἐνοικουσίας χάριτος ἐν τῷ ναῷ τινα εὐμεγέθη καὶ γιγαντιαῖον ἐπιφέ-
ροντα ὀρῶν τὴν πληγὴν ἐδέσμευε καὶ ἐξελιπάρει τρανῶς. τῆς ἐκ τῶν
Κραμβωνιτῶν | οὗτος ὠρμάτο γενεᾶς. ἀλλ’ ὁ γε “οὐχ ὄρκων”, εἰπὼν, f.13
35 “ἀλλὰ φόνων καιρός”, ἔτι τε κατὰ τῆς θείας ὁμόσας χάριτος, παίει κατὰ
χειρὸς οὕτω δὴ ἀνδρικῶς ὡς οὐ μόνον τῆς κλειδὸς ἀπορράξαι ταύτην
δεινῶς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ | κέρασ τοῦ σταυροῦ κοπτόμενον μέχρι πολλοῦ προ- B 40
ελθεῖν. συναποτέμνει δέ τις αὐτοῦ καὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν, ὅλμου δίκην τὸ σῶμα
καταλιπὼν.

26. Τοιοῦτῳ μὲν τέλει βίου ὁ Λέων ἐχρήσατο κατὰ τὸν <Δεκέμβριον>
μῆνα — ὥρα δὲ ἦν δεκάτη νυκτὸς —, βασιλεύσας ἔτεσιν ἑπτὰ πρὸς πέντε
μησίν, ὡμότητα μὲν ἐξασκήσας, πρὸς δὲ καὶ ἀσέβειαν εἵπερ τις τῶν πρὸ
αὐτοῦ· καὶ τούτοις τὴν τε προσοῦσαν αὐτῷ πρὸς τὰ κοινὰ ἐπιμέλειαν καὶ
5 τὴν ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἰσχὺν καὶ ἀνδρείαν κατήσχυνεν. λέγεται δὲ καὶ τινα
φωνὴν οὐρανόθεν αὐθωρὸν ῥαγῆναι, τὴν αὐτοῦ κατάλυσιν εὐαγγελι-
ζομένην πολλοῖς· ἧς καὶ τινες ἀκηκοότες ναυτίλοι, τὸν καιρὸν τε καὶ τὴν
νύκτα ἀπογραφάμενοι, ἐκ τῆς ὕστερον ἐρεύνης ταύτην εὔρον οὖσαν
ἀληθινήν.

26.1–3 : die Nativitatis a. 820 Leo Armenus, cum regnasset septem annos et quinque menses, occisus est

Cap. 26: Gen 19.79–82, 21.44–46 | PsSym 618.19–619.2; Scyl 23.56–64

26 ἐπεισρῦνεις Boor : ἐπισρῦνεις V : ἐπισυρῦνεις edd 26 σώζεται edd 28 ἐβούλετο edd
29 καθ’ εἰς V 29 ὡς Bekk Boor : fortasse <οὕτ>ὡς scribendum 32 τινὰ V 32 γιγαν-
τιαῖον edd 33 ἐδέσμευε : ἐδυσώπει edd 33 τῆς ἐκ τῶν : ἐκ τῆς τῶν Boor, cf. Scyl 23.51 τῆς
τῶν 34 ὀρμάτο V 34 οὐχ’ V 35 ὁμόσας 35 post παίει add. διανταῖαν edd e Scyl
23.53 36 ἀπαρράξαι edd 26.1 Δεκέμβριον add. edd e Scyl 23.56 2 δεκάτη τῆς edd
2 ἐπτὰ V 5 καὶ τινα V 7 ναυτίλοι V 7 καιρὸν τε V

straightway he sought deliverance with his baldness –; Leo, however, rushed into the sanctuary, seeking not to escape but to defend himself. Thus, taking hold of the cord of the thurible or, according to others, the divine cross, he resolved to ward off the attackers. But they were many, and setting upon him all together they inflicted wounds, though he warded them off and repulsed the blows of the swords with the wood of the cross. But he grew tired, being attacked on all sides like a beast. And then despairing, seeing someone huge and gigantic rushing up to strike a blow, he bound and piercingly exhorted him with an oath by the grace dwelling in the temple. The man was of the race of the Krambonitai. But this same said, ‘Now is not the time for oaths, but for murders’; and yet again swearing an oath against divine grace he struck him on the arm so vigorously that not only was this latter severed at the clavicle, but also the broken top of the cross flew off at a distance. Someone also cut off his head, leaving the body as a stump.

26. Such was the end of Leo’s life, in the month of <December> – it was the tenth hour of night –, having reigned seven years and five months and having exercised such brutality, as well as impiety, as anyone ever before him; and thereby did he dishonour both the solicitude he had had for public affairs and his strength of hand and courage. It is also said that a voice came forth from heaven at the very hour announcing his destruction to many. Hearing this same, certain sailors noted in writing the time and the night, and through later enquiry they found that it was true.

Περὶ τῆς βασιλείας Μιχαήλ τοῦ ἐξ Ἀμορίου. Λόγος β '

1. Ἀνηρηκότες δὲ τὸν Λέοντα οἱ περὶ τὸν Μιχαήλ, ὡς ἐν τῷ πρὸ τούτου ἡμῖν δεδῆλωται συντάγματι, τὸν τούτου νεκρὸν σύροντες ἀνηλεῶς τε καὶ ἀφειδῶς διὰ τῶν Σκύλων εἰς τὸν Ἱππόδρομον ἐξήγαγον, μὴ τινα φόβον ἔχοντες ἤδη διὰ τὸ πλήρη εἶναι τῶν ἐπι|βούλων καὶ συνωμοτῶν τὴν B 41
- 5 βασίλειον αὐλήν. συνεξέφερον δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ γαμετὴν σὺν τέτταρσι τέκνοις αὐτῶν, Συμβατίῳ τῷ κατὰ τὸ στέψιμον μετονομασθέντι Κωνσταντίνῳ Βασιλείῳ τε, καὶ Γρηγορίῳ ἅμα Θεοδοσίῳ· οὓς καὶ ἀκατίῳ ἐνθέντες πρὸς τὴν Πρώτην νῆσον ἀπήγαγον, ἔνθα καὶ τῶν παιδῶν εὐνουχισθέντων τὸν Θεοδόσιον συνέβη δυστυχῆσαι περὶ τὴν ζωὴν καὶ
- 10 τῆς τοῦ σώματος ταφῆς τῷ ἰδίῳ κεκοινωνηκέναι πατρί.
2. Ὁ δὲ Μιχαήλ τῆς ἐκ τοῦ παπίου φρουρᾶς ἀνεθείς, ἔτι τοὺς πόδας σιδήρῳ δεδεμένους ἔχων διὰ τὸ τὴν κλεῖν παρὰ τοῦ Λέοντος φυλαττομένην ἀσφαλείας ἔνεκεν τέως εἶναι ἀφανῆ, ἐπὶ τὸν βασίλειον ἐκάθισε θρόνον καὶ παρὰ πάντων τῶν τέως ὄντων ἐν τῷ παλατίῳ προσεκυνήθη
- 5 αὐτοκράτωρ ἀναγορευθείς. ἡδὴ δὲ μεσοῦσης ἡμέρας τῆς φήμης πανταχοῦ διαδραμούσης, τῶν δεσμῶν σφύρα | θλασθέντων μόλις, οὐ χεῖρας ἀποनिψά- f. 13v
- μενος, οὐ τὸν θεῖον φόβον κατὰ νοῦν εἰληφώς, οὐκ ἄλλο οὐδὲν τῶν δεόντων ποιήσας, πρὸς τὸν θεῖον καὶ μέγαν ναὸν προελήλυθεν τοῦ στέφους ἐκ τῆς πατριαρχικῆς χειρὸς καὶ τῆς πανδήμου τυχεῖν ἐπιθυμῶν
- 10 ἀναρρήσεως, ἐκείνους μόνους φραγμὸν καὶ περιχαράκωμα ἔχων τοὺς τοῦ φόνου μετεσχηκότας καὶ συνωμοκότας αὐτῷ. ἔνθα καὶ τις ἀμφοτέρων θαυμάσειεν τὸ κακόγνωμον, τοῦ μὲν ὅπως οὐδένα ἔσχε τῶν τηλικούτων κολάκων καὶ φιλοῦντων τότε δὴ βοηθόν, πάντων ὥσπερ ἐρπετῶν εἰς κα-

2.1 : die Nativitatis a. 820 Leo occisus est 6–7 : die Nativitatis a. 813 Constantinus filius Leonis imperialem coronam accepit

Cap. 1: GeorgMon 788.18–789.10; Gen 19.83–20.1; Log A 213.74–214.2 | PsSym 619.14–620.6; Scyl 24.66–74 Cap. 2: Gen 22.49–59; Log A 213.70–74 | PsSym 619.11–14; Scyl 24.75–25.93

II.tit. ἐξαμορίου V 1.2 τὸν : τὸ edd 2 τούτου : primum τοῦ, deinde subito τούτου scrip- sit V 4 εἶναι V 6 τοῖς ante τέσσαρσι add. edd Boor e Gen 19.92 et Scyl 24.70 6 τὸ om. edd 9 δυστῆσαι ante corr. V (υχ sscr) 2.1 τῆς ἐκ : ἐκ τῆς Boor 1 παππίου V 1 ἀνεθείς post corr. V (duae litterae in ras. ante θ) Boor e Scyl 24.75 : ἀνενεχθείς B edd 3 ἐκάθισεν edd 4 παραπάντων V 6 χεῖρᾶς V 11 μετεσχοικότας V 11 συν- ωμοκότας V Comb : συνομωμοκότας Bekk 12 θαυμάσει ἐν V 12 ἔσχε : εἶχε edd

Concerning the Reign of Michael of Amorion. Book 2.

1. After Michael's associates had slain Leo, as has been described by us in the composition preceeding this, they dragged his corpse mercilessly and without regard through the Skyla into the [Covered] Hippodrome, having lost all fear in as much as the imperial palace was full of traitors and fellow-conspirators. And with him they brought out his wife with their four children, Symbatios, re-named Constantine after his coronation, as well as Basil, and Gregory together with Theodosius. Putting them in a boat they took them to the island of Prote, where, when the children were made eunuchs, it happened that Theodosius lost his life and shared with his father in the burial of his body.

2. Michael was released from the prison by the papias, his feet still in irons since the key which had been kept by Leo for safety could not be found; and sitting upon the imperial throne, he was acclaimed emperor and received the obeissance of all those who were then in the Palace. By mid-day word had spread everywhere and, the irons scarcely smashed with a hammer, his hands still unwashed, perceiving no fear of God in his thoughts nor doing any of the things he ought to have done, he went off to the Great Church of God, long-ing to receive the crown from the hand of the patriarch and the acclamation of all the people and having as his sole defence and bulwark those who had shared in the murder and conspiracy with him. Therefore one might well be astonished at the bad judgement of both: of the one [Leo], how he found no helper at the time from amongst so many flatterers and men who showed affection, all of them retreating to their holes like reptiles, and of the other's

- ταδύσεις χωρησάντων, τοῦ δευτέρου δὲ τὸ πρὸς πάντας ἄφοβον καὶ αἰ-
 15 μοχαρές, οἷς ὥσπερ τις ἀπὸ νίκης | ἄθλοφόρος ἐπανερχόμενος ἄλλ’ οὐ B 42
 δήμιος – τοῦτο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς τὰ πάντα διοικούσης προνοίας ἐγένετο –
 κατὰ τὴν πλατεῖαν διήρχετο, δέον ἐγκαλύπτεσθαι καὶ θρηνεῖν, οὐκ ἔφ’ οἷς
 ἄξιον αἷμα δικαίως ἐξέχεεν, καίτοι γε οὐδὲ τοῦτο τῶν ἐπαινετῶν, ἄλλ’ ἔφ’
 οἷς οὐκ ἐν ἄξίῳ τόπῳ, θείῳ δὲ καὶ καθαρῷ, καὶ μόνον ἔνθα τὸ δεσποτικὸν
 20 καθ’ ἡμέραν ἐκχέεται τῶν ἡμετέρων ἔνεκεν λύτρον ἁμαρτιῶν.
3. Ἄλλ’ ἐπὶ τὴν θρεψαμένην τοῦτον ἡ ἱστορία ἀγέσθω, καὶ μέσον αὐτὸν
 λαμβανέτω τὰ αὐτοῦ ἀπαγγέλλουσα. ἦνεγκε μὲν οὖν αὐτὸν ἡ κατὰ τὴν
 ἄνω Φρυγίαν πόλις Ἀμόριον οὕτω καλουμένη, ἐν ἣ καὶ Ἰουδαίων καί
 5 τινων Ἀθιγγάνων πληθος αἰεὶ πως ἐγκατοικίζεται· καὶ τις δὲ αἴρεσις ἐκ τῆς
 ἀλλήλων κοινωνίας τε καὶ διηνεκοῦς ὁμιλίας καινὸν ἔχουσα τρόπον καὶ
 δόγματα ἐπιφύεται, ἧς καὶ αὐτὸς μετέσχεν ἐκ πατέρων διαδεξάμενος.
 αὕτη δὲ τοῦ μὲν θείου λουτροῦ ὡς σωτηριώδους ὄντως καὶ παρ’ αὐτοῖς
 διωμολογημένου τοὺς τελουμένους μεταλαγχάνειν ἀνίησι, τᾶλλα δὲ
 10 πάντα σώζει φυλάττουσα κατὰ νόμον τὸν Μωσαϊκόν, πλην τῆς περι-
 τομῆς. διδάσκαλον δὲ καὶ οἷον ἑξαρχον ὁ ταύτη μεμυσταγωγημένος
 Ἑβραῖόν τινα ἢ Ἑβραῖδα κέκτηται, τοῦ θείου τελέως βαπτίσματος
 ἀπεχόμενον, κατὰ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ οἶκον, ὧ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ οὐ μόνον τὰ ψυχικὰ
 ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τὰς κατ’ οἶκον οἰκονομίας ἐμπιστεύει καὶ ὑπὸ χεῖρα δίδωσι
 15 τὴν αὐτοῦ. ταύτης οὖν ἐκ παιδὸς | μετασχὼν καὶ οἷον τὴν ψυχὴν προ- B 43
 καταληφθεὶς οὐκ ἔσχεν οὐδ’ οὕτως τὸ τῆς προλήψεως καθαρὸν, | ἄλλ’ f. 14
 οἷον τις ἀπιστίας σύνοδος γεγωνὼς ὁμοῦ τε ταύτην οὐ πόρρω γενόμενος
 παρεχάραξεν καὶ τὴν Χριστιανῶν παρενόθευσεν καὶ τὴν Ἰουδαϊκὴν
 ἐκίβδηλευσεν. τέως μὲν οὖν εἶχετο ταύτης, καὶ πρὸς τὴν εἰς ἄνδρας
 20 τελοῦσαν ἡλικίαν ἀνήγετο, ἀγροικίαν καὶ ἀμαθίαν ὥσπερ τινὰς ἑλικας
 ἄμπελος συνανιούσας ἔχων αὐτῷ· μᾶλλον δὲ ὑπὸ τούτων ἐχόμενος καὶ
 παιδαγωγούμενος κατάλληλα προῆει μαθήματα διδασκόμενος, οἷς καὶ
 πολλάκις τὴν βασίλειον δεδραγμένος ἀρχὴν ἐφαίνετο σεμνυνόμενός τε καὶ
 καλλωπιζόμενος ἢ τῷ ἑαυτοῦ διαδήματι. τὴν λογικὴν δὲ παντάπασιν, ὡς
 25 τὰ παρ’ ἑαυτοῦ προβαλλόμενα ἀνατρέπουσαν καὶ πείθειν δυναμένην τε
 καὶ μεταδιδάσκειν τοῦ μὴ τῆς αἰρέσεως αὐτοῦ καὶ θρησκείας ὀπίσω πο-
 ρεῦσθαι, ἡτίμαζέ τε καὶ ἀπεβάλλετο τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἐπιβούλως ψυχῆς. καίτοι
 γε ἦν αὐτῷ δυνατόν τὰ ἑαυτοῦ τε σέβεσθαι καὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα μὴ ἀτιμοῦν,

Cap. 3: Vita Ignatii §7 (10.19–26); Gen 23.84–85 | Scyl 25.94–18

15 ἀπονίκης V 17 πλατεῖαν V 18 καίτοι γε V 19 ἐφοῖς V 20 ἔνεκεν om. edd
 20 λύτρον edd e Scyl 25.93 : λύτρον V 3.2 ἀπαγγέλλουσα V Bekk in app. : ἐπαγγέλλουσα
 edd 4 καὶ τίς V 5 τε om. V 7 ὄντως V : ὄντος edd 7 αὐτοῖς ante corr. V (-τους V², ut
 vid.) Bekk in app. : αὐτοῦς B edd 8 τ’ ἄλλα V 11 ἑβραῖον τινὰ V 13 τὰς edd e Scyl : τὰ
 V 14 οἷον Boor : οἷ V : ἦ edd 15 εἶχεν edd 16 ἀπιστίας ante corr. V 16 τὴ V
 18 αὐτῆς edd 18 πρὸς om. edd 19 ἑλικας V 21 παιδαγωγούμενος V 21 προσῆει
 edd 21 καὶ om. edd 27 καὶ τοι γε V 27 τὴ V

[Michael's] fearlessness and bloodthirstiness towards all when, returning like a champion from victory and not an executioner – for this came to pass through providence which orders all things –, he passed through the broad street, whereas he ought to have hid himself and lamented, not because he justly shed blood fit to be shed – though this too is no praiseworthy thing – but because it was not done in a fitting place, but in a divine and pure one where only the Lord's blood is shed daily as ransom on account of our sins.

3. But let our history proceed to the country which nurtured this Michael and let it set him in our midst by relating the facts of his life. He was given birth by the city called Amorion in upper Phrygia, in which there always dwell a multitude of Jews and certain Athinganoi; and out of association and constant intercourse with one another a certain heresy grew up with new manners and doctrines, to which Michael belonged, having received it from his parents. This same allows its initiates to partake of the divine font, which is indeed acknowledged as salutary also by them, but in all other things it preserves and follows the Mosaic law, except for circumcision. Whoever is initiated in this heresy procures for himself in his house as teacher and, as it were, leader a Jew or a Jewess who abstains completely from divine baptism and to whom he entrusts and gives charge not only in spiritual matters but also the running of his household. Now, though he participated in this heresy from childhood and was, as it were, won over in his soul from the first, he did not maintain the integrity of previous notions but, becoming, as it were, an assembly of unbelief, he adulterated the heresy – though not straying far from it –, whilst corrupting the faith of the Christians and debasing that of the Jews all at once. For the while he held fast to this heresy and, arriving at the age of manhood, his rusticity and boorishness grew together with him, like tendrils of the vine; or rather, he was held fast and brought up by these same and progressed in the learning of subjects appropriate to them, wherein, after he had seized the imperial power, he often seemed to exult and take pride more than in his diadem. With design he disregarded logic and rejected it in every wise from his soul in as much as it refuted that which he purposed and might have persuaded and converted him that he should not pursue his heresy and religion. And yet, it was possible for him to respect his own beliefs and to not

ὅταν μὴ πρὸς τοσοῦτον χορὸν τῶν ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ διαλαμψάντων χρόνῳ καὶ ἀριθμῷ κεκρατηκότα ἀνταμιλλᾶσθαι ἡδύνατο.

4. Πλὴν ἐτίμα τὰ ἑαυτοῦ. τὰ δὲ ἦν συνὼν μὲν τῶν ἀρτιτόκων προλέγειν ὅσοι τε ἔσονται εὐτραφεῖς καὶ σωμάτων μεγέθους οὐκ ἀμοιρήσουσι, καὶ ὅσοι τοῖς ἐναντίοις περισχεθῆσονται, καὶ ἵππων μὲν ἐγγὺς ἐστάναι τῶν λακτιζόντων εἰδέναι, ὄνους δὲ τοὺς λακτίζοντας ὡς πορρωτάτῳ ἐκτρέπε-
- 5 σθαι εὐφυνῶς, ἡμιόνων τε κριτῆς ἄριστος εἶναι, καὶ τούτων | ὅσαι μὲν πρὸς B 44
φόρτον ἀρμόδιοι τε καὶ ἐπιτήδειοι, ὅσαι δὲ τοὺς ἐπιβάτας εὐφώρας, ἀλλὰ μὴ τινα πτοίᾳ περιδεεῖς γινόμεναι, φέρουσιν· οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς ἵππους μόναις ὀφθαλμῶν διακρίνειν ἐπιβολαῖς, ὅσαι τε πρὸς δρόμον εὐτονοί τε
- 10 καὶ τάχιστα πεφύκασιν καὶ ὅσοι πρὸς πόλεμον τὸ καρτερικὸν διασώζουσιν, προβάτων τε καὶ βοῶν εὐτοκίαν, καὶ τὴν τοῦ γάλακτος ὅσαι δαψίλειαν ἐκ φύσεως ἔλαχον, καὶ ὡς σιγόντων, τὸ δὴ μεῖζον, τῆς τε μητρὸς καὶ τῶν ἀρτιγενῶν γεννημάτων, εἰδέναι διακρίνειν ποῖον ὁποίας ἐστὶν ἴδιον. καὶ τὰ μὲν τῆς πρώτης ἡλικίας, εἰπεῖν δὲ καὶ τῆς τελευταίας, ταῦτα δὴ τὰ μαθήματά τε καὶ σεμνολογήματα. | f. 14v
5. Ὡς δ' ἤδη ἤκμαζε τὸν πέννητα βίον διαθλῶν τε καὶ καρτερῶν, ἔσπευδε δὲ τοῦτον πάσῃ ἀποτρίψασθαι μηχανῇ, καὶ ποτε τῷ ἑαυτοῦ παρέστη δὴ στρατηγῷ, ἑαυτὸν τε ὑποφαίνων καὶ τῇ τῆς γλώττης τραυλότητι τὸν ἄρχοντα ἐκκαλούμενος, τῶν Ἀθιγγάνων τις γνωστός τε
- 5 καὶ οἰκεῖος τῷ στρατηγῷ ὦν αὐτόν τε τοῦτον τὸν Μιχαὴλ καὶ τινα ἕτερον περιβοήτους ἔσεσθαι μετ' οὐ πολὺ διηγόρευε καὶ βασιλείας αὐτῆς ἐπι-
τυχεῖν οὐκ εἰς μακράν. τούτοις ὁ στρατηγὸς τὴν ψυχὴν ἐκθερμανθεὶς, καὶ τὸ μέλλον ὥσπερ καταστρ<ατ>ηγῶν, οὐκ ἔγνω βραδυτῇτι τὸν καιρὸν ἀπώσασθαι, οὐδ' ἀπάλιν τυχεῖν οὐκ εὐπετέες οὐδὲ ῥῥδιον. τράπεζα γοῦν πα-
10 ραχρῆμα, καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας καταλιπὼν τούτους δὴ τοὺς ἄνδρας εἰς ἐστίασιν συγκαλεῖ. ὡς δὲ τοῦ πότου ἀκμάζοντος καὶ τὰς θυγατέρας | B 45
ἄγων ἐδίδου ὁ στρατηγὸς καὶ νυμφίους καθωμολόγει, τῷ ξένῳ μὲν καὶ παραδόξῳ τοῦ πράγματος ἐν ἐκστάσει τούτους τὸ πρῶτον ἐποίει καὶ

Cap. 4: | Scyl 25.18–26.31 Cap. 5: Gen 22.60–23.79 | Scyl 26.32–47

28 ὅτ' ἂν V 29 ἀνθαμιλλᾶσθαι Bekk 4.2 εὐτραφεῖς edd Boor e Scyl 25.19, cf. Ptolomaeus, *Apotelesmatica* 2.2.4.8 σώματα μεγάλοι καὶ εὐτραφεῖς τοῖς μεγέθεσι : ἐντραφεῖς V 2 σωμάτων edd Boor : δωμάτων V 3 ἐστάναι V 4 τοὺς om. edd 5 ἐπιτρέπεσθαι Comb : ἀποτρέπεσθαι Bekk 5 τὲ V 7 περιδεεῖς V 7 ὅσαι – ὅσαι – γινόμεναι Boor : ὅσαι – ὅσοι – γινόμεναι V : ὅσοι – ὅσοι – γινόμεναι Comb : ὅσοι – ὅσοι – γινόμενοι Bekk e Scyl 25.23–25 8 ἐπιβολαῖς : βολαῖς edd 8 εὐτωνοί V 10 τὲ V 10 ante εὐτοκίαν add. τὴν edd 10 ante δαψίλειαν add. τὴν edd 12 ἀρτιγενῶν V 5.1 τὲ V 2 ἀποτρίψασθαι Scyl 26.33 (CVMN) 4 ἐγκαλούμενος Scyl 26.35 (MH) 4 τίς V 5 τὸν om. edd 6 ἕτερον V 7 τὴν ψυχὴν ὁ στρατηγὸς edd 8 καταστρ<ατ>ηγῶν conl. in app. Boor, qui cruce[m] posuit : καταστρηγῶν V : κατατρηγῶν B : ἐνοπτριζόμενος Scyl 26.39 : κατατρυγῶν edd : 8 βραδυτῇτι edd 9 οὐ V 10 καταλιπὼν V 11 ἐστίασιν V 12 καθ' ὥμολόγει V

dishonour ours, since he was unable to vie with the great company of those who had shone bright for their wisdom and prevailed through time and number.

4. But he valued his own knowledge. This included how to predict which new-born swine would grow fat and not lack volume of body, and which would be comprised amongst those of an opposite nature; to know to stand near kicking horses, but skillfully to get as far away as possible from kicking asses; also to be a very good judge of mules, which of these were fit and suitable for carrying loads, and which could carry passengers with ease but would not be susceptible to any fright; moreover, to discern of horses by the looks in their eyes alone which mares were vigorous and swiftest in running and which stallions had the capacity of endurance in war; also to discern good breeding of sheep and cattle, which are endowed by nature with an abundance of milk and, what is even greater, to know how to recognise which of the newly-born belonged to which mother even when they were silent. These were the lessons and boastings of the first – and it could also be said of the last – age of his life.

5. Having reached his prime he still struggled and endured a poor life, and he strove by every device to escape from this latter. Once, when he came to his general, presenting himself and invoking the emperor in his stammering speech, one of the Athinganoi, a trusted acquaintance of the general, declared that this Michael and a certain other would soon become famous and would obtain the imperial office not long afterwards. Being excited in his soul by these words and, as it were, outwitting the future, the general was determined not to spurn through sluggishness the opportunity which would be neither easy nor simple to obtain another time. A table was laid forthwith, and leaving aside all the others he invited these same men to dine. And when the drinking-bout was at its height and the general brought out and gave away his daughters, engaging the men as bridegrooms, the strange and wondrous nature of the thing at first left the men in astonishment and without speech, but

- 15 δίχα φωνῆς, ἀποδεχομένους δὲ ὅμως μετὰ ταῦτα καὶ συγκατατιθεμένους καὶ θεὸν τάχα, οὐκ ἄνθρωπον, ὁμολογοῦντας αὐτόν.

6. Εἶναι μὲν οὖν τέχνην τὴν μαντικὴν πολλὰ τι<να> ὑποκείμενα, ὀρνίθων τε πτήσεις καὶ ὀνείρων ἀγέλας καὶ παντοίων σωμάτων δι' ἐντόμων θέας, ἵνα μὴ πολλοῖς ὀλίγος φιλονεικῶ, οὐκ ἐπὶ πολὺ διοίσομαι. εἶναι δὲ καθαρὰν καὶ δαιμόνων τινῶν ἐκτὸς ὑπηρεσίας, πόρρω θεοῦ τὸν
- 5 ἄνθρωπον σπουδαζόντων βαλεῖν, οὗτ' αὐτὸς εἴποιμι οὗτ' ἄλλος οἶμαι τῶν φρονούντων εὔ, ἐπεὶ καὶ τοὺς οὐκ εἰλικρινῆ τινα βίον διώκοντας καὶ καθαρὸν, τοὺς ἀσπούδαστον δὲ καὶ ἀνελεύθερον, τὴν ἀκριβῆ γνῶσιν ταύτης λαβεῖν ἀκηκόαμεν. τί μοι τοῦτο τὸ παρὸν ἐζήτηται; ἵνα μὴ τις ἐπιπνοίῃ θεῖα τοὺς περὶ ταῦτα ἀσχολουμένους νομίζῃ τι τοιοῦτον δια-
- 10 σαφεῖν, καὶ αἴτιον ποιῇ τὸν θεὸν τῆς ἀδίκου γνώμης αὐτῶν, ταῦτόν δὲ εἰπεῖν καὶ ἀρχῆς, μήτε τοὺς ἐπιιδόντας τούτοις αὐτοὺς ἔχειν νοῦν οἰηθῇ, ἅτε καὶ πολλῶν καθ' ἡμέραν ἀποτυγχανόντων καὶ αἰτίων γινομένων τῆς ἀπωλείας αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ τὸν ἀρχέκακον ὅφιν κατατιῶτο, ὃς | ὄργανα f. 15
- κατὰ τὴν οἰκουμένην ἐμπεριπατῶν καὶ καταλαμβάνων ἀρμόδια οὐκ ἐν τῷδε μόνῳ ἢ τῷδε τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ τὰ περὶ τῆς βασιλείας σπέρματα καταβάλλει, ἀλλ' ἐν πολλοῖς, καὶ τούτους ἀναπείθων τε καὶ κινῶν ἐπιβάλλειν μὲν πείθει καὶ δῆμους | ἀνατρέπειν καὶ ἐμφυλίου μάχας ἐρ- B 46
- 15 γάζεσθαι, κατὰ τὴν εἰκόνα τοῦ λίθους πολλάκις ἐπαφιέντος τισὶ τυφλοῦ· πολλοὺς γὰρ βάλλων τάχα καὶ μὴ ὀρῶν ὅψε καὶ μόλις τοῦ βαλλομένου καταστοχάζοιτο. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἡμῖν παρὰ θεωρίαν, ἵνα μὴ τῷ θεῷ ἀναφέροι τις τὰς τοιαύτας τῶν πράξεων μὴ δὲ δὴ τὰς πονηροτέρας ἀρχάς, ἐκείνη δὴ τῇ γραφικῇ βοηθούμενος μαρτυρία, τῇ “ἑαυτοῖς ἐβασίλευσαν” λεγούσῃ, “ἀλλ' οὐ δι' ἐμοῦ”.
- 20

7. Ταύτην οὖν τὴν τοῦ Ἀθιγγάνου μάντεως πρόρρησιν ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἐνηχηθεῖς, καὶ αὖθις ὅψε ποτε τὴν κατὰ τὸ Φιλομήλιον, ὥς μοι πρότερον εἴρηται, τὸν τε τοῦ Λέοντος φόνον θρασύτερόν πως μεταχειρισάμενος ἐξεπλήρωσεν, ἔκτοτε μελέτην τοῦτο διηνεκῇ σχῶν, καὶ αὖθις τὴν εἰς τὸν
- 5 θεῖον ναὸν θάττον ἢ ἔδει θαρρούντως ἐξειργάσατο πρόοδον, κακὸς μὲν περὶ τὸν πρῶτον εὐεργέτην φανείς, ἐκείνον δὲ τὸν εἰρημένον Βαρδάνιον,

Cap. 6: || 22–23 Os 8.4 Cap. 7: | cf. Gen 22.60–62 Scyl 26.47–27.70

6.1 τέχνη τῇ μαντικῇ edd 1 πολλὰ τι<να> nos : πολλὰ τι V : πολλὰ τὰ edd : πολλὰ τε Boor 2 καὶ om. edd 2 ὀνείρων τε edd 3 διεντόμων edd 3 πολλοῖς ὀλίγος edd Boor : πολλοὺς ὀλίγους V 3 ἐπιπολὺ V 6 τινὰ V 7 τοὺς delendum dubitanter con. Boor in app. 7 ἀκριβῆ V 10 ποιεῖ V 10 ταῦτο δ' edd 11 μηδὲ edd 11 αὐτοὺς Boor : ἑαυτοὺς edd 13 ἀρχέκακων V 14 ὃς κατὰ τὴν οἰκουμένην ἐμπεριπατῶν καὶ ὄργανα καταλαμβάνων edd : καὶ del. ut e dittographia ortum Boor 17 ἐπιβάλλην V 19 πολοὺς V 19 ταχά V 20 παραθεωρίαν V 21 τίς V 22 δὲ edd 22 γραφικῇ V 7.1 post μάντεως add. φωνὴν ὥς θείαν τινὰ edd e Scyl 26.48 3 τε om. edd 3 φῶνον V 4 αὖθις repetitum e versu superiore suspicatur Boor 6 εἰρήμένον V

afterwards they accepted and assented, avowing that the general was not a man but rather a god.

6. Now, so as not to incite a quarrel of the few with the many, I shall not at any length dispute that a great many things are subject to the faculty of divination, including the flight of birds and herds in dreams and the inspection of dissected parts of all manner of animals. But I would not myself say, nor, I think, would anyone else with sound judgement, that this faculty is unpoluted and removed from the service of certain demons seeking to thrust man far away from God, for we have heard that those leading lives which are not upright and pure, but rather contemptible and servile, have acquired exact knowledge of this faculty. Now, why do I make this enquiry just now? Lest anyone should think it to be by divine purpose that those engaged in these practices explain such a thing and should make God the cause of their unrighteous intention, that is to say, their power; nor should anyone consider as intelligent those who devote themselves to these men, for many of them miss the mark every day and become the cause of the others' perdition. But let him accuse the author of all evil, the serpent, who, going about in the world and seizing upon fitting instruments, sows the seeds of striving for empire not only in this or that man, but in many men; and seducing these same and rousing them he convinces them to assault and bring peoples into upheaval and cause civil wars after the image of the blind one who cast stones many times at who so ever it might be, for by throwing many, even if he did not see, sooner or later he reached his goal. We add these things, outside the scope of our exposition, lest anyone should attribute such actions or these evil powers to the divinity, guided by the Scriptural witness: *They have set up kings, but not through me.*

7. Thus Michael, with the prophecy of the Athinganian seer and, sometime afterwards, as related by me already, the other in Philomelion, ringing in his ears, planned and committed the murder of Leo in over-bold wise and was thereafter seized by constant care; and, in turn, he made his entrance into the divine church more quickly than was fitting, revealing himself as wicked with regard to his first benefactor, Bardanios, who was mentioned earlier, and

- κακίων δὲ περὶ τὸν δεύτερον Λέοντα, ὅσον καὶ τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ ἐκ τοῦ
 θείου βαπτίσματος υἱοθετησάμενος ἦν. πλὴν ἀπόμοιράν τινα ποιεῖται καὶ
 πρὸς ἀπόλαυσιν χορηγεῖσθαι προστάττει τοῖς τοῦ Λέοντος παισὶν ἅμα
 10 τῇ τούτων μητρί τε καὶ γαμετῇ ἐκ τῶν εἰσκομισθέντων κτημάτων αὐτοῦ,
 καὶ τινὰς τῶν ἑαυτοῦ παιδῶν πρὸς ὑπηρεσίαν, εἰ καὶ μὴ πάντας, αὐτοῖς
 ἐδωρήσατο, τῇ μητρί μὲν καὶ γαμετῇ εἰς τὴν μονὴν τὴν οὕτω λεγομένην
 τῶν Δεσποτῶν ἐν ἀσφαλείᾳ ζῆν κελεύσας αὐθεντικῶς, τοὺς ἄρρενας δὲ
 15 τῶν παῖδων ἐν τῇ Πρώτῃ νήσῳ, ὡς εἴρηται. ἔνθα καὶ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ B 47
 μετονομασθεὶς Βασίλειος ἀφωνία πῶς συσχεθεὶς μετὰ τὸ τὰ γόνιμα τῶν
 μορίων ἀφαιρεθῆναι ἐδέετο μὲν τοῦ θεοῦ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ λυθῆναι φωνὴν καὶ
 τὴν γλῶτταν αὐθὺς τὸ εὐηχον ἀπολαβεῖν, ἐδέετο δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἐν θεολογίᾳ
 διαλάμπαντος Γρηγορίου ἐκεῖσέ που ἀνεστηλωμένου τυγχάνοντος.
 20 εἶξε γοῦν καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ δεήσεως ὁ ἅγιος κατὰ τὴν τῶν φώτων πανηγυ-
 ριν ἐπακήκοεν. ὁρᾷ γὰρ τὸν θεῖον ἐκεῖνον χαρακτῆρα κατὰ τὸν ὀρθρον
 τούτῳ διαλεγόμενον | καὶ “τὸν κηρόν”, οὕτω δὴ λέγοντα, “λαβὼν f. 15v
 ἀνάγνωθι”. ὁ δὲ πιστεύσας τοῖς λεγομένοις εἰσελθὼν ἀνέγνω λαμπρᾷ καὶ
 καθαρᾷ τῇ φωνῇ τὸ “πάλιν Ἰησοῦς ὁ ἐμός”. ἔκτοτε γοῦν τὴν πατροπαρά-
 δοτον αὐτοῦ οὐ διέλιπε βδελυσσόμενος ἄνοιαν καὶ περὶ τὰς θείας εἰκόνας
 25 ἀγνωμοσύνην, μετετίθετο δὲ καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἁγίων χαρακτῆρας περι-
 πτυσσόμενος οὐ διέλιπεν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὁπὲ τοῦ καιροῦ καὶ πολὺ περ
 ἐς ὕστερον.
8. Ἦδη δὲ καὶ τὴν αὐτοκράτορα τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἐπανελομένου ἀρχὴν καὶ
 <τὰ> κατ’ αὐτὴν ὡς ἐβούλετο διοικοῦντος, ἐπιστολὴν ὁ μακαρίτης Νι-
 κηφόρος ἐκπέμπει, τὴν τῆς πίστεως παρακαλῶν ἀνάκλησιν γενέσθαι καὶ
 5 πάλιν ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν ἀσπασμὸν τὰς θείας εἰκόνας. “ἀλλ’ οὔτε και-
 νουργήσων”, ἀπεκρίνετο ὁ Μιχαὴλ, “τῶν περὶ πίστεως τι δογμάτων
 ἐλήλυθα, οὔτε μὴν τῶν ἤδη παραδοθέντων καὶ ἀνομολογηθέντων κατα-
 δρομὴν τινα ἐργάσασθαι καὶ καθαίρεισιν. ἕκαστος οὖν <τὸ δοκοῦν> αὐτῷ
 10 ποιείτω καὶ ἐφετόν, | ἀμαθὴς πόνων καὶ ἄγευστος λύπης διατελῶν”. B 48
 πλὴν οὐ μέχρι τέλους ταύτην ἐτήρησε τὴν προαίρεσιν ὁ μὴ δ’ ἐξ ἀρχῆς
 ἀληθὲς Χριστιανὸς γεγονώς· ἀλλ’ ὅσῳ τῆς βασιλείας ἐγένετο ἐγκρατής,

|| 23 Follieri III. 86 πάλιν Ἰησοῦς ὁ ἐμός καθαίρεται (Andreas Cretensis) Cap. 8: Vita Nicephori 209.12–210.24; Vita Methodii 1248B-1249A; Vita Euthymii *passim*; Acta Davidis 237.4–238.16; GeorgMon 792.9–793.6; Synaxarium Const 345; Gen 35.68–70, 73–77; Log A 214.2–11 | PsSym 620.10–20; Scyl 27.71–28.18

9 προστάττει Boor, cf. Scyl 26.55 ἐναποτάττει : πράττει V edd 10 τούτων nos e Scyl 27.1 : τούτου V 10 ἔκκομισθέντων edd, sed cf. infra IV.16.10 et Scyl 27.1 δημευθέντων 13 κελεύσας post corr. V² (ante corr. λεύσας) 15 πῶς V 18 ἐκέισε που V 19 εἶξε | οὖν post corr. V, a. corr. γοῦν, ut vid. (γ in ras.) : εἶξεν οὖν Boor 19 ὁ ἅγιος ante καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ δεήσεως edd : ὁ ἅγιος V 22 πιστεύων V 22 λαμπρὰ καὶ καθαρὰ V 8.2 τὰ add. edd Boor e Scyl 27.72 5 ἀπεκρίνατο Scyl 27.75 5 πίστεως τι V 6 ἐξελήλυθα 7 τὸ δοκοῦν add. edd e Scyl 27.77 et Vita Nicephori 209 8 ἀπαθὴς Scyl 27.78 9 ἐξαρχῆς V

even more wicked with regard to the second, Leo, in as much as this latter had received his son from the divine font of baptism. But he set aside a certain portion of Leo's confiscated property and commanded that it should be allotted for the use of Leo's children together with their mother, his wife; and granting them several – though not all – of Leo's own slaves for their service, he commanded that his wife, their mother, should live in security and with all due rights in the monastery called Despotai, and the male children, as has been said, on the island of Prote. It was there that Constantine, re-named Basil, who was somehow stricken with dumbness after his genital organs were removed, prayed to God that he might recover his speech and melodious voice, and he also prayed to Gregory who shone in knowledge of God and whose image had been set up somewhere in that place. The saint yielded and heeded his prayer on the feast of Epiphany. For during matins he saw that holy likeness held converse with him and said, 'Take the candle and read.' Complying with these words he went in and read with bright and clear speech the verse 'Again my Jesus'. From then on he never ceased in his abhorrence of the folly and hostility toward the divine images which he had inherited from his father, but rather, he repented and never ceased embracing the likenesses of the saints. But this occurred later, a long time afterwards.

8. After Michael had assumed the imperial power and administered affairs of state as he wished, the blessed Nicephorus sent him a letter calling for the restoration of the faith and the acceptance once again of the worship of the divine images. 'But I have not come,' replied Michael, 'either to make any innovation of dogma regarding the faith, or to carry out any attack or overthrow of that which has been handed down by tradition and accepted. Let everyone do <as he sees fit> and desires, remaining ignorant of troubles and unaffected by grief.' However, he who was from the beginning no true Christian did not maintain this resolve to the end. The firmer his hold on the em-

- τοσούτῳ κακοδαίμονι φύσει καὶ ὠμοτάτῃ τὸν κατὰ Χριστιανῶν καὶ τῶν ὁμοφύλων ἀνερρίπισε πόλεμον, νῦν μὲν τοὺς μοναχοὺς διαπτῦων παντοίοις τε περιβάλλων δεινοῖς καὶ ποيناῖς ἐξευρίσκων ποινας, νῦν δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους πιστοὺς παραπέμπων ταῖς φρουραῖς καὶ ὑπερορίους ποιῶν. ἐν-
 15 τεῦθεν καὶ Μεθόδιον τὸν μετὰ βραχὺ τοῦ πατριαρχικοῦ θρόνου ἀντι-
 λαβόμενον καὶ Εὐθύμιον τὸν τηνικαῦτα Σάρδεων πρόεδρον, τῷ αὐτοῦ
 θελήματι μὴ ὑπείκοντας μὴ δὲ τὴν τῶν εἰκόνων ἐξαρνουμένους τιμὴν, τῆς
 πόλεως ἐξωθεῖ, καὶ τὸν μὲν θεῖον Μεθόδιον φυλακῇ παραδίδωσι κατὰ τὴν
 νῆσον Ἀνδρέου τοῦ ἀποστόλου, καθ' ἣν ὁ Ἀκρίτας ἐγγειτονεῖ, τὸν δὲ μα-
 20 καρίτην Εὐθύμιον διὰ Θεοφίλου τοῦ οἰκείου υἱοῦ θανάτῳ παραδίδωσι
 βουνεύροις τυπτόμενον ἀφειδῶς. ὅσω δὲ τὴν Χριστοῦ κληρονομίαν ἐπίεζε
 καὶ οἷόν τις θῆρ ἄγριος κατενέμετο, τοσούτῳ τοὺς Ἰουδαίους ἀνέτους
 φόρων καὶ ἐλευθέρους ἐδείκνυνεν, ἀγαπωμένους καὶ στεργομένους αὐτῷ
 τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων διαφερόντως. καὶ ζωγράφοι μὲν τὰ καλὰ τῶν
 25 ζώων | εἰς μίμησιν ἔχουσιν, οὗτος δὲ τὸν τοῦ Κοπρωνύμου βίον οἷόν τι f. 16
 προχάραγμα καὶ πρωτότυπον θείας ἀπομιμεῖσθαι εἰς ἄκρον ἐσπουδάξεν.
 διὸ καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐλαύνει τῆς ἀσεβείας, ἄρτι μὲν σάββατα
 νηστεύειν νομοθετῶν, ἄρτι δὲ κατὰ τῶν θείων προφητῶν τὴν γλῶσσαν
 ἐξαρκούνων, ἀνάστασιν τε τὴν μέλλουσιν καὶ τὰ ἐκείθεν ἀπιστῶν ἀγαθὰ,
 30 διάβολόν τε ὅλως μὴ εἶναι διισχυρίζετο, ἅτε μὴ δὲ ὑπὸ τοῦ Μωσέως
 τούτου παραδεδομένου. πορνείαν δὲ κατασπαζόμενος, καὶ τὸν ἐπὶ
 πάντων δεῖν ὁμνῦναι μόνον θεὸν νομοθετῶν, καὶ τὸν Ἰούδαν ἀκολάστῳ
 γλώσση κατατάττων τοῖς σωζομένοις, καὶ τὴν ἑορτὴν τοῦ σωτηρίου
 πάσχα κακῶς καὶ παρὰ καιρὸν χλευάζων τιμᾶσθαι, καὶ τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν
 35 παιδευσιν διαπτῦων, καὶ τῆς ἡμετέρας καὶ θείας τοσοῦτον καταφρονῶν
 ὥς μὴ δὲ τοὺς νέους παιδοτριβεῖσθαι που συγχωρεῖν, ἵνα μήτε τῇ αὐτοῦ
 ἀλογίᾳ ἔχοι τις ἀναστῆναί ποτε καὶ διελέγξαι, μήτε πάλιν τῷ τάχει τῶν
 ὀφθαλμῶν καὶ τῇ τῆς γλώττης ῥύμῃ φερόμενος διὰ τῆς παιδεύσεως τὰ
 δευτερεῖα τοῦτον φέρειν καταναγκάσειεν· τοσοῦτον γὰρ ἤργει πρὸς
 40 τὴν μῆξιν τῶν γραμμάτων ἐκεῖνος καὶ τὴν τῶν συλλαβῶν ἀνάγνωσιν, ὥς
 ῥᾶον ἢ τις διῆλθε βιβλίον ἢ αὐτὸς τῇ βραδυτῇτι τοῦ νοῦ τὰ τοῦ οἰκείου
 στοιχεῖα ὀνόματος. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὥς καὶ τοῖς κατ' ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ

8.15–16 : die 11 (sive 4) Mart. a. 843 Methodius patriarcha designatus est 16 : Euthymius usque ad a. 804 episcopatu Sardiniae functus est, sed postea fortasse dignitatem recuperavit et denique a Michaelē ca. 824–825 de sede depositus est 19–21 : ca. a. 831 Euthymius a Theophilo occisus est

11 ὠμοτάτῃ V 11 τὸν : τῶν V 11 καταχριστιανῶν V 13 ἐφευρίσκων conl. Boor in app., sed cf. Scyl 28.83 ἐξ- 15 ἐντεῦθεν V 16 αὐτοῦ edd e Scyl 28.87 : αὐτῷ V 17 εἰκόνων ἐξαρνουμένους edd Boor e Scyl 28.87–88 : ἐξαρνουμένους εἰκόνων V 20 θεωφίλου V 34 Ἑλληνικὴν V 37 ἀντιστῆναι edd e Scyl 39 τοῦτον Bekk Boor e Scyl 28.13 : τούτων V 39 τοσοῦτον γὰρ ἤργει edd Boor e Scyl 28.13–14 : τοσοῦτος γὰρ ἔρρει V 42 στείχεῖα V

pire became, the more he fanned the flames of war, with a malicious and most cruel nature, against Christians and those of his own race, now spitting upon the monks, heaping all manner of evils upon them and devising penalties with penalties, now sending others of the faithful to garrisons and banishing them. Thus did he also expell from the city Methodius who soon afterwards ascended the patriarchal throne and Euthymius who was then bishop of Sardis because they would not yield to his will nor renounce worship of the images. He confined Methodius to jail on the island of the apostle Andrew, near Akritas, and through his own son Theophilus he put Euhymius to death, having him scourged mercilessly with whips. In the same measure as he repressed the heritage of Christ and ravaged it like a wild beast, so did he give licence to the Jews and render them free, they who were beloved and cherished by him more than all other men. Now, artists have the beauty of living creatures for imitation, but Michael took the life of Copronymus as an outline and prototype and strove to imitate it to the utmost. Therefore he mounted to the summit of impiety, now ordaining the fast on Saturday, now sharpening his tongue against the divine prophets, doubting the coming resurrection and the bounties that will come thence. He also affirmed that the devil did not exist at all, since nothing of the sort was handed down by Moses. He embraced fornication; he ordained that one should swear on all occasions by God alone; with unbridled tongue he counted Judas amongst the saved; he scoffed in evil and untimely wise at the reverence of the feast of the Saviour's Pascha; he spat upon Greek learning, and so despised our divine learning as not to allow youths to be educated therein, in order that no one might be able to resist and refute his lack of reason nor, in turn, assisted by quickness of eye and flow of speech through learning, might force him to take second place. For so slow was he in the joining up of written characters and reading of syllables, that anyone else might more easily get through a book than he, in the sluggishness of his mind, through the letters of his own name. But let us leave these things

45 κεκωμωδημένα θείοις ἀνδράσιν ἑατέον· πλήρεις γὰρ βίβλοι τὰ ἐκείνου ἐκστηλιτεύουσαι· ἡμεῖς δὲ πρὸς τὰ ἐξῆς προσβῶμεν τῆς ἱστορίας, τὰ ἀπο-
τελέσματα τῶν ἀθέσμων αὐτοῦ πράξεων ἐνορῶντες.

9. Κατὰ γὰρ τὸν καιρὸν τοῦτον ἀρχὴν λαβὼν ἐμφύλιος πόλεμος ἐξ
ἀνατολῆς παντοίων ἐνέπλησε τὴν οἰκουμένην κακῶν καὶ ἐκ πολλῶν
ὀλίγους τοὺς ἀνθρώπους εἰργάσατο, πατέρων δη|λονότι τὰς δεξιὰς κατὰ B 50
τῶν υἱῶν ὀπλισάντων, καὶ ἀδελφῶν κατὰ τῶν ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς φύντων
5 γαστρός, καὶ φίλου τὸ τέλος κατὰ τοῦ φιλοῦντος τὰ μάλιστα. Θωμᾶς ἦν
τούτων ἑξαρχος, περὶ οὗ διττὸς λόγος φέρεται. ἀνάγκη δὲ ἀνθρώποις
οὓσιν ἡμῖν καὶ ἀκοῇ ἄλλ’ οὐκ ὅψει ἐκ τῆς τοσούτου χρόνου παρολκῆς τὰ
τοιαῦτα κατεilhφόσι τῆς ἱστορίας, ἵνα δὴ πανταχοῦ τὴν ἀλήθειαν
σωζομένην ἔχοιμεν, καὶ τοὺς τοιῶσδε ἀλλὰ μὴ τοιῶσδε μόνον παραδι-
10 δομένους λόγους | ἀναγράφειν, οὐδὲν ἐκ τῆς τοιαύτης ἀμφιβολίας καὶ f. 16v
πλάνης λυμαινομένης τῆς προκειμένης ἡμῖν ὑποθέσεως, μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν
καὶ ἀσφαλεστέρας τυγχανούσης τοῖς γε μὴ οὕτως ἔχειν ἄλλ’ οὕτως
διαπληκτιζομένοις αἰεὶ. ἄριστον μὲν γὰρ ἦν, εἰ γυμνῆς ὑπαρχούσης
τῆς ἀληθείας καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐκτὸς παραπετάσματος τὴν πάντων εἰδησιν οἱ
15 ἀνθρώποι εἶχομεν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ πολὺς ρεύσας χρόνος οἶόν τι κάλυμμα ἡμῖν
προτεθὲν ἀσθενεστέραν τὴν γνῶσιν ἐργάζεται, δεῖ τῇ γε φήμῃ καὶ
κληδόνι πειθομένους εἰς φῶς ἄγειν ποσῶς τὰ πράγματα, ἀλλ’ οὐχὶ τῷ πο-
ταμῷ τῆς λήθης παραδοῦναι ὀλοσχερῶς.

10. Ὁ μὲν οὖν εἰς καὶ πρῶτος λόγος, ᾧ καὶ ἐγὼ πείθομαι ἐξ ἐγγράφων
τινῶν ἔχων τὸ βέβαιον, τοῦτον ὁρμάσθαι φησι τὸν Θωμᾶν ἐξ ἀσήμεων τε
γονέων καὶ πενιχρῶν, ἄλλως δὲ καὶ Σκλαβογενῶν, τῶν πολλάκις ἐγκισ-
σευθέντων κατὰ τὴν ἀνατολήν. πενία γοῦν ἀποζῶν καὶ τὴν τύχην ἐμπο-
5 ρευόμενος τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μὲν | ἀπέδρα, πρὸς δὲ τὴν μεγαλόπολιν ταύτην B 51
εἰσέφερσεν. καὶ δὴ τινι τῶν συγκλητικῶν ἐξυπηρετεῖν τε καὶ λειτουργεῖν
κολληθεὶς αἰσχῦναι δι’ ἀκολασίαν καὶ καθυβρίσαι τὴν δεσποτικὴν εὐνὴν
καὶ τὰ λέκτρα τούτου ἠπείγετο. ἐπεὶ οὖν φωραθεὶς οὐχ οἶός τε ἦν τὸν
πολὺν ὄνειδον καὶ τὰς διὰ τοῦτο ὑπομεῖναι πληγὰς, φυγὰς πρὸς τοὺς ἐξ
10 Ἄγαρ γίνεται, καὶ τούτοις πίστιν ἱκανὴν ἐκ τε τῶν καταλλήλων αὐτῷ

10.9–10 : Thomas Slavus regnante Eirene, sive cum filio Constantino (780–797), sive sola, in
Asiam profugit (797–802) secundum epistolam Michaelis ad regem Ludovicum

Cap. 9: Vita Ioannicii 394 | Scyl 29.18–21 Cap. 10: Epist ad Ludovicum 476.7–25; Vita
Euthymii 202–205; Acta Davidis 231.22–232.19; Acta Mart Amor, versio Z, 64.26–28; Georg-
Mon 793.7–13; Gen 25.50–26.83; Log A 214.12–13, 16–17 | Scyl 29.21–30.53

43 κενωωδημένα V 45 ἀθέων edd 9.1 πόλεμον V 2 ἐξανατολῆς 6 τούτων ante ἦν
edd 6 ἀνάγκη edd 9 τοιῶσδε V 13 γυμνεῖς V 14 πανεἰδησιν edd 15 ἔχομεν V
16 προστεθὲν edd 17 κλειδόνι V 10.1 οὖν V 1 εἰς B edd : εἰς V 1 ἐξεγγράφων V
2 ὁρμάσθαι φησὶ V 2 ἐξασήμεων V 3 σκαβογενῶν primum scripsit, deinde λ add. V
7 αἰσχῦναι V 9 διατοῦτο V 10 κατ’ ἀλλήλων V 10 αὐτοῦ edd

which were the object of ridicule by divine men at the time – for whole books have been written exposing his deeds –, and let us proceed with what follows in our history, observing the results of his lawless actions.

9. At this time a civil war broke out in the east and filled the world with all manner of evils, reducing from many to few the number of men: fathers took up arms against their sons, brothers against those born of the same womb, and finally friends against those who loved them the most. Their leader was Thomas, about whom diverse reports circulated. Now, on account of the lapse of so much time, we, being men, have received the details of this history through hearing, not seeing; and in order that we may in all cases preserve the truth, it is necessary that we should record events handed down not only in one manner but in a different one as well, in as much as our presentation is in no wise compromised by such ambivalence and variation, but rather, thus inspires more confidence in those who forever contend that something is not so but otherwise. For it would be best if Truth was naked and we men had knowledge of all things without any curtain. But since the long time that has gone past renders our knowledge more feeble, as if covered by a veil, we must rely on common report and rumour in order somehow to present the facts, rather than abandoning them altogether to Lethe's stream.

10. According to the first and only report, which I trust, in as much as we have assurance from certain written sources, this Thomas was born of humble and poor parents who, moreover, were descended from the Slavs who are often intermingled in the East. Faced, then, with a life of poverty, he ventured his luck and, running off from his country, introduced himself into this great city. And attaching himself as servant and assistant to a certain person of consular rank, he hastened through his intemperance to dishonour and insult his master's bed and marriage. Being caught in the act and unable to bear the great shame and scourgings on this account, he fled to to the descendants of Hagar and, giving them sufficient assurance both though his

- δους πράξεων διὰ πολλῶν ἤδη χρόνων – ἔτος γάρ που διηνύετο τούτῳ πέμπτον καὶ εἰκοστὸν – καὶ ἐκ τοῦ τὸν Χριστὸν καὶ θεὸν ἡρνήσθαι ἡμῶν, πολεμικῆς τινος φάλαγγος γίνεται ἀρχηγὸς καὶ κατὰ Χριστιανῶν ὀπλίζεται, κραταιοτάτῃ χειρὶ τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείαν ὑπὸ τὴν
- 15 αὐτῶν χεῖρα ποιῆσαι καθυποσχόμενος. καὶ ἵνα μὴ τινα ἐμποδὼν παρὰ Ῥωμαίοις γινόμενος σχῇ, πάντας δὲ συνεφαπτομένους καὶ τούτου προκινδυνεύοντας, Κωνσταντῖνον εἶναι αὐτὸν τῆς Εἰρήνης διETRάνου καὶ ἐπεφήμιζεν, ὃν ἡ ἄνοια καὶ τὸ τοῦ ἥθους ὦμὸν πάλαι μὲν μετὰ τῆς βασιλείας ἀφείλετο καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, τηνικαῦτα δὲ καὶ τὸν βίον μετηλ-
- 20 λαχῶς ἦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὸ τῶν πράξεων μέγεθος καὶ αἱ βόσκουσαι τοῦτον ἐλπίδες κοινωνόν τινα τῶν πραγμάτων ἀπήτουν – οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἄλλως αὐτῷ | τὰ κατὰ γῆν καὶ θάλατταν ὑπελάμβανε κραταιοῦσθαι –, καὶ υἱόν f. 17 τινα ἐπέισακτον εἰσποιεῖται, τῇ τοῦ σώματος διαμορφώσει τὴν τῆς ψυχῆς δηλοῦντα ἀπόνειαν. ᾧ καὶ δυνάμεις ἀρκούσας δὴ παρασχών καὶ
- 25 Κωνσταντῖνον μετονομάσας ἐκείνον ἄλλοθεν, ἑαυτὸν δὲ ἐτέρωθεν τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων κεῖρειν καὶ κατατρέχειν ἐπέ|ταττε γῆν. Λέων τότε καιροῦ ὁ ἐξ B 52 Ἀρμενίων τὰς τῆς βασιλείας ἐκεκρατῆκει ἡνίας, ἐν ὑστέρῳ καιρῷ· ὃς δύναμιν τινα κατ’ αὐτοῦ συστήσας οὐκ ἀξιόλογον αὐτὴν μὲν σφαλῆναι ἐποίησεν – ἅμα γὰρ τῇ κατὰ πρόσωπον ὑπαντήσῃ ἐτρέπετο πρὸς
- 30 φυγὴν –, τοῦτον δὲ θρασύτερον καὶ πλέον ἢ ἦν τὰ καθ’ ἑαυτὸν φρονεῖν. καὶ ὁ μὲν πρῶτος καὶ πολλὺς οὕτως ἔχειν λόγος περὶ τῆς τοιαύτης κινήσεως καὶ στάσεως φησι τὴν ἀρχήν.
11. Ἄτερος δὲ τοῦτον εἶναι τὸν Θωμᾶν, μηδὲν περὶ τῆς κλήσεως διενηνεγμένος, τὸν τῷ Βαρδανίῳ μὲν πάλαι συνόντα, παρὰ τοῦ ἡγησαμένου δὲ Λέοντος τιμηθέντα· ὃς τὴν τῶν Φοιδεράτων τηνικαῦτα διοικῶν ἀρχήν, κατὰ τὸν Ἀνατολικὸν ἐνδιατρίβων, ἐπεὶ τὸν Μιχαὴλ ἄρτι
- 5 διήκουεν ἀνηρηκότα τὸν Λέοντα, ἐδικῶν, ὁμοῦ δὲ καὶ θυμὸν ἴδιον ἀποπιμπλῶν – ἐτύγχανε γάρ πως πόρρωθεν ἐξ ἡλικιωτῶν διαφερόμενος πρὸς

10.13–14 : Aug. a. 819 Calipha Mamun ad Bagdad rediens Thomam Slavum cum exercitu in Byzantium missit 18–19 : a. 797 Eirene filium Constantinum caecavit 27 : a. 819 sive 820 Leo Armenus cum Thoma Slavo proelium commisit 11.2 : Thomas Armenus Bardanio usque ad a. 803 serviit 3–4 : ca. a. 813–820 Thomas Armenus archon foederatorum

Cap. 11: Gen 23.80–24.7 | Scyl 30.53–31.90

12 ἔτος γάρ – εἰκοστὸν : add. verba ἐν τῇ πρὸς ἐκείνους διατριβῇ Scyl 29.33, quae Boor suspicitur excidisse, cf. Gen 25.59–60 χρόνον συχνὸν ἐν αὐτοῖς διατρίψας ὥσει ε’ καὶ κ’ παρελκυσθῆναι ἐνιαυτούς 12 ἡρνεῖσθαι V 15 καθ’ ὑποσχόμενος V 15 ἐμποδῶν V 17 αὐτὸν Bekk cf. Scyl 29.38 ἑαυτὸν : αὐτὸν <τὸν> Boor 20 μετελλαχῶς V 23 μεταμορφώσει edd 24 δη om. edd 25 μετ’ ὀνομάσας V 25 ἐκείνον om. edd 25 ἐτέρωθεν V 26 <τῷ> τότε καιροῦ coni. Kamb 29 κατὰ : πρὸς edd 29 ἀπαντήσῃ edd 32 στάσεως φησὶ V 11.1 post εἶναι add. φησι Boor e Scyl 30.53 1 θωμᾶν V 6 πως : που edd

successive deeds over many years – for it was about the twenty-fifth year he passed – and the fact that he renounced Christ our God, he became leader of a certain military division and took up arms against the Christians, promising with the greatest force to bring the empire of the Romans under their control. And lest anyone should stand in his way when he came to the land of the Romans, but might all join and bear the brunt of battle for him, he claimed and declared himself to be Constantine, the son of Irene, whom madness and cruelty of custom had earlier deprived of his eyes as well as the imperial power, whereafter he also departed from this life. Now, because the magnitude of the undertaking and the hopes which Thomas nurtured necessitated a partner in affairs – for he understood that he could not otherwise prevail on land and by sea –, he took an adopted son whose madness of soul was made evident by the shape of his body; and giving him ample forces and re-naming him Constantius, he gave the order that the latter should ravage and lay waste the land of the Romans on one side and he himself on another. Leo the Armenian then held the reigns of empire, toward the end of his reign, and raising an insufficient force against Thomas he was the cause both of its failing – for upon meeting face to face it was put to flight –, and of Thomas thinking more boldly and better of his chances than he ought. Such, then, is the first and prevailing report concerning the beginning of this revolution and revolt.

11. According to the other report, which differs in no wise concerning his name, this was the Thomas who had been formerly with Bardanios and was awarded a dignity by Leo when he became ruler. Thomas was then holding office as leader of the Phoideratoi, residing in the Anatolic theme; and no sooner had the news reached his ears that Michael had slain Leo, than he set about avenging him and satisfying his own anger – for he had long, since

- αὐτόν —, καὶ ἅμα τὰς περὶ αὐτοῦ προρρήσεις φοβούμενος, χεῖρα ἐναντίαν κινεῖ, καὶ χεῖρα οὐ μικράν τινα καὶ ἀσθενῆ, βαρεῖαν δὲ καὶ ἀνδρώδη καὶ νεανικὴν, πᾶσαν ἡλικίαν τῶν δόρυ δυναμένων κινεῖν ἔχων μεθ’ ἑαυτοῦ.
- 10 ἐτύγχανε γάρ πως καὶ ἄλλως ὁ Μιχαήλ ὑπὸ πάντων μισούμενος, ἅτε δὴ κακῆς μὲν αἰρέσεως μετεσχηκῶς τῆς τῶν Ἀθιγγάνων, ὡς εἴρηται, καὶ ὅτι γλῶσσαν χωλεύουσιν ἔχων εἰς ἀνανδρίαν καὶ μαλακίαν διεβεβόητο, πολλῶ δὲ μᾶλλον, ὅτι τὴν ψυχὴν τῆς γλώττης οὐχ ἦττον χωλεύουσιν | B 53
- 15 δέ, εἰ καὶ τὸ σκέλος πεπηρωμένος καὶ τῷ γένει βάρβαρος ἦν, ἀλλ’ οὖν τῇ γε πολὺ αἰδέσιμος, καὶ μᾶλλον φιλούμενος ἐτύγχανεν, ὅτι τὸ εὐπροσήγορον καὶ ἀστεῖον, οἷα δὴ φιλεῖ ὁ στρατιώτης ὄχλος, αὐτῷ πως συνουσίωτο ἐκ παιδός, καὶ τῶν κατὰ γενναιότητα σώματος οὐ δὴ τινος ἐφαίνετο f. 17v
- 20 δεῦτερος. οὐ|τος οὖν τοὺς τοὺς δημοσίους φόρους εἰσπράττοντας ἐφ’ ἑαυτὸν ποιῶν τοὺς πολλούς, πολὺς γέγονεν ἐκ μικροῦ καὶ μέγας ἐξ ἐλαχίστης χειρός· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ ἦγε πειθοῖ καὶ τινι φιλίᾳ, ὅσοις δὴ ὁ τῶν καινῶν πραγμάτων καὶ τοῦ φιλοπλουτεῖν ἔρως ἐνῆν, τοὺς δὲ βίᾳ καὶ γνώμῃ ἀβουλήτῳ, ὅσοις δὴ τὰ τῶν ἐμφυλίων στάσεων κακὰ ἐν πείρᾳ ἤδη
- 25 γεγέννητο. ἐντεῦθεν οὖν οἱ ἐμφύλιοι ἀναρρηγνύμενοι πόλεμοι, καὶ οἷόν τινες Νειλῶοι καταρράκται ἀνοιγόμενοι, οὐχ ὕδατι ἀλλ’ αἵματι τὴν γῆν κατεπόντιζον. ἐντεῦθεν καὶ δοῦλοι κατὰ δεσποτῶν καὶ στρατιώτης κατὰ ταξέωτου καὶ λοχαγός κατὰ στρατηγέτου τὴν χεῖρα φονῶσαν καθώπλι-
- 30 ζεν, καὶ πᾶσα τέως ἡ Ἀσία βυθιζομένη κατέστενεν. αἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτάνδρως τῶν πόλεων ἀνήρηντο τῷ Θωμᾷ τῷ φόβῳ πεισθεῖσαι· αἱ δὲ πολλάκις ἀντιπίπτουσαι, τὰ πιστὰ τῷ γε κρατοῦντι τηροῦσαι, μετὰ πολλῶν φόνων καὶ ἀνδραποδισμῶν ὑπήγοντο δεύτεραι. πλὴν ἀλλὰ πᾶσα ἡ Ἀσία ὀπίσω τούτου ἐγένετο, ἐκτὸς τοῦ τὸ Ὀψίκιον Κατάκυλα στρατηγούντος | καὶ Ὀλβιανοῦ τοῦ τῶν Ἀρμενικῶν· οὗτοι γὰρ δὴ ἐν τοσούτοις μόνοι B 54
- 35 στρατηγέταις τὰ πιστὰ τηροῦντες πρὸς Μιχαήλ ἀνεφάνησαν. οἷς καὶ τὴν χάριν ἀπονέμων, ὡς μὴ προδεδωκόσιν αὐτόν, τὸ εἰς τὸ βασιλικὸν τελοῦμενον ταμεῖον δημόσιον, καπνικὸν οὕτω λεγόμενον, μιλιαρίσιον ἐν συγκεχώρηται· τῶν γὰρ ἄλλων πάντων ἀνὰ δύο τελούντων ἀνέκαθεν μιλιαρισίων, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτῶν τούτων, τότε τὸ ἐν ἀφείθη διὰ τὴν εὐνοίαν.

11.7–8 : initio a. 821 Thomas Armenus armis contra Michaellem insurgit

7 τὰς περὶ αὐτοῦ προρρήσεις : τὴν (τὰς Comb) περὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἐν τῷ Φιλομηλίῳ μοναχοῦ πρόρρησιν edd e Scyl 30.59–60 10 ἐτύχανε V 16 αἰδεσίμος V 17 πως : που edd 17 συνουσίω τὸ V 19 ἐφ’ : εἰς edd : ὑφ’ Boore Scyl 30.74 20 εἰσποιησάμενος edd 23 τοῦ : τὸ edd 23 ἐνῆν post πραγμάτων Bekk dubitanter in app.: ἐν ἦν V 24 πείρα V 26 ἅματι V 27 κατεπόντιζον B edd 27 στρατιώτης V 28 καταξέωτου ante corr. V (τα sscr.) 29 αὐτ’ ἀνδρως V 30 ἀνήρηντο coni. Boor in app., cf. Scyl 31.82 προστεθεμένων 31 ἀντεπίπτουσαι primum scripsit, deinde in i corr. V 31 μεταπολλῶν V 32 δεῦτεροι V 32 ἡ om. edd 37 ταμεῖον edd 37 δημόσιον τέλος Scyl 31.89 39 εὐνοίαν V

youth, been somehow at variance with Michael —, and also fearing the prophecies concerning him, he set up an opposing force, and this no small or weak force, but a mighty and manly and valiant one, having with him men of all ages who could wield the spear. For it happened that Michael was hated by all in any case because he participated, as has been said, in the evil heresy of the Athinganoi and because, with his defective speech, he was renowned for cowardice and weakness; moreover, because his soul was no less defective than his speech, he was detested and considered a burden by the many. But Thomas, though lame of leg and barbarian of race, was nevertheless venerable with his white hair and all the more beloved for the affability and wit, esteemed amongst the military, which was somehow innate in him from childhood, and he seemed second to none of those of noble body. He won over to his side those who collected public taxes and, striving to subject the many to his will through generous gifts, from a person of little importance he became renowned, and from one with the least means, one great. He prevailed with persuasion and a certain aimiability upon those who had desire for a new state of affairs and their own enrichment, but with force and against the will of those who had already had bad experience of civil revolts. Hence did civil wars break out and, opening like cataracts of the Nile, flooded the land not with water but blood. Hence did servants raise murderous hands against their masters, and the soldier against his sergeant, and the captain against his general, until all of Asia was submerged in moaning. Some cities with all their inhabitants took Thomas's side, won over by fear, but others often resisted, keeping faith with the emperor, and were subsequently subdued with much slaughter and enslavement. Nevertheless, all Asia followed him, except for Katakylas, general of the Opsikion and Olbianos of the Armeniacs, for these generals proved to be the only who kept faith with Michael. And giving thanks to them, because they had not betrayed him, a concession was made of one miliaresion for the public tax gathered by the imperial treasury which was called the Kapnikon; for from the beginning all the others, including these, each payed two miliaresia, but now one was remitted as a token of goodwill.

12. Ἄ καὶ μαθοῦσι τοῖς Ἀγαρηνοῖς ἀγαπητὸν κατεφαίνετο καὶ ὅλως ἐντρύφημα· καιροῦ γὰρ λαβόμενοι πᾶσαν χώραν καὶ νῆσον κατέτρεχον ἀδεῶς, μὴ τινος ἐμποδῶν ἱσταμένου αὐτοῖς. διὸ καὶ ταῦτα τῷ Θωμᾷ διακηκοῦσι, ἐπεὶ τινὰ κίνησιν ἐκ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὥετο καὶ νεωτερισμόν, εἴ γέ
- 5 τινὰ φροντίδα μὴ τῶν ἐπ’ οἴκου ποιήσοιτο καὶ τῆς ἄλλης ἀνατολῆς, ἀλλὰ συγχωρήσοι τοὺς τε παῖδας καὶ γυναικας καταληϊσθῆναι καὶ αἰχμαλωτισθῆναι αὐτῶν, συμφέρον κέκρικε τέως μὲν ἐπικρατῆσαι τὴν αὐτῶν ὁρμὴν δι’ ἐπιφανείας αὐτοῦ | καὶ τῷ πλήθει τῶν δυνάμεων ἐκπλήξαι τε καὶ πρὸς f. 18 εἰρήνην πανούργως ἐκκαλέσασθαι. ὃ καὶ συνέβη· ὥς γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἄρτι δὴ
- 10 τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς εἰς τὴν αὐτῶν εἰσβάλλων ἐξ ὑποστροφῆς ἀνύποιστος κατεφαίνετο, εἰς λόγους δὴ προελθὼν βαρβαρικοὺς σπονδὰς τε ἐποίειτο εἰρηνικὰς καὶ πρὸς συμμαχίαν ἐξεκαλεῖτο αὐτούς, συντιθέμενός τε καὶ καθυπισχνούμενος ἃ καὶ πρότερον εἴρηται, τὰ Ῥωμαίων τε προδοῦναι ὅρια καὶ τὴν αὐτῶν αὐτοῖς ὑπὸ χεῖρας ποιῆσαι ἀρχήν. ὅθεν τοῦ μὲν βου-
- 15 λεύματος οὐ διήμαρτεν τοῦ οἰ|κείου, ἀλλὰ καὶ στέφους μεταλαγχάνει καὶ αὐτοκράτωρ ἀναγορεύεται παρὰ τοῦ τὸν ἐν Ἀντιοχείᾳ θρόνον τηλικαῦτα μεταποιουμένου Ἰώβ, καὶ χεῖρα συλλέγει πολλήν, μᾶλλον δὲ λαμβάνει πρὸς τὴν αὐτοῦ κραταίωσιν· οὐκ Ἀγαρηνῶν μόνον τούτων δὴ τῶν ἡμῖν γειτονούντων καὶ ὁμορούντων, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν ἐνδότερον οἰ-
- 20 κούντων, Αἰγυπτίων, Ἰνδῶν, Περσῶν, Ἀσσυρίων, Ἀρμενίων, Χάλδων, Ἰβήρων, Ζηχῶν, Καβείρων καὶ πάντων δὴ τῶν τοῖς Μάνεντος συστοιχούντων δόγμασι καὶ θεσπίσμασι. τούτοις οὖν οἷον κατοχυρωθεὶς καὶ πάντοθεν ἑαυτὸν περιφράξας ἄριστον ὑπετόπασε τοῖς τρόποις καὶ τὴν κλῆσιν ἀλλάξασθαι καὶ υἷον εἰσποιήσασθαι, ὥς μοι δεδήλωται.
13. Εἰσβάλλει οὖν πᾶσαν πορθῶν τὴν ἀνατολήν καὶ πᾶσαν ἡλικίαν τὴν μὴ διὰ πειθοῦς ἐρχομένην αὐτῷ. ἃ δὴ ὁ βασιλεύων ἀκηκοώς, μεῖζον εἶναι κρίνας τῶν ἔργων τὴν ἀκοὴν κατ’ αὐτοῦ ἐκπέμπει στρατὸν οὐτ’ ἀξιόχρεον οὐτ’ ἀξιόλογον, ὥς συρραγεῖς ὁ Θωμᾶς τοὺς μὲν ὥσπερ τι πο-
- 5 τὸν διψῶν ἀνερρόφησεν, τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς εἰς φυγὴν τρέψας τὰ καθ’ ἑαυτὸν

12.16–17 : Thomas a patriarcha Antiochiae Iob ca. a. 821 coronatus est

Cap. 12: Epist ad Ludovicum 476.21–22; GeorgMon. 793.8–9, 14–15; Gen 24.8–22; Log A 214.13–215.14, 17–18 | Scyl 31.91–32.15 Cap. 13: Epist ad Ludovicum 477.2–4; Gen. 26.84–27.16 | Scyl 32.16–33.42

12.3 ἐμποδῶν V 3 δι’ ὃ V 3 θωμά V 4 ἐπεὶ τινὰ V 5 ἐποίκου V 8 διεπιφανείας V 10 εἰσβάλλων edd Boor : εἰσβάλλοντι V 13 ὑπισχνούμενος edd 16 ἀν ἀγορεύεται V 17 Ἰώβ Boor e Gen 24.17 et Scyl 31.9 : Ἰακώβ V edd 18 οὐκ : οὐ γὰρ edd 21 Cf. Scyl 32.12 (CMN) Ζεχῶν, (A) Ζέχων, (VB) Ζιχῶν 21 δὴ τῶν τοῖς : τῶν δὴ edd 13.2 δια- πειθοῦς V 2 μεῖζονα vel μεῖζω conl. Boor in app. 3 στρατὸν : στρατιὰν καὶ στρατηγὸν dubitanter e Scyl 32.18 (ACVN) restituit Boor in app., sed Scyl (M) στρατιὰν καὶ om. 4 οὐτ’ ἀξιόχρεον οὐτ’ V : οὐκ ἀξιόχρεον οὐδ’ edd (ἀξιόχρεων Boor e VBas 99.40) 5 ποτῶν V

12. Now when the Hagarenes learnt of these things, it seemed a thoroughly welcome delight. For seizing the opportunity they overran every land and island with impunity, with no one to oppose them. Thus, when Thomas heard this, because he thought that there might be commotion and revolt amongst his men if he did not take thought for those left at home and others in the east and allowed their wives and children to be carried off and made prisoners, he judged it to be in his interest to check the inroads of the Hagarenes at that moment through his appearance and to frighten them by the multitude of his forces and call for peace in cunning wise. The which indeed came to pass; for straightway invading the Saracens' country by return march he appeared to them invincible; and entering into barbarian dialogues he concluded a treaty of peace and invited them into an alliance, conceding and promising that which has already been mentioned, that he would betray the Roman territories and put control of them in their hands. Whereupon he was not unsuccessful in his purpose, but received the crown and was proclaimed emperor by Job who then held the see of Antioch; and he gathered, or rather took hold of, a great force in order to strengthen himself: there were not only Hagarenes, our neighbours on the borders, but also those dwelling further, Egyptians, Indians, Persians, Assyrians, Armenians, Chaldeans, Iberians, Zechians, Kabeirans and all those who followed the doctrines and decrees of Manes. After fortifying and, as it were, fencing himself all around with these same, he thought it best to change his name together with his manners and to adopt a son, as I have explained.

13. So Thomas invaded, destroying all the east and those of all ages who did not come to him in submission. Upon hearing this the reigning emperor, judging the rumour to be graver than the facts, dispatched against him an army worthy neither of the task nor even of mention; and giving battle Thomas gulped down part of it as one thirsty does with a drink, whilst he put the rest to flight, rendering his position yet stronger. And fitting out biremes and

- διετίθετο κραταιότερον. ναῦς τε ἐξαρτύων διήρεις καὶ ἑτέρας στρογγύλας
 σιταγωγούς ἐπομένας αὐτῷ καὶ ἵππαγωγούς, ἐντεῦθεν καὶ τοῦ θεματικοῦ
 στόλου γίνεται ἐγκρατής, καὶ πρὸς τὴν Λέσβον ἅπαν τὸ ναυτικὸν
 ἀθροίζεσθαι ἐγκελεύεται, αὐτὸς δὲ ἤδη που ἀνανταγώνιστος εἶναι δοκῶν
 10 πᾶσαν τὴν Ἀσίαν λεηλατεῖ. ὁκτῶ γὰρ μυριάδων κατάρχων | καὶ ἐνὶ B 56
 λόγῳ τούτους ἡνιοχῶν τὴν ἐπὶ Ἄβυδον ἦει φέρουσιν ἐκεῖσε δὴ περαι-
 15 ωθησόμενος. | ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα καταδραμῶν σποδὸν καὶ κόνιν, μὴ πού γε f. 18 v
 τὰ ταπεινὰ τῶν χωρίων ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τὰ κραταιότερα, ἐνειργάσατο,
 κατελέλειπτο δὲ τι χωρίον εὐφυὲς καὶ τῆς αὐτῶν κακώσεως ἅμοιρον ἦν,
 20 τῷ εἰσποιητῷ τοῦτο καταδραμεῖν μετὰ τῆς προσούσης φάλαγγος
 ἐπιτρέπει υἱῷ. ὁ δὲ τισι δαιμόνων γοητείαις κατεπαιρόμενος καὶ μαντείαις
 τὴν ψυχὴν ἐκφυσώμενος τῇ προτεραίᾳ τοῦτο δὴ εἰς ἐπήκοον τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ
 ἐκεκράγει, ῥητὴν τινα ἡμέραν ἔσεσθαι καθομολογῶν καὶ φάσκων ἢ μέλλοι
 25 εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσιν προελθεῖν. τότε γοῦν θρασέως ἵππαζόμενος ἐς
 βαρεῖαν βλάβην ὁ δεῖλιος ἐξεχόρευσεν. διεσπαρμένως γὰρ φερόμενος,
 ἅτε γυμνὸν εἶναι τῶν ἀντιπάλων τὸ χωρίον οἶόμενος λόχῳ δὴ τινι πε-
 30 ριπίπτει τοῦ Ὀλβιανοῦ, καὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐθωρὸν ἀποτμηθεὶς τῷ βασι-
 λεῖ ἀποστέλλεται Μιχαήλ· ὁ δὲ οὐδὲν ὑφιεμένῳ κατὰ τὴν πορείαν οὐδὲ
 μὴν τοῖς δεινοῖς τῶν ἔργων καὶ χαλεποῖς τῷ ἑαυτοῦ ἀποστέλλει πατρί.
 25 ἄρτι ταύτην ἐδέδεκτο ὁ Θωμᾶς, καὶ πρὸς Θράκην οὐδὲν ὑποστέλλόμενος
 ἔκ του κατὰ θάλατταν ὄντος χωρίου – Ὀρκώσιον τοῦτο καλεῖται –, και-
 ρὸν ἐπιτηρήσας ὅτε δὴ κατὰ σύνοδον ἢ σελήνην ἀφώτιστος ἦν, πολλαχοῦ
 διαπεραιοῦται κατὰ τὴν Θράκην. ἔμελεν οὖν καὶ πρὸ τῆς αὐτοῦ δια-
 30 βάσεως ταῦτα τῷ Μιχαήλ, ὅθεν πᾶσαν περιελθὼν τὴν Θρακῶν ἰσ-
 χυροτέρους ἅμα παρήνει γενέσθαι πρὸς τὸν ἀποστάτην καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ
 φρονεῖν | μέχρις αἰμάτων παρεκάλει, μήτε τὴν βασιλέως πίστιν μήτε μὴν B 57
 τὴν σφῶν ἐξαρνουμένους ἀνδρείαν καὶ ἀρετὴν. ἀλλ’ ὅμοιος ἢ ὄψις ἅμαχόν
 τι εἶναι πρᾶγμα τοῖς πολλοῖς· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐκείνου μὲν πρὸς τὴν
 βασιλεύουσιν ὑποκεχωρηκός, τοῦ Θωμᾶ δὲ κατὰ πρόσωπον πα-
 35 ρισταμένου, μεταθέσθαι συνέβη πάντας εὐκόλως, ὥς μὴ δὲ λόγου δεηθῆναι,
 καὶ ἅμα συστρατεῦσθαι ἡγουμένῳ κατὰ τὴν βασιλεύουσιν.

13.36 : a. 821 Constantinopolis obsidium a Thoma Slavo inceptum est

6 ἐξ ἀρτύων V 8 τὸν αὐτικὸν V 11 ἐκεῖσε om. edd 12 μὴ πού γε V edd : μήπου
 Boor 14 καταλέλειπτο edd 15 τοῦτο Bekk Boor : τούτω V 16 μαντείαν Comb :
 μαντεία Bekk 17 ἐκφυσώμενος Boor : ἐκφυσόμενος V : ἐμφυσώμενος edd, sed cf. supra
 I.20.28 19 εἰς edd 20 διεσπαρμένος V 21 ἅτε γυμνὸν – οἶόμενος nos : τῷ γυμνὸν – οἶε-
 σθαι Boor e Scyl 32.29 : τὸ γυμνὸν – οἶόμενος V Comb : καὶ γυμνὸν – οἶόμενος Bekk 22 τοῦ
 edd Boor e Scyl 32.30 : τῷ V 26 ἔκ του Boor : ἐκ τοῦ V edd 26 καταθάλατταν V
 28 ἔμελλεν V 30 ἰσχυροτεροτέρους V 32 ἀνδρίαν edd 33 εἶνα V 33 πρᾶγμα V

other, round ships bearing provisions and horses which followed him, he then gained control of the theme's fleet and commanded that all the naval forces should assemble on Lesbos; and already thinking himself somehow invincible he laid waste to all Asia. For having charge of eighty-thousand and directing these same with his single command he set out for Abydos intending to cross over from there. Now, after he had overrun and turned to dust and ashes not only the poorer but also the more powerful districts, and there remained but one prosperous district untouched by the devastation of the others, he commanded his adopted son to invade it with the contingent assigned to him. But this latter, roused to arrogance by enchantments of the demons and puffed up in his soul by divinations, divulged this the day before in the hearing of his men, promising and affirming that it would be on such and such a day that he would advance on the imperial city. Then, riding on his horse with insolence, the wretch went off to grievous harm. For rushing on in dispersed formation, thinking the place then clear of the enemy, he fell into a trap of Olbianos and on the spot his head was severed and sent off to the emperor Michael; and this latter then sent it off to his father who was not tarrying on his way despite the dangers and difficulties of his affairs. Thomas received the head and, in no wise hindered on his way toward Thrace, crossed over from a village on the sea – it was called Orkosion – into many places in Thrace, seizing the opportunity when by conjunction the moon was unlit. Now, Michael took thought for this even before the other's crossing over and thus, going round all of Thrace, he incited the more powerful to resist the rebel and exhorted them to espouse his cause unto the shedding of their blood, betraying neither the emperor's faith nor their own courage and virtue. But his aspect seemed to many as that of one who had no part in battle; and therefore, after Michael had withdrawn to the imperial city and Thomas appeared, all readily went over to his side, without a word being said, and joined the expedition led by him against the imperial city.

14. Οὐκ ἔλαθεν οὖν ταῦτα θάττον ἢ ἔδει τὸν βασιλέα· ὅθεν καὶ στρατὸν τινα ἐκ τῶν ἤδη που καταλελειμμένων ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἐπισυνάγει καὶ δυνάμεις τινὰς διὰ τοῦ Κατάκυλα καὶ Ὀλβιανοῦ συναθροίζει, τὸν περὶ τῆς βασιλείας ἤδη κίνδυνον δεδιώς, ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ τοῦ κατὰ θάλατταν ἡμέλει
- 5 στρατοῦ, τάχει δὲ πολλῶ πρὸς τὴν ἐκείνου κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο δύνάμιν. εἰς τοσοῦτον δὲ ἦκε δυσεργίας καὶ πε- f. 19
- ριστάσεως ὥς καὶ σιδηρᾶν ἄλυσιν ἐξ ἀκροπόλεως εἰς τὸ καταντικρὺ πολίχνιον ἐπεκτείνειν, τὴν ἔσωθεν ἄβατον τηρῶν ὁδόν. ἦν δὲ τις ἐν Σκύρῳ νήσῳ τῶν Κυκλάδων μιᾷ πολλάκις ἐστρατηγηκὼς ἀνὴρ ὑπερόριος, ἄρτι
- 10 δὲ τῷ Μιχαῇλ εἰς πικρίαν ψυχῆς ἀφικόμενος· ὄνομα τούτῳ Γρηγόριος ὁ οὕτω λεγόμενος Πτερωτός. ὃς ἀδελφιδοὺς μὲν ὑπάρχων τοῦ Λέοντος, ἄρτι δὲ τούτου ἀναιρεθέντος ὑπερόριος γίνεται, ὅτι μὴ σιγῇ, ζεοῦση δὲ καρδίᾳ καὶ φιλίᾳ τοῦ Λέοντος, προσκυνήσων τὸν Μιχαῇλ εἰσερχόμενος πολλοῖς ὀνειδισμοῖς αὐτὸν περιέβαλεν, τὸν φόνον φέρων τῶν λεγομένων κατήγο- B 58
- 15 ρον. ᾧ ὁ Μιχαῇλ τότε μὲν εἰπὼν· “οἶδά σου τῆς ἀθυμίας τὸ πέλαγος καὶ τῆς λύπης τὸ μέγεθος”, φέρειν ἐπέτρεπε τὰ γενόμενα· τρίτης δὲ παρωχηκυίας ἡμέρας κατὰ τὸν εἰρημένον τόπον τῶν Κυκλάδων πεποίηκεν ὑπερόριον. τοῦτον ἐταιρισάμενος ὁ Θωμᾶς στρατεύματός τινας τοῦ κατὰ γῆν ὥσει χιλιάδων δέκα ἀνέδειξε στρατηγόν· καὶ τὸν κατὰ
- 20 θάλατταν δὲ στόλον αὐτῷ γενόμενον εὐτρεπισάμενος οἶόν τινας προδρόμους ἐξέπεμψεν κρίνας τούτους κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν ἅμα ποιῆσθαι τὰς προσβολάς. γενομένου δὲ τούτου καὶ κατὰ ταῦτὸν ἀναφανέντων τῶν τε ναυτικῶν καὶ πεζικῶν δυνάμεων ἐν τῷ πρὸς Βλαχέρναις κόλπῳ – οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδεμίαν κώλυσιν ἢ βοήθειαν ἢ ἐξαρτισθεῖσα σιδηρᾶ σειρὰ
- 25 ἐπεδέδεικτο – εἰς οὐδὲν ἢ μικρὸν ἢ τούτων παρουσία λελόγιστο· ὅθεν οὐδ’ ἀξιόλογόν τι παρ’ αὐτοῖς ἐπέπρακτο. πλὴν ὁ Θωμᾶς κριοὺς καὶ χελώνας καὶ τινας ἐλεπόλεις, δι’ ὧν τὰ τεῖχη ᾤετο κατασεῖν, διὰ τινων κατασκευάσας μηχανουργῶν, πρὸς δὲ καὶ τινα Ἀναστάσιον ἄρτι δὴ τὸν τῶν μοναχῶν ἀλλαξάμενον βίον καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀγυρτικὸν τοῦτον δὴ καὶ πολιτι- 30 κὸν ὑποστρέψαντα, μέλανα τὴν χοιρᾶν, μέλανα τὴν ψυχὴν, υἱοθετήσας

Cap. 14: Epist ad Ludovicum 477.4–9; Gen 27.15–28.43 | Scyl 33.43–34.76 || 15–16 Analecta hymnica, Canones Septembris dies 22, canon 27, oda 3, ln. 4 εἰς πέλαγος ἀθυμίας

14.4 θάλασσαν edd 5 κατὰ om. edd 6 τοσοῦτο edd 7 σιδηρὰν edd 7 ἄλυσιν V 11 ἀδελφιδούς V 12 ζεοῦση V 12 ante καρδίᾳ add. τῇ edd 15 ὁ om. edd 17 παρωχηκυίας V 18 στρατεύματος τινὸς V 19 ὥσει χιλιάδων Boor e Scyl 33.56 : ὥσει χιλιάδας V edd : ὡς εἰς χιλιάδας conl. Bekk in app. 19 ἀνέδειξεν edd 20 θάλασσαν edd 20 post εὐτρεπισάμενος add. καὶ ἕτερον αὐτῷ ἐπιστήσας στρατηγὸν edd e Scyl 33.57–58 21 post ἐξέπεμψεν add. ὠφέλιμον εἶναι edd e Scyl 33.59 21 τούτους nos : τοῦ V edd, quod dubitanter del. Boor in app. 22 κατὰ ταῦτὸν edd e Scyl 33.60 et Gen 27.27 (Lachmann et Thurn) : κατ’ αὐτὸν V Gen (L) : κατ’ αὐτὸν τὸν καιρὸν sive χρόνον aut κατ’ αὐτὸ conl. Stephanus Berglerus in ed. Venet. 1733 Genesii 23 τε om. edd 26 ἀξιόλογον τί V 27 καὶ τίνας V 29 ἀλλαξάμενον edd Boor : ἀλλαξάμενος V

14. All this came as fast as could be to the attention of the emperor and, fearing danger for his reign, he gathered an army out of soldiers from Asia who had been left behind somewhere and added some other forces with the help of Katakyles and Olbianos. Nor did he neglect his army on the sea, but in great haste did he build up his force both on land and sea against that of Thomas. He came into such a difficult position and crisis that he suspended an iron chain from the acropolis to the village opposite, rendering the inner channel inaccessible. Now there was a certain man in banishment on Skyros, one of the Cyclades islands, who had often served as general but who had recently been the source of bitterness for Michael. His name was Gregory, nicknamed Pterotos [the Winged]. Being the nephew of Leo, he was banished when this latter was slain, for he did not come to render obeissance to Michael in silence but, with fervent heart and love for Leo, heaped many reproaches on him, bringing murder as the reason for his words. Michael then said to him, 'I know the vast sea of your despair and magnitude of your grief,' and bade him bring forth the facts; but after three days had passed he banished him to the aforementioned place in the Cyclades. Associating himself with this Gregory, Thomas made him general of a land army of some ten thousand; and preparing the fleet at his disposal on the sea, he dispatched certain men as a vanguard, choosing them for attacks both by land and by sea. But this being done, and the naval and infantry forces appearing all at once in the bay by Blachernai – for the suspended iron chain rendered no defence or aid –, their presence counted for little or nothing, and thus they achieved nothing worthy of note. Thomas, however, with the help of engineers constructed battering rams and tortoise-shields and siege-engines by which he thought to undermine the city walls, and he adopted and proclaimed as partner in his rebellion a certain Anastasius – a man dark in his skin, dark in his soul – who had just abandoned the monastic estate and returned to this

- καὶ συγκοινωνὸν τῆς ἀνταρσίας ἀναγορεύσας, πολλῶ στρατῶ καὶ
 δυνάμει ῥέων κατὰ τῆς βασιλευούσης προσήλυνεν, ἅμα δὲ τῷ εἰς ὅψιν
 ἐποφθῆναι τῶν πολιτῶν τὰς πύλας αὐτῶ ἀναπετάσαι οἰόμενος, μίσει δὲ
 35 τῷ πρὸς Μιχαήλ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταύτης τῆς ἐλπίδος διέπεσεν, μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν B 59v
 καὶ ὕβρεσι τούτων καὶ λοιποῖς ἐπλύνετο, τότε μὲν τὴν στρατη- f. 19v
 γικὴν σκηνὴν καὶ τὸν χάρακα κατὰ τὸν τοῦ Παυλίνου οἶκον, ἔνθα δὲ καὶ
 τὸ τῶν σεβασμίων Ἀναργύρων τέμενος οἶόν τι ἀνάκτορον ὥκοδόμηται,
 ἐγκατέπηξε, καὶ πάντα τὸν ἄχρι Εὐξείνου τόπον καὶ Ἱεροῦ καὶ τῶν πε-
 40 ραιτέρω δὲ τούτων πολιχνίων ἐπῆλθε διὰ τινος στρατεύματος πείσων,
 καὶ μὴ τίνα ἔχειν ὑπὸ νώτου ἔχθρόν.
- 14bis.** Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα κατὰ νοῦν ἔχειν ἐδόκει αὐτῶ, τινὰς ἡμέρας πρὸς
 παρασκευὴν δοὺς ἑαυτῶ, ὥς ἐκ τινος ἀπόπτου κατεῖδεν τὸν μὲν Μιχαήλ
 τὸ πολεμικὸν σημεῖον ἐπὶ τέγους τοῦ τῆς θεοτόκου ναοῦ καταπεπηγότα
 5 κάκειθεν τὴν κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων ἰσχὺν αἰτούμενόν τε καὶ προσλαμ-
 βάνοντα, τὸν δ' υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Θεόφιλον πάντα τὸν τῆς πόλεως περίβολον
 μετὰ τοῦ Ἱεροῦ τάγματος ἐπιφοιτῶντα, τὸ τε ζωοποιὸν τοῦ σταυροῦ
 ξύλον ἐπιφερόμενον καὶ τὴν ἐσθῆτα τῆς πανάγνου μητρὸς Χριστοῦ τοῦ
 10 θεοῦ ἡμῶν, εἰς πολλὴν μὲν τῶν πραγμάτων <ἐνέπεσε> δυσελπιστίαν καὶ
 παντοῖος ἐγένετο τὴν γνώμην κατὰ τὸν χαμαιλέοντα, εἴ γε μὴ πρὸς ὄρα-
 10 τοὺς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀόρατους τινὰς δυνάμεις ἀναγκάζοιτο διαμάχεσθαι.
 οὐκ ἔχων δ' ὅ τι καὶ πράξειεν, ἄλλως τε δὲ καὶ ὄχλῳ δὴ τοσούτῳ τεθαρ-
 ρηκῶς, τὸν διὰ μάχης ἔκρινεν ἁγῶνα τῶν τοιούτων δὲ λογισμῶν
 γενέσθαι κριτὴν. ὅθεν τῇ ἐξῆς ἅμα τῷ φωτὶ σημάνας τὸ ἐνυάλιον τοὺς
 15 ἄνδρας ἐξῆγε, καὶ τῷ μὲν υἱῷ κατὰ τὸν ἐν τῇ χέρσῳ τοῦ τείχους
 περίβολον φέρειν τὸν πόλεμον καὶ τὴν ἀνάγκην ἐπέτρεπεν, αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ
 πολὺ τῆς δυνάμεως καὶ τῶν μηχανικῶν ὀργάνων, δι' ὧν ἔμελλε τὸ | τείχος B 60
 καταπειράζειν τῆς πόλεως, ἔχων κατὰ τοὺς τῶν Βλαχερνῶν πύργους
 ἐποιεῖτο τὴν προσβολήν, κλίμακας τε τῷ ὕψει προσφέρων ἀναλογούσας
 καὶ χελώνας ἄλλοθεν καὶ ἐτέρωθεν τοὺς κριούς, τοξεύμασί τε καὶ πε-
 20 τροβόλοις οἷς ἔμελλε πάντοθεν παντοῖος φαινόμενος καταπλῆξαι μὲν τοὺς
 πολίτας, κρατήσιν δὲ καὶ τῆς πόλεως. οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ τῶν κατὰ θάλατταν
 ἡμέλει τειχῶν, ἀλλὰ τῷ ναυτικῷ πάντοθεν περικυκλώσας αὐτήν, πυρί τε
 καὶ τοξεύμασι, πρὸς δὲ καὶ τισὶ τετρασκελέσιν ἐλεπόλεσιν, χρήσθαι

Cap. 14bis: Epist ad Ludovicum 477.11–12; Gen 28.43–57 | Scyl 34.77–35.11

32 δὲ V B in marg. Comb : δὲ B edd 33 αὐτῶ : αὐτοὺς conl. Boor in app. 33 οἰόμενος V
 35 post μὲν add. δὲ edd 40 ὑπὸ : κατὰ Bekk in app., cf. infra II.16.8 : ἐπὶ conl. Boor in app.
14bis. 5 ante Θεόφιλον add. τὸν edd 8 ante δυσελπιστίαν add. ἐνέπεσε Boor e Scyl 34.84 ἐνέ-
 πιπτε 8 post δυσελπ. conl. ἀφίκετο Bekk in app. 9 τῇ γνώμῃ Boor, cf. Scyl 34.88 ταῖς
 γνώμαις 14 χέρσῳ edd 16 τῶν δυνάμεων edd 16 μηχανικῶν : πολεμικῶν edd
 19 χελώνας V 20 post πετροβόλοις add. πανταχῶθεν χρώμενος edd e Scyl 34.92–93
 20 οἷς del. Boor 21 κρατήσιν V 23 καὶ τισὶ V 23 τετρασκελέσιν V

idle, secular life; and rushing with a great army and force he approached the imperial city, thinking that upon his appearance to the populace the gates would be opened to him, out of hatred for Michael. But after he failed in this hope and, on the contrary, was heaped up with insults and reproaches from them, he then fixed his tent of command and trench by the house of Paulinus, where the sanctuary of the venerable Anargyroi was constructed as a sort of palace, and with an army he traversed all the region up to the Euxene and Hieron and the villages beyond to verify that there was no enemy at his back.

14bis. Thomas, then, had all this on his mind, giving himself several days for preparations; but when from a certain lookout he spied Michael fixing the battle standard on the roof of the church of the Theotokos, seeking and receiving from thence power over his enemy, and also his son Theophilus going round all the city with the clergy, bearing the life-giving wood of the Cross and the garment of the all-pure mother of Christ our God, Thomas fell into great despair for his cause and tried every shift of opinion, like a chameleon, as to whether he need do battle not only against visible but also certain invisible forces. Not knowing what to do, but taking confidence all the same in his great army, he decided that the trial of battle would be arbitor of such considerations. Thus on the morrow at dawn he gave the signal for war and led his men out. He commanded his son to bring battle and constraint in the land circuit of the wall, whilst he himself led an attack on the towers of Blachernai with the bulk of the troops and siege-engines whereby he intended to assault the city wall; bringing ladders of corresponding height and, on another side, tortoise-shields and, on yet another, battering-rams, with archers and stone-throwers, he intended to overwhelm the populace and take the city by appearing on every side and in every manner. Nor did he neglect the walls beside the sea, but surrounding the city on every side with his fleet he commanded that fire and archery, as well as certain four-legged engines, should be used relent-

- 25 ἐκέλευεν ἀφειδῶς, ταῦτόν δὲ καὶ ἀτέχνως εἰπεῖν· ὅθεν οὐδὲν τῶν εἰς ὄνησιν
 φερόντων αὐτῷ ἢ τοσαύτη δύναμις συμπαρομαρτούντων ἀνδρῶν κατ- f. 20
 επράξατο. τὸ μὲν γὰρ ναυτικὸν | εὐθύς τις ἐναντίος ἐπιγενόμενος ἄνεμος
 συνδιέλυσέ τε καὶ ἄλλο ἄλλη διασπαρῆναι ἐποίησεν ἅτε δὴ καὶ χειμῶνος
 ὄντος ἐξαισίου· κατὰ δὲ τὴν ἡπειρον γενναίως μὲν τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως
 30 ἀπομαχομένων, καὶ τέως μὲν τὰς κλίμακας ἀχρήστους αὐτῷ ποιούντων
 διὰ τῶν ἐκ τῶν πύργων ῥηγνυμένων ἰσχυροτέρων βελῶν, τῶν δ' ἄλλων
 ὀργάνων πῇ μὲν οὐκ ἐφικνουμένων – καὶ τούτου μεγάλην ῥοπήν τοῖς
 πράγμασι τεθεικότος – καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ πρὸς τοὺς πολέμους ἀπειρίαν κα-
 ταμαρτυρησάντων, πῇ δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐφικνουμένων καὶ καταλαμβάνοντων
 35 ἀσθενεστάτων ὄντων καὶ οὐ κατὰ μάχην γενναίαν τε καὶ διασεῖειν τείχη
 εἰδόντων, ἀλλ' οὐδέ του κατὰ τοὺς πύργους ἵσταμένου ἀνδρὸς ὑπο-
 χώρησίν τινα παρασκευαζόντων. ὥς οὖν ἐφαίνετο ταῦτα οὐ κατὰ τὴν
 προτέραν διαθρυλήσασαν πάντα φήμην καὶ | διακωδωνίσασαν, ἥττω B 61
 δὲ καὶ ὥς ἕκ τινος ἀσθενεστάτης φρενὸς διακυβερνώμενα καὶ ἐκπε-
 ρατούμενα, ἀνεθάρρησέ τε ἡ πολιορκουμένη πόλις εὐθέως, καὶ τοσοῦτον
 40 ἐκηβολωτέροις ἐχρήτο τοῖς βέλεσιν, ὥς πόρρω που τούτους αὐλισθῆναι
 ἐπαναγκάσαι τὰς τοσαύτας μηχανὰς ἐγκαταλιπόντας καὶ περὶ τῆς ἰδίας
 βουλευέσθαι σωτηρίας. ὅθεν ἐπεὶ τὰ κατὰ τὴν πολιορκίαν οὐχ ὥς ὤφετο,
 στερρότερα δὲ ἢ κατὰ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ γνώμην ἀπήντησεν, ἄλλως δὲ καὶ ἡ
 ὥρα δριμύτερον ἐδείκνυ τὸν καιρὸν, ἅτε δὴ καὶ χειμῶνος ἐπιγενομένου καὶ
 45 τῆς Θράκης τῶν ἄλλων οὔσης δυσχειμέρου, ἐπὶ παραχειμασίαν ἐτράπη
 καὶ τὴν τοῦ στρατοῦ ἀνακομιδὴν.

15. Ἦδη δὲ τοῦ ἔαρος ἡμερον ἐπιλάμποντος καὶ τὸν στρατιώτην ὄχλον
 τὰς καταδύσεις καὶ χηραμοὺς καταλιπεῖν ἐκβιάζοντος, ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐθις
 κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν ἔκρινε προσβάλλειν τῇ Κωνσταντίνου.
 5 ἀλλ' ἤδη καὶ τὸν Μιχαὴλ οὐχ ὥς τὸ πρότερον, ἄρτι δὲ στρατιωτικὴν τινα
 δύναμιν εὗρισκε συλλεξάμενον, καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν ἄλλην δὴ ναυτικὴν.
 κατ' ἐκεῖνο γοῦν πάλιν ἦι τὸ μέρος ὀπλισάμενος ἦ καὶ πρότερον, τὸν
 κόλπον τῶν Βλαχερνῶν. ὥς οὖν ἡμέρα ὑπέλαμπεν καὶ τὸ σύνθημα

14bis.44–46 : hieme a. 821–822 Thomas Slavus ad hiberna recessit 15.1 : primo vere a. 822
 Thomas Slavus Constantinopolin iterum oppugnavit

Cap. 15: Gen 28.58–29.70; Log A 215.20–23 | PsSym 621.11–13; Scyl 35.12–36.36

25 ἡ τοσαύτη δύναμις edd e Scyl 35.96 : ἡ τοσαύτη δυνάμει V 27 συνδιέλκυσε edd
 28 ἀπὸ Bekk Boor e Scyl 35.4 : αὐτοῦ V Comb 33 καταμαρτυρήσαντος edd Boor
 35 οὐδέ του conī. Boor in app. : οὐδέ τοῦ V edd 35 τοὺς om. edd 43 ἡ edd : ἡν V
 45 post ἄλλων conī. μάλλον Bekk in app. 45 δυσχειμερ<ώτερ>ον conī. Kamb 46 τὴν :
 τὸν Bekk 15.1 ὑπολάμποντος conī. Boor in app. 2 χηραμοὺς V 3 καταγῆν V 3 τὲ
 V 4 καὶ om. edd 5 δύναμι V 6 κατεκεῖνο V 6 ἦι edd Boor, cf. Scyl 35.16 : εἷη V
 6 ὀπλισάμενος V

lessly but, by the same token, without skill; and therefore it was that the great force of men accompanying him achieved nothing that brought advantage. For forthwith a contrary wind arose, wrecking the fleet and scattering it here and there, as if there was a violent storm; and on land the inhabitants of the city put up a courageous defence, rendering Thomas's ladders useless by hurling powerful missiles down from the towers, whilst his other engines either could not reach the walls – this giving a decisive turn to events and thus proved his inexperience in war –, or else, where they did reach and got hold, they were too weak and unsuited for intense battle and were incapable of shaking the walls; nor did they cause the retreat of any of the men standing on the towers. When these efforts turned out not to be in accordance with the earlier reports which had been noised and bruited about everywhere, but inferior, as though directed and carried out by a very feeble mind, the besieged city took courage forthwith and made such use of far-flying missiles as to force the others to make camp elsewhere, further afield, abandoning these engines, and to deliberate concerning their own safety. Therefore, since the siege did not turn out as he had thought but much harder than his estimation, and, besides, the season announced severe weather, winter impending and Thrace being known amongst other places for its harsh winters, Thomas withdrew for winter quartering and recuperation of his army.

15. But when the mildness of Spring had come and prompted the host of soldiers to leave their hiding-places and hollows, Thomas decided to attack the city of Constantine again from both sides, by land and by sea. Now however he found Michael not as before, but already with a military force which he had assembled, as well as a naval one at sea. Thomas prepared for battle in the same place as before, the bay of Blachernae. As the day dawned and the

- ἔδιδото τὸ πολεμικὸν καὶ <τὸ> τεῖχος ἔμελλε κατασεῖν τῶν Βλαχερνῶν, εἰς λόγους δὴ τισιν ἐκ τοῦ τῶν τειχῶν μετεώρου ἦλθεν ὁ Μιχαήλ, f. 20v
- 10 ἀ|μνηστίαν αὐτοῖς δεινῶν εὐαγγελιζόμενος καὶ καθυπισχνούμενος, εἰ μόνον δὴ μετατάξοιντο καὶ μὴ βουληθεῖεν αἵμασιν ὁμοφύλων καὶ ἀδελφῶν καταχραίνεσθαι. ἀλλ' εἰς πίθον | τετρημένον, τὸ τοῦ λόγου, τούτους B 62
- 15 ἔναπορράνας τοὺς λόγους, ἐκείνους μὲν θαρσαλεωτέρους, ὅτι δὴ καὶ παρκαλοῖντο, ταῦτόν δὲ εἰπεῖν καὶ τῆς ἐκ τοῦ φόβου συστάσεως λελυμένους εἰργάσατο, ἑαυτὸν δὲ σταθερώτερόν τε καὶ στερρότερον. ὅθεν ἄφνω ἐκ πολλῶν πυλίδων κατ' αὐτῶν συρρυσίς, ἥ μὴ προσεδόκων ἐκείνοι, συρρηγνυταί τισι τούτοις εἰς μάχην, καὶ φθόρον ἱκανὸν ἐργασάμενος τὴν νικῶσαν λαμβάνει λαμπρῶς. κατὰ θάλατταν δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον ἢ κατ' ἡπειρον τὴν νικῶσαν ἐλάμβανεν. ὥς γὰρ αἱ βασιλικάι τριήρεις ἀνήγοντο καὶ
- 20 εἰς χεῖρας συνέρχεσθαι ἔμελλον, ἄρτι δὴ πόλεμον συγκροτοῦντος καὶ λίθους ἐπαφέντος τοῦ ἀποστατικοῦ πλοῖμου, οὐκ οἶδ' ὅ τι παθόντος καὶ τίσι δείμασι καὶ θορύβοις περικυττηθέντος, πρύμναν κρούσαν κατήγετο πρὸς τὴν χέρσον· καὶ οἱ μὲν τῶν ἀνδρῶν πρὸς βασιλέα αὐτομολοῦντες ἐθάρρουν μετατιθέμενοι, οἱ δὲ πρὸς τὸ οἰκεῖον στρατόπεδον τὸ κατὰ γῆν
- 25 ἀπεδίδρασκον, τὸ κατὰ θάλατταν εἶναι καὶ διαμάχεσθαι ἀπαρνησάμενοι παντελῶς. οὕτως μὲν οὖν διελύθη τὸ ναυτικόν, καὶ τελέως ἐχώρησεν εἰς οὐδὲν ἄξιον, οὔτε τοῦ πλήθους τῶν νεῶν οὔτε τῶν εἰς αὐτὰς ἀναβεβηκότων ἀνδρῶν, διαπραξάμενον.
16. Ὅθεν καὶ Γρηγόριος ὁ δηλωθεὶς συνεωρακῶς αὐτόν τε τοῦτον τὸν ἀποστάτην εὐκαταφρόνητον ὄντα τε καὶ πλέον προϊόντος τοῦ χρόνου γενησόμενον, ἅτε δὴ καὶ πότοις σχολάζοντα καὶ φρονήσεως ἀμοιροῦντα κατὰ πολὺ, δι' ἧς πεφύκασι μᾶλλον ἢ | ποθεν ἄλλοθεν αἱ νῖκαι προσγίνε- B 63
- 5 σθαι, μοῖραν τινα τοῦ ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν τάγματος συλλαβόμενος, καὶ πρότερον δὲ κοινολογησάμενος τῷ βασιλεῖ διὰ μοναχοῦ τινος [τοῦ] ἀπὸ τῶν Στουδίου <παρά> τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντος, ῥῆξιν ἐννοεῖ καὶ τοῦ

|| 12 Xenophon Oecon. 7.40 etc., Zenobius Paroemiae cent. II, sect. 6, Suda EI no 315 et 321, εἰς τετρημένον πίθον ἀντλεῖν, cf. tamen Mantissa proverbiorum, cent. I sect. 48 εἰς τετρυπημένον πίθον ἀντλεῖν Cap. 16: Gen 29.70–86; Log A 215.20–23 | PsSym 621.11–13; Scyl 36.37–37.70

8 πολεμικρὸν V 8 τὸ add. Kamb 10 ἀμνηστίαν V 10 ὑπισχνούμενος δώσειν ἀγαθὰ πολλὰ edd e Scyl 35.21 12 πείθον V 12 τετρημένον Bekk Boor : τεριμμένον V Comb 13 ἔναπορράνας Boor : ἐν ἀπεράνας V : ἑναπεράνας edd : ἑναπεράσας Bekk in app. 15 ἑαυτόνδε V 15 σταθερόν edd 21 πλωῖμου edd 22 πρύμναν κρούσαν Boor : πρύμναν κρούσαντος V : καὶ πρύμναν κρούσαντος edd 24 οἰκεῖον V 24 τὸ edd Boor e Scyl 36.35 : τοὺς V 25 θάλασσαν edd 26 οὕτω edd 26 ante διελύθη add. ἀπονητὶ edd e Scyl 36.35 26 τέως edd 27 εἰς οὐδὲν ἄξιον οὔτε V edd Boor : εἰς φροῦδον, οὐδὲν ἄξιον οὔτε Comb in marg. conl. : εἰς οὐδὲν, οὐδὲν ἄξιον οὔτε Beek in app. conl. 16.3 καὶ om. edd 4 καταπολὺ V 4 νίκαι V 5 μοῖραν V 6 τοῦ del. Kamb 7 <παρά> τοῦ βασιλέως nos : ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως Bekk in app. : delendum τοῦ βασιλέως putavit Boor in app., ut e praecedente τῷ βασιλεῖ repetitum.

signal was given for battle and he was about to storm the wall of Blachernae, Michael spoke to some of those who were mid-way up the walls, proclaiming and promising them amnesty for evils done if only they would change sides and refuse to stain themselves with the blood of their relations and brothers. But he sprinkled his words, as the proverb has it, into a broken vessel, making the others all the bolder, because they were being entreated; but by the same token, though he rendered them free from their state of fear, he rendered himself more deliberate and firm. Thus he suddenly set upon them from many posterns, in such a way as they were not expecting; and engaging battle with some of them he wrought destruction upon them and took the victory in splendid wise. But he took the victory more by sea than by land. For as the imperial triremes drew up and were about to join the fray, the rebel fleet, which had come into action and hurled stones, somehow suffered and, stunned by some fear or confusion, collided at the stern and were carried onto the shore. Some of the men then made bold and went over to the side of the emperor, whilst others ran off to their own forces on the land, refusing completely to be at sea or to do battle there. Thus was the naval force dispersed and came to nothing whatsoever, having accomplished nothing worthy either of the multitude of ships or of the men who embarked in them.

16. For this reason did Gregory, whom we have mentioned, also realise that this rebel Thomas was contemptable and that he would become the more so as time went by, in as much as he occupied himself with drinks and was very deficient in judgement, whereby victories are gained more than by any other means. Taking a division of the troops under his command, and communicating beforehand with the emperor through a certain monk from the Stoudios monastery who had been sent by the emperor, Gregory took

- ἀποστάτου γίνεται κατὰ νώτου, ὁμοῦ μὲν τοῦτον ἐκδειματῶν καὶ
 10 θορύβου πληρῶν, ὁμοῦ δὲ καὶ τῶν εἰς βασιλέα ἑαυτῷ ἡμαρτημένων, ἀλλὰ
 μὴν καὶ τῇ αὐτοῦ γαμετῇ καὶ τοῖς τέκνοις – καὶ γὰρ ἐτρωοῦντο ἐν φυλακῇ f. 21 r
 ἐκείνου τῷ Θωμᾷ προσθεμένου – διαλλαγὴν καὶ συγ|γνώμην πραγμα-
 τευόμενος. ἀλλ’ οὔτε ὁ βασιλεὺς ταῦτα ἔφθασε διακοῦσαι· εἰς τοσοῦτον
 γὰρ ἀπεκέκλειστο τῶν [καὶ] ἔξωθεν, οὐδ’ εἰ τῶν ἐγγύς μόνον τις, ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ
 15 ἑξαίφνης τοῦτον γενέσθαι κατορρωδῶν, καὶ φόβον ἐν τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἐμποιῇ-
 σαι βουλόμενος, τὴν μὲν στρατοπεδείαν τῆς πόλεως οὐκ ἐξεκίνησε, ταῦτό
 τοῦτο προμηθεύμενος καὶ προνοῶν τὸ μὴ διωχθῆναι ἐξόπισθεν· ὀλίγους
 δὲ τινες, καὶ ὅσους ἦδει ἀξιοχρέους τῆς πρὸς τὸν Γρηγόριον μάχης ὄντας,
 20 παραλαβὼν ἐξῆι πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ περιγίνεται τούτου, καὶ φεύγοντα
 καταλαβὼν ἀναίρει. καὶ αὐθις διὰ ταχέων πρὸς τὰς δυνάμεις τὰς
 προσεδρευούσας τῇ πόλει γίνεται, καὶ γράμμασιν ἐπιστέλλων τὰ ἑαυτοῦ
 περιαγγέλλει ἀπανταχοῦ, ὡς εἴη τε νενικηκώς, ὅπερ οὐκ ἦν, καὶ τὸ
 προσχωριάζον κατὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ναυτικὸν ταχέως κελεύων ἀναχθῆναι,
 25 ὡς αὐθις τοῖς κατὰ θάλατταν προσβάλλοι | μετὰ στερροτέρας δυνάμεως B 64
 μέρεσιν. ἀλλ’ ἐκεῖνα μὲν εἰς ἀριθμὸν τελοῦσαι πεντήκοντα πρὸς ταῖς τρια-
 κοσίαις πολεμιστηρίοις ἅμα διήρεσι καὶ σιταγωγοῖς τῷ τῶν Βυρίδων
 κατὰ Θράκην λιμένι ἐγκαθορμίζονται, ἐξ οὐρίας πλέουσai. καὶ ὁ βασιλικὸς
 δὲ πυρφόρος στόλος τούτοις μηδὲν ἐγνωκόσιν ἐκείσε ἐπιτεθεῖς πολλὰς μὲν
 αὐτάνδρους αἰρεῖ τῶν νηῶν, τινες δὲ καὶ πυρπολεῖ δυνατωτάτῃ χειρί,
 30 ὀλίγων παντελῶς ἔξω γενομένων τοῦ πάθους καὶ πρὸς τὸν τῶν Βλαχερ-
 νῶν κόλπον καταίρειν λόγον ποιουμένων πολὺν, ὡς ἂν εἶεν ὁμοῦ τῇ κατὰ
 γῆν στρατιᾷ· ὃ καὶ γέγονεν. τὰ μὲν οὖν κατὰ θάλατταν τοῦτον ἐκυ-
 βερνᾶτο καὶ ἡυθύνετο τὸν τρόπον. κατὰ γῆν δὲ αἰεὶ πῶς ἀκροβολισμοί
 35 τινες ἐκ μέρους καὶ φόνοι ἐγίνοντο, νῦν μὲν τοῦ Μιχαὴλ νῦν δὲ τοῦ υἱοῦ
 αὐτοῦ Θεοφίλου αὐτοῖς ἐπεξιόντος μετὰ τοῦ Ὀλβιανοῦ καὶ Κατάκυλα, καὶ
 πληγὰς ἔσθ’ ὅτε καιρίας διδόντος τε καὶ λαμβάνοντος· οὐ μὴν ἀγῶνές
 τινες λαμπροὶ καὶ νεανικοὶ ἐκ παρατάξεως καὶ τῆς ἰσορρόπου δυνάμεως
 40 ἐσχον τὸ κύρος, ἅτε δὴ πολλῷ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἐλαττουμένου καὶ μὴ πρὸς
 ναιμένου. f. 21v

13 καὶ delendum Boor putavit in app. 13 οὐ δὴ V 13 μόνων V 13 οὐδ’ εἰ edd Boor
 15 ἐν delendum Boor putavit in app. 16 ταῦτο V : [τ]αῦτό con. Kamb, cf. infra II.21.7
 18 ἀξιοχρέους edd : ἀξιοχρέως V 20 διαταχέων V 24 θάλασσαν edd 26 Βηρίδων Scyl
 36.55–56 (Βυρίδων B), cf. Gen 29.80 Βυρίδων 27 ἐξουρίας V 29 αὐτ’ ἀνδρους V
 30 τὸν τὸν τῶν V 31 ποιούμενον V 32 καταγῆν V 32 τοῦτὸν V 33 ἡνθύνετο V
 33 καταγῆν V 34 ἐγένοντο edd 35 τοῦ om. edd 36 τὲ V 37 ἀγῶνες τινες V
 40 στρατὶ ἀντιτασσέσθαι (sic) δειναμένου V

thought for breaking away and placed himself at the rear of the rebel, both frightening and filling him with confusion, and also attempting to negotiate for himself as well as his wife and children – for they were kept in prison when he took sides with Thomas – reconciliation and forgiveness for his offences toward the emperor. But these things did not come to the ear of the emperor, to such an extent had he been shut off from external affairs, no matter whether someone close at hand or far off espoused his cause. Now Thomas, dreading lest this Gregory should suddenly become too strong and desiring to instill fear in his own men, did not move off from the city, taking likewise care and precaution to avoid being pursued from behind. Choosing a few men whom he knew to be capable of fighting against Gregory, he went out against him and got the better of him; and capturing him as he fled, he slew him. Then in haste he again joined the forces besieging the city, and sending letters he announced his news everywhere, how he had gained the victory – which was not so –, and he ordered the fleet stationed in <the theme of> Hellas to be brought in haste, so that he might again attack places by the sea with stronger force. Now these, numbering three-hundred-and-fifty together with war- and provisioning ships sailed with a fair wind and came to anchor at the harbour of Byrides in Thrace. But there the imperial fire-bearing fleet attacked them unawares and captured many of the ships with their crews, and others were put to the flames with a harsh hand; only a very few got away completely unscathed, setting great importance on reaching the bay of Blachernae, in order that they might be together with the army on land; and so it came to pass. Whilst affairs at sea were guided and directed in this way, on land there was always some sort of discharge of weapons and killing by turns as now Michael, now his son Theophilus, went out together with Olbianos and Katakylas against the others, sometimes inflicting, sometimes receiving mortal blows; but no brilliant, high-spirited battles between lines or equal forces decided the outcome, in as much as Michael was greatly outnumbered and unable to stand up against the army of the other with its well equipped men and cavalry.

17. Ἐν τούτοις οὖν ὄντων αὐτῶν, Μορτάγων ὁ τῶν Βουλγάρων βασιλεὺς – καὶ γὰρ ἔφθασεν ἡ φήμη κατὰ τὴν οἰκουμένην τὸν βασιλέα τῶν Ῥωμαίων πολιορκούμενον διαγγέλλουσα – λάθρα τινὰς ἐς βασιλέα πέμψας ἐπαποστείλαι αὐτομάτῳ γνώμῃ συμμαχίαν καθυπισχνεῖτο καὶ
 5 βοήθειαν αὐτῷ τὴν ἄρκοῦσαν διδόναι καθ' ὡμολόγει. ἀλλ' ὁ γε Μιχαήλ, B 65 εἶτε τῇ ἀληθείᾳ τὸ τῶν ὁμοφύλων πλῆθος καταιδούμενός τε καὶ ἐλεῶν, εἶτε καὶ χρημάτων φειδόμενος – ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐπὶ πολὺ τὰς χεῖρας τῶν ἄλλων βασιλέων ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν ἔχων ἐκ φειδωλίας –, τὴν μὲν γνώμην ἡξίου ἀποδοχῆς τούτου, παρητεῖτο δὲ τὴν αὐτοῦ βοήθειαν, καὶ οὐκ, εἴ τι
 10 γένοιτο παρὰ τοῦ ἀποστάτου, βούλεσθαι τὴν ἐπικουρίαν αὐτῷ κατεμήνυνεν. ἀλλ' ὁ γε Μορτάγων καὶ ἄλλως πολέμοις χαίρων καὶ τὰς ἐκ τούτων λείας καρποῦσθαι φιλῶν, καὶ τὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν δὲ τριακοντούτεις σπονδὰς γεγενημένας παρὰ τοῦ προκατασχόντος Λέοντος ἐπιβεβαιῶσαι καὶ ἰσχυροτέρας ποιῆσαι ζητῶν, τὴν κατὰ τοῦ τυράννου στρατιὰν
 15 εὐτρέπιζεν, καὶ δὴ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ὄρων ἔντοσθε μετὰ παρρησίας γενόμενος κατὰ τὸν Κηδοῦκτου χῶρον οὕτω καλούμενον ἐστρατοπέδευσεν. ἠκούοντο δὲ καὶ λαθεῖν ταῦτα τὸν ἀποστάτην οὐκ ἦν· περιεδονήθη μὲν καὶ τὰς φρένας κατεκτυπήθη, ἐν αὐτῷ δὲ ὅμως πάλιν γενόμενος τὴν κατ' αὐτοῦ στρατιὰν ἐξώπλιζεν. καὶ ἐπεὶ εἰς δύο καταμεριζόμενος ἐδόκει παν-
 20 τελῶς ἀσθενῆς τε εἶναι καὶ εὐπτωτος – ἥ τε γὰρ τῶν πόλεων βασιλεύουσα οὐκ εὐαριθμήτου ἀλλὰ πλείστου ἀξιολόγου στρατοῦ ἐδέετο πολιορκουμένη, ἥδη καὶ τοῦ Μιχαήλ δυνάμεις συλλέγοντος καὶ κατὰ πόδας ἴστασθαι δυναμένου, καὶ πολλάκις ὄλεθρον ἐπαγαγεῖν αὐτοῖς δυ-
 25 πολλῆς δὲ καὶ οὐ τῆς τυχούσης ἐδέετο ἀντιπαράταξεως –, ἵν' οὖν μὴ εἰς δύο τινὰ διαιρούμενος κατὰ τινα λάβρον χειμάρρουν ἀσθενέστερος παρ' ὃ ἦν δόξη τε τοῖς | ἐχθροῖς καὶ εὐχειρώτος γένηται, ἀπαίρει μὲν ὅλως B 66 τῆς πόλεως, πρὸς τὸν Βούλγαρον δὲ ἀξιόμαχον κρίνας αὐτὸν κατὰ τὸν f. 22r εἰρημένον τόπον παρατάσσεται καὶ ἀνταγωνίζεται.

17.12–13 : foedus triginta annorum ad finem a. 816 conclusum est 15–16 : autumno 822 ineunte chaganus Bulgarorum fines imperii transiit et ad Ceductum profectus est

Cap. 17: GeorgMon 796.24–797.1; Gen 29.87–7 | Scyl 37.71–38.95

17.2 φήμει V 3 τινὰ Scyl 37.73 4 ἐξαποστεῖλαι B edd 5 καθ' ὡμολόγει V 6 κατ' αἰδούμενος V 16 γενόμενος edd Boor, cf. Scyl 37.83 γεγωνῶς : γενομένου ὡς V 17 ἠκούετο Scyl 37.84 17 ante καὶ τὰς φρένας add. ὡς εἰκός edd e Scyl 37.85 18 αὐτῷ V Comb 18 ὅμως om. edd 21 πλείστου καὶ ἀξιολόγου Scyl 38.89 22 post δυνάμεις add. οὐκ ἀγενεῖς edd e Scyl 38.90 24 post Βουλγάρων δὲ add. δύναιμι edd e Scyl 38.91 24 μιᾶς τινὸς V 25 παρατάξεως B edd 25 ἵν' οὖν μὴ : μὴ οὖν edd 27 οὐ Comb 28 αὐτὸν V Comb

17. Now, whilst they had come to such a pass, Mortagon, king of the Bulgars – for report had gone round the world announcing that the emperor of the Romans was under siege – secretly sent certain men to the emperor promising on his own resolution to send him an auxilliary force and pledging to give sufficient aide. But Michael, either because he in truth felt shame and showed mercy on the army of his fellow race, or else because he was sparing money – for he far surpassed other emperors in thrift – deigned to accept the other's resolution, but refused his aide and informed him that he did not want aid, even if it came from the rebel. But Mortagon, who otherwise rejoiced in battles and loved reaping the spoils of these same, and who sought to confirm and make stronger the thirty-years truce concluded by the previous ruler Leo, prepared an expedition against the usurper; and entering within the Roman borders with boldness he made camp near the place called Kedoukton. But report was made of them, and it was impossible for this to escape the notice of the usurper. Thomas was set reeling and was frenzied in mind; but coming to himself again he drew up his army against Mortagon. Now, Thomas felt himself divided in two and completly weak and vulnerable, for the siege of the queen of cities required no small but rather a numerous and considerable army, and Michael, already gathering forces, could march on his army's track, and had succeeded many times to bring harm upon them; and there were also the Bulgars, who comprised no small contingent and army, and resistance to them required no ordinary but rather great effort. In order, then, that he should not be divided in two parts as by some furious torrent and appear to the enemy weaker than he was and thus become easy prey, Thomas withdrew completely from the city and, judging himself to be sufficient in strength to fight the Bulgar, he drew up his lines and engaged battle.

18. Καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐξ χεῖρας ἦσαν κατ' ἀλλήλων, ἡττᾶται δὴ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ φόνον οὐ ποιεῖ μὲν πάσχει δὲ παρὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν. καὶ ἐπεὶ μὴ ἄλλως ἦν τῆς σωτηρίας λαβέσθαι, φυγαδεῖα ταύτην εὐρίσκουσι, καὶ ἔν τινι χώρῳ δυσβάτῳ σκεδαννύμενοί πως συνάγονται. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν τῶν Βουλγάρων
- 5 ἀρχηγὸς εὐθύς τῶν τε σωμάτων ὧν ἐγένετο κύριος καὶ λείας δὲ πολλῆς γενόμενος ἐγκρατὴς πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ὑπέστρεψε, τῇ κατ' αὐτοῦ νίκη ἐπαιρούμενός τε καὶ γαυριῶν. τὸ δὲ καταλειφθὲν ναυτικὸν ὡς τοῦτο ἀκήκοεν, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ τῇ πόλει προσεδρεῦον, προσχωρεῖ τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ μετ' αὐτοῦ γίνεται. ὁ δ' αὖ ἀποστάτης εἰς τοσοῦτον ἦκε θάρρους, παρὰ
- 10 τῶν αὐτῷ συμμαχούντων, ὡς ἔοικε, <δαιμόνων> ἐγκρατὴς ὅτι πάντοθεν συντριβόμενος καὶ πληττόμενος καὶ ὀλίγος ἐκ πολλῶν γινόμενος, καθαρᾶς τε νίκης οὐ ποτε μετεσχηκῶς οὐτ' ἀπὸ παρατάξεως οὔτε μὴν ἀπὸ τῶν καθ' ἡμέραν προσαγομένων διὰ πολυχειρίας μηχανημάτων κατὰ τῶν τειχῶν τῆς πόλεως, αὐθις ἐπισυναχθεὶς κατὰ τι πεδῖον, Διάβασιν οὕτω
- 15 καλούμενον, σταδίους ἀπέχον τῆς πόλεως ἱκανοὺς καὶ πρὸς στρατοπεδείαν εὐφυῆς ἐκ τε τῶν φυομένων καὶ ὑδάτων ἐπιρρύτων ὄν, συναθροίζεται. κάκειθεν τὰς προνομὰς ποιῶν πάντα μὲν τὸν πρὸ τῆς πόλεως | ἔκειρε B 67 κόσμον καὶ ἐπυρπόλει, ἐνεφανίζετο δὲ τοῖς κατὰ <τὴν> πόλιν, ὡς τὸ πρότερον, οὐδαμῶς. ὁ καὶ συνεῖς ὁ Μιχαὴλ καὶ ἀξιόλογον συστήσας
- 20 στρατόν, αὐτόν τε τὸν Ὀλβιανὸν καὶ Κατάκυλαν ἔχων μετὰ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἀκμῆτας ταγμάτων καὶ ἀκεραίους, κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐκστρατεύει καὶ τοῦτον οὐ κατορρωδοῦντα οὐδ' ἐκφοβούμενον ἀλλ' αὐτῷ προσυπαντῶντα μετὰ σπουδῆς ἐφευρὼν συνῆλθεν εἰς χειρῶν δύναμιν, κρίναι τὸ πᾶν βουλευθεὶς. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ καταστρατηγῆσαι τὸν βασιλέα βουλόμενος αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ
- 25 καταστρατηγεῖται βουλῇ καὶ τοῦ παντὸς διαμαρτάνει σκοποῦ. ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἅμα τῷ συρραγῆναι τὸν πόλεμον νῶτα διδόναι τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐκέλευσεν, οὐ

18.14–17 : hieme a. 822–823 Thomas Slavus ad Diabasin recessit

Cap. 18: Ep. ad Ludovicum 477.13–24; GeorgMon 797.1–4; Gen 29.7–30.28; Log A 215.23–25 | PsSym 621.13–15; Scyl 38.95–39.37

18.1 καταλήλων V 1 ἡττᾶσται V 1 post ἰσχυρῶς add. ὁ τύραννος edd e Scyl 38.1 3 εὐρίσκουσιν edd 4 σκεδαννύμενοι ἐσκόπουν πῶς edd e Scyl 38.3 4 συνάγονται Boor : συνάγονται V edd 5 τὰ τε σώματα προσλαβόμενος ὧν edd e Scyl 38.3–4 6 τῇ B edd Boor : πῇ V 8 τὸ om. edd 9 τοσοῦτο edd 10 <δαιμόνων> ἐγκρατὴς edd e Scyl 38.7–9 ὁ δ' ἀποστάτης ἐς τοῦτο ἀφίκτο μανίας παρὰ τῶν συμμαχούντων, ὡς ἔοικεν, αὐτῷ δαιμόνων, καὶ τὴν τῆς βασιλείας εἰσέτι ὠνευροπόλει κατάσχεσιν, ὅτι : post ἔοικε scripsit θαρους (sic) παρὰ τῶν αὐτῷ συμμαχούντων et postea cancelavit V : post ἔοικε lacunam postulavit Boor 10 ὅτι : ὥστε edd 11 γενόμενος edd 16 supra στατοπεδείαν scripsit p V 16 inter φυομέν et ὧν (sic) duas litteras del. V 16 ὄν V 17 κάκειθεν V 17 τὸν om. edd 18 κατὰ <τὴν> πόλιν Boor e Scyl 38.15–16 : καταπόλιν V : κατὰ πόλιν edd 20 τὸν om. edd 20 ἑαυτοῦ B edd 22 πρὸς ὑπαντῶντα V 23 ἐφ' εὐρῶν V 24 ἐνθαδῇ V 24 καὶ τα στρατηγῆται V

18. Now, when they had come together, Thomas was sorely defeated; he did not inflict slaughter, but suffered it from the enemy. And because there was no other way to obtain salvation, they found this in flight, and scattering themselves they joined up in a place difficult of access. But forthwith the ruler of the Bulgars, seizing the persons whose lord he had become, and much booty besides, returned to his own land, rejoicing and exulting. When the fleet that was left behind – the one besieging the city – heard this, it went over to the emperor and took his side. The usurper however came to such a pitch of boldness, possessed, as it seemed, by the demons with whom he was allied, that, although he was crushed down on every side and his once numerous host had become few, and he had never had part in a real victory, either in pitched battle or with siege engines brought to bear against the walls of the city by a multitude of hands, nevertheless, assembling anew, he mustered his army in a field called Passage [Diabasis] which was at a considerable number of stadia from the city and which was suitable for an encampment because of its abundant wildlife and water. Making forays from there he destroyed and burnt all the splendid buildings in front of the city, but in no wise did he show himself to the people of the city as before. When Michael learnt of this he raised a significant army and, together with Olbianos and Katakylas and the fresh troops of their divisions, he took the field against Thomas; and he found him not trembling with fear or frightened, but rather marching out to meet him with zeal. And so Michael joined battle, wishing to decide the entire matter. Whereupon, though wishing to outmanoeuvre the emperor, Thomas was by his own design outmanoeuvred and failed completely in his goal. For as the fighting broke out he gave the command to give way to the forces of

- τὴν τῶν ἑαυτοῦ δυνάμεων γνώμην κατανοῶν, ἀνθρώπων ἔκπαλαι γυναι-
κῶν καὶ τέκνων στερουμένων τε δι' αὐτὸν καὶ τὰς χεῖρας | τῷ ἀδελφικῷ f. 22v
λύθρῳ καταμαινόντων· οἱ ταχεῖαν ἔσεσθαι καὶ οὐκ εἰς τοσοῦτον χρόνον
30 ἔκταθῆναι τὴν αὐτῶν ἐν τοῖς ὑπαίθροις διατριβὴν προσδοκῆσαντες πρὸς
πᾶν μὲν ἦσαν κατ' ἀρχὰς εὐπειθεῖς, ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ὁ χρόνος ἤδη πού
ἐξετέτατο – τρίτος γὰρ ἐξηνύετο – καὶ ἀνηνύτοις ἐκ τῶν καθ' ἡμέραν
γινομένων ἐδόκουν ἐπιχειρεῖν, ἀνδρὸς ἐνὸς ἐπιθυμία καὶ ἀπονοία δου-
λεύοντες, τηνικαῦτα τὸ κελευσθέν ὡς ἔρμαιόν τι λαβόντες οὐχ ὥσπερ
35 ἐκεῖνος ἐβούλετο ἐξεπλήρουν, ἀλλ' ὡς αὐτοῖς ἐδόκει καλόν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἐγ-
κλῖναι τούτοις εἰς τοσοῦτον ἐπέτρεπεν ὅσον τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως παράταξιν
διαλυῖσαι καὶ αὐθις ὑποστρέψαι στερρῶς φονεύοντας· οἱ δὲ κόσμῳ καὶ B 68
τακτικῇ ἐμπειρίᾳ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως στρατιὰν κατόπιν <ἐλ>θοῦσαν, | καὶ
οὐχ ὡς ᾤθητι εὐδιαλύτως ἰδόντες ἀσχηματίστῳ χρῶνται φυγῇ, καὶ ἄλλος
40 ἄλλη ἐσκέδαστό τε καὶ διεφέρετο. ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι, νῦν μὲν ὀλίγοι καὶ
αὐθις ἔτεροι, τῷ βασιλεῖ προσχωροῦσι καὶ καθομολογοῦσιν αὐτῷ· αὐτὸς
δὲ σὺν ὀλίγοις τισὶ πρὸς τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν διασώζεται κάκεῖσε τῆς
φυγῆς ἴσταται. ὁ δὲ γε τούτου νόθος τε καὶ παρέγγραπτος υἱὸς Ἀνασ-
τάσιος τοῦ τῆς Βύζης φεύγων ἐπιλαμβάνεται πτολίσματος. καὶ οὐ κατὰ
45 τύχην, οἶμαι, κατὰ δὲ πρόνοιάν τινα, ἵν' ἕκαστος τούτων πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
ἐλκύων τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως προσεδρεῖαν τῷ ἐτέρῳ διδοί<η> ἄνεσιν τε καὶ
καιρὸν εἰς τὴν προνομήν.

19. Ἀλλ' ὁ γε βασιλεὺς ἐκ ποδὸς τούτοις ἐπόμενος πρῶτον ἔγνω τὸν
Θωμᾶν πολιορκεῖν καὶ τὴν προγεγενημένην εἰς αὐτὸν ἀποδοῦναι τούτῳ
ποινήν. ὅθεν ἐπάγει αὐτῷ πολιορκίαν, οὐ διὰ μηχανημάτων ἢ τινων
ἄλλων σπουδάζων αὐτὸν καθελεῖν, ἅμα μὲν τὸν ἐμφύλιον ἀποδιδράσκων
5 πόλεμον, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τοὺς τὴν Σκυθίαν οἰκοῦντας τῶν τοιούτων
ἀμαθῆτους κατασκευῶν βουλόμενος διαμένειν, ἀλλὰ λιμοῦ τῶν ἀναγ-

18.41–42 : aestate 823 Thomas Slavus ad Adrianopolin sive Arcadiopolin recessit

Cap. 19: Ep. ad Ludovicum 477.26–32; GeorgMon 797.4–16; Gen 30.28–31.63; Log A 215.25–29 | PsSym 621.15–19; Scyl 39.38–40.76

28 τε om. edd 31 καταρχὰς V Comb 31 εὐπειθεῖς V 32 ἐξετάττετο V 34 οὐχ' ὥπερ V 35 ἀλλὰ edd 36 ἐπ' ἐτρεπεν (sic) V 38 <ἐλ>θοῦσαν Boor : θούσαν V : θεούσαν edd 39 ἐνδιωλύτως Comb 39 ἰδόντες Bekk in app. Boor : εἰδότες V edd 39 ἄλλως V 40 διεσκέδαστό B edd 41 προσχωροῦσιν V 42 Ἀρκαδιούπολιν Gen 30.27 et GeorgMon 797.2, cf. Epist ad Ludovicum 477.23–24 Archadiopoli 44 φεύγειν con. Kamb 45 τινὰ V 46 προσεδρεῖαν edd 46 διδοίη Kamb : διδοῖ V edd : διδῶ Boor 19.1 ἐπόμενος V 4 τινῶν ἄλλων V : ἄλλων τινῶν edd : τινων ἄλλων <κατασκευῶν> con. Kamb 5 κοῦντας V postea οἱ supra l. addito 6 ἅμα δὲ καὶ – βουλόμενος Boor, cf. Scyl 39.41–42 ἅμα δὲ καὶ – ἐθέλων : ἅμα δὲ καὶ – βούλεσθαι V : ἅμα δὲ – βούλεσθαι Comb : ἅμα δὲ τῷ – βούλεσθαι Bekk

emperor. He did not understand the minds of his forces, men who had been separated from their wives and children for a long time and who on his account had defiled their hands with the blood of their brothers. Expecting that their activity in the field would be brief and would not extend for so much time they had been obedient in everything at the beginning. But since the time had drawn on – it was now the third year – and they seemed from daily experience to be attempting things impossible of achievement, serving the desire and madness of one man, they now took this command as a godsend and carried it out not as he wished but as seemed good to them. For he ordered them to retire so much as necessary from emperor's lines to break up their formation and then to turn again with fierce slaughter. But when they saw the emperor's army coming behind them with order and tactical experience and not, as Thomas had thought, in such a way as to be easily broken up, they took flight in most confused fashion, all scattering and going different ways. Some of them, now a few and now again others, went over to the emperor and pledged themselves to him; but Thomas himself sought safety in Adrianople and ended his flight there. His bastard and illegitimate son Anastasios, also fleeing, got to the city of Byze. Nor was this done by chance, I think, but by some design that each of them, drawing to himself the emperor's attacks, might afford the other a respite and time to advance.

19. Now the emperor, following on their track, resolved to lay siege to Thomas and requite him with the penalty which had earlier befallen him himself. Thus he brought a siege against him, striving to destroy him not with engines or other means – both so as to avoid civil war and also because he wished that the Scythians inhabitants should remain ignorant of such devices – but with famine of the necessities of life, whereof the city proved to

- καίων, οἷς ἐν σπάνει καὶ ἐνδείᾳ ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀποθησαυρίζουσα ἡ πόλις
 ἐδείκνυτο. ἐγνωστο γοῦν ταῦτα αὐτῷ, καὶ ἀρχὴν ἡ πρᾶξις ἐλάμβανεν. ὁ
 δὲ γε πολιορκούμενος παντὸς μὲν ζώου πρῶτον ἰδέαν ἄχρηστον, ἔπειτα
 10 δὲ καὶ πᾶσαν ἡλικίαν τῆς πόλεως ἐξωθεῖ, οὐ παρακλητικοῖς, ὥσανεὶ
 πατήρ τις, λόγοις τὰ πολλὰ τῶν πράξεων διοικῶν, τυράννῳ δὲ | γνώμη B 69
 καὶ αὐθεκάστῳ· ὃ καὶ τὸ κατ' αὐτοῦ | ἀνεθυμίασέ τε μῖσος καὶ ἀνενέωσεν. f. 23r
 ἔπειτα ὡς ἡδὴ ἤκμαζεν ὁ λιμὸς καὶ σωτηρίας ἐλπίς οὐδαμοῦ, ἠνάγκαζε δὲ
 καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτῆς φόρους ἀνελλιπεῖς ἀπῆτει δὴ ἡ γαστήρ, οἱ μὲν λάθρα διὰ
 15 τινων πυλίδων οἱ δὲ διὰ τειχῶν καθιμώμενοι, οἱ μὲν φέροντες τῷ βασιλεῖ
 ἑαυτοὺς ἐπεδίδουν, οἱ δὲ πρὸς τὸν υἱὸν κατὰ τὸ Βύζης πτολίεθρον
 ἀπεδίδρασκον. ἐπεὶ οὖν οὐ τὰ ἀναγκαῖα μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ ἀπευκτὰ καὶ
 λυπρὰ τούτοις κατεδίδοδο, ἄχρι δὲ καὶ τῶν σεσημμένων σκυτῶν τε καὶ
 20 καττυμάτων τὰ τῆς τροφῆς ἐχώρει, εἰς λόγους τινὲς τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει
 ἐλθόντες τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ τῶν ἡμαρτημένων ἀμνηστίαν αἰτήσαντές τε καὶ
 λαβόντες, περισχόντες αὐτὸν λαμβάνουσί τε διὰ χειρῶν καὶ προσάγουσι
 τῷ ἐχθρῷ. ὁ δὲ τὸ δόξαν πάλαι τοῖς βασιλεῦσι καὶ εἰς συνήθειαν ἡδὴ
 25 ἐλθὼν πρῶτον τελέσας καὶ ὑποκάτω θείς τῶν ποδῶν, ἀκρωτηριάζει τοῦ-
 τον καὶ πόδας καὶ χεῖρας ἀπαράσσει αὐτοῦ, ἐπὶ κοντοῦ τε θεατρίζει πᾶσι
 τοῦτο μόνον ἐπιτραγωδοῦντα “ἐλέησόν με, ἀληθῶς βασιλεῦ”. ἐρομένου δὲ
 τοῦ βασιλέως εἴ τινες τῶν αὐτῷ συνόντων φίλων καὶ ἕτεροι εἶεν τὰ αὐτοῦ
 φρονοῦντες, τάχα ἂν πολλῶν κατεῖπεν, εἰ μὴ τις Ἰωάννης ἀνὴρ
 <πατρίκιος> ὁ κατὰ τὸν Ἐξαβούλιον “οὐ δέον,” ἔφη, “εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄτο-
 30 πον, ἐχθροῖς κατὰ φίλων πιστεύειν, ὦ βασιλεῦ”. καὶ οὗτος μὲν τούτῳ
 διέλυσε τῷ λόγῳ τὰς μείζονας τῶν ταλαιπώρων δὴ πολιτῶν καὶ φίλων
 αὐτοῦ τιμωρίας· οὕτω δὲ καὶ ὁ ἀποστάτης κατέλυσε τὸν βίον, | τὴν ψυ- B 70
 χὴν ἀπορρήξας ὥσπερ τι ζῶον δυσθανοῦν, μηνὸς μεσοῦντος
 Ὀκτωβρίου, κατὰ μὲν τὰς ἀρχὰς γεγονέναι δοκῶν μεγαλεπίβολος καὶ
 35 τολμηρὸς καὶ τοῦ προτεθέντος ἐξεργαστικός, προβαίνων δὲ φανεῖς πολὺ
 καταδεέστερος αὐτοῦ καὶ τῆς τῶν ἐκτὸς προσδοκίας. πότερον δὲ τοῦτ'

19.31–33 : die 15 Oct. a. 823 Thomas a Michaele occisus est

7 λιμῷ καὶ ἀνάγκῃ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων edd e Scyl 39.43 : <διὰ> λιμοῦ τῶν ἀναγκαίων conl.
 Kamb 9 πολιορκού παντὸς παντὸς V, altero παντὸς postea expuncto 9 εἰδέαν V
 Comb 11 ὥσανεὶ πατήρ τις Boor : ὡς ἂν εἰπέ τις V : ὡς ἂν εἴποι τις edd 12 αὐτεκάστῳ
 V 13 καὶ om. edd 14 ἀνελλιπεῖς V 18 κατεδίδοδο V Comb 18 καὶ om. edd
 21 αὐτὸν V 22 βασιλεῦσιν V 23 ἐλθὼν V Comb 24 ἐπὶ κοντοῦ V, cf. Gen 31.53 : ἐπὶ
 ὄνου edd, cf. Scyl 40.60 ὄνῳ 25 ὁ ante ἀληθῶς add. edd 28 <πατρίκιος> add. Boor e Gen
 31.57 Ἰωάννης ἀνὴρ ἐπὶ κλησιν Ἐξαβούλιος ἐν πατρικίοις τελῶν et Scyl 40.63–64 ὁ πατρίκιος
 Ἰωάννης : τις ἀνὴρ Ἰωάννης edd 28 Ἐξαβούλλιοι V, sed cf. supra I.8.1 32 ταῖς κατὰ
 μικρὸν ποιναῖς ante τὴν ψυχὴν add. edd e Scyl 40.68 33 μεγαλεπήβολος edd 34 προ-
 τεθέντος edd e Scyl 40.69–70 : τεθέντος V Boor 35 αὐτοῦ Boor e Scyl 40.71 ἑαυτοῦ
 35 ἐκτὸς V 35 post προσδοκίας scripsit πότερος αὐτοῦ καὶ τῆς τῶν ἐκτὸς προσδοκίας et
 postea expunxit V 35 ante τοῦτ' add. καὶ edd

be in shortage and want rather in provision. Now, Michael knew this beforehand, and the military action began. Under siege, Thomas first expelled from the city every living thing of no use, and then later all persons of every age, not with compassionate words like a father looking after the multitude of affairs, but with tyrannical and self-willed inclination; and this roused and renewed hatred against him. Later, as famine raged and there was no hope of salvation, the belly of necessity demanding its unceasing tribute, some men, be it secretly through posterns, or by letting themselves down by ropes from the walls, gave themselves up to the emperor, whilst others ran off to Thomas's son in the city of Byze. Since they were in want of not only the necessities of life but even abominable and offensive things, and even rotten hides and shoes were used for nourishment, certain men came to an agreement with the emperor, seeking and receiving amnesty for their offences; and seizing Thomas they took him by force and brought him to the enemy. And Michael, performing first the ceremony which seemed fitting to emperors of old and has become custom, placed Thomas beneath his feet. Then he mutilated him, lopping off his feet and hands, and made a show of them on a pole before the eyes of all, whilst Thomas recited tragically only this: 'Have mercy upon me, O emperor indeed!' When the emperor asked him whether any of his – Michael's – friends there present or others had embraced his – Thomas's – cause, Thomas would have perhaps denounced many, if a certain <patrikios> John Exaboullos had not said 'It is not right, O emperor, but rather out of place, to believe the word of enemies against friends.' With these words, then, did this man deliver the unfortunate citizens and friends of Michael from most penalties; but the usurper thus left this life, casting off his soul like some animal put to a wretched death, in the middle of the month of October. At first he seemed hopeful of great things and bold and capable of accomplishing his project, but as he proceeded he was shown to be greatly inferior to both his own expectations and those of others besides. Whether

- ἐγένετο παρὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου διαφορὰν καὶ μεταβολὴν ἐπὶ τὸ χεῖρον ἢ παρὰ τὴν τῶν πολεμούντων πρὸς αὐτὸν παραλλαγὴν, οὐ πολὺν ἔχει λόγον. ἕως μὲν γὰρ ἦν αὐτὸς ἑαυτοῦ πολέμου ἔνδοθεν, ὃν φθάσας ἀνερρίπισεν αὐθάδει γνῶμη καὶ τολμηρᾷ, καὶ ἀμφίβολος πρὸς τὴν τῶν
 40 πραγμάτων κραταίωσιν ἦν, ἔρρωντο τῶν λόγων αἱ πράξεις οὐκ ἔλαττον, καὶ | κατὰ ῥοῦν ἐχώρει τὰ πράγματα· ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν Ἀσίαν μικροῦ πᾶσαν f. 23v ὑπέταξε, διεπεραιώθη δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὴν Εὐρώπην σὺν οὐκ ἀγεννεῖ τῷ φρονήματι μηδένα ἐμποδῶν εὐρηκῶς, ἀνὴρ ἅτε δὴ οὐκ ἐκ λόγων καὶ παιδείας ὀρμώμενος, βαναύσου δὲ τινος καὶ ἀγυρτικῆς ὁμιλίας, ἐξήπτο ἤδη
 45 καὶ ἐπεφύσητο καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἐξέπλει φρενῶν, πρὸς ἔρωτάς τινας καὶ γάμους οὐ σωφρονικούς διὰ τῆς καθ' ἡμέραν μέθης καὶ βακχείας ἀγόμενος καὶ αὐξόμενος. ἀλλ' ὑπὲρ μὲν τῆς τῶν πραγμάτων τούτων συντελείας δίδομεν καὶ ἄλλοις ἄλλως ἐννοεῖν, ὅτε μὴ τοῖς ἡμετέροις βούλωνται ἐξακολουθεῖν. πλὴν περὶ μὲν τούτων αὐτάρκως. καὶ οἱ ἐκ Βύζης δὲ ἐφ' ἑτέρας
 50 ταχέως ἐγένοντο γνῶμης, ὑφορώμενοι τὸν προεστῶτα κίνδυνον· ἅμα γὰρ τῷ πυθέσθαι τὰ κατὰ τὸν Θωμᾶν ἀτυχήματα, ἐφ' ὁμοίαις πράξεσι τὰ ὅμοια πεπιοιχότες | τὸν Ἀναστάσιον ἡγαγον δεδεμένον χεῖρας καὶ B 71 πόδας. ταῦτά δὲ καὶ οὗτός γε πεπονθέναι βιαζόμενος τῷ πατρὶ τὸν βίον μετήλλαξεν.

20. Οὐ μὴν ἐπαύοντο, τούτων οὕτω καθυπαντησάντων, αἱ κατὰ Θράκην πόλεις παράλιοι, τό τε Πάνιον καὶ Ἡράκλεια, τὰ τοῦ τυράννου φρονουσαί· τοσοῦτον ἄρα μῖσος κατὰ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ πᾶσιν ἐνέφυ καὶ ἐξ ἄλλων μὲν ἴσως, πολλῶ δὲ πλεον ἐκ τοῦ μὴ βούλεσθαι τὸν κατὰ τῶν
 5 θείων εἰκόνων ἀναρριπισθέντα καταλῦσαι <πόλεμον>. πλὴν ταύταις πλησιάσας, τὸ μὲν σεισμοῦ ἐπιγενομένου τε καὶ τοῦ τείχους καταβληθέντος ἢ εἰς αὐτὸ πάροδος ἀκμητὴ γέγονε τῷ Μιχαήλ· ἢ δ' Ἡράκλεια καὶ ὥς ἀντέχουσα, ὅμως ἐκ τῶν τῆς θαλάττης μερῶν κατακυριευθεῖσα, ἀλίσκεται καὶ αὐτὴ ἀναιμωτί, καὶ τοῦ φρονεῖν τὰ τοῦ τυράννου

20.5–6 : primo vere a. 824 expugnatio Panii et Heracleiae accidit

Cap. 20: Epist ad Ludovicum 477.24–25, 477.36–478.8; Gen 31.64–32.80 | Scyl 40.76–41.95

38 πόλεμος edd 41 ῥοῦν : νοῦν B edd Boor 42 ἀγγενεῖ V 45 ἐξέπλει: ἐξέβη B in marg. 45 τινὰς V 47 αὐξανόμενος edd 49 μετὰ V Comb 49 Βύζεις V 53 ταῦτα Bekk : ταῦτα V Comb 53 γε Boor : τε V : δέ τε Comb : delendum putavit Bekk 20.1 καθ' ὑπαντησάντων V 1 αἱ om. edd 3 φρονεῖν nos e Scyl 40.78 : φρονῆσαι V edd Boor 3 ἄρα V 5 πόλεμον vel διωγμὸν coní. Comb in marg. : apud V deest 6 τὸ μὲν V : τοῦ μὲν edd : τῇ μὲν coní. Bekk in app. : τῷ μὲν Boor 6 ἐπιγινομένου B edd 6 τε καὶ τοῦ τ. nos, cf. Gen 31.68 τό τε τείχος : καὶ τι τοῦ τ. V : καίτοι τοῦ B : καὶ τοῦ τ. edd Boor 7 ante καταβληθέντος add. τοῦ Πανίου edd e Scyl 41.80 τὸ μὲν Πάνιον 8 ἐκ τῶν Boor e Scyl 41.81 ἀπὸ τῶν – μερῶν et Gen 32.73 ἐκ τοῦ – μέρους : τῶν ἐκ V edd

this occurred through a difference and change within himself for the worse, or with the change in the position of those waging war against him, is of little importance. For so long as he was in the midst of his war, which he had kindled with bold and stubborn will, and he was in doubt of the strength of his affairs, his actions were no less sound than his words, and his affairs proceeded apace. But after he had subdued nearly all Asia and he crossed over into Europe with no ignoble intention, finding no one to oppose him, because he was a man with origins not in reason and culture but in rude and rustic company, he was inflamed and puffed up, and he went out of his mind, he contracted and multiplied love affairs and intemperate marriages through daily drunkenness and revelry. However, concerning the contributing factors of these matters we leave others to think otherwise if they do not want to follow our opinions. But enough about this. As for the men from Byze, they quickly changed their minds, being wary of the impending danger. For no sooner had they learnt of Thomas's misfortunes than they did likewise under like circumstances, delivering Anastasius bound hand and foot; and being forced to suffer the same punishment as his father, he too left this life.

20. Now, although these things had come to pass, the maritime cities of Thrace Panion and Heracleia did not cease in their allegiance to the cause of the usurper. Such was the hatred that all had conceived for Michael, perhaps for other reasons as well, but much more because he was unwilling to end the war which had been kindled against the holy images. However, upon approaching these cities, Michael entered the first without toil after an earthquake occurred and the wall was thrown down. Heracleia, however, resisted; but being overpowered from the side of the sea it too fell captive without blood and switched from the side of the usurper, pledging faith to the em-

- 10 ἀπαλλάττεται, πίστιν δεδωκυῖα τῷ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τὰ μὲν κατὰ Θωμᾶν συμβεβηκότα τοιοῦτον ἔσχε τέλος ἐκ τῆς εἰρημένης ἀρχῆς, καὶ οὕτως τροπαιοφόρος ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐκ τῶν κατ’ ἡπειρον ἔρχεται πόλεων, οὐδὲν ἕτερον κατὰ τῶν ἀποστασιωτῶν ἐννοήσας ἢ ἐπὶ τῆς ἀμιλλητηρίου θεάς ἐπὶ τούτῳ γεγενημένης ὀπίσω τῷ χεῖρε δεδεμένους ποιῆσαι διελθεῖν καὶ ὑπερ-
15 ορίους τοὺς αἰτιωτάτους γενέσθαι.

- Αὐτίκα γοῦν καὶ πρὸς Χοιρέαν, ἔτι γε μὴν καὶ πρὸς Γαζαρηνὸν τὸν Κολωνιάτην, ἀνθρώπους μὲν ὄντας καὶ πιστὰ φυλάττοντας τῷ Θωμᾷ, | f. 24r
κατέχοντος δὲ τοῦ μὲν τὴν Καβάλαν τοῦ | Χοιρέα, τοῦ Γαζαρηνοῦ δὲ τὴν B 72
Σανιάναν, καὶ πολλὰς ἐκεῖθεν ποιούντων καταδρομάς, καὶ ληστρικῶς
20 ζῶντάς τε καὶ τυραννικῶς, χρυσοβούλλιον ἐκπέμπει ὁ Μιχαήλ, τιμὰς μεγάλας τὰς τῶν μαγίστρων καθυπισχνούμενος καὶ ἀμνηστίαν κακῶν, καὶ δῆλον τὸν τοῦ Θωμᾶ θάνατον τούτοις ποιῶν. ἀλλ’ ἐκείνους μὲν οὐκ ἔπεισεν ὁ ἀποσταλὴς, ἀλαζόνας ὄντας τε καὶ ἀτίθασσον κεκτημένους ψυχὴν· ἐτέρους δὲ τινὰς τῶν ὑποβεβηκότων κλέψας καὶ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ βα-
25 σιλέως πίστιν μεταθεὶς ἔπεισεν ἐξελθόντας πρὸς τὰς συνήθεις ληστείας ἀποκλεῖσαι τούτοις τὰς τῶν τειχῶν πύλας καὶ λόγου καταλελοιπέναι χωρὶς. ὅπερ καὶ γέγονεν. ἐκεῖνοι μὲν οὖν ὡς εὔρον κεκλεισμένας τὰς πύλας, τὴν ἐπὶ Συρίαν ἔσπευδον διανύσαι ὁδόν, τῷ φόβῳ βαλλόμενοι. ζῶντες δὲ ὁμως ἀλόντες τῷ ξύλῳ ἀνήρτηνται καὶ τοῦ βίου ἔξωθεν γίνονται. ἄξιον
30 δὲ μὴ δὲ τοῦτο παραδραμεῖν, ὅπως ὁ Γαζαρηνὸς προδέδοτο καὶ τῶν τειχῶν ἀποκέκλειστο. ἄνδρα τινὰ ἀγροῖκον ὁ ἀποσταλὴς δεξιωσάμενος φωνῇς ἐπιμελούμενον καὶ ταῖς ᾠδαῖς τερπόμενον ἐμμελῶς ταῖς ἀνειμέναις ταύταις καὶ ἀγροικικαῖς, μέλος τι ἔπλεξεν πρὸς τὸν ἐκείνου οἰκονόμον ἔχον τὴν ἀναφοράν. ἦν δὲ αὐταῖς λέξεσιν οὕτω· “ἄκουσον, κύρι οἰκόνόμε, τί
35 λαλεῖ τὸ γυβέριν· ἐάν μοι δῶς τὴν Σανιάναν, μητροπολίτην σε ποιήσω καὶ Νεοκαισάρειάν σοι δώσω.” τοῦτο πολλάκις ᾄδόμενον ἐν αἰσθήσει τούτου γενέσθαι τὸν οἰκονόμον πεποίηκεν. ὅθεν ὡς ἔγνω τὸν νοῦν τε καὶ τὴν τῶν πραγμάτων ἀναφοράν, ἐξελθόντος ποτὲ τοῦ Γαζαρηνοῦ ἔκλεισε B 73
κατ’ αὐτοῦ τὰς πύλας καὶ τοῦτον ἔξωθεν ἐγκατέλιπεν. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν περὶ τῶν ὑπερνεφῶν τούτων πολιχνίων, καὶ οὕτω τούτων ἢ πάλιν ὑπὸ τοῦ Μιχαήλ κατάληψις.

20.27–28 : aestate a. 824 expugnatio Cabalae et Sanianae accidit

10 πίστιν nos : πίστις V : πίστεις B edd Boor 11 οὕτω edd 12 κατήπειρον V 13 κατὰ τῶν ἀποστασιωτῶν Boor e Scyl 41.84 : ἐκ τῶν ἀποστασιωτῶν V : ἀπὸ στασιωτῶν edd 17 τὰ πιστὰ conī. Boor in app., cf supra II.11.31 18 κατέχοντος nos : κατέχοντας V edd : κατεχόντων Boor : 18 τοῦ μὲν : τὸν μὲν edd 20 τὲ V 20 χρυσοβούλλιον V 25 ἐξελθόντων conī. Bekk in app. 28 ἔσπευσαν edd 29 ἀνήρτηνται : ἐξήρτηνται edd 30 ὅπω V 31 ἀπεκέκλειστο edd 31 ἄνδρά τινα V 31 ἀγροικον edd 34 κύρι V 35 λέγει Γυβέριν edd 36 ἄκουσε κύρ οἰκόνόμε / τὸν Γυβέριν, τί σου λέγει / ἂν μου δῶς τὴν Σανιάναν, / μητροπολίτην σε ποίσω / Νεοκαισάρειαν σου δώσω restituit Krumbacher, Gesch. d. byz. Lit. 793 37 τούτου : τοῦτον edd 37 τὲ V 38 ἐκλείσεν edd 40 ὑπὲρ νεφῶν V

peror. Thus did the events surrounding Thomas, having begun as has been recounted, come to an end, and the emperor thus returned victorious from the cities on the mainland; nor did he devise anything else against the rebels other than to make them progress with hands tied behind their back at the races which were held on this occasion in the Hippodrome, and to exile the most guilty of them.

Forthwith he sent a chrysobull to Choireas as well as to Gazarenos Koloniates, who had been Thomas's men and kept faith and possessions for him, Choireas holding Kavala and Gazarenos Saniana, making many incursions from thence and living as thieves and usurpers. Michael promised them great rank as magistroi and amnesty for their wrongs, announcing to them Thomas's death. But the man dispatched did not convince them, they who were scoundrels possessed of wild souls; however, he won over some of their subordinates and, bringing them to the side of the emperor, persuaded them that, as they were going out of the city on their habitual raids, they should shut the gates of the walls against these two and abandon them without saying anything. And so it came to pass. When they found the gates shut they hastened to make their way on the road to Syria, overwhelmed by fear. But captured alive they were hung on the furca and departed from this life. Nor would it be right to omit this account of how Gazarenos was betrayed and shut out outside the walls. The man dispatched by Michael paid honour to a rustic fellow who cultivated his voice and delighted melodiously in relaxed and rustic strains, and he composed a song with allusion to Gazarenos's steward. It went thus, word for word: 'Listen here, Lord Steward, to what the gov'nor says: "If you give me Saniana, I'll make you metropolitan and give you Neocesarea".' Having sung this many times, he made the steward conscious of it. Thus, after the other had understood the sense and allusion to affairs, when Gazarenos once went out of the city, he shut the gates against him and left him outside. — So much for these towns above the clouds, and thus was their re-capture by Michael.

20bis. Οὐκ ἔμελλε δὲ ἄχρι τούτων ἢ φορά πως <στήσεσθαι τῶν κακῶν, ἀλλὰ τῶν δύο ἡπείρων, Ἀσίας φάμεν καὶ Εὐρώπης>, οἷόν τινος κεφαλῆς καὶ οὐρᾶς, εἰ καὶ μὴ συνίεσαν, παιδευθέντων φόνοις, ἐμπρησμοῖς, σεισμοῖς, ἄρπαγαῖς, ἐμφυλίοις καταδρομαῖς, πόλεων ἀνελπίστοις μεταβολαῖς, σημείοις ἐξ οὐρανοῦ, τέλος καὶ τὰς ταλαιπώρους νήσους οἷόν τινα μέσσην, ἴν' ὁλόσωμος εἴη ἡ πληγὴ, ἐπέδραμε τὰ δεινὰ. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦν παι- f. 24v
δεῦσαι τοὺς τὴν θεάνθρωπον ἐξηρνημένους μορφήν προσκυνεῖν.

21. Ὅθεν ἄρτι δὴ τοῦ κατὰ τὸν Θωμᾶν ἄρξαντος νεωτερισμοῦ, ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἤκουστο πανταχοῦ, οἱ τὸν ἐσπέριον κόλπον τῆς Ἰβηρίας τῷ Ὡκεανῷ γειτονοῦντα Ἀγαρηνοὶ κατοικοῦντες – Ἰσπανοὺς τούτους ὁ πολὺς ῥεύσας χρόνος μετωνόμασεν –, εἰς πλήθος σωμάτων καὶ εὐθηνίαν
15 τοῦ γένους ἐληλακότος, τὴν κατ' αὐτοὺς ἐσπέριον πλευρὰν λυπρὰν οὖσαν καὶ μετρίως εὐδαίμονα ὀρῶντες, καὶ λειπομένην μὲν τῆς πρὸς γῆν ἀρετῆς καὶ ἀφθονίας κατὰ πολὺ, ἐνδέουσαν δὲ καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸ τοῦτο <τὸ> ἑῶν τῆς Ἰβηρίας καὶ νότιον – οὐ γὰρ ἅπανα πρὸς πᾶσαν γῆς ἀρετὴν ἐπιτηδεῖα καὶ εὐφορος, ἀλλὰ τὸ τῆς ἐσπερίου πλευρᾶς, ὡς εἴρηται, | B 74
10 αὐχμηρόν τε καὶ λυπρότερον τῆς λοιπῆς, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐδὲ τρέφειν δυναμένης αὐτοὺς καὶ διοικεῖν ἄνδρας σώμασιν εὐμεγέθεσι χρωμένους καὶ ἀγαθῶν εὐφορίᾳ ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐνδεία αὐξαν<ο>μένους –, οὗτοι γοῦν προσελθόντες Ἀπόχαψ τῷ ἑαυτῶν ἀμερμουμνῇ ἀποικίαν τινὰ καὶ γῆς μετανάστασιν ἤτουν αὐτοῖς γενέσθαι, πλήθει τε στενοχωρουμένοις καὶ ἀναγκαίων σπάνει πιεζομένοις. ὁ δὲ πλοῖα τινα ἐπισκευάσας μακρὰ, καὶ
15 δύναμιν οὐκ ὀλίγην ἐξ αὐτῶν τούτοις ἐμβιβάσας, ἐπὶ ληστέϊαν, τέως λανθάνουσαν ἔχων τὴν ἔννοιαν, τῶν πρὸς τῇ ἑῷ κειμένων νήσων καὶ ἡμετέρων τυγχανόντων ἐτράπετο, ὁμοῦ μὲν τὸ αὐτοῖς ἐπιθυμούμενον

Cap. 20bis: | Scyl 41.1–42.9 Cap. 21: GeorgMon 798.1–3; Vita Theodoraе 263.9–11; DAI 94.1–96.48; Gen 32.81–33.11; Log A 215.29–35 | PsSym 621.20–23, 622.8–20; Scyl 42.1–43.52

20bis.1 πως om. edd 2 <στήσεσθαι – Εὐρώπης> nos e Scyl. 41.2–3 : om. V propter homoeoteleuton inter φορά πως et Εὐρώπης : <στήσεσθαι – Εὐρώπης, ἐν θυμῷ κυρίου> add. edd Boor itidem e Scyl. 41.2–3, sed verba ἐν θυμῷ κυρίου additionem Scylitzae putamus 3 παιδευθεῖσάν Scyl 41.4 4 ἐμφυλίων edd Boor 5 post σημείοις ἐξ οὐρανοῦ add. σημείοις ἐξ ἁέρος edd e Scyl 41.6 5 τὰς ταλαιπώρους νήσους propter concordantiam cum τινα μέσσην coniecimus, cf. Scyl 41.6–7 (E) : ταῖς ταλαιπώροις νήσοις V edd Boor, cf. Scyl (ACOVBMNU) 21.1 νεωτεροισμοῦ V 2 ἠκούετο in marg. corr. B, edd, cf. Scyl 42.10 3 γειτονοῦντα (–τα manus prima corr. ex –τι) V : γειτονοῦντι B : γειτονοῦντες edd 3 Ἰσπανοὺς Bekk 4 μετ ὠνόμασεν V 5 ἐξηλακότες edd 7 αὐτὸ τοῦτο <τὸ> conl. Kamb, cf. supra II.16.16 : αὐτὸ τοῦτο V edd Boor : αὐτὸ τὸ conl. Bekk in marg. 10 οὐδὲ : οὔτε edd 11 δυναμένην Boor e Scyl 42.14 12 αὐξανμένους (sic) V : αὐξαμένους Comb 13 ἀμερμουμνῇ V 15 πλοῖα τινα V 16 τούτοις nos e Scyl 42.18 : τούτων V edd Boor 17 ληστέϊαν, τέως λανθάνουσαν nos : post ληστέϊαν τέως punxerunt V edd Boor 17 ἔχων edd Boor e Scyl 42.19 : ἔχον V 17 ἔννοιαν V 17 πρὸς τῇ : πρὸς τὴν Scyl 42.19–20 18 ἡμέτερον V

20bis. But the onrush of woes was not in some wise <to stop with these things. After the two continents of Asia and Europe – the head and tail, as it were –> had been given instruction (even if they did not understand) by killings, fires, earthquakes, raids, civil wars, unexpected upheavals of cities and signs from heaven, the calamities finally also overran the wretched islands – the trunk, as it were – so that the plague might affect the whole body. But it was impossible to give instruction to those who had renounced the worship of the divine-human form.

21. On this account, no sooner had Thomas's rebellion begun than the news of it was heard everywhere, and the Hagarenes who inhabited the western gulf of Iberia bordering on the Ocean – over the long course of time they have received the name of Spaniards – and attained multitude of population and abundance of offspring, saw that their western side of the land was poor and but moderately prosperous, greatly lacking in productivity and plentitude of the earth, and inferior even to the east and south of Iberia in this respect. For none of Iberia is suited or conducive to productivity of the earth, but the nature of this western side, as has been said, is dry and poorer than the rest; and for this reason it could not sustain and nourish these Hagarenes, men who developed large bodies and grew strong through abundance, not want of goods. These men, therefore, went to their amermoumnes Apochaps and asked that they might migrate and settle in another land, since they were cramped in their multitude and oppressed by the shortage of necessities. The amermoumnes constructed a number of long ships and, fitting them out with no small contingent of these men, set out on a raid of the islands lying to the east which belonged to us. For the while he kept his intention secret: on the

- ἐκπληρῶν καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἀλλοτριῶν τούτους προσκορεννύς, ὁμοῦ δὲ καὶ κα-
 20 τασκεψόμενος εἴ τίς ἐστιν οὕτως εὐφορος τῶν νήσων καὶ λιπαρὰ ὥς <πρὸς>
 μετοικίαν αὐτῶν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν πολλαῖς τῶν νήσων πλησιάζων τὸν ἀντιπα-
 ραταττόμενον μικρῷ ἢ μεγάλῳ πλοίῳ οὐχ εὗρισκεν –ἐχρηοῦντο γὰρ
 25 πᾶσαι τῆς αὐτῶν βοθηείας, ἄρτι κατὰ τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως ἐκβο-
 ηθουσῶν τε καὶ πλεουσῶν μετὰ τοῦ Θωμᾶ–, μεγάλας δὲ ὠφελείας ἐκ πα-
 σῶν, αἷς καὶ προσώρμιζεν, ἐκαρποῦτό τε καὶ ἐλάμβανεν, ἦκε καὶ πρὸς τοὺς
 Κρηταίεις, καὶ τούτους καταδραμών καὶ λείαν ποιήσας καὶ ἀνδραποδι-
 σάμενος, ὥς ἐνῆν, καὶ πάντοθεν καταμαθὼν τὴν τῆς γῆς ἀρετὴν, καὶ ὥς εἶη
 30 πρὸς πᾶσαν χάριν | καὶ ἀγαθῶν εὐφορος ἀφθονίαν, “τοῦτο”, ἔφη, “γῆ οὐκ f. 25r
 ἄλλη ἢ ἡ ῥέουσα μέλι καὶ γάλα”. καὶ τότε μὲν παντοίων γενόμενος <ἐγ-
 30 κρατῆς> ἀγαθῶν | ἀπῆι τὴν οἴκαδε, καὶ πάσῃ χειρὶ καὶ δυνάμει ναυτικὸν B 75
 ἐξήρτυεν· ὥς δ’ ὁ χειμῶν ἐτετελείωτο καὶ τὸ ἔαρ ὑπέλαμπεν, τεσσα-
 ράκοντα πληρώσας ναῦς καὶ ἐπιτήδειον ἄνεμον ἐπιτηρήσας τὴν ἐπὶ
 Κρήτην ἐστέλλετο εὐθυπορῶν, τὰς ἄλλας τῶν νήσων θέμενος εἰς οὐδέν.
 35 ἄρτι γοῦν ἐπλησίαζε, καὶ τῷ ἀκρωτηρίῳ τῷ Χάρακι καλουμένῳ
 κατήγετό τε καὶ προσωρμιζέτο. ὥς δ’ οὔτε κατὰ τὴν καταγωγὴν οὔτε
 κατὰ τὴν ἀπόβασιν ἐφάνη <τι> τούτοις τῶν ἀπευκτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς
 λείας χωροῦσι καὶ πρὸς ἀρπαγὰς, εὐχερῶς τὰ τῆς ἐπιβολῆς τε καὶ ἐπι-
 χειρήσεως ἐπεραίνετο, τοὺς μὲν ἐπιτηδείους εἰς τὰς συνήθεις προνομὰς
 40 ἀπέστελλε δουλαγωγήσοντας τοὺς ἐχθρούς, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς λοιποὺς ἔχων,
 ἄρτι δὴ τοῦ πνεύματος ἐπακμάζοντος κἀκείνων ἅμα πορρωτέρω
 σταδίων δέκα ἢ καὶ δεκαπέντε γενομένων, πῦρ ἐμβαλὼν <ταῖς ναυσὶν>
 ἀπάσας ἐγκατέφλεξε, φεισάμενος τὸ παράπαν οὐδεμιᾶς. τέως μὲν οὖν τῷ
 παραδόξῳ τοῦ πράγματος καταπλαγέντες ἅπας δὴ ὁ στρατός, καὶ γὰρ
 45 ἐπαλινόστουν εὐθέως ἐκδειματούμενοι, τὴν αἰτίαν ἐπυνθάνοντο καὶ εἰς
 λόγους ἤλθον νεωτερικοὺς· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατήκουσαν ἅ πάλοι ὠδίνοντο, ὥς
 “αὐτοὶ τε τούτων ὑμεῖς αἴτιοι, ἀποικίαν ζητοῦντες καὶ γῆν ἀγαθὴν, ἐμοὶ

21.22–24 : ca. a. 821 Creta propter expugnationem Constantinopolis a Thoma a classe Byzantina
 desserta est, cf. Signes 2014, 200–208 34–35 : ca. a. 822 Andalusiae Arabes in Creta apud Cha-
 racem naves applicaverunt

|| 28–29 Ex 3.8

19 καὶ om. edd 20 κατασκευάμενος Comb 20 εἴ τις ἐστιν V : εἴ τις ἐστιν edd 20 πρὸς
 conī. Kamb, cf. infra II.23.5 : ὥς V : εἰς edd : Boor locum corruptum putavit et ὥς ἐπιτηδείαν
 εἶναι πρὸς in app. conī. e Scyl 42.22 πρὸς μετοικίαν ἐπιτήδεια 22 ἀντιἀντιπαρταττόμενον
 (ἀντι prius expunctum) 24 τε om. edd 25 ἐκ καρποῦτό V 25 ἦκε V 27 ὥς : πῶς
 edd 28 ἔφῃ V 30 <ἐγκρατῆς> addidimus, cf. supra II.18.10 : fortasse κύριος sive πλήρης
 supplendum putavit Boor 31 ἐτελείωτο V 32 post ναῦς add. ἀνδρῶν μαχίμων edd e Scyl
 42.32–33 33 εὐθυπορῶν edd Boor : εὐθυπρῶν (sic) V : εὐθυπορῶν B 35 ὥς δ’ οὐδὲν
 οὔτε edd e Scyl 42.35 36 ἀπόφασιν V 36 τι add. Boor 37 ἀρπαγὰς V 41 καὶ om.
 edd 41 ταῖς ναυσὶν suppl. edd Boor e Scyl 43.40, cf. Gen 32.1 ταύταις 42 κατέφλεξε
 edd 45 ὠδύνοντο Comb, sed cf. Scyl 43.43 ὠδινον 46 ἡμεῖς edd Boor : ὑμεῖς V
 46 αἴτιοι om. edd

one hand he was fulfilling the men's desire and satiating them at the expense of foreigners, but he would also observe whether any of the islands was fertile and rich enough for their migration. Coming, then, to many islands and finding neither small nor great ship to oppose him – for all the islands were deprived of the aid of ships, which were now sailing with Thomas and aiding the campaign against Constantinople –, Apochaps reaped and took away great spoils from all on which he set anchor. He came also to the Cretans, and pillaged them and took booty and slaves to the extent possible; and seeing everywhere the goodness of the land, and that it was generous in every grace and abundance of all good things, he said, 'This is none other than the *land flowing with of honey and milk!*'. Then taking his fill [?] of all manner of good things he returned home and fitted out a fleet with all his men and forces; and when winter had ended and the light of spring began to shine, he filled forty ships and, waiting for a suitable wind, sailed to Crete with ease, scorning all the other islands. Straightway on arriving he approached the promontory called Charax and set anchor. Since nothing on disembarking and landing seemed to them untoward but, rather, they went off to pillage and plunder, Apochaps easily effected his design and purpose. He dispatched those who were fit on the usual plundering expedition to make captives of the enemy, whilst retaining the rest with him; and when the others, with keen spirit, had proceeded more than ten or even fifteen stadia, he set fire to the ships and burnt them all, sparing not a one. At first the whole army was struck by this unexpected thing, and in trepidation they returned at once, asking the reason and using rough speech; but then they heard the things that they had bewailed formerly: 'You yourselves are to blame for these things, you who sought migration and good land, and none seemed to me better than this. I have come

- τε ταύτης οὐδετέρα κρείττων νενόμισται· εἰς ταύτην ἦλθον ὁδὸν ὑμῖν
 τε ἀγαθὰ προξενῶν καὶ ἐμὲ τῆς ἐξ ὑμῶν ἀπαλλάττων ὀχλήσεως”, ὥς δὲ
 50 “ὥδε ὑμέτεροι αἱ αἰχμαλῶτιζόμεναι, καὶ παῖδες οὐ μετὰ μακρὸν ἐξ B 76
 αὐτῶν”. ὅθεν τοῖς τοιούτοις κατασιγασθέντες λόγοις, καὶ ἀποδοχῆς
 κρίναντες τὰ λεγόμενα, τάφρον μὲν ἡγείραν πρῶτον βαθεῖαν, καὶ χάρακας
 ἐν ταύτῃ καταπήξαντες – ἐνθα καὶ νῦν λαβὼν τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν <ὁ τόπος>
 55 ἠκούσας ποιούμενοι καὶ τὰς ὠφελείας αὐτῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀποθησαυρίζοντες.
 22. Χρόνος δὲ ἐρρῦη πολὺς οὐδαμῶς, καὶ πάντα τὸν βασιλέα ἡ φήμη
 ἐδίδασκε. καὶ δὴ τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον Φωτεινόν, πρόπαππον μὲν Ζωῆς f. 25v
 τῆς ἐν μα|καρίᾳ τῇ λήξει θεοστέπτου αὐγούστης τυγχάνοντα, στρατη-
 γοῦντα δὲ τηνικαῦτα τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν, τὰ τῆς Κρήτης ἅπαντα διοικεῖν
 5 προεβάλλετο· ὃς ἐκεῖσε παραγενόμενος, καὶ τῶν μὲν γενόμενος θεατῆς τῶν
 δὲ καὶ ἀκροατῆς, τρανότερον ἀνεδίδασκε τὸν Μιχαήλ τὰ πραττόμενα,
 καὶ δυνάμιν τινα ἡξίου ἐκπέμπειν τὴν ἐκεῖθεν ἀποσοβήσουσαν τοὺς
 Ἀγαρηνοὺς. Δαμιανὸν γοῦν κόμητα ὄντα τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ἵπποστασίου
 10 καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον μετὰ πολλῆς δυνάμεως καὶ παρασκευῆς ὁ βασι-
 λεύων ἀπέστειλεν εἰς βοήθειαν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ Φωτεινοῦ· οἱ καὶ ἐνωθέντες
 τὸν μὲν κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν πόλεμον ἔστησαν, εἰς οὐδὲν δὲ χρήσιμον τὸ
 τέλος ἐνέσκηπεν. αὐτὸς τε γὰρ ὁ προρρηθεὶς Δαμιανὸς κατὰ τὴν εἰσβολὴν
 τῆς μάχης εὐθύς τραυματίας πεσὼν καὶ σφαγῇ παραδοθεὶς τοὺς λοιποὺς
 15 οὐ νικᾶν καὶ μένειν ἀλλὰ φεύγειν ἐποίησεν ἡττημένους· καθ’ ἣν τροπὴν B 77
 καὶ ὁ Φωτεινὸς ἐν μονερίῳ μόλις διασώζεται πρὸς τὴν | Δίαν καὶ τῷ βα-
 σιλεῖ τῶνπραχθέντων αὐτάγγελος γίνεται.
23. Ἀλλ’ οὗτος μὲν, ἐπεὶ διὰ τιμῆς ἤγετο παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀεί, τὴν
 τῆς Σικελίας στρατηγίδα αὖθις τῆς Κρήτης ἀλλάσσεται· τοῖς δ’ Ἰσπανίοις
 ἔτι πῶς ἐν ταραχῇ καὶ μερίμνῃ διάγουσιν ἀνὴρ τις ἐκ τῶν ὁρέων τῆς
 νήσου ἐπικαταβάς μοναστῆς ἄλλον ἔφησεν εἶναι τόπον αὐτοῖς ἐπιτηδειό-

22.5 : ca. 823 Photeinus in Cretam cum classe perrexit

Cap. 22: Scyl 43.53–65 Cap. 23: Gen 33.11–21, 33.28–34.35 | PsSym 622.20–623.8,
 624.5–8; Scyl 43.65–44.76

47 οὐδ’ ἐτέρα V 47 ὥστε εἰς conl. Bekk in app. 50 οὐ μετὰ μικρὸν edd Boor cf. Scyl 43.48 :
 οὐ μετὰ μικρῶν V : οὐ μετὰ μακρὸν conl. Bekk in app. 51 ἀποδοχῆς ἄξια edd e Scyl 43.49
 52 χάρακα edd 53 ὁ τόπος add. edd Boor e Gen 33.11 et Scyl 43.51 54 σώζει edd :
 σώζειν V 54 post προσηγορίαν add. Χάνδαξ ὀνομαζόμενος edd Boor e Scyl 43.52
 54 φυλακὰς τὲ V 22.5 προεβάλλετο Bekk Boor 7 δυνάμιν τινα V 8 Ἀγαρηνοὺς conl.
 Boor : ἀγροὺς V : ἐχθροὺς edd e Scyl 43.57 9 πρωτοσπαθαρίου V 11 τὸν edd Boor :
 τῶν V 13 τοὺς λοιποὺς edd Boor : τοῖς λοιποῖς V 15 μονηρίῳ Bekk Boor
 16 πραθέντων V 16 αὐτ’ ἄγγελος V 23.1 διατιμῆς V 2 στρατηγίδα V 2 Ἰσπανίους
 Bekk 3 ἀνὴρ τίς V

this way both in order to provide you with bounties and to relieve myself of your distress.’ And when they mentioned their wives and made no small account of their children, he said, ‘Are the captives of war not your wives here, and will there not be children soon from them?’ Thereupon, silenced by such speech and considering what had been said as an agreement, they first constructed a deep trench, and then fixing a palisade in it – from whence <the place> preserves the name even now – they passed the night there; and there they also set the appropriate guards and stored up their spoils of war.

22. No long time had gone by before rumour had informed the emperor of everything. At length he gave the charge of administering Crete to the protospatharios Photeinos, great-grandfather of the God-crowned augusta Zoe of pious memory, who was then general of the Anatolics. Arriving there, he observed certain things and heard of others; and informing Michael more clearly of what was going on, he asked him to dispatch some sort of force which would scare the Hagarenes away. The emperor then sent Damian, comes of the imperial stable, with a great force and equipment to the aid of the general Photeinos. And joining forces these latter made war on the Hagarenes, but it came to no useful end. For the aforementioned Damian fell wounded at the outset of the battle and was given over to slaughter, causing the rest not to conquer and remain, but to flee defeated. Upon this turn of events Photeinos also barely escaped in a boat to Dia, and he reported to the emperor in person what had happened.

23. Now, as for Photeinos, because he was always held in honour by the emperor, he exchanged the generalship in Crete for that in Sicily. But the Spaniards, still somehow in confusion and turmoil, were told by a certain monk who had came down from the mountains of the island that there was

- 5 τερον πρὸς τε πολίσματος κτίσιν καὶ τῆς λοιπῆς διαρκείας καὶ ἐπικρα-
τείας αὐτῶν. καὶ ἅμα λέγων τὸν Χάνδακα τούτοις ἐπέδειξεν, ἔνθα καὶ νῦν
ἐκτισται ἡ πόλις αὐτῶν· καὶ ἡγεμῶν [ταύτης] ὁ Ἀπόχαψ τότε ἐγεγόνει
αὐτῆς. ἐκ ταύτης οὖν οἶόν τινος ἐξ ἀκροπόλεως ὀρμώμενοι πᾶσάν τε
10 ὡς καὶ ἐν αὐταῖς ἐγκατοικῆσαι αὐτούς, τοὺς οἰκήτορας καὶ αὐτόχθονας
δουλωσάμενοι. καὶ πόλεις δὲ Κρήσας ἐννέα πρὸς ταῖς εἴκοσιν εὐζωνοὶ τε
καὶ πεζοὶ ἡχμαλῶτευσαν, μιᾶς ἔκτοτε μόνης παραμεινάσης ἀναλώτου καὶ
ἀπαθοῦς, καὶ λόγῳ μὲν ὑποταγείσης, τὰ ἑαυτῶν δὲ ἔθιμα καὶ τὸν χριστια-
νισμόν φυλαττούσης ἀλώβητον. τότε δὴ τότε καὶ Κύριλλος ὁ Γορτύνης f. 26r
15 πρόεδρος, ἐπεὶ μὴ τούτοις εἰς ἄρνησιν ἐχώρει Χριστοῦ, ὡς ἱερεῖον
ἁμωμον ἐσφαγίαστο· οὐ καὶ τὸ αἷμα βοᾷ μένον ὡς τοῦ Ἄβελ ἢ καὶ
Ζαχαρίου πρὸς τὸν θεὸν ἀναλλοίωτον· καὶ μύρον μὲν ἐκείθεν ἔστιν ἀρύσα-
σθαι τοῖς πιστοῖς σπόγγοις τισὶν ἐναποματτόμενον, τὴν δὲ βαφὴν τοῦ
20 αἵματος ἀλλοιῶσαι οὐ πρόσεστιν. προσέτι μὴν αὐτόθι σοροί, καὶ τάφος
ἀνεγήγερται ἄλλων τε πολλῶν τῶν ὑπὲρ Χριστοῦ τότε μαρτυρησάντων
καὶ τῶν | δέκα περιωνύμων μαρτύρων. τοιοῦτῳ γοῦν τρόπῳ καὶ B 78
κατὰ τοῦτον ἀνηρπάσθησαν τὸν καιρὸν ἐκ μέσου τῶν Χριστιανῶν οἱ
Κρηταιεῖς.

24. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁψὲ καὶ μόλις τοὺς περικυκλοῦντας τοῦτον ἐχθροὺς καὶ πε-
ρικτυποῦντας ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἀπεσεύσατο, δέον πρὸς θεὸν τραπέσθαι καὶ τοῦ-
τον ἐξευμενίσασθαι, ἴλεω διὰ τῶν ἔργων ποιῶν, ὁ δὲ τοῦναντίον ἢ ὡς οἱ
πολιτικοὶ θεσμοὶ βούλονται, ὡς οὐ παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἀφ' ἑαυτοῦ δὲ σωθεῖς,
5 ἔπραττε τε καὶ πεπολίτευτο. τῆς γαμετῆς γοῦν τελευτησάσης αὐτοῦ, καὶ
δόξαν θέλοντος κατασχεῖν τῶν πολλῶν ὡς πένθος ἀληστον ἔχει αὐτῆς,
τὴν σύγκλητον ἐποίει διὰ τινων μηνυμάτων κρυφίων καὶ μυστικῶν
αἰρήσασθαι τοῦτον πείσαι γυναικὶ αὐθις ζευχθῆναι, καὶ οὐ παρακαλέσαι
μόνον πρὸς τοῦτο ἀλλὰ καὶ βιάσασθαι, καὶ εἰς ἐπανάστασιν, εἰ μὴ τοῦτο
10 γένοιτο, χωρῆσαι αὐτούς· “οὐ γάρ ἐστιν οἶον ἄνευ γυναικός”, φάσκειν,
“βασιλέα τε ζῆν καὶ τὰς ἡμετέρας στερεῖσθαι γαμετὰς δεσποίνης καὶ βα-
σιλίδος”. ἐπέπειστο γοῦν ὁψὲ διὰ τῶν ἐπιπλάστων λόγων, οὓς τῷ χρόνῳ

23.7–8 : usque ad a. 854 Apochaps in Creta regnavit

|| 16–17 Matt 23.35–36, Luc 11.50–51 Cap. 24: Theod Stud Epist 514; Gen 35.70–73; Log A
214.11–12 | PsSym 620.9–11; Scyl 44.77–1

6 λέγων Boor e Scyl 44.69 : λαβὼν V edd 6 ὑπέδειξε Scyl 44.70 7 ταύτης seclusimus, ut e
sequente anticipatum : αὐτῆς edd 8 πᾶσαν τε V 11 Κρήσας Boor e Gen 33.17 : Κρήσας
V : Κρήτης edd 13 ἔθιμα V 14 τότε δὴ τότε V : τότε edd 14 Κύρι ἄλλος V 17 ἐστιν
V 18 ἀρύσασθαι V Comb 19 πρόσεστιν errorem librarii propter similitudinem cum seq.
προσέτι putavit Boor 19 πρὸς ἔτι V 19 τάφοι edd 24.4 βούλονται edd Boor :
βούλωνται V 5 τε edd : το V 5 ἐπεπολίτευτο edd 6 κατασχεῖν V 10 γένοιτο :
γένηται edd 10 γυναικός ἄνευ edd

another place more suited to them for the foundation of a city and their further continuance and dominion. And whilst he talked he directed them to Chandax, where their city is built still now; and Apochaps then became its ruler. Starting from this city then, as from some acropolis, they overran the whole island and several of those lying nearby no less, so that they settled to live on them, enslaving the inhabitants and natives. In light armour and on foot they captured twenty-nine Cretan cities. One alone remained from that time impregnable and unscathed; even if subjected in word, it nevertheless preserved its customs and Christian religion intact. It was at this same time that Cyril, bishop of Gortyne, because he would not yield to them by renouncing Christ, was slaughtered as a blameless victim. His blood cries out to God, remaining unchangeable, as that of Abel and Zachariah. It is possible for the faithful to draw off from there sweet oil soaked up in sponges, but it is impossible to change the tinge of the blood. Moreover, there were graves there, and a tomb was erected for the many others who died at that time as martyrs for the sake of Christ and the far-famed Ten Martyrs. It was in such wise and at this time that the Cretans were snatched away from the midst of the Christians.

24. Now, when Michael had at length rid himself of the enemies who surrounded him with furious clamour, he ought to have turned to God and propitiated Him, making Him merciful through good deeds. But instead, as if he had been preserved not by Him, but by himself, he acted and administered the state in a manner contrary to that which the rules of statecraft require. When his wife died, because he wanted it to be the opinion of the many that he was stricken with inconsolable grief for her, he induced the Senate, through secret and private messages, to persuade him to choose again to marry a woman – and not only to bid, but also to constrain him to do this; and unless this was done, they would proceed to rebellion. ‘For it is impossible,’ he had them say, ‘to live as emperor without a wife, and to deprive our spouses of a mistress and empress.’ Thus at length he was persuaded by these

- λαθεῖν οὐκ ἦν· καὶ πρῶτον μὲν χειρόγραφα ὑπὲρ τῶν μήτε ὄντων μήτε
 15 ἐσομένων πᾶσαν ἀπῆται χεῖρα, ὡς αὐτήν τε τὴν ἐσομένην αὐτῷ γαμετὴν
 καὶ τὰ ἐκ ταύτης ἔκγονα ὑπερασπίζειν καὶ ὑπερμαχεῖν μετὰ τὸν αὐτοῦ μὴ
 παύσαιντο θάνατον, ἀλλὰ κάκεινεν τε καὶ ἐκείνους βασιλέας ἔχοιεν καὶ B 79
 δέσποιναν, ὡς εἰκός. οὕτως οὐ τοῦ κατ' ἐκείνον ἀλλὰ | καὶ τοῦ μετ' αὐτὸν
 ὥρετο κατακρατῆσιν αἰῶνος, δέον πάντα ἐκ θεοῦ ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐκείνων ἀναρ-
 τῆσαι χεῖρί, δι' ὃν βασιλεῖς βασιλεύουσι καὶ τύραννοι κρατοῦσι γῆς. πλήν
 20 ὑπέκυπτεν ὁ πάσης κυριεύων γῆς προστάγματι τῷ συγκλητικῷ, καὶ
 συνάπτεσθαι ἄκων ἠνείχετο ὁ σῶφρονα βίον ἀνηρημένος. ἦγετο οὖν πρὸς
 γάμον οὐ τήνδε ἢ τήνδε, ἀλλὰ γυναικὰ τινὰ πάλαι τὸν κόσμον καὶ τὰ f. 26v
 αὐτοῦ ἀπο|στέρξασαν, Χριστῷ δὲ νυμφευθεῖσαν καὶ ἀσκήσεσιν ἐκ παιδὸς
 25 θεῷ. Εὐφροσύνη ταύτης ἢ κλησῖς, καὶ πατρὸς ἐσεμνύνετο Κωνσταντίνου
 εἶναι, τοῦ δικαίᾳ κρίσει τὴν τύφλωσιν ὑπομεμενηκότος παρὰ μητρός.
 ταῦτα μὲν ἐξεπέραινεν, καὶ ἴλεω δι' αὐτῶν οὐ μόνον οὐκ ἐποιεῖτο ἀλλὰ καὶ
 παρώργιζε τὸν θεόν.
25. Καὶ κατὰ τῶν τὴν Κρήτην δὲ καταλαβόντων καὶ λυμαινομένων
 αὐθις ἐπαποστέλλει στρατόν· Κρατερὸς ὄνομα τῷ στρατηγέτῃ, ὃς τηνι-
 καῦτα τὴν τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν διέπων στρατηγίδα, ἐβδομήκοντα ναῦς
 διήρεις τῶν ὑφ' ἑαυτῷ καὶ πάντων τῶν θεματικῶν λαβών, βρέμων ἅμα
 5 καὶ πολλῶ φρονήματι παρενέβαλεν. καὶ ἐπεῖπερ οὐδ' ἐκείνοις ἐδόκει
 ὑποστέλλεσθαι ἀλλ' ἐς μάχην χωρεῖν τὴν τὰς ἑαυτῶν δυνάμεις καὶ γεν-
 ναιότητος ἐπιδειξομένην – καὶ γὰρ εἰσι τῶν ἄλλων Ἀγαρηνῶν οὗτοι δὴ
 εὐφυεῖς –, συνέβαλον δὲ τολμηρῶς ἑκάτεροι κατὰ τὸν ἀγῶνα χωρήσαντες
 10 ἄρτι δὴ τοῦ ἡλίου τὰς ἀκτῖνας ὑπὲρ γῆς ἐφαπλοῦντος, οὐδέτεροι | μὲν B 80
 ἄχρι μεσοῦσης ἡμέρας ἐνέκλιναν, ἀλλὰ γενναίως μαχόμενοι τὴν ἑαυτῶν
 ἐδείκνυνον ἐμπειρίαν καὶ δύναμιν· ἐπεὶ δὲ πονήσαντες οἱ Κρηταιεῖς ἤδη τοῦ
 ἡλίου κλιναντος ἐνέδωκαν πρὸς φυγὴν, τότε δὴ πολλοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν
 ἀπέκτειναν, πλείους δὲ τὰ ὅπλα ρίψαντας αἰχμαλώτους ἔλαβον, ἐκ ποδὸς
 ἐπόμενοι. τάχα δ' ἂν καὶ σπουδάσαντες ἔλαβον τὴν πόλιν αὐθημερόν, εἰ

24.21–25 : ca. 824 Michael Euphrosynem uxorem duxit 25.1–2 : ca. 825–826 Crateri expeditio in Cretam accidit

|| 19 Prov 8.15–16 Cap. 25: Gen 34.36–60 | Scyl 45.2–27

16 τε καὶ ἐκείνους conl. Bekk in app. : τε μετ' ἐκείνους V edd Boor : τε μετ' ἐκείνον καὶ αὐτοὺς conl. Boor in app. 21 συνάπτεσθαι Boor : συνθάπτεσθαι V : συνάψεσθαι edd 22 τήνδε καὶ τήνδε V 22 γυναῖκα τινὰ V 24 καὶ τὰ V 26 τοῦ om. edd 26 ὑπομενηκότος V 28 παρώργισε edd 25.2 ἐπ' ἀποστέλλει V 5 παρενέλαβεν Comb 7 ἐπιδειξομένην edd : ἐπιδειξαμένην V 7 γὰρ εἰσι (sic) V 8 συνέβαλλον edd 9 ὑφαπλοῦντος V Comb 9 οὐδ' ἔτεροι V 10 ἐνέκλινον edd 14 καὶ om. edd 14 αὐθ' ἡμερόν V

false words which in time could not escape being discovered as such. First he demanded notes in writing from every hand, on behalf of those who neither existed nor would ever exist, to the effect that even after his death they would not cease protecting and fighting for his future spouse and the children born from her, but would have her as mistress and them as emperors after him, as was fitting. Thus did he think to prevail not only over his own age but also that after him, whereas he ought to have referred everything to God and not the hands of the others; for it is *through Him that kings reign and monarchs rule the earth*. But he who was lord over all the earth bowed to the order of the Senate, and unwillingly did he who had chosen a temperate life consent to be joined in matrimony. Now, he did not marry just anyone or another, but a certain woman who had formerly renounced the world and its things, and had espoused Christ, practising asceticism from childhood and devoting herself to God in the monastery on the island of Prinkipos. Her name was Euphrosyne, and she prided herself on having as her father that Constantine who had suffered blinding by the just decree of his mother. These things did Michael accomplish; and through them did he not only not render God propitious, but brought Him to wrath.

25. Again Michael dispatched an army against those who had invaded and were causing harm on Crete. The name of the general was Krateros, who was then administrator of the theme of the Kibyrraiotes. He took seventy biremes with the men under his command and all the thematic soldiers, and clamouring he drew them up in battle order with great thought. Nor did the other side think fit to give way, but rather to engage battle, displaying their capabilities and virtues, for of all Hagarenes these are the noblest. Both sides came together, boldly rushing into the fight, just as the sun was spreading its rays over the earth; and neither side yielded until mid-day, but fighting nobly they showed their experience and strength. When however, at the setting of the sun, the Cretans were exhausted and gave way to flight, then did the Romans kill many of them; and they took even more as captives, following them on foot after they had thrown down their arms. Had they made haste, they would probably also have taken the city the same day, if night had not come and

- 15 μὴ νῦξ ἤδη φαινομένη ἀντέστρεψεν τελέως τὰ πράγματα καὶ ἀνάπαυλαν
τούτοις ζητοῦσι φόνον ἄλλ’ οὐ σωτηρίαν ἀπέτεκεν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ ὡς ἤδη
νενικηκότες, καὶ πάντας αὔριον ἐν βραχεῖ βραχεῖς ὄντας ἐλπίσαντες συλ-
λαβεῖν, πρὸς πότους καὶ τρυφάς, ὡς ἐν οἰκείᾳ ἄλλ’ οὐκ ἐν ἄλλοτρίᾳ
διάγοντες, ἐξεβάκχευον, μήτε τινὸς φυλακῆς μήτ’ ἄλλης σωτηρίας τῆς
20 κατὰ τὸν πολεμικὸν νόμον γινομένης φροντίσαντες, ὕπνου δὲ μόνου καὶ
τῆς πάντα ῥαδίως ἀνατρεπούσης καὶ ἀπολυούσης ἀμελείας τε καὶ
ῥαστώνης. ὅθεν περὶ μέσας νύκτας, ἐπεὶ διὰ τῶν ἑαυτῶν φυλάκων ὡς ἐν
ἀπορίᾳ ἀγρυπνοῦντες οἱ Κρηταιεῖς ὕπνω καὶ οἶνω καθηρῆσθαι τοὺς τῆς
‘Ρωμαϊκῆς παρεμβολῆς ἀνέμαθον, αὐθωρὸν ἐξελθόντες μαχαίρᾳ πάντας f. 27r
25 ἀπώλεσαν, ὡς μὴ δ’ ἄγγελον, τὸ δὴ λεγόμενον, ὑποστρέψαι καὶ ἐκείθεν
διασωθῆναι, ἢ μόνον τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐμπορικῷ ἐπιβάντα πλοίου καὶ τὴν
σωτηρίαν ζητοῦντα. πλὴν καὶ τοῦτον ἐπεὶ πανταχοῦ ὁ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν
ἡγεμὼν ἀναζητῶν μὲν οὐχ εὔρισκε, φεύγειν δὲ διήκουεν, ὀκλάσι τοῦτον
μεθ’ ἡγεμόνων ἀναζητῆσαι ἐκέλευσεν· οἱ καὶ καταλαβόντες τοῦτον ἐν Κῶ
30 ἐπὶ ξύλου κρεμάσαντες διαφθαρῆναι ἐποίησαν. καὶ τὰ μὲν | κατὰ τὴν B 81
μάχην ἐκείνην καὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα συμβεβηκότα τοιαῦτα, πολλὴν ἐνεγκόντα
‘Ρωμαίοις συμφοράν, οὐ τὴν ἐξ ἡττης μόνον ἐκείνης, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ἔκτοτε
ἐπικρατήσασαν καὶ διαμείναςαν πολυκέφαλον ὕδραν, ἐκέισε καὶ ἀλλαχοῦ
μὲν ἀποτεμνομένην ἀεὶ, ἀναθάλλουσαν δὲ ἀλλαχοῦ.

26. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀνὴρ τις στρατιωτικῆς πείρας, πρὸς δὲ καὶ
φρονήσεως καὶ ἀγχινοίας οὐκ ἄμοιρος, ᾧ τὸ ἐπώνυμον Ὡρορύφας,
στρατόν τινα ἀθροίσας τὸν τεσσαρακοντάριον τότε καλούμενον βασι-
λικῆς ἐκ προστάξεως, ἐκ τοῦ διανεμηθῆναι αὐτοῖς ἀνὰ τεσσαράκοντα
5 χρυσίνων, τὰς τε ἄλλας νήσους, αἷς ὀλίγιστοι ἐφέροντο, κατατρέχων, καὶ
τοῖς μὲν λόχους ἐπάγων τοῖς δὲ καὶ φανερώς πολεμῶν, ἐξωλόθρευσέ τε καὶ
ἀπώλειά παρέδωκεν· ταύτην δέ, ὡς ἔοικε, παρέπεμψεν εἰς ἡμᾶς. ἀλλὰ τὰ
μὲν περὶ αὐτῆς θεῶ πάντως μελήσει, μελήσει δὲ καὶ ἡμῖν τοῖς νύκτωρ καὶ
μεθ’ ἡμέραν τὴν ψυχὴν δαπανῶσιν ὑπὲρ αὐτῆς.

26.1–7 : multo post a. 853 Ooryphae expeditio in Cretam fortasse accidit, cf. Signes 1995, 330–334 et mentiones Ooryphae Basilio regnante in DAI 29.97–98, VBas 53.31–32 et 55.12–13

|| 25–26 Flavius Iosephus Ant. Iud. 2.344 ὡς μηδ’ ἄγγελον... ὑποστρέψαι, Diodorus Siculus 11.23.3 τὸ δὴ λεγόμενον μηδὲ ἄγγελον... διασωθῆναι Cap. 26: Gen 35.61–67 | Scyl 46.28–34

15 ἀντέστρεψεν τελέως Boor c Scyl 45.13 ἀνέτρεψε (ἀνέστρεψε ms. B) τελέως : ἀντέστρεφέως V B : ἀντέστρεψεν ὡς in marg. B Comb : ἀνέστρεψεν ὡς Bekk 19 μήτε τίνος V 21 τὰ ante πάντα add. edd 21 ἀπολλυούσης V 22 διὰ : δεῖ ἃ V 25 λεγόμεγόμενον (μεγὸ exrunc-tum) V 30 κρεμασασαντες (σασα exrunc-tum) V 33 κρατήσασαν edd 26.2 ᾧ : οὐ edd 2 Ὡρορύφας edd Boor, cf. Scyl 46.29 4 ἀνατεσσαράκοντα V 5 χρυσίνους Scyl 46.31

changed matters completely, bringing to them, who now sought rest, slaughter instead of safety. For, as if they had already conquered and expected to capture all of the few remaining enemy quickly on the morrow, they now gave themselves over to drinking and excesses in Bacchic frenzy, as though in their own and not a foreign land. Nor did they take care for a watch or any other safeguard according to the rules of war, but only for sleep and the indifference and lassitude which diverts and releases one from all things. Whereupon, around midnight, when the Cretans, keeping awake out of distress, learned from their guards that the men in the Roman encampment had been overpowered by sleep and wine, they made a sally forthwith and put them all to the sword, so that not even a messenger, as the saying goes, was saved to return thither. The only exception was the general, who boarded a commercial ship seeking safety. But when the leader of the Hagarenes, after searching for him everywhere and not finding him, heard that he had fled, he commanded ships together with his commanders to search for him. They found him on Cos, and hanging him on the furca they put him to death. Such were the events surrounding that battle and struggle which brought great calamity upon the Romans – not only the one of this defeat, but also the many-headed Hydra which prevailed and persisted thenceforth, its heads being forever severed here and there, but then sprouting forth again elsewhere.

26. After these events, a certain man of military experience who, in addition, was not without judgement and intelligence and whose name was Ooryphas, assembled by imperial decree an army called ‘the Forties’, from the distribution to each of them of forty gold coins. He invaded the other islands which the Hagarenes occupied with very few men, laying ambushes against some and waging open war with others, and destroyed and gave them over to utter perdition; and, so it appears, he also conveyed to us this island [Crete]. God will surely look after its affairs, and we shall also look after it, we who night and day consume our soul on its behalf.

27. Κατὰ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν καιρὸν Εὐφήμιος τις κατὰ τὴν Σικελίαν
 τουρμάρχης τελῶν, παρθένου τινὸς ἥρα ἀσκητηρίοις ἐνδιαιτωμένης καὶ
 τὸ μοναχικὸν ἔκπαλαι ἀναλαβούσης σχῆμα· καὶ διὰ πολλοῦ ἐποιεῖτο τὸν
 5 αὐτοῦ ἔρωτα ἐκπληρῶσαι τὴν παρθένον λαβὼν πως εἰς γαμετήν. ἐπεὶ
 γοῦν τὸ παράδειγμα οὐ πόρρωθεν εἶχεν κωλύον οὐδ’ ἀποτρέπον – τοῦ-
 10 τον δὴ τὸν Μιχαήλ, καὶ γάρ, | ὡς εἴρηται, καὶ αὐτὸς τοιοῦτόν τι δρᾶσαι
 ἐτόλμησεν –, ἀφαρπάζει τὴν παρθένον τοῦ ἀσκητηρίου καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
 ἄκουσαν ὑπηγάγετο. ταύτης οὖν οἱ ἀδελφοὶ τῷ Μιχαήλ προσίασι, τὰ
 15 τοῦ δράματος διηγούμενοι. ὁ δὲ κελεύει τῷ στρατηγῷ, εἰ οὕτως φωράσοι
 ἔχουσιν τὴν ἀλήθειαν, τὴν ρίνα τοῦ τετολημηκότος Εὐφήμιου ἀποτεμεῖν
 κατὰ | τὴν τοῦ νόμου ἀκρίβειαν. καὶ ὁ Εὐφήμιος μαθὼν δὴ ταῦτα καὶ τὴν
 20 εἰς αὐτὸν τοῦ νόμου τήρησιν καὶ τὴν βασιλικὴν ἀπειλήν, συνωμότας
 λαβὼν τούτους τε τοὺς ὑπὸ τὴν αὐτοῦ χεῖρα καὶ τινὰς τῶν συντουρμαρ-
 χῶν, τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τούτῳ παραγινόμενον ἀπελάνει ἐκείθεν, καὶ
 25 πρὸς τὸν τῆς Ἀφρικῆς ἀποδιδράσκει ἀμεραμουννῇ, πᾶσαν τὴν Σικελίαν
 ὑπ’ ἐκείνῳ ποιῆσαι καθυποσχόμενος καὶ διδόναι φόρους πολλούς, εἰ μόνον
 δὴ ἀναγορεύσει τοῦτον βασιλέα καὶ τινὰ παράσχοι βοήθειαν. ἀναγορεύει
 γοῦν τοῦτον βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων, καὶ χεῖρα δίδωσι πολλήν, καὶ τῆς Σι-
 30 κελίας <γίνεται> ἐγκρατῆς, παρ’ αὐτοῦ τούτου λαβὼν αὐτήν, οὐ τούτου
 μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐτέρων συνδρόμων γενομένων ἐπὶ τῇ τῶν τοιούτων
 ἀπωλείᾳ τόπων. δηλοῖ δὲ ταῦτα σαφέστατα καὶ πλατικώτερον ἢ τότε
 γραφεῖσα ἱστορία Θεογνώστω τῷ καὶ περὶ ὀρθογραφίας γεγραφότι καὶ
 35 εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθοῦσα ἡμῶν, ἣν ὁ βουλούμενος μεταχειριζόμενος τὰ καθ’ ἕκα-
 στον ἀναδιδραχθήσεται. πλὴν ὁ μὲν Εὐφήμιος [οὐ] μετ’ οὐ πολὺ ἄθλον τῆς
 ἀποστασίας καὶ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἀνομίας λαμβάνει τὴν τῆς ἑαυτοῦ στήρησιν
 κεφαλῆς. σχῆμα γὰρ ἔχων βασιλικὸν ἀπῆει καὶ κατὰ τὴν Συράκουσαν, καὶ
 40 δὴ ἀποθεν γενόμενος τῆς | ἑαυτοῦ τάξεως καὶ τῶν δορυφόρων ὡς ἀπὸ
 τόξου βολῆς ἐγένετο κατὰ τὴν πόλιν, ὁμιλῶν αὐτοῖς τυραννικῶς τε καὶ
 βασιλικῶς. τοῦτον ὡς προσερχόμενον ἔγνωσαν δύο τινὲς ἀδελφοί, γενό-

27.1 : ca. 826 Euphemius in Sicilia contra imperatorem insurrexit 18–19 : aestate 827 emirus
 Africae Siciliam cepit

Cap. 27: Chron Min 45; Log A 215.31 | PsSym 622.1–3; Scyl 46.35–47.68

27.3 ἐκ πάλαι V : ἐκ παιδὸς Scyl 46.37 4 πῶς V 5 τὸ om. edd 5 ante κωλύον add. οὐ
 edd Boor 6 δρᾶσαι om. edd 8 πρὸς ἱασιν V 9 διηγούμενοι edd Boor e Scyl 46.42 :
 διηγούμενη (sic) V 14 παρελάνει edd 15 τῆς om. edd 15 ἀμεραμουννῇ V 16 καθ’
 ὑποσκόμενος V 17 δὴ om. edd 19 γίνεται ante ἐγκρατῆς add. Boor e Scyl 46.51 cf. II.
 28.2, 5 : ἐγκρατῆς V : ἐγκρατῆς γίνεται edd 20 ἐτέρον V 20 τῶν om. edd 21 δῆλοῖ V
 22 ἱστορία om. edd 22 καὶ om. edd 24 μετ’ οὐ πολὺ edd Boor : οὐ μετ’ οὐ πολὺ V
 28 ὁμιλον (sic) V 29 προσερχόμενον : μεμονωμένον in app. con. e Scyl 47.59 Boor, qui puta-
 vit ut librarii oculus ad sequens προσέρχονται aberravit.

27. Around this same time a certain Euphemios who served as turmarch in Sicily was seized with desire for a virgin woman who lived in a monastery and had long before taken the monastic habit; and after trying for a long time to fulfil his desire he succeeded somehow in taking the virgin to wife. For, having the the example which hardly hindered nor forbade – this very Michael, who, as we have said, had also dared commit such an act –, he stole the virgin from the monastery and carried her off against her will. Her brothers then went to Michael and told him of the affair. In strict accordance with the law Michael commanded the general [of Sicily], if he found this to be the truth, to cut off the nose of Euphemios who had dared this. When Euphemios learnt of these things, the observance of the law in his regard and the emperor's threat, he took as confederates those under his command and also some of his fellow turmarshs and drove away the general as he was coming to him on this matter; then he fled to the ameramnunes of Africa, promising him to place all of Sicily under his rule and to pay many taxes, if only he would proclaim him emperor and provide certain aid. The ameramnunes then proclaimed Euphemios emperor of the Romans and gave him a great force; and he gained control of Sicily, receiving it from this Euphemios after not only he but also others had concurred in the destruction of these places. The history written by Theognostos – the one who has also written about Orthography –, which has come into our hands, relates these things most clearly and in great detail; and whoever desires to make use of it will be informed on each and every matter. But as for Euphemios, not long afterwards he received as the reward of his revolt and his lawless conduct the loss of his head. For wearing imperial attire he set off for Syracuse; and going off from his soldiers and guards the distance of an arrow shot, he came to the city, addressing them both as usurper and emperor. Now, two brothers, when they learnt that Eu-

- 30 μενοι σύμπνοι καὶ ταῦτὸν φρονήσαντες προσέρχονται τούτῳ εἰρηνικῶς, τὴν προσήκουσαν βασιλεῖ τιμὴν ἀπονέμοντες. ὥς δ' ὁ Εὐφήμιος τὴν τε παρ' αὐτῶν ἀναγόμεναι ἀσπαστῶς ἐδέξατο καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κατήκουεν αὐτῶν, προσεκαλεῖτο τούτους φιλοφρόνως ἀποδώσων τὸν ἀσπασμόν·
- 35 θριξὶ μὲν κατέχευται ἰσχυρῶς πρὸς τοῦ ἐτέρου τῶν ἀδελφῶν, ὑπὸ δὲ τοῦ ἐτέρου ἀφαιρεῖται τὴν κεφαλὴν. καὶ ὁ μὲν Εὐφήμιος τοιοῦτῳ τέλει τοῦ βίου ἐχρήσατο.

28. Οἱ δ' Ἀγαρηνοὶ οὐ τῆς Σικελίας μόνον ἔκτοτε ἀλλὰ καὶ Καλαβρίας καὶ Λαγοβαρδίας ἐγένοντο ἐγκρατεῖς, πᾶσαν κατατρέχοντες καὶ διαπορθοῦντες καὶ ἐνσκηνοῦντες ἄχρι τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ ἐν μακαρίᾳ τῇ λήξει Βασιλίου τοῦ βασιλέως. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἡ ἐκείνου δηλώσει ἱστορία· f 28r
- 5 Ὁ δὲ Μιχαὴλ μῆνας ὀκτῶ καὶ ἔτη τῆς βασιλείας γενόμενος ἐγκρατὴς ἐννέα τὸν βίον κατέλυσεν, τῷ δυσουρίας νοσήματι ἄλους, ἐκ τῶν νεφρῶν λαβούσης τὴν ἀρχήν, μήτε τὴν πρὸς θεὸν καταλύσας δυσμένειαν, οἷς οὐκ ἤθελε τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μορφήν δι' ἡμᾶς ἀναλαβόμενον σάρκα προσκυνεῖν, μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ τοὺς προσκυνοῦντας καθαιρῶν Μεθόδιόν τε καὶ Εὐθύμιον,
- 10 περὶ ὧν εἰρήκαμεν, καὶ τὸν τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐπαυξήσας ἀκατάλλακτον πόλεμον, τὰ τε κατὰ Θωμᾶν καὶ τῶν Κρη|ταιῶν, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τῶν B 84 εἰρημένων Ἀφρικῶν διὰ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ κακίαν ἀποστείλαντος τοῦ θεοῦ. ἀλλὰ καὶ πᾶσα ἡ Δαλματία τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀπέστη τότε βασιλείας, καὶ γεγόνασιν ἅπαντες ιδιόρυσμοί τε καὶ αὐτοκέφαλοι μέχρι τῆς τοῦ Βασιλείου τοῦ αἰοδίου βασιλείας· τότε γὰρ πάλιν οὗτοι Ῥωμαίοις καθυπετάγησαν. πεπλήρωτο δὲ καὶ ὁ ἐπ' αὐτῷ χρῆσμός, λέγων οὕτω·
- 15 ἀρχὴ κακῶν γε προσπεσεῖται τῇ χθονί,
ὅταν κατάρξη τῆς Βαβυλῶνος δράκων
δύσγλωττος ἄρδην καὶ φιλόχρυσος λίαν.
- 20 Ἐτέθη δὲ ὁ τοῦτου νεκρὸς ἐν τῷ ναῷ τῶν ἁγίων ἀποστόλων, ἐν τῷ ἡρώῳ Ἰουστινιανοῦ, ἐν λάρνακι πρασίνῳ Θετταλικῇ.

28.1–4 : de rebus in Italia Basilio Macedone regnante cf. VBas 52.1–6, 53.40–45, 55.19–58.39 5–6 : Oct., fortasse die 2, a. 829 Michael obiit 11 : de bello civili cf. supra II.9–20 11 : de rebus in Creta cf. supra II.20–23, 25–26 11–12 : de Siciliae invasione ab emiro Africae cf. supra II.27 13–16 : de rebus in Dalmatia Basilio Macedone regnante cf. VBas 52.6–55.19 et DAI 29.84–112.

Cap. 28: De Cer 645.17–18; VBas 52–58; Gen 35.78–79; Log A 214.2, 215.29–216.37 | PsSym 620.8–9, 622.1–7, 624.9–11; Scyl 47.69–48.82

30 σύμπνοι edd e Scyl 47.60 30 εἰρωνικῶς Boor e Scyl 47.61 31 ὁ om. edd 35 τοῦ om. edd 28.2 Λαγοβαρδίας Bekk 2 πᾶσας fortasse coniiciendum, cf. Scyl 47.70 πάντα 6 μῆνας ὀκτῶ καὶ ἔτη... ἐννέα V edd Boor, cf. Scyl 47.72 (VBMN) ἐπὶ μῆνας ὀκτῶ καὶ ἔτη ἐννέα : ἔτη ἡ' πρὸς ἐννέα μηνσίν Gen 35.78 : ἐπὶ χρόνους (ἔτη A) ὀκτῶ καὶ μῆνας ἐννέα Scyl 47.72 (ACE), cf. infra III.1.1–2 6 ἄλους V 12 ἡρημένων V 14 ιδιόρυσμοί edd 14 αὐτοκέφαλοι V 19 δύσγλωστος Comb : δύσγλωστος Bekk

phemios was coming, made an agreement and, with the same intention, went up to him in a peaceful manner, rendering honour as befitted an emperor. Then Euphemios, after he had gladly accepted the acclamation from them and heard the others as well, summoned these two in friendly wise to return their greeting. And inclining his head and pressing mouth to mouth he was held by the hair with force by one of the brothers whilst he was deprived of his head by the other. Such was the end of Euphemios's life.

28. The Hagarenes not only took possession of Sicily, but also Calabria and Lagobardia, overrunning and pillaging and occupying all the land until the reign of Basil of blessed memory. But the history concerning him will relate these things.

As for Michael, having held the imperial power for nine years and eight months, he left this life, stricken with a urinary illness which had begun in the kidneys; nor did he desist in his enmity toward God, for he was unwilling to worship him who on our behalf had assumed flesh with respect to his form. Instead, he condemned Methodius and Euthymius, whose story we have related, and increased the relentless war with the Hagarenes whereupon God, on account of his wickedness, brought forth the events surrounding Thomas and the Cretans as well as those of the Africans, as has been recounted. All of Dalmatia then also revolted from the empire of the Romans, and they all became self-governed and independent until the reign of the glorious Basil; for then they were all again brought under subjection to the Romans. Thus was fulfilled the prophecy concerning Michael which said:

'A realm of evils shall befall the earth,
When Babylon's dragon, sore ineloquent
And exceeding fond of gold, shall reign'.

His remains were laid in the church of the Holy Apostles, in the mausoleum of Justinian, in a sarcophagus of green Thessalian marble.

1. Τὰ μὲν δὴ πραχθέντα Μιχαήλ τῷ τραυλῷ βασιλεύσαντι ἐννέα ἔτεσι
πρὸς μηνὶν ὀκτῶ ἐν τῷ πρὸ τούτου βιβλίῳ δεδῆλωται· ὁ δ' υἱὸς αὐτοῦ
Θεόφιλος ἤδη ἀνδρὸς ἔχων ἡλικίαν τὴν πατρικὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ βασιλείαν
κατὰ τὸν Ὀκτώβριον μῆνα τῆς ὀγδόης ἰνδικτικῶνος | διεδέξατο. λόγῳ μὲν B 85
- 5 οὖν τῆς δικαιοσύνης ὥσπερ ἔμπυρος ἐραστὴς καλεῖσθαι βουλόμενος καὶ
νόμων εἶναι φύλαξ πολιτικῶν ἀκριβής, τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ ἔξωθεν ἑαυτὸν τῶν
ἐπιβουλευόντων διατηρῶν, ὡς ἂν μή τις κατ' αὐτοῦ τι νεανιεύσῃται, τὸν
ἐπηρτημένον κίνδυνον ἐφορῶν, τοὺς τῷ πατρὶ μὲν αὐτοῦ ἐκ συνωμοσίας
τὴν βασιλείαν παρεσχηκότας, κατὰ τοῦ Λέοντος δὲ ἐπαναστάντας,
10 ἅπαντας ἔγνω ὀλέθρῳ παραδοῦναι τε καὶ σφαγῇ. ὅθεν δόγμα ἐξέθετο
ἅπαντας τοὺς τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀπολαύοντας φιλοτιμιῶν, προσέτι δὲ καὶ
βασιλικῆς τιμῆς μετασχόντας τῆς οἰασοῦν, κατὰ τὴν | Μαγναύραν συν-
αθροισθῆναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγελγόνει καὶ τοῦ προστάγματος οὐδεὶς f. 28v
- 15 ἑτόλμα καταφρονεῖν, τὴν τῆς ψυχῆς τέως ὡς ἐν σκότῳ κρύψας θηριωδίαν,
ἡρέμα πως καὶ πραεῖα φωνῇ οὕτω πως ἔλεξεν ἐν βραχεῖ, ὡς “ἐβούλετο μὲν
καὶ δι’ ἐπιθυμίας εἶχεν, ὦ λαὸς καὶ κλῆρος ἐμός, τοὺς ἀντιλαβομένους καὶ
τῆς βασιλείας ὑπερμαχήσαντας νεανικῶς ὁ ἐμός ἄγαν πατὴρ πολλῶν μὲν
τιμῶν πολλῶν δὲ τούτους ἀγαθῶν ἐτέρων καταξιῶσαι τε καὶ γερῶν· ἀλλ’
ἐπεὶ ἔφθασεν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων γενέσθαι θάττον ἢ εἶχε βουλῆς καὶ πρὸ τοῦ
20 καιροῦ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ γνώμης ἔξω γέγονε τοῦ καιροῦ, ἵνα μὴ ἀχάριστος
δόξῃ πολλοῖς, ἐμὲ οὐ τῆς βασιλείας μόνον διάδοχον ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ τοι-
οῦτου καλοῦ τούτοις ὑπόχρεων ἐγκατέλιπεν. διὸ ἕκαστος ἐκ μέσου
ἀγόμενος δεικνύτω ἡμῖν ἑαυτόν”. τούτοις παρακλαπέντες τοῖς λόγοις καὶ
συλαγωγηθέντες τὸν νοῦν ἑαυτὸν ἕκαστος ἀπεγύμνου καὶ πᾶσιν ὠρᾶτο

1.2–4 : 2 Oct. a. 829 Theophilus post obitum patris eius Michaelis imperator solus regnavit

Cap. 1: Gen 35.78–79, 36.82–93; Log A 217.20–218.36 | PsSym 625.12–21; Scyl 47.72–73, 49.84–50.22

1.1 ἐννέα Comb in marg. Bekk, cf. supra II.28.6 μῆνας ὀκτῶ καὶ ἔτη ... ἐννέα, quod pro lapso calami Continuatoris habemus, cui Scyl 47.72 (VBMN) ἐπὶ μῆνας ὀκτῶ καὶ ἔτη ἐννέα itidem secutus est, sed apud Gen 35.78–79 et Scyl 47.72 (ACE) tempus regni ut 8 annorum et 9 mensium recte constat: ἐπτά V Boor 1 ἔτεσιν edd 2 δὲ edd 3 Θεόφιλος ἤδη ἀνδρὸς Boor, cf. Scyl 49.84–85 Θεόφιλος ἀνδρὸς ἤδη : ἤδη Θεόφιλος ἀνδρὸς V edd 4 ἰνδικτικῶνος V 7 νεανιεύσῃται, ταῦτα ὑπεκρίνετο edd e Scyl 49.89 νεανικόν τι τολμήσεις, ταῦτα ὑπεκρίνετο 8 ἐπηρτημένον οὖν edd 8 ὑφορῶν edd 10 ἅπαντας B in marg. edd Boor : ἅπαν V B 10 σκαφῇ Comb 13 πράγματος Comb 16 διεπιθυμίας V 16 ὦ : ὁ B edd 20 αὐτοῦ edd 21 βασιλείας V 23 ὑποκλαπέντες edd

Concerning the Reign of Theophilus, Son of Michael. Book 3.

1. The things done by Michael the Stammerer who was emperor for nine years and eight months have been related in the previous Book. His son Theophilus, who had already reached the age of manhood, succeeded to the empire in October of the eighth indiction. Now, Theophilus wanted to be known as a fervent lover of justice and rigorous guardian of the laws of the state, but in truth, preserving himself from those who were forming conspiracies, lest anyone should carry out a revolution against him, and observing the danger which impended, he decided upon the destruction and slaughter of all those who through conspiracy had procured the empire for his father and had revolted against Leo. Therefore he issued a decree that all those who derived benefit from imperial honours, and moreover those who had received any imperial reward whatsoever, should assemble in the Magnaura. When this had been done, no one daring disregard the command, he concealed for a while, in the dark as it were, the brutality of his soul and softly, in a gentle voice, he spoke briefly in such wise: 'My father greatly desired and was eager, O my people and clergy, to reward with many honours and other bounties and prizes those who had helped and fought vigorously on behalf of his reign, but he disappeared from men before his wish, and he disappeared from time before the time of his disposing. However, lest he should appear ungrateful in the eyes of the many, he left me not only as successor to his empire but also as debtor to these men for this noble deed. Therefore, let each one come forth and shew himself to us.' Astounded and taken aback by these words each revealed himself and was seen clearly by all. Straightway, then, he

- 25 κατάδηλος. εὐθύς | οὖν νόμῳ τῷ πολιτικῷ χρῆσθαι τὸν ὕπαρχον ἐγκε- B 86
λεύεται, καί, “ἄγε δὴ”, φησίν, “ὦ οὗτος, τούτους κατ’ ἀξίαν τῶν βε-
βιωμένων ἀμείβου, οὐ μόνον οἷς οὐκ ἔδεισαν τὸ θεῖον, αἵματι ἀνθρωπίνῳ
μῖαναντες δεξιάν, ἀλλὰ καὶ χριστὸν κυρίου βασιλέα ἀνελόντες οἱ ἄθλιοι”.
30 τούτοις διέλυσε τὸν σύλλογον ἐκείνους τὸν πρῶτον δὴ πως καὶ θαυ-
μαστόν· ὃς εἴπερ τις κατὰ νόμους ἔχοι τὸ ἐπαινετόν, ἀλλ’ οὐκ οἶδ’ εἰ
στήσεται ἐγγὺς ἡμερωτάτης τε καὶ πραείας ψυχῆς. καὶ τούτους μὲν
οὕτως πως ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐποίησεν, προσεπιθείς τούτοις τὸ ἐπαινετόν
ἐκείνῳ γε καὶ καλόν, τὸ ἀπελάσαι καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἐν ἧ τὸ πρότερον ἀπεκάρη
35 μονὴν Εὐφροσύνην, τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μητρὶάν, ποιῆσαι παλιννοστήσαι, ἣν
ἡ ἱστορία δευτέραν γαμετὴν παρέδωκε τοῦ Μιχαήλ, ἐκείνων γε τῶν
ἡμῖν εἰρημένων ἐκείσε χειρογράφων καὶ ὄρκων πολλῶν, οὐχ ὅσως
πραχθέντων τε καὶ γενομένων, ὠφελήσαντων οὐδέν. τί δήποτε; ὅτι μὴ ἐπὶ
κύριον πεπειθῶς ἡγάγετο δὴ γαμετὴν – ἥ γὰρ ἂν καὶ ἔννομόν τινα, ἀλλ’
οὐ τὴν ἤδη συνταξαμένην ἡγάγετο τῷ Χριστῷ –, ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ θρα-
40 σύττητι καὶ τοῖς ὅρκοις ἐκείνοις τοῖς εὐμεγέθεσί τε καὶ θεοῦ πάντας
πόρρωθεν ἀποπέμψασι.

2. Καὶ τὰ πρῶτα μὲν τούτου τοιαῦτα· τὰ δ’ ἐξῆς ἀντεπαιεῖτο τῆς
δικαιοσύνης καὶ ἦν φοβερός τε πᾶσι τοῖς πονηροῖς καὶ θαυμαστός
ἀγαθοῖς, τοῖς μὲν | ὅτι μισοπόνηρός τε καὶ δίκαιος, τοῖς δ’ ὅτι ἐμβριθής τε f. 29r
καὶ αὐστηρός. πλὴν οὐκ ἦν τοῦτον πάν|των καθαρεύειν τῶν πονηρῶν, B 87
5 καὶ διὰ τοῦτο εἶχετο μὲν τῆς ἐπὶ θεὸν καὶ τὴν τούτου πάναγνον μητέρα,
ὥς ἔλεγε, πίστεως, εἶχετο δὲ <πλέον> τῆς πατροπαράδοτου μιαρᾶς τῶν
εἰκονομάχων αἰρέσεως. καὶ ταύτῃ γε δὴ τὸν εὐσεβῆ καὶ πανάγιον λαὸν
ἐτάραττε τε καὶ πολυειδέσιν ἐδίδου κακώσσει, πάντα τὸν τῆς βασιλείας
αὐτοῦ χρόνον ἡρεμῆσαι μὴ συγχωρήσας, οἷς οὐδὲ τὰς ἐν πολέμοις ἀνδρα-
10 γαθίας καταλλήλως ἐλάμβανεν, ἀλλ’ ἥττητό τε αἰεὶ καὶ οὐ κατὰ βασιλέα
ὑπέστρεφεν.

3. Τοιγαροῦν ἐχόμενος τῆς δικαιοσύνης, οὐ μὴν δὲ καὶ τῆς πρὸς τὴν
τοῦ θεοῦ μητέρα πίστεώς τε καὶ προθυμίας, ἀπῆι ἐφιππος διὰ τῆς κατὰ
τὴν Μέσσην πλατείας καὶ λεωφόρου πρὸς τὸν ἐν Βλαχέρναις θεῖον ναὸν

Cap. 2: De Theophili benefactis 40.3–6, 43.5–19 | Scyl 50.23–32 Cap. 3: De Theophili
benefactis 40.3–6, 43.5–19; Log A 218.53–54, 220.86, 225.204–205 | PsSym 627.20; Scyl
50.32–51.45

26 φησί V 26 καταξίαν V 30 ὃς nos : ὃν V edd Boor 30 ἔχοιτο edd Boor : ἔλοιτο Bekk
in app. : ἔχοι Boor in app. 30 ἐπαινεῖν V edd Boor : fortasse ἐπαινετόν scribendum
31 πραείας V (ας in ras.) 32 πῶς V 32 πρὸς ἐπιθείς V 34 μητρὶάν V 34 παλι-
νοστήσαι edd 35 τοῦ : τῷ edd 36 χειρογράφος V 37 τε : γε edd 38 κύριον Boor : κῦ
V : κυρίου edd 38 δη om. edd 38 καὶ om. edd 2.1 τῆς om. edd 5 διατοῦτο V 6 δὲ
<πλέον> Boor in app. e Scyl 50.28 : δὲ V : δὲ καὶ edd 8 παρὰ πάντα Boor in app. e Scyl
50.29 10 κατ’ ἀλλήλλως V 3.1 τοιγαρ οὖν V

commanded the prefect to apply the law of the state: ‘Act at once, O Prefect,’ he says, ‘give these men the worthy recompense for their deeds: not only did they have no fear of the divinity, staining their hands with human blood, but the wretches even slew the emperor, the annointed of the Lord.’ With these words he dismissed that first and otherwise extraordinary assembly. Now though in accordance with the laws this might count for Theophilus, as for anyone, as a praiseworthy deed, nevertheless, he will hardly find his place beside those of more gentle and mild soul. He put these men to death, and in addition to this he added another praiseworthy and noble deed of expelling his step-mother and forcing her to return to the monastery in which she had earlier been tonsured as the nun Euphrosyne. She was, as our history transmits, the second wife of Michael, and the signatures and many oaths mentioned there, not having been enacted and done in pious wise, were of no use. Why? Because it was not in the Lord that he put his trust when he took his wife – for he would have taken a lawful one instead of one joined to Christ – but rather in his own insolence and those grand oaths which drive all away from God.

2. Such were Theophilus’s first deeds, and thereafter he exerted himself on behalf of justice and was fearful to all evildoers and admirable to the good: in the former case because he hated evil and was just, in the latter because he was grave and austere. But it was impossible for him to be free of all evils, and on this account he clung to his faith in God and, as he said, His all-holy Mother; but he clung even more to the foul heresy of the enemies of the images which he had inherited from his father. With this heresy he beset the pious and all-holy *people of God* with diverse afflictions, allowing no respite during the whole of his reign, and for this reason he carried off no fitting exploits in war, but was always defeated and returned in a manner unworthy of an emperor.

3. Thus clinging to justice as well as to his faith and longing for the Mother of God he went out every week on horse accompanied by the spear-bearers in the street and thoroughfare along the Mese to the sacred church in

- 15 ἑκάστη ἑβδομάδι ὑπὸ τῶν δορυφόρων παραπεμπόμενος. ἀπῆει δέ, πᾶσι
 10 μὲν πρὸ παντὸς τοῖς ἀδικουμένοις διδοὺς ἑαυτόν, ὥς ἂν ἔχοιεν τὰ αὐτῶν
 ἔκτραγωδεῖν ἀεὶ καὶ μὴ παρὰ τινων κακοποιῶν κωλύοιντο ὑφορωμένων
 τὴν ἔκτισιν, δεύτερον δὲ ἵνα κατὰ τὴν ἀγορὰν διερχόμενος θεατῆς γίνοιτο
 τῶν ὠνίων· ὅθεν <περί> ἑκάστου τῶν πιπρασκομένων ὅσου πωλεῖται
 10 κατὰ τὴν ἀγορὰν ἡρώτα, οὐκ ἐν παρέργῳ τοῦτο ποιῶν ἀλλὰ καὶ λίσαν
 ἔνεργῶς τε καὶ ἐπιμόνως, οὐδ' ἐνὶ τοῦτο εἶδει ἀλλὰ παντὶ μὲν τῷ τρέφειν
 ἄνθρωπον δυναμένῳ, εἴτ' οὖν ἐσθιομένῳ εἴτ' οὖν καὶ πινομένῳ, παντὶ
 δὲ τῷ περιθάλλειν καὶ εἰς ἀμφίαςιν τελοῦντι, καὶ πᾶσιν ἀπλῶς τοῖς κατὰ
 τὴν ἀγορὰν προκειμένοις τῶν βουλομένων ἐξωνήσειν. διὰ τοι τοῦτο
 οὐδὲ ῥαδίως ἂν εἶδέν τις αὐτὸν ἐξ|εληλυθότα εἰς πρόκενσον, πολλήν B 88
 15 ἐνδεικνύμενον σπουδὴν πρὸς τὰ κοινὰ τε καὶ ἐπιμέλειαν νῦν μὲν ἐν
 κριτηρίοις, νῦν δὲ ὡς εἴρηται, κατὰ τὰς προόδους τῆς ἑβδομάδος.
4. Ὅθεν ἐπεὶ τινὰ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐστίαςιν τὰ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως ἔχοντα
 ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πλεῖστον εἰς ἑαυτὰ καλοῦσι τοὺς βασιλεῖς, τὰ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν
 τοῦ παλατίου τείχη τῶν ἀρχαίων θεμελίων οὗτος παρεκβαλὼν, καὶ
 5 πρὸς τὰ ἡλιακά, ἔνθα πρότερον κινστέρνης οὔσης συνέβη βασιλικὸν
 ἀποπνιγῆναι υἷόν, παραδείσους ἐργασάμενος, ἐκεῖθεν τὸ λείπον f. 29v
 ἀνεπλήρου καὶ ἑαυτὸν ἔτερπε τούτοις καὶ ἐψυχαγῶγει, ὡς τὸ εἰκός. | καὶ
 ποτε τούτου ἐκεῖσε ἐνδιατρίβοντος, εἴτε δὴ καὶ δειπνοῦντος, ὡς λόγος,
 συνέβη ναῦν τινὰ μυριοφόρον ἐξ οὐρίας πλέουσαν ἀναπεπταμένους δὴ
 τοῖς ἱστίοις τῷ μεγέθει τὸν λειμῶνα κατασκιάσαι καὶ τὸν βασιλέα εἰς
 10 θάμβος ἐπαγαγεῖν. ἐπύθετο οὖν αὐτίκα τίνος τε ἡ ὀλκὰς εἴη καὶ ὃ τι φέροι
 τῶν ἐδωδίων. ὡς δὲ τῆς αὐγούστης εἶναι διήκουσεν καὶ λαθεῖν τοῦτο οὐκ
 ἦν, τότε μὲν ἐφησυχάσαι λέγεται καὶ διαπέμψαι τὸν καιρὸν μέχρι τῆς ἡς
 εἰώθει ἡμέρας κατὰ τὰς Βλαχέρνας ἰέναι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡ τε ἡμέρα παρῆν καὶ ὁ
 τούτου ὄρμος δῆλος ὑπῆρχε τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀναμαθόντι διὰ τινος, τῆς εἰς τὸ
 15 πλοῖον φερούσης ἀπῆρχετο ὁδοῦ· ἦν δὲ κατὰ τὸν Βόσπορον. καὶ ἐπεῖπερ
 παραγενόμενος παρὰ τὴν πρύμναν ἔστη τῆς νεώς, ἀκολουθούσης τῆς
 τάξεως, ἡρώτα τὴν σύγκλητον οὐχ ἅπαξ δὴ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ δις τε καὶ
 τρίς, ὅτου | δὴ τις ἔχοι χρεῖαν τῶν ἐδωδίων, σίτου <ἢ οἴνου> ἢ τινος B 89

Cap. 4: Gen 53.87–4

| PsSym 628.3–7; Scyl 51.46–66

5 παντὸς δὲ edd 6 ἀεὶ: ἀδικήματα edd e Scyl 50.37 6 παρὰ τινῶν edd 6 ὑφ' ὀρωμένων V 7 ἔκκτησιν a. corr. V, ut vid. (primum κ ad finem lineae in ras.) 7 κατὰ: διὰ edd 8 <περί> ἑκάστου nos e Scyl 51.39: ἑκαστον V Bekk in app. Boor: ἑκάστου edd 10 ἐν ἐνὶ Boor in app. e Scyl 51.41 (ACMN) 11 ἐσθιομένῳ nos, cf. Scyl 51.41 τοῖς βρωτοῖς εἶδεσι: ἐσθιόμενον V edd Boor 11 πινομένῳ nos, cf. Scyl 51.41 καὶ τοῖς ποτοῖς: πινόμενον V edd Boor 13 ἐξωνήσειν nos: ἐξωνησιν V: ἐξωνήσει edd Boor 4.1 ἐπ' εἰ V 3 θεμελείων V 5 ἀπὸ πνιγῆναι V 8 ναῦ V 8 τινὰ V 8 ἐξουρίας V 9 λιμένα Comb. in marg. Bekk 11 εἶναι διήκουσεν: ἤκουσεν edd 12 ἐφ' ἡσυχάσαι V 13 εἰώθη V Comb 13 παρ' ἦν V 14 τούτου: τοῦ πλοίου edd e Scyl 51.53 17 δις τε καὶ: δις καὶ edd 18 <ἢ οἴνου> edd e Scyl 51.56: om. V Boor

Blachernae. He went out above all to present himself to everyone who had suffered injustice, so that they might always be able to declaim their complaints and might not be hindered by any wicked men fearing punishment, and secondly in order that, whilst going through the market-place he might observe the wares. Thus he would ask concerning each of the goods for sale how much they were selling for on the market-place, doing this not in an incidental way, but quite vigorously and with persistence; and this not only with regard to one ware, but all that might nourish men, whether to be eaten or to be drunk, and all that served to keep warm or for clothing, in sum, everything that was set out on the market-place for those wishing to buy. For this very reason one hardly saw him going out in imperial procession, shewing as he did great zeal and attention for public affairs, now in courts of justice and now, as we have said, on his weekly rounds.

4. Now since emperors are most often attracted to places outside the city which provide, as it were, a feast for the eyes, Theophilus removed from their ancient foundations the walls of the Palace near the sea and, alongside the terraces, made gardens on the spot where there was earlier a cistern in which an imperial heir had drowned; having filled in the gap of the cistern he delighted in these gardens and was gratified as was fitting. But once when he was dallying there, dining, as the story goes, it happened that a large cargo ship passing by with a fair wind cast a shadow with its unfurled sails over the meadow because of its great size and brought the emperor to consternation. He enquired forthwith whose vessel this was and what provisions it carried. As he heard that it was the empress's and it was impossible to conceal this, it is reported that he regained his calm and postponed the opportunity to act until the day he went as usual to Blachernae. When this day came and the emperor had been informed by someone concerning the place of this vessel's mooring, he set off on the road thither; it was on the Bosphorus. When he arrived, stopping together with his cortège at the poop of the ship, he asked the Senate, not merely once but twice and even thrice, whether anyone had need of

- 20 ἄλλου τῶν κατ' οἶκον ἀναλισκομένων. ὥς δὲ πολλάκις ἐρωτηθέντες μόλις
 25 ἅπαξ ἀπεκρίθησαν μηδενὸς λείπεσθαι “ἄχρι τῆς σῆς εὐμοιροῦμεν δεσπο-
 τείας τε καὶ βασιλείας”, καὶ προστιθέντων μηδὲν εἰδέναι “τῶν ὧν ἐρωτώ-
 μεθα”, “ἀλλ' οὐκ ἴστε δῆ”, ἔφησεν, “ὅτι με ὑπὸ θεοῦ βασιλέα γενόμενον ἢ
 30 ἄυγούστά μου καὶ σύμβιος ναύκληρόν [με] εἰργάσατο; καὶ τίς πώποτε”,
 μετὰ πικρίας λέγοντος ψυχῆς, “βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων ἢ τὴν αὐτοῦ γαμετὴν
 25 ἔμπορον ἐθεάσατο;” καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἀναπολογήτων μενόντων, ἐκέλευσεν
 αὐθωρὸν μόνους ἐξιόντας τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τὴν ναῦν ἐκείνην παραδοῦναι
 πυρὶ αὐταῖς ἀγκύραις καὶ ἱστίοις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσιν ἀγωγίμοις, πολλὰ
 κατειπὼν ὕστερον καὶ παντοίαις ὕβρεσι τὴν δέσποιναν περιβαλὼν, ὥς
 καὶ αὐτῆς ἐπαπειλῆσαι <ἐξαγαγεῖν> τῆς ζωῆς, εἶγε δὴ ἔκτοτε τοιοῦτόν τι
 30 ποιοῦσα φωραθεῖη.

5. Ἀλλὰ πατρίδα μὲν ἡ Θεοδώρα – τοῦτο γὰρ ὄνομα τῇ αὐγούστη –
 Παφλαγονίαν ἐσέμνυνεν, καὶ χωρίον Ἑβίσσαν, γεννήτορα δὲ Μαρίνον οὐκ
 ἄσημόν τινα ἢ ἰδιώτην τὴν τύχην, δρουγγάριον δὲ ἢ τουρμάρχην κατὰ
 5 τινας, καὶ μητέρα Θεοκτίστην τὴν οὕτω Φλωρίναν κατονομαζομένην,
 ἀμφοτέρους εὐσεβεῖα ἐκτεθραμμένους καὶ τὴν τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων
 προσκύνησιν οὐκ ἐξαρνουμένους μὲν, ὥς οἱ κατ' ἐκεῖνο πάντες καιροῦ,
 ἀσπαζομένους δὲ καὶ ἐνστερνιζομένους ὑπερφυῶς. ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν Θεοδώρα f. 30r
 διαδήματι βασιλείας ἀλάι | δὴ κατεστέφετο, καὶ ἡ ταύτης μήτηρ ζωστή B 90
 10 τε καὶ πατρικία τετίμητο. αὕτη δὴ οὖν ἡ Θεοκτίστη κατὰ τὸν ἑαυτῆς οἶ-
 κον, ἔνθα δὴ ἡ τῶν Γαστρίων μονὴ τὴν πῆξιν ἔχει τὰ νῦν καὶ ἱδρυσιν – ἦν
 δὲ τοῦτον ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ πατρικίου ἐξωνησαμένη Νικήτα –, τὰς τῆς Θεο-
 δώρας θυγατέρας μετακαλουμένη – πέντε δὲ ἦσαν τὸν ἀριθμόν, ἡ τε
 Θέκλα καὶ Ἄννα, Ἀναστασία τε καὶ Πουλχερία καὶ ἡ Μαρία – ἄλλαις τε
 δωρεαῖς αἷς ὑπάγεσθαι τὸ θῆλυ πέφυκεν ἐδεξιοῦτο, καὶ ἰδίᾳ παρα-
 15 λαμβάνουσα οὐ μαλακίζεσθαι οὐδὲ μένειν θηλείας ὅπερ ἦσαν ἐξελιπάρει
 καὶ καθικέτευεν, ἀνδρίζεσθαι δὲ καὶ τῆς μητρώας θηλῆς ἄξια διανοεῖσθαι
 καὶ πρέποντα, τὴν πατρώαν μὲν αἵρεσιν ἀπορραπιζομένας, καταφι-
 λούσας δὲ καὶ κατασπαζομένας τὰς τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων μορφάς. καὶ ἅμα
 ταύτας εἰς χεῖρας ἐμβάλλουσα – ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ αὐτῇ ἐν τινι κιβωτίῳ –,

5.7–8 : a. 821 Theodora Theophilo nubet et inde imperium accepit

Cap. 5: Vita Theodorae §2.1–8, §4.1–6; Log A 216.11–12, 217.20–22 | PsSym 625.4–5,
 628.8–629.3; Scyl 52.67–53.5

20 ἄχρι : μέχρι edd 22 δῆ om. edd 23 μου om. B edd 23 με del. Boor in app. cum Scyl
 51.60 24 λέγοντος : λέγων τοῦτο edd 28 κατ' εἰπὼν V 29 <ἐξαγαγεῖν> add. edd
 Boor e Scyl 51.65 : fortasse ἐπαπειλῆσαι τὴν ζωὴν 29 ἔκτοτε edd e Scyl 51.66 : ἔκ τε V
 5.3 τουρμάχην V 5 ἐκτεθραμμένους V Comb Boor Scyl 52.69–70 : ἐντεθραμμένους Bekk Scyl
 (B) 6 ἐξ ἀρνουμένους V 6 οἱ om. edd 8 κατέστεφετο (sic) Comb : κατέστεπτο Bekk
 8 ταύτης : αὐτῆς edd 8 μήτηρ Θεοκτίστη edd e Scyl 52.73 17 ἀπορραπιζομένας edd.

provisions, either of corn <or wine> or anything else used in the household. After being asked so many times, the others scarcely replied but once that nothing was lacking ‘So long as we enjoy your rule and empire,’ adding also that they knew nothing ‘of what we are being asked.’ ‘But are you not aware,’ said Theophilus, ‘that my augusta and consort has turned me, whom God made emperor, into a shipowner? Who,’ he continued with bitterness of soul, ‘has ever seen an emperor of the Romans or his wife as merchant?’ When they gave no reply, he commanded that only the men should come out and that the ship should forthwith be given over to the flames together with the very anchors and sails and all other wares; and later he made many accusations and treated the empress with all manner of insults, threatening <to deprive her of> her very life if she should ever again be caught doing such a thing.

5. Now Theodora – for that was the augusta’s name – exalted as her homeland Paphlagonia and the village Ebissa, and also her father Marinus, by no means obscure or common of station, but a drungarius or, according to others, a turmarch, and her mother Theoktiste, who was called Florina; both of whom had been brought up in piety, nor did they reject worship of the holy images as all at that time <did>, but they embraced them and clung to them exceedingly. Theodora had long ago been crowned with the diadem of empire and her mother honoured with the dignity of girdled patrikia. This Theoktiste <sometimes> called Theodora’s daughters to her house, in the place where the monastery of Gastria is now fixed and established – she had bought it from the patrikios Nicetas. The daughters were five in number: Thecla, Anna, Anastasia, Pulcheria and Maria, and whilst greeting them with other gifts whereby the female sex is wont to be attracted, Theoktiste would take each aside privately and beg and entreat them not to show weakness nor remain feminine as they were, but to be manly and to have intentions fitting and worthy of their mother’s breast, rejecting their father’s heresy and kissing and embracing the traits of the venerable images. Putting these in their hands –

- 20 τῷ τε προσώπῳ καὶ τοῖς χεῖλεσιν ἐπιτιθεμένη ἡγίαζεν τε αὐτὰς καὶ πρὸς
τὸ ἐκείνων φίλτρον διήγειρεν. τοῦτο οὖν ἐνδελεχῶς ποιοῦσα καὶ ταῖς
ἐγγόνοις τὸ περὶ τὰς εἰκόνας φίλτρον ἀναζωπυροῦσα οὐκ ἔλαθε τὸν Θε-
όφιλον, πυνθανόμενον “ὅ τι τε αὐταῖς παρὰ τῆς μάμμης δεδῶρηται καὶ ὃ
τι χάριτος ἐξείργασται ἄξιον”. αἱ μὲν γὰρ ἄλλαι τούτου τὰς πεύσεις
25 ἀγαθὰ φρονοῦσαι ὥσπερ τινὰς λαβὰς ἐρρωμένως παρέτρεχον· ἡ δὲ Πουλ-
χερία ἄτε δὴ καὶ ἡλικία πρὸς δὲ καὶ νῶ νηπιάζουσα τὰς τε φιλοφροσύνας
ἔλεγε καὶ τὸ πλήθος τῶν ὁπωρῶν, συναπηρίθμει δὲ καὶ τὴν τῶν σεπτῶν
εἰκόνων προσκύνησιν, οὕτω δὴ ἀπαλὰ φρονοῦσα καὶ λέγουσα ὡς νινία
πολλὰ εἶη αὐτῇ κατὰ τὸ | κιβώτιον καὶ “ταῦτα τῇ κεφαλῇ τε καὶ τοῖς B 91
30 προσώποις ἡμῶν ἐπιτίθησι μετὰ τὰ φιλήματα”. ταῦτα γοῦν τὸν βασιλέα
εἰς μανίαν ἤγεν ὑπολαλούμενα. ἀλλὰ πρᾶξαι μὲν τι τῶν δριμυτέρων καὶ
πικροτέρων εἰς αὐτὴν ἐκώλυε τοῦτον τό τε τῆς γυναικὸς αἰδῆμον καὶ ἡ
εὐλάβεια, καὶ ἡ παρρησία δὲ πρὸς τούτοις οὐκ ἔλαττον – καὶ γὰρ ἦν τοῦ-
τον ἀριδῆλως σκώπτουσα καὶ διελέγχουσα ἐπὶ τε τοῖς κα|θ' ἡμέραν τῶν f. 30v
35 ὁμολογητῶν διωγμοῖς καὶ τῇ δηλωθείσῃ αἰρέσει, καὶ μόνη μικροῦ φα-
νερὰν ποιοῦσα τὴν πρὸς αὐτὸν τῶν πάντων ἀπέχθειαν –, ἀπέτεμνεν δὲ
μόνον τὴν πρὸς αὐτὴν τῶν τούτου θυγατέρων ἄφιξιν, καὶ διεκώλυε γίνε-
σθαι συνεχῇ.
6. Τούτοις ἀδελφὰ καὶ τῇ βασιλίδι Θεοδώρᾳ συμβέβηκεν. ὑπῆρχε τι
τῷ βασιλεῖ παρακεκομμένον ἀνδράριον, τοῦ Ὀμητικοῦ Θερσίτου
διενηνοχὸς κατ' οὐδέν· Δένδερεις ὄνομα τούτῳ, ἄσχημά τε φθεγγόμενος καὶ
γέλωτας κινῶν καὶ θυμηδίας ἔνεκεν τοῖς βασιλείοις ἐνδιαιτῶμενος. οὗτος
5 γοῦν εἰσπηδήσας ποτὲ κατὰ τὸν τῆς αὐγούστης κοιτωνίσκον κατέλαβεν
αὐτὴν θείας εἰκόνας ἐμπεριειλημμένην καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτῆς ὄμμασιν μετὰ
σπουδῆς προσάγουσαν. ταύτας ὑπ' ὅψιν ἰδὼν οὗτος ὁ παραπαιῶν “τί
τε εἰσιν” ἐπυνθάνετο, καὶ πλησιαιστέρον διέβαινε. ἡ δὲ “τὰ καλὰ μου”,
ἔφησεν οὕτως ἀγροικικῶς, “νινία, καὶ ἀγαπῶ ταῦτα πολλὰ”. κατὰ τὴν
10 τράπεζαν τηνικαῦτα εἰστιᾶτο ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ δὴ πρὸς αὐτὸν εὐθύς
διαβάντος εἶρετο αὐτὸν ὅποι ποτὲ ἐτύγχανεν ὦν. ὁ δὲ παρὰ τὴν μάνναν
ἔφησεν εἶναι, τὴν Θεοδώραν οὕτω λέγων, καὶ θεάσασθαι ἐν αὐτῇ καλὰ
νινία τοῦ προσκεφαλαίου ἐξαίρουσαν. συνῆκεν | οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ B 92
πλήρης ὀργῆς γεγωνῶς, ὡς ἐξανέστη τῆς τραπέζης, πρὸς αὐτὴν ἀπῆει,

Cap. 6: | PsSym 629.4–630.10; Scyl 53.5–54.31

20 τε om. edd 22 ἀναζωπυροῦσαν V 25 ἐρρωμένως edd e Scyl 52.88 et PsSym 628.17 :
ἐρρωμένος V 26 ἄτε ἡλικία καὶ νῶ edd 27 τὸ : τῷ V 27 συναρηρίθμει edd 30 ἡμῶν
om. edd 31 καὶ : ἡ edd 32 αἰδᾶσιμον Comb : αἰδέσιμον Bekk 34 τούτων V 6.1 τῇ :
τι V 3 Δένδερεις edd Boor Scyl 53.7 PsSym 629.6 et hic infra : Δέρδερεις V 4 φθεγγόμενον ...
κινῶν ... ἐνδιαιτῶμενον PsSym 629.7–8 5 αὐγούστης : βασιλίσσης edd 6 περι-
ειλημμένην edd 8 πλησιαιστέρον edd 11 διαβάντα Scyl 53.14 PsSym 629.14 11 ἤρετο
edd 11 μάνναν edd

she kept them in a certain chest – and pressing them to their faces and lips, she sanctified the girls and brought forth in them love for the images. But it did not escape Theophilus's notice that she was doing this persistently and kindling in her granddaughters love for the images, and he would ask what had been given to them by their grandmother and what had been done to render thanks. With good understanding the others deftly got round his questions as if they were traps; but Pulcheria, in as much as she was a child, both in age and in mind, told of her kindnesses and the multitude of fruits, and she recounted also the worship of the images, thinking and saying in her innocent way that Theoktiste had many dolls in a chest 'and she pressed these upon our heads and faces after giving kisses.' Expressed in a whispering tone these things roused the emperor to rage. However, the woman's modesty and piety, no less than her outspokenness toward all, prevented him from doing anything sharp or harsh – for she openly mocked and accused him on account of his daily persecution of confessors and his patent heresy, and she was almost alone in telling him of everyone's hatred of him –; instead, he only curtailed his daughters' visits to her, preventing them from becoming continual.

6. Something similar to this happened also to the empress Theodora. Now, the emperor had a certain eunuch manikin who differed in no wise from the Homeric Thersites. His name was Denderis. He spoke inarticulately, rousing laughter, and was maintained in the palace for the sake of good cheer. One day he burst into the augusta's chamber and caught her embracing holy images, holding them before her eyes with earnestness. Upon catching sight of them, this Denderis, playing the fool, asked 'What are these?' and came closer. 'My pretty dolls,' she said gruffly, 'and I love them very much!' The emperor was at that moment dining at table, and when Denderis went to him he asked him straightway where he had been. He said that he had been with Mummy, calling Theodora thus, and that in her rooms he saw her taking pretty dolls from under the pillow. The emperor understood and was filled with rage, so that he rose from table and went to her; and heaping many other

- 15 ἄλλαις τε πολλαῖς ὕβρεσι ταύτην ἐπαντλῶν καὶ εἰδῶλων λάτριν ἀκολάστῳ γλώττῃ ταύτην ἀποκαλῶν, καὶ ἅμα διεξήει τοὺς λόγους τοῦ παραπαίνοντος. ἡ δὲ τέως μὲν τὸν θυμὸν καταστορεννύουσα “οὐ τοῦτό ἐστιν”, ἐξ ἐτοίμου ἔλεγεν, “ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὐ τοῦτο, ὡς ὑπέληφας σύ· τῷ δὲ κατόπτρῳ μου ἤμην ἀτενίζουσα μετὰ τῶν θεραπαίνιδων, καὶ τὰς ἐκέισε
- 20 τικτομένας ἰδὼν ὁ Δένδερικς μορφὰς ἐλθὼν ἀπήγγειλεν ἀφρόνως τῷ δεσπότη καὶ βασιλεῖ”. οὕτω μὲν οὖν ἐκείνου τέως κατέσβεσε τὸν θυμὸν, τὸν Δένδερικν δὲ μετ’ οὐ πολλὰς ἡμέρας παιδεῖα καθυποβαλοῦσα πέπεικε σωφρονεῖν, οὕτω πως ἐπιλέγουσα καὶ διδάσκουσα ὡς μήποτε λέγειν περὶ τῶν καλῶν νινίων τινί. καὶ ποτε παρὰ πότον ἐγκαυχώμενος καὶ τῆς
- 25 δεσποίνης κατεπαιρόμενος ὁ Θεόφιλος ἡρώτα τοῦτον περὶ αὐτῆς, εἰ f. 31r πάλιν ἄρα τὰ καλὰ νινία ἢ μάννα ἀσπάζεται. ὁ δὲ τοῖς χεῖλεσι τὴν δεξιὰν χεῖρα ἐπιθείς καὶ τῇ ἀριστερᾷ τῶν ὀπισθεν μερῶν ἐπιλαβόμενος “σίγα, σίγα περὶ τῶν νινίων”, ἀντέφησεν, “βασιλεῦ”. ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω.
7. Καὶ τινος δὲ κατὰ πόλεμον ἀνδραγαθιζομένου, χεῖρά τε νεανικὴν καὶ ἵππον ἔχοντος δεξιόν, συνέβη τούτου δὴ τὸν στρατηγόν, ὃν ἐτέλει ὁ στρατιώτης, ἔρωτι κατασχεθῆναι τοῦ ἵππου, ὃν οὐ ὁ ἄνθρωπος σέσωστο καὶ πολλάκις ἐκ θανάτου ἐρρύετο. ἐπεὶ γοῦν τοῦτον πολλάκις ἐξ-
- 5 αιτησάμενος πᾶσί τε τρόποις καὶ χάρισι – καὶ γὰρ ὑπισχνεῖτο πολλὰ διδόναι τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ – ἀπέτυχε τῆς αἰτήσεως, ἦγε δὲ καὶ βίαν ὁ στρατηγὸς καὶ οὐδ’ οὕτως εἶχε | αὐτὸν ὑπακούοντα, διεδέξατο τοῦτον B 93 τῆς ἧς εἶχεν ἀρχῆς πολλὰ καὶ πρὸς τὸν Θεόφιλον κατειπῶν τοῦ ἀνδρός. ἦν οὖν ὁ στρατιώτης ἐν ἑαυτῷ καὶ τὸν ἵππον ἔχων ἐντρύφημα.
- 10 παρῶχετο δὲ καὶ χρόνος ἱκανός, ὁ τὸν ἄνδρα πρὸς πόλεμον ἐκ φιλονεικίας καλῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ καταδαπανῶν αὐτόν, οἷα φιλεῖ τοῖς δυστυχούσι, δεινῶς. ἐγένετο οὖν ἵππου ἀγαθοῦ ζήτησις παρὰ Θεοφίλου κατὰ τὸν τῆς δυσ-
- 15 τυχίας καιρὸν τοῦ ἀνδρός· διὸ καὶ διὰ γραμμάτων πάντας τοὺς ἐν τέλει καὶ ἀξιώμασιν ἀνερεινᾶν ἐκέλευε τοιόνδε καὶ τοιόνδε καὶ ἀποστεῖλαι αὐτῷ. ὅθεν λαβόμενος ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀφορμῆς ἀφείλετο τοῦ ἀνδρός τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἄκοντος, καὶ πρὸς βασιλέα ὡς οἰκεῖον ἀπέστειλεν. αὕτη ἡ αἰτία, καὶ τοῦ ἵππου δὲ ἡ στέρησις, ἐπεὶ κατὰ τινὰ περιπέτειαν πάντας ἐκέλευ-
- σεν ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τοὺς οἰαδήποτε αἰτίαι πεπαυμένους ἐξιέναι πρὸς πόλε-

Cap. 7: Log A 225.204–226.225 | PsSym 637.19–638.11; Scyl 54.32–55.69; PsKod 170.6–171.7

15 ὕβρισίαις ταύτην B: ὕβρισίαις αὐτὴν edd 16 ταύτην : αὐτὴν edd 22 καθυποβάλλουσα edd 23 λέγουσα edd 23 καὶ διδάσκουσα : om. edd 26 μάννα edd 27 λαβόμενος edd 28 βασιλεὺς V 7.2 ἵππος V 2 τοῦτον V 3 οὐ V 4 ἐρύετο B edd 4 γοῦν V 7 αὐτόν conl. Boor in app. : τὸν V edd 8 κατ’ εἰπῶν V 10 ὁ τῶν V 13 τοὺς om edd 14 ἀνερεινᾶν Boor, cf. Scyl εὔρεθῆναι 54.39 : ἀνερεινῶν V edd 14 καὶ om. edd 16 ἀπέστειλεν Kamb, cf. ἀφείλετο supra : ἀπέστειλεν V : ἀπέσταλκεν edd 17 στέρησις V 17 ἐπεὶ δὲ edd

insults upon her and calling her with unbridled tongue a worshipper of idols he recounted the fool's words. Theodora, repressing her anger, said without hesitation, 'It is not so, O emperor, not so as you have assumed. I was looking in the mirror with my handmaids, and it was upon seeing the forms that appeared there that Denderis came and reported foolishly to his master the emperor.' Thus she quelled his anger; and subjecting Denderis to punishment after a few days she convinced him to be reasonable, instructing and teaching him in such a wise that he should no longer speak to anyone about the pretty dolls. But once, when Theophilus was emboldened with drink and grew arrogant toward the empress, he asked this Denderis about her, whether Mummy still embraced her pretty dolls. And the other, putting his right hand on his lips and touching his hind quarters with his left, replied, 'Hush, hush, emperor, concerning the dolls!' Such were these matters.

7. There was a man distinguished for his bravery in battle who had a strong arm and able horse. Now it happened that the general under whom this soldier served was smitten with desire for the horse by which the man had been saved and often rescued from death. But the general, after asking him for it many times in every manner and with every favour – for he promised to give the man many things – when he failed in his demand, though he even tried force but could not succeed in making the man obey, dismissed him from the office he held whilst denouncing him on many counts to Theophilus. The soldier then stayed at home keeping the horse as his delight. A long time passed which saw the man called out to battle with eagerness for victory but which also exhausted him terribly, as is wont to occur to those who have suffered misfortune. Now, a search was made by Theophilus for a good horse at the time of this man's misfortune, and on this account the emperor commanded all those in authority and in office to seek such and such a horse and to send it to him. Whereupon the general seized this opportunity and took the horse away against the man's will, sending it to the emperor as his own. This was the ground; and when on account of some urgency the emperor commanded that even those who had ceased from service on what-

- μον, καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐξεληλυθότα ἵππου στερούμενον ἀγαθοῦ
 20 ἀπήγαγε τῆς ζωῆς, γυναῖκα καταλελοιπότα καὶ τέκνα πτωχά. τί οὖν ἡ
 γυνή; καὶ τὸ φιλήκοον ἀκούουσα τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ φιλοδίκαιον, καὶ τῷ
 τοῦ ἀνδρὸς φίλτρῳ ἐκκαίμενη, καὶ τοῖς τέκνοις ὅπως καὶ χορηγοίη οὐκ
 25 τοῦ ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς ἵππον ἀναβαίνοντα κατιδοῦσα, γονυπετοῦσα καὶ κατ-
 ολοφυρομένη ἐδέετο τοῦ βασιλέως, τὸν χαλινὸν τοῦ ἵππου κατέχουσα,
 καὶ ἀνεδίδασκεν ὡς αὐτῆς τε | εἴη ὁ ἵππος | καὶ “οὐκ ἄλλος τις, ἀλλ’ αὐτὸς f. 31v
 αἴτιος τῆς τοῦ ἀνδρὸς μου σφαγῆς”. ἐκπλαγῆς οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς γενόμενος B 94
 ἐπὶ τῇ παρρησίᾳ τῆς γυναικὸς καὶ περιθαμβῆς, καὶ τῶν λεγομένων εἰδὼς
 30 οὐδέν, τέως μὲν αὐτὴν ταμιευθῆναι διωρίσατο τῆς αὐτοῦ ἄχρι ἐπανόδου
 πρὸς τὰ ἀνάκτορα, καὶ “κάλει ταύτην δὴ”, ἔφησε, “τὴν γυναῖκα”, μετὰ
 σπουδῆς ἐπαναδραμών. καὶ ἦδε παρέστη εὐθέως διδάσκουσά τε πάντα
 καὶ διεξιοῦσα σαφῶς. κελεύει οὖν τοῦτόν τε ἀφικέσθαι τὸν στρατηγὸν ὁ
 βασιλεὺς, καὶ περὶ τοῦ ἵππου ζήτησιν ποιεῖται νεανικὴν. ὡς δ’ οἴκοθεν ὁ
 35 στρατηγὸς καὶ οὐκ ἄλλοθεν, ἀλλ’ οὐδ’ ἐξ ἀρπαγῆς τὸν ἵππον ἀποσταλῆ-
 ναι διεβεβαίου τὸν βασιλέα, παρίστησι κατὰ πρόσωπον τὴν ἄνθρωπον
 ἔλεγχον τῶν λεγομένων τε καὶ κατήγορον. οὐκ ἔφερεν οὖν ὁ στρατηγὸς
 τῷ ψεύδει κατελλαμπρύνεσθαι, τὴν ὄψιν τῆς γυναικὸς ἐνορῶν, καὶ ἅμα
 40 ἰκέτης γίνεται ἐλεεινὸς καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως τοὺς πόδας λαμβάνει μετὰ
 κλαυθοῦ. τί οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς; ἐκείνην μὲν τὴν γυναῖκα μετὰ τῶν ἑαυτῆς
 παίδων ἀδελφούς ἐξ ἴσου καὶ κληρονόμους τῆς ἐκείνου δεικνυσιν ὑποσ-
 τάσεως, μεθίστησί τε τῆς ἀρχῆς αὐτόν, καὶ πᾶσι κατάδηλος γίνεται ἡ δι-
 καία κρίσις αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸ πρὸς τοὺς ἄρπαγας φιλαπέχθημον.
8. Οὐχ ἦττον δέ γε καὶ ταῖς οἰκοδομαῖς ἐγκείμενος τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
 ἐδείκνυτο ἐπιμέλειαν. τείχη τε γὰρ τὰ χθαμαλώτερα ἐκ βάθρων ἀναδει-
 μάμενος, τὸ γῆρας ὥσπερ ἀποξύσας, καὶ πρὸς ὕψος μετὰ κάλλους ἐπάρας,
 5 ἄβατα πάντη πεποίηκεν τοῖς ἐχθροῖς, οἷς | καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν τὴν τούτου B 95
 προσηγορίαν ἐμφαίνουσιν ἐγγεγραμμένην ἔχοντα ἐν αὐτοῖς.

Cap. 8: De Theophili benefactis 40.6–9; Gen 83.85–87; Log A 230.299–231.314 | Patria
 Const II 185.15–187.10; PsSym 627.16–17, 645.16–646.8; Scyl 55.70–56.85

19 πρόσλεμον V 24 κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν ἐν ἡ V Boor : ἐν ἡ ἡμέρᾳ edd 24 ἡθιστο V
 24 Βλαχέρναις B Comb 24 τὸν om. edd 27 ὡς : πῶς edd 27 τίς V 28 μου om. B
 edd 28 ἐκπλαγείς Comb cum Scyl 55.52 29 ἐν V edd 30 ταμιευθῆναι V 31 καλεῖν
 edd 31 ταύτην : ταύτην καὶ edd : ταύτην τότε con. Bekk in app. 31 ἔφηνεν edd Boor
 32 μετασπουδῆς V 32 ἦδε V 32 ἐκδιδάσκουσά edd 33 τοῦτόν : τόν edd : αὐτόν con.
 Bekk in app. 34 ποιεῖ edd 36 τὸν βασιλέα om. edd 37 τε om. edd 38 καταλαμ-
 πρύνεσθαι edd 40 αὐτῆς edd 8.3 ἀναδημάμενος V 3 ἐπάρας Boor cum VBas 89.59 :
 ἀπάρας V edd : ἐξάρας con. Bekk in app. 4 οἷς V Boor : ἃ edd 5 ἔχοντες V

soever ground should go out to battle, it was the confiscation of the horse that took the man's life, since he went out to battle deprived of his good horse. And thus he left behind his wife and poor children. Now what did the wife do? Hearing about the emperor's eagerness to listen and to do justice, and burning with love for her husband, and not having the means to provide her children with a living, she came to the imperial city. On the day when Theophilus was accustomed to go to Blachernae she saw him riding on her husband's horse; and taking hold of the horse's bridle, kneeling and wailing, she made entreaty to the emperor, telling him that the horse was hers and that 'There is no other reason than this horse for the slaughter of my husband.' Astounded and amazed by the woman's boldness of speech and knowing nothing of what she said, for the moment he ordered that she should be kept until his return to the palace; and after coming back he said with eagerness, 'Summon that woman!' And she came at once and told and recounted everything clearly. Thus the emperor commanded that this general should come and he enquired with vehemence concerning the horse. When the general assured the emperor that it was from his own house and not elsewhere, nor as a result of theft, that the horse was sent, Theophilus confronted him with the living refutation and accusation of his words. The general, seeing the woman's face, could not bear being shewn up for his falsehood, and forthwith became a pitiful suppliant and embraced the emperor's feet with lamentation. What did the emperor then do? He declared the woman and her children equal heirs of the other's property and dismissed him from office; and his righteous judgement and hatred of robbery was made manifest to all.

8. No less, furthermore, was he devoted to the care of buildings. For reconstructing the lower walls from the foundations, as if scraping off their old age and raising them on high with beauty, he made them in all ways inaccessible to enemies; and to these latter until the present day do they display his name written upon them.

- Οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ πόρνas ἀπελάσας ἐξ οἰκημάτων, καὶ καθάρας ὄλον
 ἐκείνον τὸν χῶρον, ξενῶνα τὴν ἐκείνου φέροντα προσηγορίαν, κάλλει τε
 κάλλιστον καὶ μεγέθει μέγιστον, εὖπνουν τε καὶ εὖοπτον, δι' ὧν τὰ φθο-
 ροποιὰ μὲν παθήματα ἀποκλύζονται, τὰ σωτηριῶδη δὲ ἐπιγίνονται
 10 ἀλεξήματα, κατεσκεύασεν. οὕτως εἶχεν ἐκείνος πρὸς πόρνas. πλὴν ὅτι γέ
 φασιν αὐτόν ποτε κάλλει θεραπαινίδος τῆς Θεοδώρας ἀλόντα συμφθαρ-
 ῆναι αὐτῇ, ῥαθύμως τότε βιοῦντα· ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἦσθετο τῆς ἐκ τοῦ καλοῦ
 διαμαρτίας, καὶ ἄλλως οὐδὲ τὴν Θεοδώραν τοῦτο λαθοῦσαν, κατηφιῶσαν
 15 καὶ φρικτῶς τὰς χεῖρας ἐπαίροντα πρὸς θεόν, ἥ μὴν τότε καὶ μόνον διολι- f. 32r
 σθεῖν, καὶ συγγνώμην ἐπιζητεῖν παρὰ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ γυναικός.

Πρὸς τοῦτοις οἶκόν τινα καὶ ἀνάκτορα ταῖς ἑαυτοῦ θυγατράσιν παρὰ
 τὸν οὕτω καλούμενον χῶρον τὰ Καριανοῦ πλουσίᾳ χειρὶ ἐξανέστησέν τε
 καὶ ἡγειρεν, ὧν λείψανά τινα καὶ κολωνοὶ τῆς ἐκείνων μνήμης μέχρις ἡμῶν
 20 διασώζονται.

9. Ἐπεὶ δὲ παλαιῶ ἔθει ἐπόμενος ἐβούλετο τοῖς τῆς Ἁγαρ τὰ τῆς αὐτο-
 κρατορίας ποιῆσαι κατάδηλα, εἴτε δὴ κοινωνοὺς εὐφροσύνης λαμβάνων
 εἴτε μᾶλλον τῷ φοβερὸς μέλλειν ὀρᾶσθαι αὐτοῖς, πρὸς τὴν τοιαύτην ἄξιον
 διακονίαν κρίνει Ἰωάννην τὸν τότε μὲν σύγκελλον, αὐτοῦ δὲ πρότερον, ὡς
 5 ἔφθμεν εἰπόντες, | διδάσκαλον. πολιτικῆς γὰρ εὐταξίας τοῦτον πλήρη B 96
 τυγχάνοντα, οὐ μὴν δὲ καὶ τῇ αἰρέσει τούτου συμπαραμένοντα, ἔτι γε
 μὴν καὶ τὸ πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιρρητικούς λόγους κεκτημένον δραστήριον,
 ἡγάπα οὗτος καὶ διαφερόντως τῶν κατ' αὐτὸν ἀπάντων ἐσέμνυνεν· οὐ δὴ
 χάριν καὶ πρὸς τὸν τῆς Συρίας ἄρχοντα ἐξαπέστειλεν, ἀλλὰ τε δούς αὐτῷ
 10 πολλὰ οἷς θαυμάζεται βασιλείᾳ Ῥωμαίων καὶ τῶν ἀλλοφύλων γένος
 ἐκπλήττεται, προσεπιδούς δὲ καὶ χρυσίον κεντηναρίων τεσσάρων ὑπερ-
 βαῖνον ποσότητα. ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν τῷ ἀμεραμουνῇ ὡς δῶρα ἀπέστελλεν, τὸ
 χρυσίον δὲ ὡς εἶη τῷ Ἰωάννῃ εἰς φιλοτιμίας ἐπίδοσιν, ἐπιδείξεως τε χάριν
 15 σπείρειν ὡς βούλεται, πολλῶ δὴ που μᾶλλον τὸν ἀποστείλαντα ἐπὶ
 πλούτου θημῶνας θαυμάζεσθαι χρή. διὸ καὶ σκευὴ πρὸς τοῦτοις δύο ἐκ
 χρυσοῦ τε καὶ λίθων πολυτελῶν τὴν σύστασιν ἔχοντα, ἃ ἡ κοινὴ γλῶττα

9.9 : ca. a. 829–830 legatio Ioannis Grammatici apud chalipham, cf. etiam infra III.26

Cap. 9: Gen 44.28–38; Log A 221.122–123, 222.127–130 | PsSym 632.21–23, 633.4–6; Scyl
 56.86–58.48

9 σωτηριῶδη V 11 γε φασιν V Comb 11 αὐτόν ποτὲ V Comb 13 δι' ἁμαρτίας V
 14 ἐξ εἰπεῖν V 19 λείψανα τινα V 9.4 σύγγελλον V 5 διδάσκαλων V 9 ἐξαπέ-
 στειλλεν V 9 ἀλλὰ τε V 10 καὶ τῶν : καὶ τὸ τῶν Scyl 56.92–93 11 ἐκπλήττεται :
 ἐπτόηται edd 11 πρὸς ἐπιδούς V 11 χρυσίον κεντηνάρια τεσσαράκοντα Scyl
 56.93–94 12 ἀπέσταλκεν edd : cf. Scyl 56.95 πέπομφε 14 τε καὶ χάριν ἅμα αὐξ. V

Moreover, he expelled the prostitutes from their dwellings and cleared all that place, and he constructed a hospice bearing his name most beauteous in beauty, most great in size, airy and open to view, whereby pestilential passions are purified and salubrious remedies are brought about. Thus did he act with regard to prostitutes. But it is said that he was once taken by the beauty of one of Theodora's handmaids and, living frivolously at the time, had illicit relations with her. Now, when he perceived his straying from the good path, and above all that this had not escaped Theodora's notice but that she was downcast and had a dull, gloomy look, he thereupon declared everything to her, swearing an oath and raising his hands to God in awful wise that he had erred only this one time and asking forgiveness from his wife.

In addition, he raised up and constructed with munificent hand the house and palace for his daughters in the quarter named after Karianos; of which some ruins and mounds preserve the memory down to our day.

9. Now since in accordance with ancient custom he desired to make his sovereignty manifest to the Hagarenes, whether to share with them his good cheer or rather to appear formidable to them, he chose as worthy for this service John, then Syncellus, who, as we have said, was formerly his teacher. For because he was full of political aptitude and remained faithful to Theophilus in his heresy and, moreover, was vigorous in disputation, the latter loved him and esteemed him above all others around him. He therefore dispatched him to the ruler of Syria, giving him many of the things for which the empire of the Romans is admired and whereby the race of foreigners is astounded, adding also a sum of gold exceeding four hundredweights. He sent the other things as gifts for the ameramnunes, but the gold was for John to distribute with munificence, for the sake of display and increase. For if the envoy could scatter the gold as he desired, as if it were sand, then he who dispatched him would be all the more marvelled at for his heaps of gold. On this same account, in addition to these things, Theophilus also gave him two vessels consisting of gold and precious stones which the common, vulgar tongue calls

- καὶ μὴ καθαρὰ καλεῖ χειρὶν βόξεστα, αὐτῷ ἐπιδέδωκεν, πάντοθεν ἐξαίρων
 τὸν ἀπόστολον αὐτοῦ καὶ κοσμῶν. ὃς δὴ ἀφικόμενος καὶ τὸ Βαγδὰ ἄρτι
 20 καταλαβὼν πολὺς μὲν ἐφαίνετο ἐκ τῆς ἔνδον περινοίας καὶ λόγου τοῦ
 προφορικοῦ, πολὺς δὲ ἐκ τοῦ ἔξωθεν ἐπανθοῦντος πλούτου αὐτῷ καὶ
 σεμνότητος, οὐ μικρά τινα τοῖς ἀποστελλομένοις καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν φοιτῶσι
 διδούς, μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν Ῥωμαίων μόνῳ κατάλληλα. ἐκ
 25 τούτου δὴ ἐθαυμάζετο | τε καὶ τὸ αὐτοῦ διαπρύσιον ἐγίγνετο ὄνομα. B 97
 ἀλλὰ πρῶτον μὲν ἄρτι τοῖς | ὁρίοις τῶν βαρβάρων προβάς ἐξέπληξέ τε f. 32v
 πάντας καὶ τοῖς ἐρωτήσεως χάριν αὐτῷ ὑπηνητήκοσιν καὶ ὅπως ἔχοι πυ-
 θομένοις μόνον ὁ βασιλεὺς τῇ δαφιλείᾳ τῶν δώρων καὶ τοῦ χρυσοῦ θαν-
 μάσαι τούτους ἐποίησεν. τότε δὴ πλησιάσας τῷ Ἰσμαῆλ καὶ κατὰ
 30 πρόσωπον στάς, καὶ ἀπαγγείλας τοὺς ἐκ βασιλέως λόγους αὐτῷ, ἐπεὶ
 ἀπηγγέλλει, ἄπεισι πρὸς τὸ <τῆς> ἀναπαύσεως καταγώγιον. μᾶλλον δὲ
 καὶ μᾶλλον βουλόμενος ἐξῆραι τὰ Ῥωμαίων πράγματα, τοὺς ἐφ' οἷα δηπο-
 τοῦν αἰτίᾳ πρὸς αὐτὸν φοιτῶντας, μεγάλην τε καὶ μικρᾶ, σκευὴς τι
 ἀργύρεον χρυσοῦ πληρῶν ἐκάστω ἐπεδίδου φιλοτιμούμενος. καὶ ποτε δὲ
 35 τοῖς βαρβάροις συνεστιώμενος τῶν εἰρημένων δύο χειρονίπτρων τοῖς
 ὑπηρετοῦσι παρήγγειλεν ἀπολέσαι τούτων ἐκουσίως τὸ ἕτερον, ὃ εἰς
 ὑπηρεσίαν ἐκέκτετο. ὥς δὲ θροῦς τις οὐκ ἀγεννὴς ἐπὶ τῇ τούτου ἀπωλείᾳ
 ἐγένετο, καὶ πάντες οἱ βάρβαροι τῷ κάλλει τούτου καὶ τῇ σεμνότητι ἔτι
 γε μὴν καὶ τῇ μεγαλοπρεπείᾳ βεβλημένοι τὴν ψυχὴν, πολλὴν συζήτησιν
 40 ἐποιοῦντο καὶ ἔρευναν, καὶ πάντα κάλων, τὸ δὴ λεγόμενον, ἔσειον, ὥς ἂν
 εἰς φῶς ἀχθῇ τὸ κλαπέν, τῆνικαὐτα οὗτος τὸ ἕτερον ἐκβαλεῖν κελεύσας,
 “καὶ τοῦτο ἔα φθεῖρεσθαι” ἐπειπὼν, εἰς θάμβος ἦγε τοὺς Σαρακηνούς, τὴν
 τοιαύτην ζήτησιν αὐτοῦ καταπαύσαντος. ὅθεν καὶ ὁ ἀμεραμνουνηὶς
 45 ἀντιφιλοτιμούμενος, καὶ τούτου δεύτερος ὁφθῆναι μὴ βουλόμενος, | B 98
 ἄλλοις τε δώροις αὐτὸν ἐθεράπευεν, οἷσπερ αὐτὸς οὐχ ἡλίσκετο ἀλλ' ὥς
 χοῦν αὐτοῦ κατενώπιον ἔρριπτεν, ἐπεδίδου <δὲ> καὶ αἰχμαλώτους ἑκα-
 τὸν, ἄρτι τῆς φρουρᾶς ἐξαγαγὼν καὶ ἀμφιάσεσι κοσμήσας εὐπρεπέσι, τὰ
 τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας περιελόμενος ῥάκια. ἀλλὰ καὶ οὕτως ἐπῆναι μὲν πάνυ καὶ
 ἀπεδέχετο τοῦ διδόντος τὸ μεγάλόδωρον, ἐλάμβανεν δὲ οὐδαμῶς, εἰπὼν

|| 39 Pausanias, Synagoge Π no. 5, Hesychius Π no. 388, Photius Lexicon Π no. 165, Suda Π no. 221, cf. Anonymus professor epist. 109, ln. 12 et Photius, Bibliotheca cod. 242, 339a

19 τὸ: τὰ edd 21 προφορικοῦ V Bekk in app. Boor : προφητικοῦ edd 23 μόνον B edd
 24 δὴ om. edd 25 προσβάς conl. in marg. Comb Bekk Boor 26 τοῖς V Bekk in app. Boor :
 τῆς edd 28 θαυμάσαι V 30 <τῆς> suppl. Boor e Scyl 57.12 31 ἐξῆραι V 32 οἷα
 δηποτοῦν ante corr. V 33 ἐκάστω B in marg. edd Boor : ἐκάστου V 34 χειρονίπτων V
 36 ἀπωλείᾳ τούτου B edd 38 μὴν om. edd 41 ἐπειπὼν V 42 ἀμεραμνουνηὶς edd
 45 <δὲ> suppl. Boor e Scyl 57.27 ἔδωρήσατο δὲ καὶ : ἐπεδίδου καὶ V : ἐπεδίδου Comb : καὶ
 ἐπεδίδου Bekk 47 οὕτως V cum Scyl 57.30 : οὗτος edd

wash-basins, in every wise exalting and honouring his envoy. And when the latter arrived, he had hardly reached Bagdad before he shewed himself important, internally for his intelligence and fluent expression, and externally for the wealth and dignity which adorned him, and he granted no small sums to those who were dispatched to him and frequented him but rather great ones as befits only the emperor of the Romans. Because of this he was admired and his name was made thrilling. At first, no sooner had he approached the borders of the barbarians than he astonished everyone and, by his liberality with gifts and gold to those who came up to meet him with questions, merely enquiring how the emperor was, he made them marvel. Then, after he came to Ismael and stood in his presence, he reported the emperor's words to him; and when he had made the report, he went off to his resting-place. But desirous as he was to promote yet further the affairs of the Romans, he shewed munificence to those who frequented him for whatever reason, be it important or not, filling a silver vessel with gold for each of them. Once, when he was dining with the barbarians he instructed those serving purposely to lose one of the two aforementioned hand-basins which had been brought into service. Now, when no inconsiderable murmur arose on account of the basin's loss, and all the barbarians, struck in their souls by its beauty and majesty no less than by its magnificence, made an enquiry and search, moving every rope, as the saying goes, in order to bring to light that which had been stolen, then John commanded them to bring out the other basin, adding 'Let this one be lost too!' and thus causing the Saracens to marvel because he had stoppped the search. Whereupon the ameramnounes shewed munificence in return, wishing not to appear in second place, and he honoured him with many other gifts. But John was not won over by these latter and cast them like dust before him. The other granted also one hundred captives, taking them straightway from the prison and adorning them in seemly clothes, having removed the rags of their captivity. But John, though he greatly praised and acknowledged the generosity of the donor, in no wise accepted, saying that they

- τούτους ἐν ἀνέσει μένειν τέως καὶ ἐλευθερίᾳ παρ' ἑαυτοῖς, μέχρις ἂν τὴν
 50 ἀντιστήκωσιν ἐξεργάσεται καὶ ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους Σαρακηνοὺς ἐπιδούς
 ἐκείνοις τοὺς ἡμετέρους ἐκλήψεται. τοῦτο γοῦν γενόμενον ἐξέπληξε τὸν
 Σαρακηνόν· καὶ οὐκέτι ὡς ξένον, ὡς οἰκεῖον δὲ ἡγούμενος τοῦτον συνεχῶς
 μετεκαλεῖτο, καὶ θησαυροὺς ἐδείκνυ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τὰ τῶν οἰκημάτων
 55 ἐφαίνετο, | ἄχρις οὗ μεγαλοπρεπῶς πάλιν πρὸς τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν f. 33r
 ἐξαπέστελλεν. ὃς καὶ πρὸς τὸν Θεόφιλον ἄρτι ἐληλυθώς, καὶ τὰ τῆς Συρίας
 πρὸς αὐτὸν διεξερχόμενος, ἔπεισε τὰ τοῦ Βρύου ἀνάκτορα πρὸς τὴν τῶν
 Σαρακηνικῶν οἰκημάτων κατασκευασθῆναι ὁμοίωσιν, ἐν τε σχήματι καὶ
 60 ποικιλίᾳ μηδὲν ἐκείνων τὸ σύνολον παραλλάττοντα, ἐκείνοις τούτου
 παρισταμένους καὶ κατὰ τὴν Ἰωάννου ἐξήγησιν τὰ τῶν ἔργων ἐκπε-
 ρατοῦντος, ὃς ὄνομα μὲν Πατρίκης οὕτω καλούμενος ὠνομάζετο, τῇ τῶν
 πατρικίων δὲ τιμῇ ἐσεμνύνετο, τοῦτο μόνον περιττότερον ἐργασάμενος,
 τὸ κατὰ τὸν κοιτῶνα μὲν ἀνεγεῖραι ναὸν εἰς ὄνομα τῆς ὑπεραγίας
 65 δεσποίνης ἡμῶν θεοτόκου, κατὰ δὲ τὸ προαύλιον τῶν τοιούτων B 99
 παλα|τίων τρίκογχον ναὸν κάλλει τε κάλλιστον καὶ μεγέθει πολλῶν
 διαφέροντα, καὶ τὸ μὲν μέσον εἰς ὄνομα τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου Μιχαήλ, τὰ
 δὲ ἑκατέρωθεν τούτου εἰς μαρτύρων γυναικῶν ἁγίων ὀνόματα.
10. Περὶ δὲ τοὺς πιστοὺς ἡμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τὰς θείας καὶ ἀχράντους εἰκόνας
 προσκυνοῦντας, οἷος; ὡς βάρβαρός τις καὶ αὐστηρὸς καὶ πάντας παρε-
 λάσαι φιλονεικῶν <τοὺς> ἐπὶ τούτῳ δεινός. οἱ μὲν γὰρ πρὸ αὐτοῦ –
 5 Λέων δὲ ἦσαν καὶ Μιχαήλ ὁ τούτου πατήρ – ὁ μὲν ἐθέσπισεν μή τινα τῶν
 γεγραμμένων εἰκόνων, κἂν εἴ που γραφόμεναι τύχοιεν, τὴν 'ἅγιος' φωνὴν
 ἐγχαράττεσθαι, ὡς οὐκ ἄλλῳ τινὶ ταύτην ἀρμόζει ἐπιγράφεσθαι ἢ τῷ
 5 θείῳ, οὐκ εὐστόχως βαλὼν τῷ νῷ· πῶς γὰρ ὁ γε καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς 'θεὸς'
 φωνῆς ὑψηλοτέρας οὔσης μεταδούς τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, τοῖς οὐ φύσει, θέσει δὲ
 10 φημι, εἶγε αὐτὸς διὰ τοῦ προφήτου ἦν ὁ φηγεγόμενος, τῆς 'ἅγιος' ἀπο-
 στερήσοι ταπεινοτέρας οὔσης κατὰ πολὺ; πλὴν ὁ μὲν τοῦτο, φησί,

Cap. 10: Scyl 58.59–59.80

|| 7–10 Ps 81.6

49 ἐνανέσει (sic) μένειν τέως καὶ ἐλευθερίᾳ V cum Scyl 57.31 : ἐν ἀνέσει μὲν τέως καὶ ἐλευθερίᾳ μένειν edd 51 γοῦν V 52 οὐκ ἔτι V 53 ἐδείκνυ B : ἐδεικνύει Comb : ἐδείκνυε Bekk 56 ἐξαπέσταλκεν edd 56 ἐξεληλυθώς edd, cf. Scyl 57.37–38 ἐπανελθὼν 57 ἀνακτορὰ V 58 Σαρακηνικῶν οἰκημάτων V cum Scyl 57.39–40.40 : Σαρακηνῶν οἰκημάτων B : Σαρακηνῶν edd 58 σχήμασι edd 61 ὠνομάζετο V 62 τιμῇ V 63 τῆς om. edd 65 παλατίων τὸν edd 66 Μιχαήλ om. edd 10.1 ὀνόματα. Περὶ δὲ : ὀνόματα. Καὶ περὶ μὲν τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐδόκει τε καὶ ἐνομιζέτο μεγαλοπρεπῆς ὁ Θεόφιλος καὶ θαυμαστός· Περὶ δὲ suppl. edd e Scyl 58.48–50 1 τὰς θείας καὶ ἀχράντους V : τὰς σεπτὰς καὶ θείας edd 2 οἷος; Boor : οἷος. V : οἷος! edd 2 βάρβαρος : βαρύς Scyl 58.51 2 καὶ om. edd 3 <τοὺς> suppl. Boor in app. 7 εἶγε edd 8 μεταδούς ὁ θεὸς edd 8 τῆς οὐ φύσει, θέσει δὲ V Boor : τοῖς οὐ φύσει, θεοῖς δὲ edd : τοῖς οὐ φύσει θεοῖς, θέσει δὲ Bekk in app. 10 ἀποστερήσει B edd

should remain in ease and freedom at home until he could make compensation by adding more Saracen captives to these in order to receive ours in full. The Saracen was astonished by this, and he no longer held John as a foreigner but as one of his own, and he invited him continually and shewed him his treasures and the beauties of his abodes and his majestic state. And thus he manifestly honoured him until he dispatched him again with magnificence to Constantinople. Now, as soon as John returned to Theophilus, he recounted everything about Syria and convinced him to construct the palace of Bryas in resemblance to Saracen abodes, in no wise differing from them in form or variety; and this was overseen by him and the work carried out according to John's description by a man whose name was Patrikes and who was distinguished by the dignity of patrikios. The only additional thing he wrought was to erect in the private chambers a church in the name of our supremely holy Lady the Mother of God, and, in the forecourt of the palace, a church with three apses most beauteous in beauty and surpassing many others in size, the middle in the name of the Commander-in-chief Michael and each of the two sides in the names of women martyrs.

10. But in regard to the faithful amongst us and those who worshipped the divine and undefiled images, what was he like? Like someone barbarous and harsh who strove to surpass all who excelled in these qualities. For of those who preceeded him – that is, Leo and Michael, Theophilus's father – the one decreed that on no drawn image, if any ever be drawn, should the word 'holy' be inscribed, as it was not fitting that this word be attributed to anyone other than the Divinity; but his reasoning was faulty. For how, after having bestowed upon men the more sublime term *God*, with regard to their position, of course, not nature – how would He then, if indeed He is the same who thus spoke through the prophet, begrudge them the term 'holy', which is by far more humble? It was Michael who decreed this, says Theo-

- θεσπίσας ἦν, ἄτερος δὲ ὁ Λέων τὸ μὴ δὲ προσκυνεῖσθαι· “ἐγὼ δὲ τὸ μὴ δὲ
 χρώμασι ταύτας τυποῦσθαι τε καὶ μορφάζεσθαι, καθὼ χαμαιπετὴ ὄντα
 οὐ χρή πρὸς ταῦτα ἐπτοῆσθαι, πρὸς μόνην δὲ τὴν ἀλήθειαν”. ἐντεῦθεν
 15 ὄρνιθες ἀνεστηλοῦντο καὶ ἐνεγράψοντο, τὴν ἀνδραποδώδη τούτου B 100
 διάνοιαν ἐξελέγχοντα. ἐντεῦθεν βεβήλοις χερσὶ δι’ ἀγορᾶς τὰ ἱερὰ f. 33v
 κειμήλια ἐφυβρίζοντο καὶ ἄλλως | ἐρριπτοῦντο κατὰ τῆς γῆς πυρὶ
 20 διδόμενα, καὶ κοινὰ τὰ τίμια ἐλογίζοντο ὅσα τὰς θείας ἔφερον ἐγκεκο-
 λαμμένες μορφάς. ἐντεῦθεν πλήρη μὲν τὰ πολιτικά δεσμοτήρια τῶν διὰ
 τιμῆς ἀγόντων αὐτάς, τῶν γραφόντων, τῶν μοναζόντων, τῶν
 ἐπισκόπων, τῶν ποιμένων, τῶν ποιμαινομένων, πλήρη δὲ τὰ ὄρη τε καὶ
 τὰ σπήλαια τῶν ὡς κακούργων ἀναιρεθέντων λιμῶ τε καὶ δίψει καὶ τῶν
 ἐκ πολιορκίας δεινῆς οὐκ ἐπ’ ἔλαττον. ἄρτι γὰρ ἀβάτους τηρεῖσθαι τοῖς
 25 μοναχοῖς τὰς πόλεις ἐγκελευσάμενος καὶ πάντη τούτους ὡς ἀποτρόπαιον
 ἀπελαύνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ μὴ δὲ κατὰ χώραν ὀρᾶσθαι τολμᾶν, ἦν τούτων τὰ μο-
 ναστήρια καὶ ἡσυχαστήρια περιφανῶς πολυάνδρια. τινὲς μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν
 προδοῦναι τὴν ἀρετὴν καὶ τὸ ἱερὸν ἔνδυμα οὐμενοῦν θέλοντες λιμῶ
 τακέντες καὶ κακουχίαις ἐξέλιπον· οἱ δὲ πρὸς τοσοῦτον μὴ δ’ ἀντοφθαλμεῖν
 30 ἀγῶνα δυνάμενοι τῶν ἐνδυμάτων μὲν κατωλιγώρησαν, τὴν ἑαυτῶν δὲ
 σωτηρίαν πως ὥκονόμησαν· ἕτεροι δὲ ῥαθυμότερον διαζῶντες τὸν ἀνετον
 καὶ ἐκλελυμένον ἡσπᾶσαντο βίον, τῶν θείων ὕμνων καὶ ᾠδῶν καὶ αὐτοῦ
 <τοῦ> ἐσθήματος ἀφειδήσαντες, τῷ μὴ δὲ τούτους τελεῖσθαι τοὺς συλλό-
 γους τὸν τύραννον βούλεσθαι, οἱ πολλάκις καὶ μόνοι δύνανται τηρεῖν καὶ
 οἷον χαλινὸς τις εἶναι τοῖς πρὸς τὰ πάθη ἀτάκτως κατολισθαίνουσιν.
 | 11. Πλὴν οὐκ ἦν πάντη τὴν παρρησίαν καὶ ἐλευθερίαν ἰδεῖν τῶν ἀν- B 101
 θρώπων ἀποφοιτήσασαν, ἀλλὰ τῶν θερμότερων τινὲς μὲν καθ’ εἰς τινες δὲ
 συστάδην, ὥσπερ οἱ τῆς τῶν Ἀβραμιτῶν μονῆς ὁρμώμενοι, ὀφθέντες
 5 αὐτῷ λογικῶς ἔκ τε τῶν εἰρημένων τοῖς πατράσιν ἡμῶν Διουσιῶ τε τῷ
 θεῷ καὶ Ἱεροθέῳ καὶ Εἰρηναίῳ ἀπεδείκνυσαν ὡς οὐ χθὲς καὶ πρῶην ἢ τῶν
 μοναχῶν πολιτεία τε καὶ κατάστασις ἐπινενόηται, παλαιὰ δὲ τις καὶ
 ἀρχέγονος καὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐπέραστος. οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν τῶν

Cap. 11: | Scyl 59.81–60.6

|| 3–7 cf. Theod Stud epist. no. 489, ln. 12–38

11 ἄτερος V 12 καθ’ ὃ V Comb 13 ταῦτα V 13 ἀλήθειαν σκοπεῖν edd e Scyl 58.62
 15 ὄρνιθες ἀντὶ τούτων edd e Scyl 58.63 15 τὴν θηριώδη καὶ ἀνδραποδώδη edd e Scyl
 59.64 17 ἐφ’ ὕβριζοντο V 20 μοναζόντων V 22 καὶ ante τῶν del. Boor 23 ἐπέλατ-
 τον V Comb 25 ἀπελαύνεσθαι θεσπίσας edd e Scyl 59.71 25 καταχώραν V 25 ἦν :
 εἰργάσατο edd e Scyl 59.72 25 τοῦτων V 26 πολυάνδρια καὶ κοσμικὰ καταγῶγια edd
 27 οὐ μὲν οὖν V : οὐμενοῦν Comb 28 κακουχίαις edd Boor e Scyl 59.74 : κακουχίας V
 29 ἀγῶνα μὴδ’ ἀντοφθαλμεῖν edd 30 πῶς V 32 αὐτοῦ <τοῦ> Boor in app. e Scyl 59.77 :
 αὐτοῦ V: om. edd 32 τῷ Boor : τὸ V edd 33 τυρράνον V 33 οἱ ... μόνοι Boor e Scyl :
 ἃ ... μόνα V edd 11.2 τινὲς V 3 ὥσπερ: ὡς edd 3 ὀφθέντες om. edd : μετὰ παρρησίας
 ὀφθέντες Scyl 59.84 6 δε τίς V 7 τὴν om. edd

philus, and the other, Leo, <decreed> the forbidding of worship: ‘And I, <Theophilus, decree> that these <images> should not be modelled or styled with paints, in as much as one ought not, in grovelling fashion, feel awe before these things but before the truth alone.’ Therefore the divine forms were taken down in all the churches, and beasts and birds were put up and drawn on, exposing the servile nature of his thought. Therefore sacred treasures were defiled by profane hands in the market place and elsewhere thrown upon the ground to be given over to the flames, and all venerable objects bearing engraved divine images were treated as ordinary. Therefore the city prisons were filled with those who honoured the images, those who painted them, those who practised monasticism, bishops, shepherds and their flocks; and filled were also the mountains and the caves with those who were wasted by hunger and thirst even as criminals, in no wise less than of those enduring dire siege. For just after Theophilus had commanded that cities should be kept inaccessible to monks and that these latter should be driven away as an object of ill omen nor dare be seen in the country, it was notorious that their monasteries and hermitages were cemeteries. For certain of the monks, who were indeed unwilling to betray virtue and their holy garment, worn down by famine and maltreatments, perished; others, unable to withstand such a struggle, neglected their garments and somehow arranged for their own deliverance; whereas yet others, living in a more careless manner, pursued an easy and relaxed way of life, recklessly dispensing with the divine hymns and songs and even their very habit through the tyrant’s desire that they should not form assemblies which often in themselves are able to protect and serve as a bridle to those who in disorder slide down toward passions.

11. However, boldness of speech and freedom did not depart altogether from the company of men, but certain more zealous men, appearing before him one by one or in groups – such as those coming from the monastery of the Abrahamites –, shewed him in dialectical wise through the writings of our fathers the divine Dionysius and Hierotheus and Irenaeus that the constitution and condition of the monks was not contrived just now or yesterday, but was something ancient and primeval and beloved by men. Moreover, they

- θείων εικόνων ἐκτύπωσιν σύντροφόν τε τῶν ἀποστόλων καὶ ὁμοδαίτον
 10 ἀπεδείκνυνον, εἶγε Λουκάς μὲν ὁ θεῖος τὴν τῆς θεοτόκου μορφήν
 ἐνετύπωσεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ Χριστὸς ἡμῶν καὶ θεὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἐπὶ τινος
 ὀθόνης ἀπομαζάμενος ἀχειρότευκτον ἡμῖν ἐγκατέλιπεν. οὗτοι γοῦν τὴν f. 34r
 τοῦ τυράννου μανίαν καὶ θηριωδίαν εἰσκαλεσάμενοι | τῷ σφόδρα
 παρρησιασθῆναι μετὰ πολλὰς ἐτέρας βασάνους τῆς πόλεως ἐξώσθησαν,
 15 πρὸς δὲ εὐκτήριον τοῦ Προδρόμου τὸ οὕτω καλούμενον τοῦ Φοβεροῦ
 κατὰ τὸν Εὐξεινον πόντον πεφευγότες τῆς ἄνω <λή>ξεως ταῖς τῶν
 μαστίγων ἀφορήτοις φοραῖς ἡξιώθησαν· ὧν καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ σώματα ἐπὶ
 πολὺ ἄλλως ἐρριμμένα πρὸς τοῦδαφος, μὴ δὲ τῆς ταφῆς εὐμοιρηκότα, σῶα
 διετηρήθησαν καὶ ἀλώβητα μέχρις οὗ τοῖς πιστοῖς γινόμενα φανερὰ
 20 ἐκηδεύθησάν τε καὶ καταλλήλως τοῖς ὑπὲρ Χριστοῦ μαρτυρήσασιν
 ἐτιμήθησαν.

- || 12. Τοῦτοις ἐφάμιλλος καὶ τις γενόμενος μοναχός, ἄρτι πρὸς ἀρχὴν B 102
 τῆς ἱερωσύνης ἀναδραμῶν καὶ ζήλου πλησθεὶς, τὸν τύραννον ἐλέγχει
 διέγνωκε καὶ περὶ τῶν θείων εικόνων πείσαι, εἰ δυνατόν. καὶ δὴ κατὰ
 πρόσωπον αὐτοῦ στάς ἄλλα τε διεξήει πολλὰ καὶ τὸ τοῦ ἀποστόλου
 5 Παύλου ῥητόν, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ φάσκον “εἴ τις ὑμῖν εὐαγγελίζεται παρ’ ὃ παρ-
 ελάβετε, ἀνάθεμα ᾗστω”. ἀλλὰ καὶ τούτῳ πληγὰς ἐπιθείς, ἐπεὶ σοφώτερα
 λέγειν διέγνωκεν, ταῦτόν δὲ εἶναι δυνατώτερα εἰπεῖν, πρὸς τὸν Ἰαννῆν
 ἐξαπέστελλεν, καθηγητὴν αὐτοῦ γεγονότα τε καὶ διδάσκαλον, διαλεκτι-
 10 καὶς ἀποδείξεισι χρώμενον καταβαλεῖν αὐτὸν ἐγκελευσάμενος. ἀλλὰ καὶ
 τοῦτον οὐ τοῖς σοφιστικοῖς, τοῖς ἀποστολικοῖς δὲ καὶ εὐαγγελικοῖς ῥήμα-
 σιν ἀφωνότερον ἰχθύων ἀποδείξας τέως μὲν ἀπὸ τούτου ἐγένετο, ὕστερον
 δὲ πρὸς τὸ Καλὸν οὕτω λεγόμενον ἀποδημήσας ὁρος, Ἰγνατίον τινα
 θεοφόρον ἄνδρα καταλαβὼν χειροτονίας τε ἡξίωσεν, καὶ περὶ τῶν

11.15–16 : Martyrologium Romanum (p. 165) Abrahamitorum monachorum mortem 8 Iul. sine anno adscribit.

Cap. 12: | Scyl 60.6–20 || 5–6 Galat. 1.9; 11 cf. GeorgMon 777.12–14, Photius Epist. no. 165, ln. 51.

9 Λουκάς V 10 ἀνετύπωσεν Scyl 59.90 10 Χριστὸς ὁ δεσπότης ἡμῶν edd e Scyl 59.90–91 11 οὗτοι γοῦν οἱ θεϊότατοι ἄνδρες edd e Scyl 59.92 12 ἐκκαλεσάμενοι edd e Scyl 60.94 14 τοῦ ante Προδρόμου om. edd 15 τῆς ἄνω <λή>ξεως Comb e Scyl 60.2–3 : τῆς ἄνωξεως V 16 πεφευγότες, καὶ ταῖς τῶν μαστίγων ἀφορήτοις φοραῖς τελείως καταπονηθέντες, τῆς ἄνω λήξεως ἡξιώθησαν edd e Scyl 60.2–3 17 ἐπιπολὺ V Comb 17 ἐρριμμένα V 17 τοῦδαφος V 12.1 τίς V Comb 1 ἄρτι δὲ edd 3 θείων : ἀγίων edd 6 ἐπιθείς οὐκ ὀλίγας edd e Scyl 60.11 7 ταυτὸν δὲ εἶναι V : αὐτοῦ τε edd : ταῦτόν δὲ καὶ Boor 7 Ἰαννῆν V : Ἰωάννην edd 8 ἐξαπέσταλκεν edd 8 τὲ V 10 ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦτον ὁ γενναῖος ἀγωνιστὴς οὐ ταῖς σοφιστικαῖς καὶ διαλεκτικαῖς ἀποδείξει edd e Scyl 60.14–15

shewed that the fashioning of the divine images was familiar and habitual to the Apostles, if indeed the divine Luke fashioned the form of the Mother of God, and our Christ God, pressing upon a cloth His own form, unmade by hands, Himself bequeathed it to us. Provoking the tyrant's madness and brutality by speaking with extreme boldness these monks, after many other tortures, were expelled from the city. Fleeing to the oratory of the Forerunner called Fearful (Phoberos) on the Euxine sea, they were then deemed worthy of a sublime death through unbearable blows of the whip; and their holy bodies, cast at random upon the ground, bereft of burial, were preserved for a long time safe and unharmed until they were revealed to the faithful and were buried and granted the honour befitting those who bore witness on behalf of Christ.

12. Eager to emulate these same a certain monk who had only just attained to the office of the priesthood and was filled with zeal decided to refute the tyrant and, if possible, to persuade him in the matter of the divine images. Standing before him he mentioned amongst many other things also the words of the apostle Paul who said: 'If anyone *preach any other gospel unto you than that* which ye have received, *let him be accursed.*' But Theophilus imposed blows upon him and, because he recognised that the other spoke more wisely, that is to say, was more forceful, he dispatched him to Jannes (John)¹, who had been Theophilus's guide and teacher, commanding this latter to strike him down using dialectical arguments. But the monk, through words not of the sophists, but rather of the apostles and Gospel, rendered him more speechless than a fish; and being rid of him, he later went off to the mountain called Good (Kalon). There he came upon a certain Ignatios, a God-inspired man, whom he deemed worthy of ordination; and after he had imparted to

¹ Play on name of John with the Biblical sorcerer, cf. *Infra* IV. ch. 6.

- μελλόντων πραγμάτων τε καὶ βασιλέων ἀναδιδάξας, ἄχρι καὶ τοῦ φι-
 15 λοχρίστου Λέοντος καὶ τῶν ἐγγόνων αὐτοῦ, πρὸς κύριον ἐξεδήμησεν.
13. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντας τοὺς τὰς θείας ἐκτυποῦντας μορφὰς ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
 ποιεῖν ὁ τύραννος ἐνενόησεν ἢ τὸ ζῆν αἰρουμένους ἐμπτύειν τε καὶ ὡς
 βέβηλά τινα ἐπ’ ἐδάφους ῥίπτειν καὶ καταπατεῖν καὶ οὕτω σῶζεσθαι, καὶ
 τὸν μοναχὸν Λάζαρον – περιβόητος | δὲ τηνικαῦτα κατὰ τὴν ζῶα B 103
- 5 γράφουσιν ὑπῆρχε τέχνην – βιάζεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα διέγνωκεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ
 τοῦτον κρείττω μὲν τῶν θωπειῶν, κρείττω δὲ καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ γνώμης
 εὐρίσκων, οὐχ ἅπαξ ἢ δις | ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλάκις ὑπ’ αὐτοῦ ἐλεγχόμενος, f. 34v
- 10 τοσοῦτον ταῖς βασάνοις κατήκισεν ὡς πρῶτον μὲν συναπορρέειν τὰς
 σάρκας τῷ αἵματι καὶ μὴ δὲ ζῆν ὅλως ὑπνοεῖσθαι παρὰ πολλῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ
 τῷ δεσποτικῷ τοῦτον αὐθις ἐγκαθειργμένον μόλις τε ἀναρραΐσαντα
 διήκουσε, καὶ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ τέχνῃ ἐνασχολούμενον τὰς τῶν ἀγίων ἐν πίναξιν
 ἀνασθηλοῦν μορφὰς, πέταλα σιδηρὰ ἀπανθρακωθέντα ταῖς παλάμαις
 αὐτοῦ τεθῆναι προσέταξεν. ἐβόσκετο οὖν τὸ πῦρ τὰς σάρκας αὐτοῦ
 καὶ κατενέμετο, ἄχρι ποτὲ ἀπαγορεύσας ἔκειτο ἡμιθνής. ἀλλ’ ἔδει τοῦτον
- 15 ὑπὸ τῆς χάριτος διατηρεῖσθαι καὶ τοῖς ὕστερον ἔναυσμα· ὅθεν ἐπεὶ τὰ τε-
 λευταῖα πνεῖν τὸν ὅσιον ἀνεμάνθανεν, ἰκετείαις τῆς αὐγουστής καὶ τινων
 ἄλλων οἰκειοτέρων τῆς εἰρκτῆς μὲν ἀπέλυσεν, ὁ δὲ πρὸς τὸν ναὸν τοῦ
 προδρόμου τὸν οὕτω καλούμενον τοῦ Φοβεροῦ ἐναπεκρύβη, ἔνθα καὶ τῶν
 πληγῶν συνουσῶν αὐτῷ εἰκόνα διέγραψε τοῦ προδρόμου τὴν καὶ μέχρις
- 20 ἡμῶν διασσωζομένην τε καὶ ἰάσεις ἐπιτελοῦσαν πολλάς. καὶ τότε μὲν
 ταῦτα, μετὰ δὲ τὴν τοῦ τυράννου ἀποβίωσιν, τῆς ὀρθοδοξίας λαμψάσης,
 τὴν ἐν τῇ Χαλκῇ εἰκόνα τοῦ θεανθρώπου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ οἰκειαῖς οὔτως
 χερσὶν ἀνεστήλωσεν. ὃς καὶ καλούμενος ὑπὸ τῆς περιφανοῦς Θεοδώρας
 συγγνώμῃν δοῦναι τε καὶ αἰτήσασθαι τῷ ταύτης ἀνδρί, “οὐκ ἄδικος”,
- 25 ἔφη, “ὁ θεὸς ἐπιλαθέσθαι τῆς ἡμῶν ἀγάπης καὶ τῶν πρὸς αὐτὸν κόπων, B 104
 ἐκείνου δὲ τὸ μῖσος <προτιμῆσαι> καὶ τὴν ὑπερβάλλουσιν μανίαν”.

Cap. 13: | Scyl 60.20–61.45 || 24–25 Hebr. 6.10

15 ἐγγόνων : τέκνων edd 15 αὐτοῦ διαμείνας edd 13.3 βέβηλα V 4 τηνικαῦτα V
 12 ἀνασθηλοῦν<τα> Boor in app. 16 ὅσιον ἀνεμάνθανεν edd e Scyl 61.34 θεσπέσιον ἀνε-
 μάνθανεν : ὅσιον ἐμάνθανεν post corr. V, ante corr. ὀσιάνεμάνθανεν 17 εἰρκτῆς V
 18 ἐναπεκρύβη B edd Boor e Scyl 61.36 : ἀναπεκρύβη V 21 ἀναλαμψάσης edd e Scyl
 61.39 23 περιφανοῦς V 24 οὐκάδικος V 25 ἔφη, “ὁ θεός : ὁ θεός”, ἔφη, “ὡ βασιλίσσα
 edd, cf. Scyl 61.43 ἔφη, “ὁ θεός, ὡ βασιλίσσα 26 <προτιμῆσαι> καὶ τὴν ὑπερβάλλουσιν
 μανίαν Boor e Scyl 61.44 : καὶ τὴν ὑπερβάλλουσιν μανίαν V : καὶ τὴν ὑπερβάλλουσιν μανίαν
 καὶ προτιμῆσαι. Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὕστερον edd, fortasse recte ultimam sententiam addentes e
 Scyl 61.45, cf. infra III.36.31–32 et VBas 19.35, et autem I.9.37, I.10.41–42, I.18.6 et
 II.7.26–27.

him knowledge of things and emperors that would follow, down to the Christ-loving Leo and his grandchildren, he departed to the Lord.

13. Now because the tyrant intended to eliminate from amongst men all those who painted the divine images or else, if they chose to live, that they should spit upon them and cast them on the ground and trample on them as profane things and thus save themselves, also in the case of the monk Lazarus – he was then renowned for his art in depicting living things – did he decide to use force against the man. But when he found the other beyond reach of his flatteries and also beyond reach of his understanding, having been not once or twice but many times worsted by him, he punished him with such tortures that at first his flesh ran off together with his blood and he was thought by many not to be alive at all. And after he had been confined again in prison, when Theophilus heard that, having scarcely recovered, he was employing his art to set out the forms of the saints on panels, he commanded that burning irons should be applied to his palms. The fire burned and consumed his flesh until he passed out and lay half-dead. But he was to be preserved by Grace as a stimulus to later men. Thus, when Theophilus learned that the holy one was breathing his last, by the supplications of the empress and some others of his closer relations, he released him from prison; and he went into hiding in the church of the Forerunner called Fearful (Phoberos). There, the wounds still upon him, he painted the image of the Forerunner which is preserved to our day and which works many healings. So were these things then. But after the tyrant's demise, when Orthodoxy shone forth, this Lazarus with his own hands set up on the Chalke the image of the God-man Jesus Christ; and being called upon by the illustrious Theodora to grant and beseech pardon for her husband he said, 'God is not so unjust as to forget our love and pains on His behalf and prefer his hatred and exceeding madness.'

14. Καί ποτε δὲ τὸν ὁμολογητὴν Θεοφάνην καὶ Θεόδωρον τὸν αὐτοῦ ἀδελφόν, ἐπεὶπερ λογιότητι διαφέροντας ἐγίνωσκε τῶν πολλῶν, κατὰ τὸν τοῦ Λαυσιακοῦ τρίκλινον εἰσεκάλει δημοσίᾳ διαλεξομένους περὶ τῆς πίστεως· καὶ “ἄγε δὴ”, φησί, “ὕμεις, ὦ κατάρρατοι, τίσι πειθόμενοι ῥήσεσι
 5 τῆς γραφῆς καὶ τεθαρρηκότες τὰ εἶδωλα”, ἀφέντω δὴ γλώττη καὶ μιὰ τὰς ἀγίας εἰκόνας οὕτω καλῶν, “προσκυνεῖτε, καὶ τοὺς πολλοὺς καὶ ἀκε-
 ραίους καλῶς ἔχειν διαβεβαιούσθε;” καὶ ἄλλ’ ἅττα προσετίθει βλάσφημα καὶ ἀπηχῇ κατὰ τῆς εἰκόνης Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ γεγωνοτέρᾳ φωνῇ. καὶ οὕ-
 10 τοι δὴ οἱ μακάριοι, “ἐμφραχθεὶ τὸ στόμα”, εἰπόντες, “κατὰ τοῦ θεοῦ τὸ λαλοῦν ἄνομα,” καὶ | τούτῳ δὴ τὸ θράσος αὐτοῦ καταβαλόντες – οὐ φέρει f. 35r
 γὰρ βασιλεὺς ἄδικος κατὰ πρόσωπον ἐλεγχόμενος –, τὸν θῶπα τέως ὑποκρίνεται, καὶ παρὰ τῶν προφητῶν ἐζήτει μαρτυρίας εἰς αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἐναγούσας, τὸ προσκυνεῖσθαι αὐτάς. τοῦ δὲ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους ῥῆσιν
 15 τινὰ ἐκ τῆς τοῦ Ἡσαΐου προσάγοντος προφητείας, οὐκ ἔχειν οὕτως ταύτην ὁ Θεόφιλος ἀντέλεγεν, καὶ ἅμα τὴν ἑαυτοῦ βίβλον ἀνελίττων ἐδείκνυ τοὺς λόγους πιστοῦς. ὥς δὲ νενοθεῦσθαι ὑπ’ αὐτοῦ οὐ ταύτην δὴ
 20 μόνον ὁ ἅγιος ἐπεβόα ἀλλὰ καὶ πάσας τὰς εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χεῖρα βίβλους | B 105
 ἐληλακυίας, ἐκείνην ἔλεγε προστεθῆναι πρὸς αὐτὸν τὴν κατὰ τὴν πατρι-
 αρχικὴν ἐν τῷ Θωμαΐτῃ κατὰ τήνδε τὴν θέσιν κειμένην βιβλιοθήκην εἰς
 25 τῶν λεγομένων βεβαίωσιν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἀπέσταλτό τις καὶ θάττον ἢ λόγος ἦγαγεν, ἐκὼν μὲν ὁ βασιλεὺς περὶ τὴν τοῦ ῥήτου εὗρεσιν ἡμάρτανεν καὶ
 ἀλλαχοῦ ἀνείλιττεν αἰσχυρόμενος· ὥς δ’ ὑπὸ τοῦ μακαρίτου Θεοφάνους ἀνεδιδάσκετο, δακτυλοδεικτοῦντος ὥς “ἔτι τρία φύλλα διαβιβάσας τὸ
 30 ζητούμενον καταλάβοις”, τότε δὴ μὴ φέρων τὴν ἐκ τῶν ἀνδρῶν παρρησίαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ἀλήθειαν ἔχειν οὕτως εἰδώς, τὸ τῆς μακροθυμίας
 35 μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ἐπίπλαστον ἀπορρίψας καὶ τὸν θῆρα ἀνακαλύψας “οὐ δίκαιον”, ἔφησε, “βασιλέα ὑπὸ τοιούτων ἀνδρῶν ἐνυβρίζεσθαι.” ὅθεν προσέταξεν ἐν τῷ τοῦ Λαυσιακοῦ μεσοκηπίῳ τούτους ἀπαχθέντας ἀνά

Cap. 14: Encomium Theodori §27.133-§37.145; Vita Theodori Grapti 672B-680A; Vita Michaelis Sync 82.18-96.4; Acta Davidis 238.26-239.18; Gen 52.69-74; Log A 228.267-229.288 | PsSym 641.3-642.10; Scyl 61.45-63.92 || 9-10 cf. Iob 5.16 et Ps 62.12; 13-14 Is 52-53?

14.2 ἀνεγίνωσκε edd 3 ἐξεκάλει edd 4 φησι V 4 κατάρρατοι V 5 ἀφέντω δὴ V 5 γλώσση edd 7 ἔχειν οὕτω ποιεῖν edd e Scyl 61.51 οὕτω ποιεῖν 7 ἄλλ’ ἅττα V 9 οἱ om. edd, sed conl. Bekk in app. 10 κατὰ τοῦ θεοῦ τὸ λαλοῦν: τὸ κατὰ τοῦ θεοῦ λαλοῦν edd, cf. Scyl 61.54 τὸ λαλοῦν κατὰ τοῦ θεοῦ 14 ῥῆσιν τινὰ V 14 προσάγοντος B in marg. edd Boor: προσάγον V 15 ἑαυτοῦ V 16 ἐδείκνυ B: ἐδεικνύει Comb: ἐδείκνυε Bekk 17 τὴν om. edd 18 ἐληλακυίας V 18 ἔλεγε προστεθῆναι nos (προτεθῆναι Kamb), cf. Scyl 62.61-62 ἔλεγε προτιθεῖς ἰέναι: ἔλεγε προστιθεῖς ἔλεγε V: ἔλεγε προστιθεῖς τὴν βίβλον ἰέναι edd e Scyl: ἔλεγε προστιθεῖς κοιμισθῆναι Scyl 62.61-62 (B): ἔλεγε προστιθεῖς <ἰέναι> Boor 19 τήνδε V 20 γοῦν V 22 ἀνελίττεν V 25 παρρησίαν V 28 τούτους om. edd

14. He once also summoned the confessor Theophanes and his brother Theodore to speak in public about the faith in the hall of the Lausiakos, in as much as he knew that they surpassed common men in their eloquence. ‘Come then,’ he said, ‘ye accursed, in which citations of Scripture do you trust and take confidence as you worship the idols’ – for thus he called the holy images with his loose and defiled tongue – ‘assuring common and guileless men that this is right?’ And in a louder voice he added yet other blasphemous and unseemly insults against the image of Christ God. But when the blessed ones said: *‘Let the mouth be stopped that speaketh unlawful things against God’* and thereby undermined his confidence – for an unrighteous ruler cannot bear to be repoached to his face –, he played for a while the flatterer and enquired after the witnesses from the Prophets that enjoin this, namely, that the images should be worshipped. But when the blessed Theophanes brought forth a citation from the book of Isaiah, Theophilus declared in opposition that this citation did not run thus; and opening forthwith his own book he shewed the genuine words. And when the holy Theophanes cried out that not only this one but all the books which had come into his hands had been corrupted, Theophilus said that the book containing this passage deposited in the patriarchal library in the Thomais should be brought to him for confirmation of the words. No sooner had someone been dispatched and brought it than the emperor purposely missed finding the citation and, being ashamed, opened the book elsewhere. And when it was explained to him by the blessed Theophanes, pointing his finger, that ‘If you skip three more pages you will find what you seek’, he could no longer bear the men’s boldness of speech. And knowing that the truth was such, Theophilus threw off the forbearance he had feigned until then and revealed the beast: ‘It is not right,’ he said, ‘for an emperor to be insulted by such men.’ Whereupon he ordered that they should be taken into the garden courtyard (mesokepion) of the Lausiakos and beaten

30 διακοσίων ῥάβδων τυφθῆναι, καὶ τῷ μετώπῳ αὐτῶν ἐπιγραφῆναι βαρ-
 βαρικῶς ἐκκεντηθέντας οὓς συντέθεικε λήρους ἱαμβικούς, εἰσὶ δὲ οὗτοι·

Πάντων ποθούντων προστρέχειν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν

ὅπου πάναγνοι τοῦ θεοῦ λόγου πόδες

ἔστησαν εἰς σύστημα τῆς οἰκουμένης,

35 ὥφθησαν οὗτοι τῷ σεβασμίῳ τόπῳ

σκεύη πονηρὰ δεισιδαίμονος πλάνης.

ἐκεῖσε πολλὰ λοιπὸν ἐξ ἀπιστίας

πράξαντες αἰσχρὰ δεινὰ δυσσεβοφρόνως,

ἐκεῖθεν ἠλάθησαν ὡς ἀποστάται.

πρὸς τὴν πόλιν δὲ τοῦ κράτους πεφευγότες

40 | οὐκ ἐξαφῆκαν τὰς ἀθέσμους μαρίας.

ὅθεν γραφέντες ὡς κακοῦργοι τὴν θεάν

κατακρίνονται καὶ διώκονται πάλιν.

Τούτου δὲ θάττον γενομένου ἐκείνοι μὲν τὸν τῆς ὁμολογίας καὶ μαρ-
 τυρίας ἀνεδήσαντο στέφανον, οὗτος δὲ ὁ σοβαρὸς καὶ πάντων ἀθλίων
 45 ἀθλιώτερος πᾶσιν ἐδείχθη βλάσφημος καὶ διώκτης καὶ τῶν πώποτε
 κακοδόξων κακοδοξότερος.

15. Πρὸς τούτοις δὲ καὶ Μιχαὴλ τὸν σύγκελλον τῆς κατὰ τὴν ἀγίαν
 πόλιν ἐκκλησίας σὺν ἑτέροις πολλοῖς ἀσκηταῖς κατὰ τὴν φυλακὴν ἐγκαθ-
 εῖρξεν, τῇ πολυχρονίῳ κακώσει ὑπεῖξαι μηχανώμενος. τὰ μὲν δὲ κατὰ τῶν
 πιστῶν καὶ ἀγνῶν τοιαῦτα αὐτοῦ τὰ νεανιεύματα· καὶ τὸν μὲν δι' ἡμᾶς
 5 ὀφθέντα ἄνθρωπον, θεὸν ὄντα ἀληθινόν, οὕτως ὕβριζε τε καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ
 ἁγίους θεράποντας οὐχ οὕτω βραχεῖ χρόνῳ καὶ περιωρισμένῳ κατὰ
 πάντα δὲ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ χρόνον τῆς ζωῆς.

14.27–30 : 18 Iul. a. 836 secundum Vitam Michaelis Syncelli 96 in Graptorum fratrum fronte
 vv.1–4 incisi sunt.

Cap. 15: Vita Michaelis Sync passim | Scyl 63.92–4

29 ἀναδιακοσίων V 30 ἐγκεντηθέντας Bekk 30 συνέθηκε edd 31 ποθούντων Acta
 Davidis 239.5 Vita Michaelis Sync. 86.6 Vita Theodori Grapti 673D PsSym 641.20 Scyl 62.77 edd
 Boor : ποθούν V 31 ἐν τῇ πόλει PsSym 641.20 33 σύστημα V B in marg. Acta Davidis
 239.7 Scyl 62.79 (AEV) Comb in marg. Bekk : σύστασιν B Vita Michaelis Syncelli 86.8 Vita
 Theodori Grapti 673D PsSym 641.22 Scyl 62.79 (CBMN), Comb 36 κάκεισε Acta Davidis
 239.10 36 ἐξ ἀπιστίας Acta Davidis 239.10 Vita Michaelis Sync. 86.11 PsSym 642.2 : ἐξα-
 πιστίας V : ἐξ ἀγνωσίας Vita Theodori Grapti 673D 38 ἠλάθεισαν V : ἠλάσθησαν PsSym f
 244r 39 πρὸ PsSym f 244r 41 τὴν θεάν : τὰς ὄψεις PsSym 642.7 43 θάττον V
 43 ἐκείνοι V 15.3 πολυχρονίῳ edd 3 ὑπάξαι edd Boor e Scyl 63.94 4 ἀγνῶ V : ἀγνῶν
 B : ἀγίων edd e Scyl 63.95 5 ὕβριζε τε Bekker : ὕβριζεται V : ὕβριζεται B Comb 6 οὕτω
 seclusit Boor in app. 7 ζωῆς ἐκάκου καὶ ἀνηκέστοις ὑπεβάλλετο συμφοραῖς edd e Scyl
 63.3–4

with two-hundred strokes and that frivolous iambics which he had composed should be inscribed on their foreheads by pricking in barbarous wise. These are the verses:

Whilst all long to run to the City
 Where God the Word's all-holy feet
 Stood firm for World's constitution,
 Appeared these men in that place revered,
 Wicked vessels of superstitious error.
 There then, through faithlessness, having wrought
 Shameful evils aplenty with mind ungodly,
 Thence were they driven forth as rebels.
 To the City of empire did they fly,
 Though desisted not from lawless follies.
 Wherefore as malefactors marked on the face
 Are they condemned and pursued anew.

This being done straightway, the brothers put on the crown of the confessors and martyrs, whereas the haughty Theophilus, more wretched than all the wretched, was revealed to all as a blasphemer and persecutor and the most unorthodox ever of the unorthodox.

15. In addition to these he also confined to prison Michael the Syncellus of the Church of the Holy City together with many other ascetics, contriving that they should submit under long-lasting mistreatment. Such were his wanton acts against the faithful and pure; and thus did he insult both Him who, being true God, for our sake was seen as man, as well as his His holy servitors, and this not only for a short and circumscribed time, but throughout all his lifetime.

16. Ὑμνους δέ τινας ποιῶν καὶ στιχηρὰ μελίζων ᾄδεσθαι προετρέπετο· μεθ' ὧν καὶ τὸ τοῦ τετάρτου ἤχου “εὐλογεῖτε”, ἐκ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν ὁγδόην “ἄκουε, κόρη” ὥδῃν μεθαρμοσάμενος καὶ ῥυθμὸν παρασχών, ἐν τῇ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησίᾳ εἰς πάντων ἐπήκοον ᾄδεσθαι διωρίσατο. φέρεται δὲ καὶ
 5 λόγος τις ὡς αὐτὸς οὗτος ὁ Θεόφιλος ἔρωτι τοῦ μέλους βαλλόμενος, καθάπερ οἱ πατέρες | περὶ τὰ ἔκγονα, κατὰ τὴν μεγάλην ἐκκλησίαν <ἐν> φαι- B 107
 δρᾷ πανηγύρει οὐ παρητήσατο τὸ χειρονομεῖν, δούς τῷ κλήρῳ αὐτῆς λίτραις ὑπὲρ τούτου χρυσίου ἑκατόν. καὶ τὸ στιχηρὸν δὲ τὸ κατὰ τὴν βασιόφορον, “ἐξέλθετε ἔθνη, ἐξέλθετε καὶ λαοί”, τῆς ἐκείνης φασὶν εἶναι
 10 τόκον ψυχῆς.
17. Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὸν τῆς κεφαλῆς κόσμον ὀλίγον πως ἐκ φύσεως ἔφερε καὶ ψιλὸς τὰς τρίχας ὑπὴν, ἐθέσπισεν ἀπανταχῇ ἐν χρῶ ταύτας ἀπο- κείρειν καὶ μὴ τινα Ῥωμαῖον ὄντα τοῦ τραχήλου περαιτέρω φέρειν συγχωρεῖν· εἰ δέ τις καὶ φωραθῇ, πολλαῖς αἰκιζόμενον μάστιξιν πρὸς τὴν
 5 τῶν προγόνων Ῥωμαίων ἐπανάγεσθαι ἀρετὴν· τούτῳ γὰρ καὶ οὗτοι τῷ τριχώματι ἐσεμνύνοντο. ὅθεν καὶ νόμον ἐξέθετο τοῦ μὴ τινα διόλου κατα- τολμᾶν περαιτέρω ταύτας τοῦ αὐχένος προβαίνειν ἔαν.
18. Ἔδει δὲ ἄρα καὶ τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ συγγένειαν | προ- f. 36r
 νοήσασθαι τε καὶ διοικῆσαι κατὰ τὸ τούτῳ δοκοῦν· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο, ἐπεὶ πέντε μὲν ἔτυχε τηνικαῦτα θυγατέρων ὑπάρχειν πατὴρ, ἔρημος δὲ ἀρρε- νικῆς ὠρᾶτο γονῆς, τὴν πασῶν ἐσχάτην Μαρίαν ἡγαπημένην οὔσαν τῶν
 5 ἄλλων ᾤκησε δεῖν συζευξάμεν ἀνδρὶ. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ τῆς τῶν Κρηνιτῶν κατήγετο γενεᾶς, χώρας τῆς τῶν Ἀρμενίων, Ἀλέξιος τοῦνομα, Μουσελὲ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν, τῷ εἶδει ὠραῖος, ἀκμάζων τὴν ἡλικίαν, οἰκῶν κατὰ τὸ τῆς ἀκροπόλεως μέρος, κατὰ τὰς οὕτω καλουμένας τῆς Κρηνιτίσσης | οἰκίας· ὃν B 108
 πρῶτον μὲν τῇ τῶν πατρικίων καὶ ἀνθυπάτων τιμήσας ἀξία διὰ τὸ πρὸς

Cap. 16: | Scyl 63.5–13 || 2–3 Analecta hymnica graeca, Canones Decembris dies 6, canon 20, oda 9; 9 Follieri I. 486 et V.1.272; Zonaras 15.27 Cap. 17: | Scyl 64.13–19 Cap. 18: Log A 219.66–220.103 | PsSym 630.11–632.2; Scyl 64.20–65.48

16.3 ὥδῃν V 3 μεθ' ἄρμοσάμενος V 3 ῥυθμὸν <ἕτερον> Boor in app. e Scyl 63.8 4 δὲ V: δὴ edd 5 τίς V 6 οἱ om. edd 6 <ἐν> suppl. edd Boor e Scyl 63.10 9 ἐκείνης V Comb: ἐκείνου Bekk Boor e Scyl 63.13 17.2 ὑπὴν V 4 δε τίς V 4 καὶ om. edd Boor 4 αἰκι- ζομενος (sic) V: αἰκιζόμενος B Comb 5 τοῦτο V 5 τῷ om. edd 7 κατὰ τολμᾶν V 7 ταύτας om. B edd 18.1 καταυτὸν V 2 διατοῦτο V 3 τηνικαῦτα V 4 Μαρίαν ὑπερβαλλόντως ἡγαπημένην edd e Scyl 64.21–22 5 τῆς: ἐκ τῆς Boor in app. 5 Κρηνητῶν V, sed cf. infra III.18.8 Κρηνιτίσσης: Κρινιτῶν Scyl 64.23: Κρινητῶν Scyl 64.23 (B) 6 τοῦ- νομα V 6 Μωσηλέ Scyl 64.24 7 οἰκῶν V 8 οἰκίας V 9 πατρικίῳ V 9 τῶν ἀνθυπάτων edd

16. Composing hymns and setting versicles to music he prescribed that they should be sung, amongst them the *Praise Ye* of the fourth tone. This he adapted and arranged in the measure of ‘Hark, Maiden’ of the Eighth Ode, and he commanded that it should be sung to the hearing of all in the church of God. There is also a report that this same Theophilus, stricken with love of song even as parents are for their children, did not decline the directing of the choir on a splendid feast day in the Great Church, having given the latter’s clergy one hundred pounds of gold on this account. They say, also, that the versicle for Palm Sunday ‘Go out ye nations, go out ye peoples’ is also the offspring of that soul.

17. Now because he had by nature rather little adornment of the head and was stripped of hair, he decreed that this latter should shorn everywhere on the skin and that no Roman should be permitted to wear his hair beyond the neck. If anyone was caught doing so, he was to be tortured with many whippings in order to recall him to the virtue of his Roman forebears; for they prided themselves on keeping their hair in such a way. Therefore he issued a law that no one should dare in any wise allow his hair to grow beyond the neck.

18. It also behooved him to take thought for his own affairs and his family and to make provision as he deemed fitting. Therefore, because he was then the father of five daughters, and appeared to be without male offspring, he thought it necessary to marry Maria, the very last of all – she being preferred above the others – to a man. This man was descended from the race of the Krenitai, from a place in the land of the Armenians; his name was Alexios, with the surname Mousele. He was fair of form, in the prime of age, and he lived in the area of the acropolis in the so-called houses of the Krenitissa. At first, because of the other’s affection for his daughter, Theophilus honoured him with the office of patrikios and proconsul; and then he proclaimed him

- 10 τὴν θυγατέρα τούτου φιλόστοργον, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ μάγιστρον καὶ καίσαρα
τὸ ἔσχατον ἀνηγόρευσεν, στρατεύματά τε δούς ἱκανὰ πρὸς τὴν Λαγο-
βαρδίαν ἐξέπεμψεν, χρεῖας τῆνικαῦτα κατεπειγούσης τινός. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀπῆι
καλῶς τὰ κατ’ αὐτὸν ἐξανύων, καὶ ὡς ἐδόκει τῷ βασιλεῖ· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἤκ-
μαζε μὲν ὁ πρὸς αὐτὸν πόθος τοῦ βασιλέως, συνήκμαζε δὲ καὶ ὁ ἐξ ἀν-
15 θρώπων φθόνος αὐτῷ, καὶ τινες ἐλοιδόρουν καὶ βλάσφημά τινα ἔφασκον
κατ’ αὐτοῦ, ὡς τῆς τε βασιλείας ἐπιθυμεῖ καὶ δεῖ ποτε τὸ ἄλφα τοῦ θῆτα
κατακυριεῦσαι. ὅθεν ἐπεὶ τὰς κατ’ αὐτοῦ συρραφείσας διαβολὰς ὁ καίσαρ
Ἀλέξιος διακήκοεν, τὸν φθόνον ὥσπερ κατευαλούμενος πολλὰ τοῦ βα-
σιλέως ἐδέετο οἰκτεῖραι τοῦτον καὶ συγχωρῆσαι πρὸς τὸν μονήρη βίον με-
20 τατάσθαι. ἀλλὰ τότε μὲν οὐτ’ ἐκεῖνος συνεχώρησεν, τὴν χηρείαν τῆς θυ-
γατρὸς προβαλλόμενος, καὶ ὁ ῥηθεὶς καίσαρ ἔμενεν ἐφ’ ἡσυχίας πολλῆς τοῖς
δημοσίοις ἐνασχολούμενος πράγμασιν. ὡς δὲ τὸν Μιχαὴλ ἐγέννησεν ὁ Θε-
όφιλος, καὶ ἡ τούτου μὲν θυγάτηρ τοῦ καίσαρος δὲ γαμετὴ τὸν βίον
μετήλλαξε, ταύτην μὲν τοσοῦτον τετίμηκεν ὡς καὶ τὸν χοῦν αὐτῆς ἐν
25 λάρνακι θεῖναι περιηργυρωμένη καὶ προνόμιον δοῦναι διὰ λελαξευμένων ἐν
αὐτῇ ἱάμβων ἀσυλίας τοῖς ἐφ’ οἰοισδῆποτε ἐγκλήμασιν ἀνθρώποις ἀλοῦσι
καὶ προσφυγοῦσιν ἐκεῖ· τὸν Ἀλέξιον δὲ λάθρα μεταταξάμενον καὶ τὸ μο-
ναχικὸν ἀμφιεσάμενον ἔσθημα, ἐπεὶ μὴ ἐδύνατο πείσαι τοῦ πάλιν αὐτὸ | f. 36v
30 αὐτοῦ ἔκρινεν εἶναι ἀλλ’ ἐν παραβύστῳ που καὶ γωνίᾳ. ὅθεν ἐδίδου τούτῳ
δωρεὰν τό τε κατὰ Χρυσόπολιν βασιλικὸν μοναστήριον, προσέτι μὴν καὶ
τὸ τοῦ Βυρσέως καὶ τὸ κατὰ τὸν Ἑλαίαν. ἀλλ’ ἐκεῖνος τῷ κατὰ τὴν
Χρυσόπολιν ὄντι ἐνδιαιτώμενος, ἐπεὶ ποτε περιπάτου ἐδέθη καὶ κατὰ τὸν
Ἀνθεμίου τόπον ἐγένετο, βασιλικῶν τῆνικαῦτα τυγχάνοντα τῶν
35 Μαγγάνων, ἔλεγεν δὲ ὡς ἕκαστον τῶν σεμνείων τῶν οἰκοδομούντων φέρει
τὴν κλῆσιν ἀθάνατον, εἴλετο τοῦτον διὰ βασιλικῆς προστάξεως ἐξωνήσα-
σθαι καὶ ἴδιον κατασκευάσαι. ὁ καὶ διὰ τῆς βασιλίδος Θεοδώρας ἐγένετο,
τῆς αὐτοῦ πενθερᾶς. ὅθεν καλῶς ἐποικοδομήσας καὶ εἰς μοναχικὴν τάξιν
ἀγαγὼν ἐκείσε τὸν βίον ἐκλιμπάνων ἐτέθη, τὸν τάφον καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ
40 ἄνωθεν ἐπιγεγραμμένην εἰκόνα μάρτυρα ἔχων τῶν λεγομένων. οὐ μὴν

f. 36v
B 109

18.10–11 : Alexius Musele ca. a. 837 Caesar electus est; cf. Signes 2014, 115–124 11–12 : a. 838 Theophilus Alexium ad Italiam misit. 22–23 : 9–10 Ian. a. 840 Michael Theophili filius natus est. 23–24 : a. 839–840 Maria Theophili filia obiit

12 Λογοβαρδίαν Comb : Λογγοβαρδίαν Bekk 13 ἀνύων edd 13 διατοῦτο V 15 καὶ
τινες V 15 ἔφασκον V 24 μετήλλαξεν edd 25 διαλελαξευμένων V 26 ἐφοιοις
δήποτε V : ἐφ’ οἰοις δήποτε edd 26 ἀλοῦσιν edd 27 μεταταξάμενος V 28 τὸν μοναχι-
κὸν V 28 μεταμφιασάμενον edd 28 ἡδύνατο edd 31 δωρεάς V 32 Βρύσεως Scyl
65.42 (VB) 32 τὸ τοῦ κατὰ edd 33 ἐπεὶ ποτε V 34 βασιλικὸν V Boor 35 μάγγανων
V 36 εἴλετο V

magistros and, finally, cesar; and giving him ample troops he dispatched him to Lagobardia, for there was then an urgent necessity. And thus he went off, accomplishing his task well and as was fitting to the emperor. For this reason the emperor's fondness for him abounded, but together with this abounded also men's envy of him, and some of them reviled and uttered slanders against him: that he coveted the empire and that one day the Alpha must gain dominion over the Theta. Therefore, when the cesar Alexios learnt of the false accusations stitched together against him, as if taking precaution against envy, he many times besought the emperor to have mercy on him and allow him to take up the monastic life. But at the time Theophilus would not allow this, citing as a reason the widowhood of his daughter, and thus the aforementioned cesar continued with full calm his activity in public affairs. However, after Theophilus begat Michael, and his daughter, the cesar's wife, left this life, he so honoured her as to place her remains in a coffin covered with silver and to grant, through iambics chiselled upon it, the privilege of asylum to persons who sought refuge there, whatsoever the crimes they stood convicted of; and as for Alexios, who had secretly changed estate and clothed himself in the monastic habit, Theophilus, being unable to convince him to take it off again, grudgingly agreed, heaping many reproaches on the other because he chose not to be with him, but in some hole and corner. Whereupon he gave him as a gift the imperial monastery in Chrysopolis, as well as that of Byrseus and also that in Elaias. But the other, whilst living in the monastery in Chrysopolis, once wanted a walk and came to the place called Anthemios, then a part of the imperial Mangana, and said: 'Each of these holy places bears the eternal name of its founders'; and he chose to purchase this place through imperial decree and to construct his own monastery. This was done by order of the empress Theodora, his mother in law. Whereupon, having built it up very well and brought it to monastic regulation, he left this life and was buried there, his tomb and inscribed image above it being witness of what we have re-

ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ τούτου ἀδελφὸς Θεοδόσιος πλησίον τέθεται αὐτοῦ, πατρικίων τιμῇ ἐγκαταλεγείς, πολλὰ γνωρίσματα τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀρίστης βιώσεως ἐν τῷ μοναστηρίῳ καταλιπών.

19. Ἐγκειμένων δὲ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν καὶ μετὰ πολλῶν μυριάδων τοῦ Ἰβραῆμ κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐκστρατεύοντος, καὶ ὁ Θεόφιλος ἔρωτι φιλοτιμίας καὶ γενναιότητος ἐπὶ πόλεμον ἔξεισιν, ἄνδρον οὐδὲν οὐδὲ μαλακὸν ἐν-
 5 νοῶν· εἰ γάρ τι καὶ δέος προσῆν, ἀλλ' ἡ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ ἀνδρῶν κατὰ πολέμους πείρᾳ τε καὶ γενναιότης ἀπέτρεπε τοῦτο καὶ πόρρω ποι
 ἐναπέπεμπε. Θεόφοβος οἱ ἄνδρες | καὶ Μανουὴλ ἐκαλοῦντο. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν B 110
 Μανουὴλ δῆλος ἐπ' ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἅπασι γνώριμος· ἐξ Ἀρμενίων γὰρ τὴν γένεσιν ἦν, καὶ τοῦ στρατοῦ τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν ἐπὶ
 10 τοῦ Λέοντος προηγούμενος, καὶ τοῦ πρὸ αὐτοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἵπποκόμων ὁ πρῶτος· πρωτοστράτορα τοῦτόν φασι. δηλώσει δὲ καὶ τὸν Θεόφοβον ὁ λόγος ὅθεν τε καὶ ὅπως ἐκ Περσῶν καταγόμενος τῷ βασιλεῖ γέγονε
 γνώριμος καὶ τὴν ἀδελφὴν αὐτοῦ εἰς γάμον ἡρμόσατο. εἰς πρεσβείαν
 15 τίς ποτε τῶν ἐκ βασιλικῆς σειρᾶς Περσῶν ἀφικόμενος πρὸς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου, οὐκ ἐκ νομίμου συναφείας, κρυφίου δὲ καὶ λαθραίας τοῦ- f. 37r
 20 τον γεννηθῆναι ποιήσας ἐξαπεδήμησεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ νόμος τοῖς Πέρσαις ἀπαρά- βατος μὴ τίνα τῆς παρ' αὐτῶν ἀρχῆς ἐγκρατῇ γενέσθαι, εἰ μὴ τῆς βα- σιλικῆς μετέχῃ σειρᾶς, ἐξέλιπον δὲ ἐκ τῶν συνεχῶν πολέμων καὶ τῇδε κάκεισε μετασκηνώσεων ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐλαυνόμενοι οἱ τῆς βασι- λικῆς φυλῆς, ἀλλὰ καὶ λόγος ἐφέρετο πολὺς περὶ αὐτοῦ παρὰ τῶν ἐν
 25 Περσίδι μενόντων, ὡς εἴη τις κατὰ τὸ Βυζάντιον ὠνομασμένος Θεόφοβος – καὶ γὰρ ἦν δοθεὶς ὑπὸ τοῦ τηνικαῦτα σπείραντος τοῦτον πατρός –, ἔδοξε τοῖς ἀρίστοις τῶν Περσῶν κρύφα τινὰς ἐκπέμψαι τοῦ ζητουμένου εἰς ἔρευ- ναν. καὶ δὴ καταλαβόντες τὴν ἡμετέραν μόγις ποτὲ τοῦτον τῇ μητρὶ συνόντα καὶ κατὰ τὴν Ὀξείαν ἐνδαιτώμενον προσεφύρισκον. ἐπεὶ γοῦν
 25 οὐκ ἐκ τινων μόνον ἰνδαλμάτων ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτῶν <τῶν> τῆς ψυχῆς καὶ σώματος γνωρισμάτων ὁ ζητούμενος ἐδηλοῦτό τε καὶ ἐγνωρίζετο, B 111
 προσέτι μὴν καὶ τῶν ἐκ γειτόνων ἐμαρτύρει τις τὴν γενομένην τῇ γυναικί

Cap. 19: Gen 36.1–37.8, 37.16–38.45, 40.3–10; Log A 218.39–40 | PsSym 625.22–23, 626.3–9, 627.6–8; Scyl 65.49–66.79

42 τιμή V 42 ἐγκαταλεγείς V 19.2 Ἰμβραήλ Scyl 65.49 (ACEVB) : Ἰμβριήλ Scyl 65.49 (MN) 4 πρὸς ἦν V 6 μὲν om. edd, sed con. Bekk in app. 7 δῆλος : δεινὸς edd 8 ἐξἀρμενίων V 10 πρωτοστράτωρα Boor 10 τοῦτον φασί V 11 ὅθεν τε V 13 ποτέ V 14 συναφίας V 16 ἀρχῆς V 17 μετέχῃ edd 17 σειρὰς V 17 πόλεμων V 20 εἴη Boor, cf. Scyl 66.65 : εἴ Vat : ἡ edd 21 <δια>δοθεὶς con. Comb in marg e Scyl 66.66 23 τοῦτον ποτέ Comb : τοῦτόν ποτε Bekk 24 πρὸς ἐφύρισκον V 24 γοῦν V 25 ἔκτων V 25 <τῶν> suppl. Boor in app. e Scyl 66.70 26 ἐδηλοῦτο τότε edd 27 πρὸς ἔτι V 27 τίς V

counted. Moreover, near him is also buried his brother Theodosius who was enrolled in the ranks of the patrikioi and who left many marks of his most excellent life in the monastery.

19. Now, as the Hagarenes were pressing down and Ibraim took the field against the Romans with many tens of thousands of men, Theophilus, with longing for honour and nobility, also went out to war, taking thought for nothing unmanly or soft. For even if he had any fear, the experience in war and nobility of the men who were with him dispelled and banished it far away. The men were called Theophobos and Manuel. This Manuel was conspicuous for his courage and was known to all the enemy. He was of Armenian race, and was head of the army of the Anatolics under Leo; and under the latter's predecessor Michael he had been the chief of the grooms: protostrator, as it is called. Our account will also show Theophobos: from whence and how, being of Persian descent, he became known to the emperor and took his sister to wife. For once a certain man of royal lineage of the Persians came to the city of Constantine and, having engendered this Theophobos not by a legal relation but a clandestine and secret one, departed. Now, it is unviolable law for the Persians that no one may be their ruler unless he be of royal lineage; but on account of the continuous wars and displacements here and there, their royal race had died out, driven off by the Hagarenes. Thus it was that there was much talk of him amongst those who remained in Persia: that there was in Byzantium a certain man named Theophobos – for report of him was spread abroad at the time by the father who begat him – and the chiefs of the Persians resolved to dispatch certain persons secretly to find the one they sought. And coming to our city they finally found him with great pains living with his mother at Oxeia. And because the one they sought was revealed and made manifest not by just any appearances but by the very marks of soul and body and, moreover, one of the neighbours bore witness to the woman's re-

πρὸς τὸν Πέρσῃν συνάφειαν – οὐ γάρ τι κρυπτὸν ὁ τοῖς πολλοῖς οὐ
 γνωσθήσεται –, δήλους ἑαυτοὺς οἱ ἀπεσταλμένοι ποιοῦσι τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ
 30 τὰ τοῦ δράματος σαφηνίζουσιν, εἰρήνην καὶ σπονδὰς καὶ παντὸς τοῦ
 ἔθνους ὑποταγὴν καθυπισχνούμενοι, εἰ τοῦτον αὐτοῖς ἐπιδοῦναι οὐ παρ-
 αιτήσεται. ἐγεγήθει γοῦν τοῖς ὑποσχεθεῖσιν ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ ἐπείπερ οὕτως
 ἔχουσιν εὗρισκε τὴν ἀλήθειαν, ἐν <τοῖς> βασιλείοις τοῦτον ἀυλίζεσθαι καὶ
 κατασκηνοῦν ποιεῖ, μαθήμασί τε καὶ παιδείᾳ ἐπιμελούμενος.

20. Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἄλλος λόγος περὶ τοῦ Θεοφόβου – καλὸν γὰρ ἀμφο-
 τέρους εἰρῆσθαι –, μικρὸν μὲν κατὰ τὴν ἀρχὴν διενηνοχέει δοκῶν,
 τᾶλλα δὲ ὅμοια σώζων τῶν γεγραμμένων καὶ ἀρίστα· ἔστιν δὲ ὃς οὐκ
 ἀπὸ πρέσβεως τινος τὴν νόθον σποράν δέξασθαι τοῦτον φησιν, ἀλλὰ
 5 κατὰ τινὰ περιπέτειαν τῶν ἐν πολέμοις συμβαινόντων καὶ τὸν τούτου
 πατέρα, εἴτε βασιλεύοντα εἴτε καὶ βασιλέως ἐγγὺς ὄντα κατὰ συγγένειαν,
 φυγεῖν ἐκ Περσίδος καὶ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσιν πένητα διαθλοῦντα βίον
 προσρυῆναι, κάκεισε καπηλίδι τινὶ γυναικῶν δουλεύοντα ὅπῃ ποτε
 ἀλῶναι τῷ ταύτης ἔρωτι καὶ νομίμῳ συναφείᾳ τοῦτον ἐναποτεκεῖν. ἀλλ' f. 37v
 10 ὁ μὲν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο, ἀστρονομία δὲ τινὶ καὶ μαντεία – καὶ γὰρ
 φασὶ ταύτας τὰς ἐπιστήμας ἀκμάζειν ἔτι παρὰ Πέρσαις – μαθεῖν περὶ τοῦ
 Θεοφόβου ζητοῦσιν αὐτοῖς εἰ ἔστι πού τις ἐκ βασιλικῆς φυλῆς κα-
 ταγό|μενος, καὶ ἐπείπερ ἔμαθον, σπουδῇ ἐπὶ τὴν Κωνσταντίνου θεῖν εἰς B 112
 15 τὴν τοῦ ζητουμένου ἔρευναν. καὶ γνωστὸν οὕτως γενέσθαι τῷ βασιλεῖ,
 καταληφθέντος αὐτοῦ. ἐπείπερ οὖν ἡ τούτου ἐμφάνεια καὶ κατὰ τὸν βίον
 παρουσία ἅπασιν ἐγνώσθη τοῖς κατὰ τὴν Περσίδα διὰ τῶν ὑπο-
 στρεφάντων ἀποστόλων, ἥδὴ πᾶσιν ἐφάνη καὶ ἐφετὸν τοῦ ἀπόστασιν
 τινὰ ἐννοῆσαι ἀπὸ τῶν τῆς Ἄγαρ, τῇ δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ προσχωρή-
 σαι, ὥς ἂν τοῦ κατὰ γένος ἀρχηγοῦ εὐμοιρήσειαν.

19.29–32: tempus legationis Persarum apud imperatorem incertum est, forte 833–834, cf. Signes
 2014, 153–163 et etiam infra III.20.15–19 20.15–19: de tempore legationis Persarum cf. supra
 III.19.29–32

|| 28–29 Matt 10.26, Luc 12.2 Cap. 20: Gen 38.45–49, 38.62–40.3 | PsSym 625.22–23,
 626.16–627.6; Scyl 66.79–67.94

31 καθ' ὑπισχνούμενοι V 31 ἐπιδοῦναι: cf. ἀποδοῦναι et παραδοῦναι apud Scyl 66.76
 32 ἐγεγήθη V 32 γοῦν V 33 εὗρισκε V 33 <τοῖς> suppl. Boor, cf. Scyl 66.78
 34 ἐπιμελούμενον edd: ante quod lacunam con. Boor 20.1 ἐστὶ V 2 εἰρῆσθαι V
 4 οὐκαποπρέσβεως V 4 τοῦτον φῆσιν V 8 κακέισε V 9 ἀλῶναι om. edd 9 ἐν
 ἀποτεκεῖν V 11 γὰρ φασὶ V 12 ποῦ V 13 ἐπὶ τὴν Bekk: τὴν ἐπὶ V Comb: τὴν ἐπὶ
 τὴν con. Boor 13 θεῖν V 14 καὶ om. edd 18 ἀπόστασιν τινὰ V 18 ἀρχῇ V

lation with the Persian – for there is no secret which will not become known to the multitude –, those who had been dispatched made themselves known to the emperor and explained the matter, promising peace and tribute and the submission of all their people if only he would not refuse to give them Theophobos. The emperor rejoiced at these promises; and because he found this to be the truth, he caused him to live and dwell in the palace and took care for his lessons and education.

20. There is also another story about Theophobos – for it is good that both be told – which seems to differ at the beginning, though it preserves a similar and parallel account for the rest. It is this which says that Theophobos did not have illegitimate origins from some ambassador, but rather, through one of the reversals of circumstances which occur in wars, his father, who was either the king or some one close to the king by kinship, fled from Persia and took refuge, suffering a life of poverty, in the imperial city; and that there he was in service to a certain woman who kept a tavern, and at length he was seized by desire for her and begat Theophobos in lawful union. Now, the father departed from men, but through some sort of astronomy or divination – for they say these sciences still thrive amongst the Persians – it happened that these same learnt about Theophobos as they sought out whether there was anywhere anyone descended from royal lineage; and when they learnt they rushed to the city of Constantine to find the one they sought. And thus it became known to the emperor, once Theophobos had been found. And when Theophobos's appearance and existence in this life was made known to all in Persia through the envoys who had returned, it seemed to all good and desirable to devise a revolt against the sons of Hagar and to go over to the rule of the Romans, so that they might have the benefit of a chief of their own race.

21. Ἐτυχε δὲ καὶ ἄλλως ὁ τῶν Περσῶν ἀρχηγὸς Βάβεκ ἤδη πενταετίαν ἔχων ἐξ ἡμεραμουννῆ ἀποστὰς καὶ πτέρναν ἐπάρας κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐν χιλιάσιν ἐπτὰ· ὃς καὶ πόθῳ τῷ πρὸς τὸν Θεόφοβον καὶ φόβῳ τοῦ ἐξ οὗ ἀπέστη Ἀγαρηνοῦ πρὸς τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἐπικράτειαν κατὰ πόλιν Σινώπην
 5 ἔρχεται, καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ αὐτόν τε καὶ τὸ ὄλον ἔθνος ὑπήκοον τέθεικεν. διὰ τοι τοῦτο τὸν τε Θεόφοβον ὁ Θεόφιλος τιμῇ τῇ πατρικίων ἐναριθμεῖ, καὶ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφῇ πρὸς γάμον ἐκδίδωσι, συναρμόζεσθαι τε ἕκαστον τῶν Περσῶν νομοθετεῖ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις καὶ κατ' ἐπιγαμίαν ἄπτεσθαι τε καὶ συν-
 10 ποιηκῶς. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ κώδιξι στρατιωτικοῖς αὐτοὺς ἀναγράφεται, καὶ τάγμα οὕτως καλούμενον Περσικὸν ἐγκατέστησε, καὶ τοῖς κατὰ πόλεμον ἐξιοῦσι Ῥωμαίοις κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐναριθμεῖσθαι προσέταξε.

22. Τούτοις γοῦν τεθαρρηκῶς ὁ Θεόφιλος, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄλλως ἤδει τούτους ἀνδραγαθίζομένους, εἰς πόλεμον κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἔξεισι καὶ τοῦ Ἰβραήμ καθ' ἡμῶν, ὡς εἴρηται, ἐκστρατεύσαντος. ἐπεὶ περ γοῦν ἐγγὺς
 5 ἀλλήλων ὃ τε τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἀρχηγὸς ἐγεγόνει καὶ ὁ Θεόφιλος, ἔδει δὲ καὶ βουλῆς, ὁ μὲν Μανουήλ οὐ δίκαιον ἔφησε βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων πρὸς ἡμεραμουννῆ πολεμεῖν, ἀλλὰ τινα μέρος λαβόντα τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐξίεναι κατὰ πρόσωπον τῶν ἐχθρῶν, καὶ ἅμα μεθ' ἡμέραν τοῦτο ποιεῖν, ὁ Θε-
 10 φόφοτος δὲ εἶναι μὲν ἐπὶ παρατάξεως τὸν βασιλέα ἐβούλετο, νύκτωρ δὲ ἐπιτεθῆναι αὐτοῖς μετὰ τοῦ τῶν Περσῶν πεζικοῦ, καὶ ὅτε πάλιν δεήσειεν, ἐπικυκλῶσαι τὸ ἵππικόν. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἔπεισε τὸν βασιλέα, εἰπόντων πολλῶν, ὡς σφετεριζομένου τοῦ Θεοφόβου τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων δόξαν καὶ διὰ τοῦτο βουλομένου ἐν νυκτὶ πολεμεῖν· πλὴν ἔδοξεν εἰς τοῦμφανὲς μεθ' ἡμέραν συρ-
 15 ρῆξαι τὸν πόλεμον. καὶ ὁ μὲν Ἰβραήμ, εἴτ' ἄλλως καταλαζονεόμενος εἴτε δὴ καὶ φόβῳ τοῦ βασιλέως περιστοιχιζόμενος, μέρος λαβὼν τοῦ στρατοῦ ἀνεχώρησεν, Ἀβουζάχαρ δὲ πρὸς τὸν κατὰ βασιλέως πόλεμον μετὰ μυ-

21.1–2 : a. 816 Babek insurrexit, sed modo postea, ab a. 833 usque ad eius obitum in a. 837, bellum contra caliphum aperte gessit 4–5 : non verisimile est ut Babek a. 837 usque ad Sinopem proficisceretur. Forte notitia a confusione loci nata est. 22.1–3 : tempus proelii inter Theophilum et hunc Ibrahim ignotum est. sed haec narratio ad eosdem eventus forte refert qui apud Anzen a. 838 acciderunt et in III.31–32 ex alia narratione enarrantur; cf. praeterea III.24

Cap. 21: Gen 38.49–61, 40.10–14; Log A 218.40–44 | PsSym 625.22–626.3; 626.9–16; Scyl 67.94–9 Cap. 22: Gen 40.15–20, 42.71–43.87 | Scyl 67.10–68.44

21.1 καὶ om. edd 2 ἡμεραμουννὶ V 3 τῷ om. edd 3 φόβῳ τῷ edd 4 Σινώπιν V 8 ἄπτεσθαι V 10 μὴν om. edd 12 προσέταξε V 22.1 γοῦν V 3 γοῦν V 4 ἐγεγόνει V 6 τῶν στρατιωτικῶν edd : τῶν στρατιωτῶν τὸν στρατηγὸν conl. Boor in app., cf. Scyl 67.14 τῶν στρατηγῶν 8 ἐπιπαρατάξεως V 11 ὡς om. edd 11 διατοῦτο V 12 τουμφανὲς V 14 τοῦ ante βασιλέως om. edd : iteravit V 15 Ἀβουζάχαρ edd

21. It happened besides that the leader of the Persians Babek had already revolted against the ameramnounes five years before and resisted him with seven thousand. And he, out of longing for Theophobos but also out of fear of the Hagarene against whom he had revolted, came over to the Roman dominion at the city of Sinope and made submission for himself and all his people to the emperor. For this reason Theophilus enrolled Theophobos in the ranks of the patrikioi and gave him his own sister in marriage, and he made it legal for any Persian to marry Romans and to be joined and united in wedlock, causing many of them to be distinguished by imperial dignities. He also inscribed them in the lists of the army and established a so-called Persian regiment, and he commanded that they should be numbered amongst the Romans who went out to war against the Hagarenes.

22. Trusting in these men, since from elsewhere he knew them to behave in manly fashion, Theophilus went out to battle against the Hagarenes and Ibraim who, as we said, had taken the field against us. Now, when the chief of the Saracens and Theophilus were near each other and counsel was needed, Manuel said that it was not right for the emperor to do battle with the ameramnounes, but that someone should take a contingent of soldiers and go out to meet the enemy, and this by day; Theophobos, however, wanted the emperor to be in the ranks and to set upon them by night together with the Persian infantry and then, if need be, to have the cavalry surround them. But he did not convince the emperor, for many others said that Theophobos was appropriating the glory of the Romans and therefore wanted them to do battle at night; rather, he decided to engage battle in the open by day. Now Ibraim, either posturing otherwise or else caught up in fear of the emperor, taking a contingent of the army, withdrew, and he sent Abuzachar with eighty thou-

- ριάδων ὁκτώ ἑξαπέστελλεν, οἳ καὶ καρτερῶς ἄγαν ἀνδρισταμένων ἀμφο-
τέρων ἐπὶ πολὺ, τέλος ἐνδοῦναι τὰς σχολὰς μετὰ τοῦ δομestikou καὶ
πρὸς φυγὴν τραπῆναι ἐξεβιάσαντο. ὅθεν ὁ βασιλεὺς μετὰ τῆς βασιλικῆς
20 φάλαγγος καὶ δύο χιλιάδων Περσῶν, προσόντος τούτοις καὶ τοῦ Θεοφό-
βου, ἐπὶ τινος βουνοῦ σέσωστο, τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς κίνδυνον ὑφορώμενος. καὶ
ἄχρι μὲν ἐσπέρας πολὺς ἦν ὁ περὶ αὐτὸν πόλεμος, τῶν μὲν ἐλπιζόντων
τοῦτον ἐπὶ χεῖρας λαβεῖν, τῶν δὲ ἀνταμυνόντων καὶ μὴ προδοῦναι τοῦ-
τον διακαρτερούντων. | διὸ νυκτὸς ἄρτι γενομένης κρότοις χειρῶν τε καὶ B 114
ἀλαλαγμοῖς ἔχρωντο οἱ μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, χαίρειν προσποιούμενοι,
25 κιννύραις τε καὶ χορδαῖς καὶ ἄλλως βουκίνων φωναῖς τὸν αἰθέρα πε-
ριεδόνουν, ἐλπίδας οὐ τὰς τυχοῦσας ἔχειν τοῖς ἐχθροῖς θέλοντες περιποιῆ-
σαι. ὁ καὶ συνέβη· μίλια γὰρ ἕξ ὑποχωρῆσαι τούτοις εἰς τοῦπίσω τινὰ κατ-
ορρωδοῦσι προσβολὴν τε καὶ κύκλωσιν προσεγένετο. ὅθεν ἀδείας
30 τυχόντες μικρὰς οἱ περὶ τὸν βασιλέα, πόρρω που νυκτῶν φυγὴ χρησάμε-
νοι τὴν σωτηρίαν ἐπραγματεύσαντο, καὶ πρὸς τῷ καταπροδόντι τοῦτον
στρατεύματι καὶ τὰ νῶτα δόντι τοῖς ἐχθροῖς διεσώθησαν. μέμψει μὲν οὖν
πολλαῖς μόνον ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸ προδεδωκὸς στράτευμα καθυπέβαλεν,
χάρισι δὲ καὶ τιμαῖς διαφερόντως τοὺς περὶ τὸν Θεόφοβον. ὅθεν οἱ Πέρσαι
ἔρωτι διαπύρῳ πρὸς τὸν Θεόφοβον ἐξεκαίοντο, καὶ θυμηδίᾳ ἀρρήτῳ τινὶ
35 ἀναθαρρυνόμενοι μόνον μετ' αὐτοῦ τὸν κατ' Ἀγαρηνῶν ὑποδύεσθαι πόλε-
μον ἐλιτάνευον, καὶ τρέπειν τούτους | ἕξ ἀηττήτου δυνάμεως ἐβεβαίουν· f. 38v
διὸ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἡγεμονεύειν αὐτῶν ἐβούλετο τὸν Θεόφοβον.
23. Τῷ δ' ἐπιόντι ἐνιαυτῷ ἕξεισι πάλιν μετὰ δυνάμεως ὁ Θεόφιλος, καὶ
κατὰ τὸ Χαρσιανὸν πολλὰ ἐκ τῆς προτέρας νίκης τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν
ἀπαυθαδιαζομένων καὶ ἀλαζονευομένων, τούτοις συμπλακεῖ πολλοὺς τε
χειροῦται τούτων, καὶ λείαν λαμβάνει ὡς τῶν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἄχρι χι-
5 λιάδων, καὶ μετὰ νίκης λαμπρᾶς πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανέρχεται.
ἔτυχε γοῦν τις τῶν ἐπὶ χειρῶν εὐφυῖα ὀνομαστῶν αἰχμάλωτος ληφθῆναι
Ἀγαρηνῶν. τούτῳ μεγάλας τὰς κατὰ πόλεμον ἀρετὰς δι' ἐγγράφων B 115
ἐγκωμίων ὁ τῶν σχολῶν προεστὼς ἐμαρτύρει, καὶ ἐβεβαίου ὡς εἴη τε

23.1–5 : triumphalis expeditio contra Saracenos ad Charsianum a. 831 vel 837 accidit, cf. Signes 2014, 218–224

Cap. 23: | Scyl 68.44–69.74

16 ἑξαπέστειλεν edd 17 ἐπιπολὺ V 21 ἐσπέρας V 21 αὐτὸν edd Boor e Scyl 68.29 : αὐτῶν V 24 ἐχθρῶντο V 25 τὲ V 26 ἔχειν om. edd 27 ἕξ V 27 τούτοις nos : τούτους V edd Boor 30 κατὰ προδόντι V 32 μόνον om. edd 32 καθ' ὑπέβαλεν V 33 τοὺς edd Boor : τοῖς V 33 περὶ τὸν Θεόφοβον ἐγέραιρειν edd e Scyl 68.40 34 τινὶ ἀρρήτῳ edd 35 μόνον om. B edd 23.4 χειροῦνται V 4 λείαν V : λήαν Comb 6 γοῦν V 6 τίς V 6 αἰχμάλωτον edd

sand into battle against the emperor. They all displayed great manliness for a long time, but finally the scholai together with the domestikos were constrained to give way and to take flight. Whereupon the emperor together with the imperial corps and two thousand Persians, Theophobos amongst them, took refuge on a hill, watching in mortal fear. Until evening there was great fighting around him, one side hoping to snatch him in their hands, whilst the others fended them off and persisted in refusing to give him up. On which account, when evening had fallen, those who were with the emperor made a great noise clapping their hands and shouting, pretending to rejoice, and caused the air to resound with harps and lyres and the voice of trumpets, wishing to impress upon the enemy that they had great hopes. And so it was. For it came to pass that six thousand of them withdrew, dreading attack and encirclement. Thus gaining a slight respite, the men with the emperor, fleeing far off under cover of night, obtained salvation and caught up with the army which had deserted him and turned its back on the enemy. With many censures alone did the emperor treat the deserting army, but with thanks and especially with honours the men of Theophobos. The Persians were therefore fired with ardent love for Theophobos and, emboldened by an ineffable gladness, they petitioned to take up the war against the Hagarenes alone with him, giving assurance that they would vanquish them with invincible force; and therefore the emperor wished that Theophobos should lead them.

23. The following year Theophilus went out again with a force, and engaging at Charsianon the Ismaelites, who had grown very bold and boastful on account of their earlier victory, he worsted many of them and took booty amounting to five-and-twenty thousand, and with splendid victory he returned to the imperial city. Now it happened that one of the Hagarenes taken prisoner was famed for his dexterity of hand. The head of the scholai acknowledged in written praises his great virtues in war, and he gave assurance

- δεξιὸς περὶ τὴν ἵππασίαν καὶ τὴν τοῦ σώματος ῥώμην γενναῖος, καὶ
 10 ὅτι δυσὶ δόρασι χρώμενος [περὶ τὴν ἵππασίαν] ἐντέχνως ἄγαν καὶ
 εὐφυῶς πρὸς τοὺς κατ' αὐτοῦ διαβαίνει. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἐν τῷ τῶν ἵππων
 ἀμιλλητηρίῳ ὁ τοῦ δομεστικού θρίαμβος ἐτελεῖτο, προηγεῖτο δὲ οὗτος τῷ
 τε τοῦ σώματος μεγέθει καὶ τῷ τῆς ψυχῆς ἀναστήματι τοὺς περὶ αὐτοῦ
 15 λόγους ἐπισφραγίζων, ἐκέλευσέ πως ἰδὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ τοῖς ἐπαίνοις
 κλαπαίς, ἵππον τε τὸν ἄνδρα ἐπιβῆναι καὶ δόρατα λαβόντα δύο τὴν
 εὐφυΐαν τούτου καὶ ἀριστείαν ἀπάσῃ τῇ πόλει ἐνδείξασθαι. καὶ δὴ
 τούτου γενομένου καὶ τοῖς ἀπειροτέροις τέρψιν παρέχοντος τῇ ὁράσει,
 Θεόδωρος ὁ Κρατερός οὕτω λεγόμενος, ὁ καὶ μετὰ βραχὺ ἄρχηγὸς τῆς
 τῶν ἀγίων τεσσαράκοντα δύο μαρτύρων φάλαγγος γεγονώς,
 20 πλησιάζων τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐξεμυκτήριζε τὸν Ἀγαρηνόν, ἀνδρεῖον οὐδὲν
 φάσκων οὐδὲ καταπληκτικὸν ἐνδεικνύμενον. ᾧ καὶ χαλεπήνας ὁ βασιλεὺς
 “ἀλλὰ δι' ἰσχύος ἔχεις αὐτός, ὦ θηλυδρία καὶ ἄνανδρε, τοιοῦτον τι ἐργά-
 σασθαι;” καὶ ὃς αὐτίκα “δύο μὲν, βασιλεῦ, μὴ μαθὼν οὐδὲ μεταχειρίσα-
 σθαι δόρατα δύναιμαι, οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐν πολέμῳ τοιαύτης χρεῖα ἀδολεσχίας· ἐνὶ
 25 δὲ δόρατι χρώμενος τὴν εἰς θεὸν πεποιθήσιν ἔχω βεβαίαν ὥς κρημνίσω
 τε τοῦτον καὶ τοῦ ἵππου καταβαλῶ”. τὴν παρρησίαν γοῦν μὴ φέρων ὁ
 βασιλεὺς ἢ μὴν ἔφησε, κατὰ τῆς κεφαλῆς αὐτοῦ τὸν ὄρκον ἐπαγαγών,
 θανάτῳ παραδοῦναι τὸν ἅγιον, εἰ μὴ τοὺς λόγους ὄντως εἰς ἔργα
 ἀγάγοι. Ἴππον οὖν ἀναβάς ὁ Θεόδωρος καὶ δόρυ λαβὼν ἐν χεροῖν θάπτον
 30 ἢ λόγος ἐν οὐ πολλαῖς περιόδοις τὸν Σαρακηνὸν κατεκρήμνισε, καὶ μέγα
 τούτῳ φρονεῖν δέδωκεν οὐδαμῶς. ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς ἡσχύνθη ἅτε δὴ κα-
 ταβεβλημένον ἰδὼν τὸν Σαρακηνὸν ὑπ' ἄνδρὸς εὐνούχου καὶ οὐ γενναίου
 τινός, πανοῦργος δὲ τέως ὦν καὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν αἰδούμενος τοῦ ἀνδρός
 ἐφιλοφρονήσατο μὲν λόγοις αὐτόν, στολὰς δὲ καὶ περιβολὰς αὐτῷ τὴν
 35 πολιτείαν αἰδούμενος ἐδωρήσατο.

24. Ἄρτι δὲ πάλιν τοῦ ἕαρος ἵσταμένου καὶ τοὺς μαχητὰς κατ'
 ἀλλήλων ὀπλίζοντος, ὁ Θεόφιλος δύναιμιν πολλὴν ἡθροικῶς κατὰ τῶν
 Σαρακηνῶν ἔξεισι, καὶ τὸν ὅσιον Μεθόδιον τῆς εἰρκτῆς ἀναρρυσάμενος καὶ
 μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἐπαγόμενος, οὐ νῦν μόνον καὶ πρῶτον ἀλλ' αἰεὶ τοῦτο ποιῶν

24.1–3 : haec nova expeditio Theophili contra Saracenos incerti temporis est, fortasse eadem ac priores est (cf. supra III.22 et infra III.31–32) et a. 838 accidit, sed ex alia narratione sumpta est

Cap. 24: Vita Methodii 1252A-D; Gen 43.4–44.22, 53.5–9; Log A 224.181–225.190 | PsSym 636.12–21, 644.7–645.10; Scyl 69.74–70.95

10 περὶ τὴν ἵππασίαν c superiore versu repetitum in locum alterius vocabuli coni. Boor, cf. Scyl 68.52 ἐν τῷ ἵππάζεσθαι 10 μὲν ἐντέχνως B : [μὲν] ἐντέχνως edd 12 δομεστικού V 12 οὗτος V 13 τε om. edd 19 τεσσαράκοντα δύο : μβ' edd 20 ἀγάρηνόν V 24 δόρα τὰ V 27 ἢ V 27 αὐτοῦ Boor c Scyl 69.68 ἑαυτοῦ 28 ἔργον edd Boor c Scyl 69.69 29 ἀγάγοι Boor c Scyl 69.69 34 στολὰς τε edd 24.2 καταλλήλων V 3 ἀναρρυσάμενος V

that he was adept in horsemanship and excellent in bodily strength and, further, that he went against his opponents wielding two spears with utmost skill and grace. Now, when the triumph of the domestikos was being celebrated in the place of contest of the horses and this man took the lead, confirming the reports about him both by his stature of body and preeminence of soul, the emperor, who had also been won over by these praises, saw and commanded that the man should mount a horse and, taking two spears, should display his dexterity and prowess to all the city. When this had been done and brought joy through the spectacle to the more inexperienced, Theodore, called Krateros, who not long afterwards became leader of the company of the Forty-Two Martyrs, came up to the emperor and mocked the Hagarene, saying that he had displayed nothing manly or remarkable. The emperor was irritated with him, 'But can you, effeminate and unmanly creature, do any such thing?' Said the other forthwith, 'I have not learnt, emperor, nor can I handle two spears, for in war there is no need of such artifice; but using one spear I have firm trust in God that I shall strike and hurl him down from his horse.' Unable to bear the man's boldness of speech, the emperor affirmed, invoking the oath upon his own head, that he would put the holy one to death if he did not indeed turn his words into actions. Thus, mounting his horse and taking the spear in his two hands, Theodore hurled the Saracen down faster than words can describe, in very few rounds; nor did this in any wise give him grand thoughts. The emperor was ashamed in as much as he saw the Saracen thrown down by a eunuch and one of no noble birth; but for the while he kept his cunning, showing favour to him in words out of respect for his valour and bestowing garments and robes upon him out of respect for his way of life.

24. When spring came anew and armed the warriors against each other, Theophilus gathered a great force and went out against the Saracens; and releasing the venerable Methodius from prison he took him along with him – not now for the first time, but he did this always and kept him somewhere

- 5 καὶ πλησίον που ἔχων αὐτόν, εἴτε τοῦ ἄσαφῆ ἕνεκεν καὶ πολλοῖς ἄγνωστα διαλύειν καὶ γνώριμα τούτῳ ποιεῖν διὰ τὴν ἐνυπάρχουσαν αὐτῷ σοφίαν – καὶ γὰρ ἐτύγχανε τῶν ἀποκρύφων ἄγαν ζητητικὸς ὁ Θεόφιλος –, εἴτε δὴ τινας ἐπαναστάσεις φυλαττόμενος παρ' αὐτοῦ παθεῖν διὰ τὸν κατὰ τῶν θείων καὶ σεπτῶν εἰκόνων πόλεμον. οὐ μικρῶς γὰρ
- 10 τιμᾶν ἐδόκει τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ σέβεσθαι τὸ τῆς πολιτείας ἔκκριτον καὶ φιλόθεον· διὰ τοι τοῦτο ἄγειν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἄλλ' οὐ κατόπιν ἀπολιμπάνειν ἐφαίνετο τούτῳ σεμνόν. καὶ δῆτα προσπεσόντων ἀλλήλοις, καὶ τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν καθυπερτερούντων, συνέβη τὸν | βασιλέα πως περι- B 117 κυκλωθέντα ὑπὸ τῶν ἐχθρῶν κινδυνεύειν περὶ ψυχῆς. ὅτε δὴ καὶ Μανουὴλ ὁ στρατηγέτης δεινὸν ἡγησάμενος – καὶ πέρα τοῦτο δεινῶν – δοριάλωτον βασιλέα γενέσθαι, τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀναθαρρύνας καὶ “ὦ ἄνδρες”, εἰπὼν, “τὰς μελίσσας αἰδεῖσθε, αἱ τοῦ βασιλέως κατόπιν τῷ φίλτρῳ βαλλόμεναι πέτανται”, εἰσῆι ὥσπερ τις λέων περὶ τῶν τέκνων [βαλλόμενος], τὸν βασιλέα ζητῶν. ὥς δ' εὗρεν ἀποκαμόντα καὶ τὴν σωτηρίαν μὲν
- 15 ὑπὸ δειλίας ἀπογνόντα, προφασιζόμενον δὲ ὥς μὴ βούλεσθαι τὸν λαὸν λιπόντα διαφυγεῖν, “ἄγε δὴ”, ἔφησεν, “ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἀκολουθεῖ μοι εὐρεῖαν τὴν φάλαγγα ποιοῦντι καὶ πολλοὺς ἀποσφάττοντι”. ὥς δ' ὁ Μανουὴλ ἐξῆι καὶ | τὸν ἐπόμενον δεδιότα πολλὰ καὶ κατεπτηχότα βασιλέα οὐκ εἴ- f. 39v χεν, αὐθις ἐρρήγνυ μετὰ πολλῶν τὴν φάλαγγα, τοῦτον ἐξελέσθαι βουλόμενος. ὥς δ' ἡμάρτανεν αὐθις, καὶ τρίτον δὲ ἐκ στερροτέρας ψυχῆς τὴν συνέχουσαν φάλαγγα τὸν βασιλέα διέκοψεν, καὶ πλησίον ἐγεγόνει τούτου, ὥς καὶ ἱμάσι τὸν ἐπιφέροντα τοῦτον ἐπιδῆσαι ἵππον καὶ αὐθις ὑπεξερύσασθαι ἐτύγχανεν. ἐτρώθη τὴν ψυχὴν ὁ ἀνὴρ, βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων αἰχμάλωτον γενέσθαι φοβούμενος καὶ τῶν ἐχθρῶν ὑποπόδιον. ὅθεν τα-
- 25 χυτέραν ἅμα καὶ δεξιωτέραν τὴν ὑποστροφὴν ποιήσας, καὶ θάνατον ἀπειλήσας αὐτῷ εἰ μὴ τούτῳ συνεπακολουθήσειεν, ὅπῃ καὶ μόλις τοῦ κινδύνου διέσωσεν, ὀλίγων τινῶν κατόπιν ἀνακρουόντων τὸν | πόλεμον, B 118 καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἐγκατέλεξε. διὸ τιμαῖς τε τοῦτον ἐφαμίλλως ἐδεξιοῦτο καὶ πρεπούσαις δωρεαῖς ἐθεράπευεν, εὐεργέτην πολλάκις καὶ σωτῆρα ἀποκα-
- 35 λῶν.

|| 17–18 cf. Syrianus Magister, *Rhetorica militaris*, 43.3–4

9 θείων : ἀγίων edd 10 ἐδόκει τιμᾶν ante corr. B edd 10 σέβεσθαι V 10 ἔκκριτον V 12 ἀλλήλοις τῶν στρατευμάτων edd e Scyl 69.83 15 καὶ πέρα τοῦτο δεινῶν Boor : καὶ πέρα τοῦτο δεινὸν V edd: τοῦτο καὶ πέρα δεινῶν conī. Bekk in app. 16 δοριάλωτον B edd 16 αὐτόν edd Boor e Scyl 70.87 : αὐτῶν V 17 μελίσσας V 19 βαλλόμενος e superiore versu repetitum in locum alterius vocabuli conī. Boor 21 ὦ : ὥς V 23 ἐπόμενον V 24 ἐρρήγνυ V 24 φάλαγγα (v in ras.) V 27 ἐγεγόνει τούτου iteravit V 27 ἐπιδῆσαι V 31 συνακολουθήσειεν edd 32 ἀνακρουόντων edd 34 καὶ σωτῆρα πολλάκις edd

nearby, either so that the other might resolve obscure things unknown to most men and give Theophilus information, on account of the wisdom he possessed – for Theophilus was very inquisitive of secret things –, or else, Theophilus was thus guarding himself against suffering any uprisings provoked by him on account of the war against the divine and venerable images. Theophilus appeared to esteem the man in no negligible wise, and to revere his superior and God-loving way of life; for this reason, then, it seemed to him right to keep him by his side and not to leave him behind. Now, when they engaged battle against each another and the Ismaelites were prevailing, it happened somehow that the emperor was surrounded by the enemy and was in danger of his life. But Manuel, the leader of the army, thinking it terrible – and this indeed in excess of terrible things! – that an emperor should be captured, emboldened the men around him; ‘O men,’ said he, ‘show respect for the bees who fly behind their king smitten with affection,’ and he went in like a lion on behalf of its young, seeking the emperor. When he found him in a disheartened state, despairing of salvation out of cowardice but pretending not to want to abandon his men, he said, ‘Come, O emperor, follow me as I make wide the ranks and slaughter many.’ But after Manuel emerged without the emperor who was following but who was greatly afraid and had taken fright, he again forced the ranks, desiring to bring him out. When he failed anew, he cut with even more resolution through the line holding the emperor a third time, and drew near him so that he could fasten reins to the horse carrying him and drag him out yet again. The man was wounded in his soul, fearing that an emperor of the Romans should become a prisoner and *footstool* of the enemy. Making therefore a swift and dexterous retreat, and threatening the other with death if he did not come with him, he barely saved him from danger, whilst a few others behind pursued the war, and he regained his men. On this account Theophilus rewarded him appropriately with dignities and honoured him with fitting gifts, oftentimes calling him a benefactor and saviour.

25. Ἄλλ' ὁ φθόνος ἴσχυσε κατ' αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὁ κατὰ πολλῶν καὶ το-
 σούτων μυριάδων ἀνδραγαθήσας καὶ τῶν ἐχθρῶν διασώσας τὸν βασιλέα
 ὑπ' ὀλίγων οἰκείων κατεπαλαίετο. ὅθεν εἰς καθοσίωσιν καὶ ἐπιβουλὴν πα-
 5 ραλόγως ἐκ λοιδορίας ἐγκληθεῖς, καὶ πολλὴν εἶναι τὸν φθόνον τὸν κατ'
 αὐτοῦ ἐνιδῶν, ἐπεὶ διὰ τινος πιστοῦ ἀνεμάνθανεν, δούλου μὲν πρότερον
 ὄντος τοῦ Μανουήλ, τότε δὲ ἐκ χαρίσματος οἰνοχοοῦντος τῷ Θεοφίλῳ
 καὶ ἐξυπηρετοῦντος, ὥς μέλλοι τοῦτον ἀποτυφλοῦν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν ποιῆ-
 10 σαι χωρὶς, ἀποστασίαν τολμᾷ καὶ πρὸς Ἀγαρηνοὺς μετατίθεται, μέγας
 τῶν πλησιαζόντων αὐτοῖς ἐχθρῶν, οἱ οὕτω δὴ Κορμάτοι καλοῦνται,
 πολὺς, καὶ νίκας οὐ τὰς τυχούσας ἐποίει ἅτε δὴ καὶ πείρα καὶ συνέσει δια-
 φέρων πολλῶν. καὶ τὸ δὴ κρεῖττον λόγου, ὅτι μετὰ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων
 Ῥωμαίων καὶ καθειργνυμένων ἐν φυλακαῖς ταῦτα εἰργάζετο, πίστιν
 αὐτοῖς δοὺς ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν ὥς οὐ φεύγονται· ὅτε καὶ τὸ Χωροσὰν λέγεται
 15 κατασχεῖν καὶ τῷ ἀμεραμνουῇ ὑποτάξει οὐ τῷ διαφέρειν μόνον εἰς
 ἀνδρείαν αὐτοῖς, ἀλλὰ τῷ καὶ καινῶς πῶς καὶ παρηλλαγμένως ὀφθῆναι
 αὐτοῖς· ἥ τε γὰρ τῶν σχημάτων μεταβολὴ καὶ ἡ τῶν φωνῶν παρὰ f. 40r
 δόξαν ἐξαλλαγὴ εἰς | δειλίαν ἐμπίπτειν ἠνάγκαζε τοὺς πολεμίους. οὐ μὴν B 119
 δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλῶν ἀτιθάσων θηρίων κατασινομένων αὐτοὺς καὶ
 20 βλαπτόντων ἐλευθερώσας, καὶ μεγάλων αἴτιος καλῶν αὐτοῖς γεγωνῶς,
 διαφερόντως ἡγαπήθη αὐτῷ τε τῷ ἄρχοντι καὶ τῇ γερουσίᾳ αὐτοῦ.
26. Ἄλλ' ἐπεὶ μετὰμελον τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐνεποίησε ταῦτα διακούοντι, καὶ
 λύπης αἴτιος κατέστη πολλοῖς, πάντα κάλων ἐδόκει τούτῳ κινεῖν ὥς ἂν
 τὸν ἄνδρα μετακαλέσοιτο καὶ παλινδρομῆσαι ποιήσειεν. ὅθεν οἱ μὲν
 εἰρηνικὰς σπονδὰς διὰ τοῦ μοναχοῦ ποιῆσαι τοῦτόν φασιν Ἰαννοῦ πρὸς
 5 καιρὸν καὶ τοὺς κατὰ τὰς φυλακὰς δι' ἀλλαγίου πρὸς τὰ ἴδια μεταγαγεῖν,
 ὅτε καὶ χρυσοβούλλιον τούτῳ καὶ ὄρκους ἀπαθείας δι' αὐτοῦ τε καὶ

25.8 : Manuel ad Saracenos fugit, probabiliter regnante adhuc Michaelē, cf. infra III.26.38–41
 26.3–5 : legatio Ioannis apud caliphā eadem est cuius mentio supra in III.9 facta est.

Cap. 25: Gen 44.22–27, 50.19–51.29; Log A 220.103–221.118 | PsSym 632.3–18, 633.14–15;
 Scyl 70.1–71.18 Cap. 26: Theoph 362.30–31; Gen 44.38–41, 51.28–46, 53.80–82; Log A
 221.188–223.156, 223.166–224.172 | PsSym 632.18–634.12, 635.1–9; Scyl 71.18–72.46
 ||2 Suda, Π no. 222, cf. Michael Apostolius, Paroemiae cent. II, sect. 99, Chrysocephalus cent.
 VII, sect. 4 et etiam Photius, Bibliotheca cod. 242, 339a

25.3 καταπαλαίετο V 5 ἐν ιδῶν V 7 ἐξ ὑπηρετοῦντος V 10 Κορμάτοι edd
 14 Χωροσὰν V PsSym f 242r : Χωροσὰν B edd : Χωροσὰν Scyl 70.11 (EVB) : Χωροσὰν Scyl
 70.11 (AMN) : Χωρησὰν Scyl 70.11 (C) 16 ἀνδρείαν V : ἀνδρίαν Bekk 16 τῷ καὶ καινῶς
 Boor : τὸ καὶ καινῶς V : καὶ τὸ καινῶς B Comb : καὶ τῷ καινῶς Bekk 18 παραδόξαν V
 18 μεταλλαγὴ edd 26.2 πολλοῖς V, cf. infra ἀδῆλου πολλοῖς : πολλῆς edd Boor, cf. Log A
 221.119 ἐν πολλῇ θλίψει : τοῖς πολλοῖς conit. Boor in app. 5 καὶ om. edd 5 δι' ἀλλαγίου
 Boor, cf. tamen Gen 44.33 διαλλαγὴν : διαλλαγίου V : διαλλαγίου, καὶ edd 6 τὲ V

25. But Envy prevailed against him; and he who had shewn valour against so many tens of thousands and had saved the emperor's life from enemies was thrown down by a few of his own associates. For after he had been fraudulently charged through slander with lèse-majesté and conspiracy and had become aware of the great envy against him, when he learnt from a man he trusted, who had formerly been Manuel's servant but was now through favour a wine-pourer and attendant of Theophilus, that the latter was about to blind him and deprive him of his eyes, he undertook a rebellion and went over to the Hagarenes; and he was regarded by them as a great man and received great honours. For he pressed hard with many troops upon the enemies abiding near them, who were called Kormatoi, and won no minor victories, surpassing many as he did in experience and understanding. And, what is greater than words can tell: he accomplished these things with Romans who had been captured and confined in prisons, giving the Hagarenes surety on their behalf that they would not escape. It was then, according to report, that he took Chorosan and brought it to submission to the ameramnounes not only through the excellent courage of the men but also their somehow strange and altered appearance, for the change of garments and unexpected variation of languages threw the enemy into fright. What is more, he delivered them from the many wild beasts which were causing them injury and harm, and having become a cause of great benefit to them he was especially loved by the ruler himself and his council.

26. However, because this news brought regret to the emperor when he heard it, and Manuel had become a cause of sorrow to many, Theophilus thought best to let out all ropes in order that he might recall the man and make him return. Whereupon some say that he made a truce at the time through the monk Jannes and brought back home those in captivity through an exchange, sending to Manuel also a chrysobull and oaths of safety both

through this Jannes and earlier through others. Others say also that he did this through Jannes, however, not thus through open dealings and circumstances, but through covert means, hidden from the many: thereby Jannes was dispatched by Theophilus's wish from our country and changed his dress; and assimilating himself and mixing in with the rag-wearing Iberians and monks who travel to Jerusalem in prayer he established himself in the house where Manuel dwelt in Bagdad, pretending to beg and telling Manuel of the emperor's regret. As testimony of what he said he gave him the emperor's medallion and chrysobull, which promised sympathetic affection and complete amnesty of wrongs. Taking these in his hands, as if fired in his soul, Manuel took thought for his return home. Now, because through the passage of time and his deeds against the enemy, as we have recounted, trust in him had not diminished but rather increased every day, and he informed the ameramnounes that he had the desire to go to war against the Romans and avenge himself on the enemies who had denounced him to the emperor and who had houses in Cappadocia; and he requested that the son of the ameramnounes should be sent with him as more assurance to those in doubt. Ismael granted the things requested and sent him off against those whom he desired to fight. But when they drew near the Roman borders, Manuel informed the general of Cappadocia concerning his affairs and his return again to the Romans; and he instructed him that in such and such a place there should be a trap and an ambushade, so that 'When I arrive there, sending the Saracen invaders off to another place, I myself shall fall in with the ambushade and return to the Roman customs.' And so it came to pass. For as they approached the place, Manuel embraced many times Ismael's son and said, 'Go, my child, go safe to your father, and know that I go to none other than my emperor and lord indeed.' And coming safely thence to the imperial city he went to the divine church at Blachernai, for he knew that Theophilus had very great trust in him. Whereupon he was honoured with the dignity of magistros; and thereafter he was treated like a relation to Theophilus and was promoted to domestikos of

40 βάζεται τῶν σχολῶν. εἰσὶ δ' οἱ φυγῇ μὲν χρήσασθαι | τὸν Μανουήλ φασὶ B 121
πρὸς τοὺς ἐξ Ἄγαρ, καὶ διὰ τὴν Θεοφίλου, ὡς εἴρηται, ἐπανελθόντα
σπουδῇ, οὐ μὴν καθοσίωσιν ἐγκληθέντα ἐπὶ Θεοφίλου φυγεῖν, ἐπὶ Μι-
χαήλ δὲ τοῦ τραυλοῦ τοῦ τούτου πατρός, εἴτε καὶ μίσει τῷ πρὸς αὐτὸν
φερόμενον, εἴτε δὴ καὶ παλαιὰν δεδοικότα μῆνιν αὐτοῦ.

Χειροτονεῖται δὲ καὶ ὁ Ἰαννῆς ἐπίσκοπος Κωνσταντινουπόλεως κατὰ
τὴν εἰκάδα πρώτην τοῦ Ἀπριλλίου μηνός, ἡμέρᾳ πρώτη, ἄθλον ἀσεβείας
45 καὶ ἀπιστίας καὶ τοῦ μὴ τὰς θείας εἰκόνας προσκυνεῖν τὴν ἱερωσύνην ἀπε-
νεγκάμενος.

27. Ζητητικῷ δὲ τῷ Θεοφίλῳ τυγχάνοντι καὶ ἄγαν ἐγκειμένῳ περὶ
γνώσεως τῶν μελλόντων βασιλεύειν ἀνδρῶν, γύναιόν τι ληφθὲν ἐκ τῶν
<τῆς> Ἄγαρ κατὰ τοὺς πολέμους τούτους Πύθωνος κατεχόμενον
πνεύματι παρὰ τινων ἀνεμάνθανε. τοῦτο οὖν ἡγαγέ τε παρ' ἑαυτῷ ὁ
5 Θεόφιλος, καὶ τίνες εἶεν ὧν ἡ βασιλεία διαρκέσειεν ἐπὶ πολὺ ἐπυνθάνετο.
ὡς δὲ "σοῦ μὲν διάδοχον τὸν σὸν υἱόν τε καὶ γαμετὴν" ἀπεφοίβασέ τε | f. 41r
γενέσθαι καὶ ἐμαντεύσατο, μετέπειτα δὲ τοὺς Μαρτινακίους ἐπὶ πολὺ τῆς
βασιλείας κατασχεῖν, αὐτίκα τοῦτον τὸν Μαρτινάκην, καιτοί γε
προσώκειωμένον αὐτῷ πως κατὰ συγγένειαν, πρὸς τὸ μονάζειν ἀπέκει-
10 ρεν, καὶ τὸν αὐτοῦ οἶκον θεοῦ καὶ μοναχῶν ἐναπέδειξεν ἐνδιαίτημα. οὐ
τοῦτο δὲ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλὰ τῶν μελλόντων τὸ γύναιον ἀπεθέσπισεν·
τόν τε γὰρ Ἰαννὴν τοῦ πατριαρχικοῦ θρόνου πόρρῳ που γενέσθαι
ἐνεσήμανεν, καὶ τὴν τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων ἀναστήλωσιν διεσάφησεν. | B 122
οἷς
15 τὴν ψυχὴν ὁ Θεόφιλος ἐπώδυνος γεγωνῶς καὶ δυσαπόνιπτα ταῦτα
φέρων αἰεὶ πολλὰ πολλάκις ἐπῆδε τῇ ἑαυτοῦ γαμετῇ, πρὸς δὲ καὶ τῷ λο-
γοθέτῃ Θεοκτίστῳ παρῆνει καὶ πλήθει κατεδέσμευε ὄρκων τοῦ μήτε τὸν
Ἰαννὴν ὑπερορίας τυχεῖν μήτε μὴν τὰς εἰκόνας τῆς προσκυνήσεως. τοσοῦ-
τον δὲ ἄρα τὰ περὶ τῆς βασιλείας ἡρεῦνα τε καὶ ἐξιχνίαζεν ὡς καὶ παρὰ

26.38–41 : Manuel in exilium fugit regnante Michaelē Theophili patre, cf. tamen supra III.25.8
43–44 : Ioannes Grammaticus die dominica 21 Apr. a. 832 sive 838 patriarcha electus est.

Cap. 27: Gen 49.74–50.12 | PsSym 635.15–636.7; Scyl 72.47–73.75 || 3–4 Acta 16.16,
cf. Photius Lexicon E no. 20, Suda E no. 45, et supra I.11.24

38 εἰσὶ μὲν δ' οἱ edd 38 φασὶ V 41 τῷ Comb. in marg. Bekk Boor : τὸ V Comb 43 ὁ
om. B edd 27.1 Ζητηκῷ V : Ζητικῷ B : Ζητητικῷ Comb 3 <τῆς> add. Boor e III.9.1 et
III.20.18 3 κατεχόμενον V 4 τινον V 5 διαρκέσειεν Boor e Gen 49.77 : διαρκέσει V
PsSym 635.18 5 ἐπιπολὺ V 6 υἱὸν καὶ edd 7 ἐμαντεύσατο V 7 Μαρτην- Gen 49.77,
78, 85 7 ἐπιπολὺ V 8 καὶ τοί γε edd 9 πρὸς ὡκειωμένον V 10 αὐτοῦ οἶκον Boor e
Scyl 72.56 Gen 49.85 PsSym 635.20 : ἑαυτοῦ οἶκον V 11 ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ in app. Boor
e Scyl 72.58 13 κατεσάφησεν edd 15 τῷ om. edd 16 μετὰ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ θάνατον fort.
ante μήτε inserendum, cf. Scyl 72.64 μετὰ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ θάνατον μήτε et etiam Gen 50.11 μετὰ
τὴν αὐτοῦ τελευτὴν et PsSym 636.2 μετὰ θάνατον αὐτοῦ 17 μὴν V 17 τῆς om. edd
18 ἐξ ἰχνίαζεν V

the scholai. There are also those who say that Manuel fled to the descendants of Hagar and returned through the solicitude of Theophilus, but that he did not flee under accusation of lèse-majesté in the time of Theophilus but rather of his father Michael the Stammerer, and was either driven by his hatred for the latter or else feared an old enmity on his part.

Jannes was ordained bishop of Constantinople on the twenty-first of the month of April, on Sunday, receiving hierarchic office as the prize of his impiety and faithlessness and of not worshipping the divine images.

27. Now Theophilus, being inquisitive and quite eager for knowledge concerning the men who would in future reign as emperor, learnt from certain men of a woman who had been captured from the Hagarenes in these wars and who was possessed by the spirit of Python. Theophilus had this woman brought to him and enquired who the persons were whose reign would endure for a long time. And when she prophesied and foretold that 'Your successor will be your son and wife', and that afterwards the Martinakioi would for a long time possess the empire, Theophilus forthwith had this Martinakes, though he was his own kinsman through some relation, tonsured as a monk and proclaimed his house an abode of God and monks. Furthermore, the woman predicted many other things that came to pass, for she indicated that Jannes would somehow be removed from the patriarchal throne and made clear the restoration of the venerable images. Whereby Theophilus was aggrieved in soul and, unable to rid his thoughts of these predictions, often recited many of them in refrain to his wife; and moreover he exhorted the logothete Theoktistos and bound him with a multitude of oaths that Jannes would never undergo banishment nor the images worship. So far did he go in his enquiry and investigation concerning the imperial office, even through

- 20 τοῦ Ἰαννοῦ ἐν λεκανομαντείᾳ τὸν μέλλοντα Βασίλειον τὴν τοιαύτην
 20 ὑπειληφέναι ἀρχὴν καθαρῶς ἐνιδεῖν. οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ Κωνσταντῖνον
 τὸν κατὰ τὸν Τριφύλλιον τὰ αὐτῷ συμβησόμενα διετράνου τὸ γύναιον
 πολλὰ λιπαροῦντα καὶ πυνθανόμενον· αὐτόν τε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς αὐτοῦ υἱεῖς
 κληρικοῦ σχῆμα ἐπὶ τοῦ Βασιλείου διαμεμφθῆναι· ὃ καὶ γέγονεν. καὶ Γε-
 25 ὠργιον δὲ τὸν τὰς στρατιωτικὰς δέλτους ἐπειλημμένον ἐπὶ σφενδόνῃ τῇ
 25 κατὰ τὸν Ἱππόδρομον ἀποκτανθῆναι, καὶ τὴν ὕπαρξιν αὐτοῦ τῷ βασι-
 λικῷ ἀνειλῆφθαι ταμείῳ. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ὧδὲ πη κατὰ Πλάτωνα.

28. Τῷ δ' ἐπιόντι ἔτει πρὸς τὸν κατ' ἀλλήλων πόλεμον οἱ τ' Ἀγαρηνοὶ
 καὶ ὁ Θεόφιλος ἐξελθόντες ἔμειναν ἄπρακτοι παντελῶς ἀλλήλους καταπτο-
 ούμενοι, καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἐπανέστρεφον. κατὰ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν καιρὸν ὃ
 5 τε χαγάνος Χαζαρίας καὶ ὁ πῆχ πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Θεόφιλον ἔπεμ-
 5 πον πρεσβευτάς, τὸ κάστρον ὅπερ οὕτω Σάρκελ κατονομάζεται αὐτοῖς
 κτισθῆναι ἐξαιτούμενοι, ὅπερ ἐρμηνεύεται μὲν λευκὸν οἶκημα, ἔστι δὲ κατὰ
 τὸν Τάναϊν ποταμόν, ὃς τοὺς τε Πατζινακίτας ἐντεῦθεν καὶ αὐτοὺς
 10 διείργει τοὺς Χαζάρους ἐκεῖθεν, ἔνθα καὶ Χαζάρων ταξεῶται | καθέζονται B 123
 10 τριακόσιοι κατὰ χρόνον ἐναλλασσόμενοι. ὧν τῇ αἰτήσῃ καὶ παρακλήσῃ f. 41v
 πεισθεὶς ὁ Θεόφιλος τὸν σπαθα|ροκανδιδάτον Πετρωνᾶν τοῦ ἐπονομα-
 ζομένου Καματεροῦ, μετὰ χελανδίων βασιλικοπλωϊμων καὶ τοῦ κα-
 τεπάνω τῆς Παφλαγονίας ἀπέστειλεν, εἰς πέρας τὴν τούτων αἵτησιν κε-
 λεύσας ὑπαγαγεῖν. ὃς ἅμα τῷ τὴν Χερσῶνα καταλαβεῖν τὰς μὲν μακρὰς
 νῆας ἐκεῖσέ που προσορμίσας ἐπὶ τῆς χέρσου κατέλιπεν, τὸν δὲ λαὸν ἐν
 15 στρογγύλαις εἰσαγαγὼν ναυσὶ μέχρι τοῦ Τανάιδος διεβιβάσθη, ἔνθα καὶ
 τὴν πόλιν ἔδει τούτοις οἰκοδομεῖν. ἐπειδὴ λίθων ὁ τόπος ἠπόρει, ἐκ μὲν
 τῶν μικρῶν καχλήκων τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄσβεστον, ἐκ δὲ τῆς ὑποκειμένης γῆς
 15 πηλὸν ἐγκαύσας διὰ καμίνων, καὶ βίσαλον ἐργασάμενος, τὴν ὀρίσθεισαν
 αὐτῷ δουλείαν μόγις μὲν, ἑπεραίῳ δὲ διὰ πολυχειρίας λαμπρῶς, καὶ πρὸς
 20 τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανέστρεφεν. ἐδίδου δὲ καὶ περὶ τῆς Χερσῶνος τῷ βα-
 σιλεῖ γνῶμην τε καὶ βουλὴν, οἷς εἰς πείραν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἦλθεν καὶ τῶν

28.9–13 : legatio Petronae apud Chazaros ad aedificandum Sarkel ca. a. 831 accidit, cf. Signes 2014, 337–345

26 Hesychius E no. 123 Cap. 28: DAI 42.22–55 | Scyl 73.76–91

20 ἐν ιδεῖν V 21 Κωνσταντῖνῳ τῷ Scyl 72.68 21 Τριφύλλιον Boor e Gen 49.88 Τριφύλ-
 λιος et Scyl 73.69 Τριφυλλίους, cf. PsSym f 242v Τριφυλλίω: Τριφύλιον V edd 26 ἀνειλῆφθαι
 V 26 post Πλάτωνα lacunam conl. edd 28.1 καταλήλων V 2 ἀλλήλως V
 5 Σάρκελλ Scyl 73.79 (M) 6 ἐρμενεύετε V 6 ἔστιν V 6 καὶ κατὰ edd 7 τανάϊν V
 10 σπαθαροκανδιδάτον V 10 Πετρωνᾶν V Scyl 73.82 (M) 11 Καματηροῦ DAI 42.25
 11 βασιλικῶν πλωϊμων DAI 42.31 12 Καπετάνω Comb 13 ἐπαγαγεῖν conl. Boor
 16 ἐπειδὴ DAI 42.35 : ἐπεὶ δὲ V edd Boor 16 ἠπόρει V 18 βίσαλον V edd DAI (ms.)
 42.36 : βήσαλον Boor : βήσσαλον DAI (edd) 42.36 20 τῆς : τοῦ edd

divination in a dish carried out by Jannes, as to get a clear look at Basil, who would later take up this dignity. Moreover, the woman also informed Constantine Triphyllios, who persistently entreated and questioned her, of things which would happen to him: that he and his sons would exchange their clothes for the clerical habit under Basil. The which indeed came to pass. And that George, who kept the military records, would be put to death at the sphendone in the Hippodrome and his property seized by the imperial treasury. So it was with these things, after the manner of Plato.

28. In the following year both the Hagarenes and Theophilus went out to war against one another but, frightened of one another, they remained completely inactive and returned to their own countries. At this same time the chagan and the pech of Chazaria sent emissaries to the emperor Theophilus requesting that the fortress called Sarkel, which means ‘white dwelling’ should be built up for them; this latter is on the river Tanais, which separates the Pechenegs on one side and the Chazars themselves on the other, where three hundred men of the Chazars are garrisoned with periodic replacement. Theophilus ceded to their request and entreaty and dispatched the spatharokandidatos Petronas, son of the man called Kamateros, with *chelandia* of the imperial fleet and the katepan of Paphlagonia, commanding that they should carry out the Chazar’s request. Once arrived at Cherson, Petronas brought up the long ships and left them on land; and embarking his forces in round boats he crossed over to the Tanais where he was to build the city for them. Because the place was lacking in stone, he baked in furnaces lime from pebbles of the river and mud from the underlying layers of earth, thus producing brick, and accomplished the task assigned him, albeit with difficulty, but in conspicuous fashion with a multitude of labourers; and he returned to the imperial city. Concerning Cherson he gave the emperor advice and counsel, in so far as he

- τόπων ὁμοῦ, ὡς “οὐκ ἄλλως ἄρξεις τῆς χώρας αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν τόπων ὀλοσχερῶς ἢ στρατηγὸν προχειριζόμενος ἴδιον, ἀλλ’ οὐ τοῖς ἐκείνων ἄρχουσὶ τε καὶ πρωτεύουσιν καταπιστεύων σαυτόν”. οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδ’
- 25 ἡμέτερός πω τῆς ἐκείνων προνοούμενος ἐξαπεστέλλετο στρατηγός, ἀλλ’ ὁ λεγόμενος πρωτεύων μετὰ καὶ τῶν πατέρων τῆς πόλεως τὰ πάντα ἦν διοικῶν. ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόφιλος οὐκ ἄλλον ἀλλὰ τὸν εἰρημένον Πετρωνᾶν, ὡς ἐν πείρᾳ κρίνας τοῦ τόπου, πρωτοσπαθάριον τε ἐτίμησεν καὶ στρατηγὸν ἐξαπέστειλεν, τὸν τότε πρωτεύοντα | καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους B 124
- 30 θεσπίσας ὑπέεικεν ἀνενδοιάστως αὐτῷ· ἐξ ὅτου περ καὶ μέχρις ἡμῶν ἐκράτησεν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐντεῦθεν εἰς Χερσῶνα προβάλλεσθαι στρατηγούς. οὕτω μὲν οὖν ἦ τε τοῦ Σάρκελ οἰκοδομὴ ἐγένετο καὶ ἡ πρὸς τοὺς Χερσωνίτας τῶν ἐντεῦθεν ἀποστολῇ στρατηγῶν.
29. Ἐξείσι δὲ πάλιν ὁ Θεόφιλος κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐμβριθέστερος, τῆς πατρικῆς ἡττᾶσθαι τόλμης ἀνέραστος ὢν. ὅθεν καὶ πορρωτέρω πρόεισι τῆς Συρίας, ὁμοῦ μὲν κείρων τὴν γῆν καὶ πορθῶν, ὁμοῦ δὲ λαφυραγωγῶν αὐτὴν καὶ αἰχμαλωτίζων, καὶ πόλεις παραλαμβάνων ἄλλας τε
- 5 δύο καὶ μέχρις ἐδάφους καταστρεφόμενος, καὶ αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν Σωζόπετραν ἐκ πολιορκίας πατρίδα τυγχάνουσιν τοῦ ἀμεραμνουνη, ὑπὲρ ἧς | πολλὰ f. 42r
- λέγεται ἐκείθεν διὰ γραμμάτων προτρέψασθαι ἀναχωρεῖν τὸν Θεόφιλον ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος αὐτοῦ, κἂν οὐκ εἶχε πῶς τὸν ἀκούοντα. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν διοικησάμενος πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσιν ἐπάνεισιν ὁ Θεόφιλος, τῷ Θεο-
- 10 φόβῳ τὰ τῶν Περσῶν εὖ διαθέσθαι καὶ στρατηγικῶς προτρέψάμενος καὶ αὐτῆς διὰ ταχέων ἐπαναδραμεῖν πρὸς αὐτόν. ἀλλ’ οἱ Πέρσαι συσχόντες αὐτὸν κατὰ τὴν Σινώπην βασιλέα καὶ ἄκοντα ἀνεκήρυξαν· ὃς αἰδοῖ τε καὶ φόβῳ τῷ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα βαλλόμενος ἀνένευε τε καὶ δεινὰ πείσεσθαι τούτους ἐπέλεγεν ἐπὶ τῷ τολμήματι. ὅθεν πλέον κατορρωδοῦντες αὐτοὶ
- 15 τὰς ἐκ βασιλέως ἀπειλὰς εἶχοντο μὲν τῆς γνώμης αὐτῶν, εἶχον δὲ καὶ αὐτὸν ἐν μέσῳ παραθαρρύνοντες. ἀλλ’ ὁ Θεόφοβος λάθρα τὰ τελεσθέντα δηλοῖ τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἐνωμότως πληροφορεῖ ὡς οὐκ αὐτός, ἐκείνοι δὲ τῶν

29.1–2 : expeditio Theophili contra Sozopetram a. 837 11–12 : usurpatio Theophobi in Sinope forte non a. 837 sed 838 post stragem iuxta Anzen accidit, cf. infra III.32

Cap. 29: Gen 40.20–41.58; 44.42–45.51, 46.1–47.5; Log A 223.156–166 | PsSym 634.13–22, 637.2–17; Scyl 73.92–74.24

22 ὡς: “οὐκ (sic punct.) V : καὶ “οὐκ edd 22 αὐτῶν om. edd 23 ἢ V 27 ἐπεὶ Comb 28 Πετρωνᾶν V 28 ἐν πείρᾳ nos e conjectura Kukules Kyriakides ad DAI (ms.) 42.49 ἔμπειρα : ἔμπειρον V : ἔμπειρον edd Boor 29 τὸν τότε Boor e DAI 42.52 : τὸν τε V edd 30 θεσπίας V 30 μέχρι edd 31 προβάλλεσθαι V 29.6 ἐκπολιορκήσας edd 7 πολλὰ λέγεται Boor : πολλὰ ἐγίνεται V : ἐγένετο edd : πολλὰ κατεδέθη Scyl 74.97–98 7 διαγραμμαμάτων V 8 εἶχε πῶς V 10 εὖ διαθέσθαι V : ἐνδιαθέσθαι edd 10 καὶ στρατηγικῶς om. edd 13 τῷ om. edd 14 ἔλεγεν edd 16 παραθαρρύνοντες V

had experience of both men and places, that 'You shall not rule over their land and territories entirely unless you appoint your own general, without trusting yourself to their rulers or chiefs.' For no general of ours had ever been sent out to look out for their affairs, but the so-called chief was in charge of everything together with the fathers of the city. Thereupon, the emperor Theophilus dispatched as general none other than the aforementioned Petronas, judging him to have experience of the place; and bestowing on him the dignity of protospatharios, he ordained that the chief and the others should yield to him unequivocally; from which time to the present day the custom prevails that generals are promoted from here for Cherson. Thus came about the construction of Sarkel and the dispatching of generals from here for the Chersonites.

29. Again Theophilus set out against the Hagarenes, with yet greater vehemence, loath to be worsted by his father's boldness. Hence he progressed further into Syria, both ravaging and plundering the land, and carrying off booty and prisoners, capturing also other cities and reducing two of them to ruins, even Sozopetra, the native city of the ameramnounes, by siege; and with regard to this latter there are many reports that Theophilus was urged through letters from the ameramnounes to withdraw from his homeland, though he in no wise heeded. And having settled this Theophilus returned to the imperial city, urging Theophobos to arrange Persian affairs well and after the manner of a general, and to return to him again in good time. But the Persians detained him at Sinope and proclaimed him emperor against his will. Stricken, however, with shame and dread of the emperor, Theophobos refused and told them that they would suffer evils for this rebellion. But fearing yet more for themselves on account of the threats from the emperor, they persisted in their intention and, encouraging him, kept him in their midst. But Theophobos secretly reported to the emperor what had been done and assured him with oaths that it was not he, but they who were responsible for the

- τολμηθέντων ὑπαίτιοι. ἀλλ' ἐκείνου τε ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀσμένως ἀποδέχεται B 125
 τὴν προαίρεσιν καὶ πρὸς τὰ βασιλεία εἰσκαλεῖ, τὴν ἀρχαίαν εὐκληρίαν
 20 ἀποδιδούς· συγγνώμην τε ἅπασιν τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ ἀμνηστίαν κακῶν δούς
 τῆς Σινώπης, εἴτε δὴ καὶ Ἀμάστριδος, ποιεῖ ἐκδημεῖν. καὶ ἐπεὶ περ εἰς πο-
 λυπληθίαν ἐνέδωκάν τε καὶ ἠΰξησαν ὥς εἰς τρεῖς μυριάδας ἐληλακέναι, οὐ
 συμφέρον ἐδόκει τῷ βασιλεῖ τούτους ἐλευθέρους εἶναι καὶ ἀνειμένους, ἀλλὰ
 25 καλῶς σκεψάμενος ἐκάστῳ θέματι χιλιάδας δύο ἀπέστελλεν, ὑπὸ χεῖρα τε-
 λεῖν τοῖς εἰς στρατηγίαν τεταγμένοις· ἐφ' ὧν καὶ τουρμάρχας ἐπιστατεῖν
 ἐξετίθετο. ὅθεν ἄχρισ ἡμῶν τὴν προσηγορίαν Περσῶν αἱ τῶν θεμάτων
 τοῦρμαι κεκλήρωνται, ἐφ' οἷς διεσπάρησαν. τοῦτο γοῦν τὸ τόλμημα
 θρασύτερον πῶς καὶ ἱταμώτερον δόξαν τῷ Θεοφίλῳ αὐτούς τε διασπα-
 ρῆναι καὶ διανεμηθῆναι ἐποίησεν καὶ τὸν Θεόφοβον μετ' οὐ πολὺ
 30 ἀπήγαγε τῆς ζωῆς. ἐγένετο δέ τι καὶ δεύτερον αἴτιον, ὃ δηλώσει πάντως
 ὁ λόγος κατὰ τὸν οἰκεῖον καιρόν.

30. Ὁ δ' ἀμεραμουνῆς τοσοῦτον ἐτρώθη τὴν ψυχὴν ἐπὶ τῇ κα-
 ταλήψει τε καὶ πορθήσει τῆς πατρίδος αὐτοῦ ὥς πανταχοῦ θεσπίσαι τε
 καὶ κηρῦξαι πᾶσαν ἡλικίαν ἐκ Παλαιστίνης τε καὶ τῆς κάτω Λιβύης συν-
 αθροίζομένην ἐπὶ ταῖς | ἀσπίσιν αὐτῶν ἐγγράψαι 'Ἀμορίον' τὴν κατ' f. 42v
 5 αὐτοῦ διάβασιν μετὰ θρασυτήτος αἰνιττόμενος. συνήγετο γοῦν καὶ κατὰ
 τὴν Ταρσὸν πολὺς ἐξ ὀλίγων ἐγένετο, μανίᾳ ἐπὶ | τῇ τῆς πατρίδος B 126
 αἰσχύνη πυρπολούμενος τὴν ψυχὴν. ἀντεπεξῆει δὲ καὶ ὁ Θεόφιλος κατὰ
 τὸ Δορύλαον, τριῶν ἡμεροδρομιῶν πόρρῳ πρὸς τοῦ Ἀμορίου διακείμενον.
 πολλῶν οὖν συμβουλευόντων μετοικίσαι τὸν ἐν Ἀμορίῳ οἰκοῦντα λαὸν
 10 καὶ τέως ὑπεκδραμεῖν τὴν ἄσχετον φορὰν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν – πολὺς γὰρ
 ἠΰξητο καὶ λαὸν ἐπήγετο ἄληκτον –, ἄτοπον μὲν ἐφαίνετο τοῦτο τῷ
 Θεοφίλῳ καὶ ἄνδρῳ, καλὸν δὲ καὶ πρὸς ἀνδρείαν εὖδοον τὸ μᾶλλον ἐπ-
 οχυρῶσαι αὐτὸ καὶ στρατηγοῦ γενναίου διασῶσαι βουλαῖς. Ἀέτιος ἦν
 οὗτος ὁ πατρίκιος καὶ τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν στρατηγός. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τινος

30.5–6 : exercitus Mamunis apud Tarsum primo vere a. 838 convenit et expeditionem in Amorium parat

Cap. 30: Acta Mart Amor passim; Gen 45.51–60, 46.89–90, 47.3–6; Log A 226.225–227.232 | PsSym 638.12–16; Scyl 74.24–75.41

19 εὐκληρίαν edd Scyl 74.16 : ἀνεκκληρίαν V 22 πολυπληθεῖαν V 22 ἐπέδωκάν in app. conl. Bekk 23 εἶναι V 24 ἀπέσταλκεν edd 27 τοῦρμαι V 30.1 δὲ edd 2 θεσπίσαι τε V 3 κηρῦξαι V 3 ἐκ Παλαιστίνης τε καὶ τῆς κάτω Λιβύης V Boor, cf. Gen 47.5 ἐξ Αἰγυπτίου καὶ Παλαιστίνης : ἐκ τε Βαβυλωνίας καὶ Φοινίκης καὶ Κοίλης Συρίας Παλαιστίνης τε (τε, Comb) καὶ τῆς κάτω Λιβύης edd e Scyl 74.26–27 4 ἐπιταῖς V 8 Δορύλαον V Boor, cf. Gen 49.68 et infra III.33.5 : Δορύλαιον edd e Scyl 75.31 8 ἡμεροδρομιῶν V 9 μετοικίσαι Boor e Scyl 75.32 : μετοικῆσαι V edd 10 ὑπ' ἐκδραμεῖν V 11 ἐπέιγετο V 12 ἀνδρίαν Bekk

rebellious acts. The emperor, however, both gladly accepted Theophobos's submission, summoning him to the Palace and restoring him to his former prosperity, and granted to all the others pardon and amnesty of wrongs, making them depart either from Sinope or Amastris. And since they had grown populous and increased to as many as thirty thousand, it did not seem advantageous to the emperor that they should be free and unrestrained; but after careful consideration he dispatched two thousand to each theme, to be enlisted in the service of the appointed generals, and he also chose turmarshs to have charge amongst them. For this reason down to our own day the tourmai of the themes to which they were scattered have inherited the name of Persians. Thus, because this rebellion seemed somehow to Theophilus quite daring and audacious, he caused them to be scattered and divided up, and not long afterwards he deprived Theophobos of his life. There was also a second reason, which the narrative will most certainly reveal at the proper time.

30. Now the amernounes was so wounded in his soul by the loss and pillage of his homeland that he ordered and proclaimed everywhere that men of all ages gathered together from Palestine and Nether Libya should inscribe 'Amorion' on their shields, alluding with boldness to his campaign against it. Thus, he assembled his force and from a few men he emerged at Tarsus with a numerous host, burning with fury in his soul over the shame of his homeland. Theophilus in turn marched out to Dorylaion, which lay some three days' journey from Amorion. Though many counselled him to dislodge the population inhabiting Amorion and escape meanwhile the irresistible tide of the Saracens – for the other had greatly increased his numbers and led a boundless host in train –, this seemed unfitting and unmanly to Theophilus, whereas it seemed good and in keeping with manliness to fortify the city and preserve it through the designs of a noble general. This was Aetios, patrikios and general of the Anatolics. And since he requested a great number of men,

- 15 πολυχειρίας ἐδέετο, καὶ ταύτην ἀπέστειλεν ὁ Θεόφιλος ὡς πανταχόθεν ἀντιστησομένους καὶ τὸν ἐχθρὸν ἐκνικήσαντας. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐδίδου δὴ ἡγεμόνας καὶ ἄρχοντας τοὺς μετὰ βραχὺ μαρτυρήσαντας, Θεόδωρόν τε τὸν Κρατερόν καὶ Θεόφιλον καὶ τὸν Βαβούτζικον· οἵτινες οὐ μόνον ἐκείνου τοῦ λαοῦ ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς φάλαγγος τῶν τεσσαράκοντα δύο μαρτύρων
- 20 γεγόνασιν ἀρχηγοί.

31. Ἐπεὶ γοῦν κατὰ τὴν Ταρσὸν ὁ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἐπέστη μετὰ φρονήματος καὶ λαοῦ ἡγεμῶν, οὐκ ἄθρόως τούτῳ μαντευομένῳ καὶ συμβουλευομένῳ ἐφαίνετο καλὸν χωρεῖν πρὸς Ἀμόριον, ἀπόπειραν δὲ πρότερον λαβεῖν τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων δυνάμεως διὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ μέρος
- 5 λαβόντος καὶ κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως χωρήσαντος. “εἰ γὰρ οὗτος”, φησί, “νικήσειεν, ἔψεται πάντως ἡ νίκη καὶ τῷ πατρί· εἰ δὲ μή, καλὸν ἡσυχάζειν, οὐκ ἐπακολουθησούσης τῆς νίκης μοι”. λαβόντος γοῦν αὐτοῦ Ἄμερα τὸν
- τηνικαῦτα | διέποντα τὴν Μελιτινὴν καὶ Τούρκους ὥσει χιλιάδας δέκα, B 127
- μετὰ πάσης τῆς ἐξ Ἀρμενίων στρατιᾶς καὶ τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων,
- 10 κατὰ τὸν Δαζημόνα προσέβαλε μετὰ στρατοπέδου. ἀπῆει γοῦν καὶ ὁ Θεόφιλος κατ’ αὐτοῦ στρατόπεδον ἔχων οὐκ ἀγεννές, ἔκ τε Περσῶν καὶ τῶν δυτικῶν καὶ τοῦ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον συνιστάμενον. ὡς δὲ κατὰ τὸν Ἀνζῆν οὕτω χῶρον καλούμενον ἐγένετο, ἰδεῖν | ἐπεθύμει τὸ τῶν f. 43r
- ἐναντίων ἄθροισμα πρὸ τῆς προσβολῆς. ἐπὶ τινα γοῦν λόφον καὶ τῶν
- 15 ἄλλων ὑπερβεβηκότα χῶρον ὁ δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν λαβὼν ἀνήνεγκε Μανουήλ, καὶ πως ἐκ στοχασμοῦ βραχύτερον ἐδόκει τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν· οὐ μὴν πρὸς τοῦτο συντιθεμένου τοῦ Μανουήλ, ὁ τῶν δοράτων ἴσος ἐδόκει ἔσμός. “ἀλλ’ ὦ”, φησί, “βασιλεῦ, τὸ καρτερόν στοχαζόμενος, τὸν ἐκ δοράτων καλαμῶνα ἀμφοτέρων διάθρει”. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἰσχυρότερός πως οὐκ
- 20 ὁ ἴδιος ἀλλ’ ὁ τῶν ἐναντίων ἐδόκει στρατός, βουλὴν ἐδέοντο ἀρτύειν νεανικὴν· ἡ δὲ ἦν ἔκ τε Μανουήλ συνισταμένη καὶ Θεοφόβου, νυκτὸς ἐπιτεθεῖναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἀλλ’ ἕτεροι κρεῖττον εἶναι τὴν ἡμέραν ἀντέφησαν, οἷς

Cap. 31: Gen 47.21–48.49 | Scyl 75.41–76.76

15 ἐδέετο V 15 ἀπέσταλκεν edd 16 ἀντιστησομένους – ἐκνικήσαντας Boor : ἀντιστησομένους – ἐκνικήσαντος V : ἀντιστησομένους – ἐκνικήσαντος edd 31.5 λαβόντος τοῦ στρατοῦ edd 5 χωρήσαντες edd 7 ἐπακολουθησούσης Boor : ἐπακολουθήσης V : ἐπακολουθούσης edd 7 μοι ante τῆς νίκης edd 8 Μελιτινὴν edd e Gen 47.25 et Scyl 75.49, fort. recte 9 ἐξαρμενίων V 10 Δαζημῶνα Gen (L var.) 47.25 : Δαζυμῶνα Gen : Δαζιμῶνα Scyl 75.51 10 προσέβαλε μετὰ στρατοπέδου Boor : προσέβαλε μετὰ στρατοπέδου V : προσέβαλε edd, cf. B qui στρατοπέδον — κατ’ αὐτοῦ om. 10 γοῦν om. edd 12 τοῦ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα Boor : τοῦ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντος V : τῶν πρὸς τὸν ἀνίσχοντα edd, cf. Scyl 75.54 τῶν πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα 13 Ἀνζῆν edd., cf. Gen 48.34 (L) 15 ἀνήνεγκεν edd 16 ἔκ V 16 βραχύτερον : βαρύτερον Scyl 76.58, sed ἐλάττωνα Gen 48.37 16 Σαρακηνῶν πλῆθος edd e Scyl 76.59 18 ἔσμός V edd 18 φησὶν V 18 fort. στοχασόμενος 19 τὸν... ἀμφοτέρων V 19 γοῦν V 19 οὐχ V 22 ἡμέραν ἀντέφησαν V

Theophilus dispatched them, so that they would everywhere resist and vanquish the enemy. To these same he gave as leaders and commanders Theodore Krateros, Theophilus and Baboutzikos, who would soon afterwards become martyrs, having been commanders not only of this host but also of the company of the Forty-Two Martyrs.

31. Now, when the leader of the Saracens arrived at Tarsus with arrogance and troops, after consulting an oracle and seeking advice, he deemed it not good to advance forthwith against Amorion but first to make trial of the Roman force through the agency of his son who, taking part of the army, advanced against the emperor. 'If he should gain the victory,' he said, 'victory will by all means come also to his father; otherwise, it is best to lie quiet, since victory will not come to me.' And taking with him Amer, the then ruler of Melitene, and some ten thousand Turks, together with all the host of the Armenians and the prince of princes, he arrived with his army at Dazemon. Theophilus, in turn, set off against him with an army of no modest proportions, made up of Persians as well as men from the West and the region of the rising sun. Now, when he came to the place called Anzes, he wanted to see the assembled enemy before the attack. So the domestikos of the scholai Manuel led the way to a place on a hill higher than the others, and it seemed somehow by estimation that the host of the Saracens was smaller; though when Manuel disagreed with this, the swarm of spears appeared equal. 'But, O emperor,' said he, 'in order to estimate the strength, observe closely the reed-bed of spears on both sides.' And since the mightier of the two appeared somehow not to be their own but rather the army of the enemy, they needed to devise a bold plan. Contrived by both Manuel and Theophilus, this plan was that an attack should be made on the enemy by night. But others argued, to the

- καὶ ὁ βασιλεύων ἐπέπειστο. ὥς δ' οὖν ἔλαμψεν ἡ ἡμέρα, μάχης καρτερᾶς
 25 γενομένης, ἐκθύμως τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀγωνισαμένων ταγμάτων, οἱ Ἰσμη-
 λῖται ἐνέκλιναν εἰς φυγὴν, ἀφέντες τὸ πολεμεῖν. ἀλλ' οἱ Τοῦρκοι ἐπιμόνῳ
 χρώμενοι τοξεύει, καὶ τὸ καταδιώκον τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀνακεκρουκότες, ἰστά-
 ναι ἀλλ' οὐ φεύγειν ἔπεισαν τοὺς Σαρακηνοὺς· ὅθεν ἑαυτοὺς πάλιν B 128
 συστησάμενοι, | καὶ τοῖς τόξοις δὴ γενναίως πόρρωθεν βάλλοντες,
 30 ἑτεραλκῇ τὴν μάχην ἐποίησαν. οἷς μὴ δυνάμενος ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
 προσεγγίσει στρατός, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ πόρρωθεν κατιδεῖν τῷ βάλλεσθαι καρ-
 τερώς, νῶτα κλίναντες τὸν βασιλέα κατέλιπον. οὐ μὴν οἱ τῶν βασιλικῶν
 ταγμάτων ἑξαρχοὶ μετὰ τῶν Περσῶν τοῦτο δρᾶσαι ἢ ἐννοῆσαι τε-
 τολμήκασιν, ἀλλὰ περιστάντες τῷ βασιλεῖ σῶζειν ἐβούλοντο, κύκλῳ τῶν
 35 ἐχθρῶν πάντοθεν περιστοιχησάντων καὶ βαλλόντων αὐτούς. κἂν ἄπ-
 ὠλοντο πανδημεῖ, εἰ μὴ νύξ ἐλθοῦσα καὶ βραχὺς τις ὄμβρος ἐπιγινόμενος
 τὰς μὲν νευρὰς χαλαρὰς εἰργάσατο αἷς ἡμύνοντο καὶ τὸ κράτος εἶχον οἱ
 ἐναντίοι, αὐτοῖς δὲ ἄνεσιν τὴν ἐκ βελῶν περιεποίησεν καὶ σωτηρίας μόλις
 ἐνέδωκεν ἀφορμὰς.
32. Βαθείας γὰρ ἤδη τῆς νυκτὸς γενομένης, ὥς ἡσχόλητο περὶ τὰς φυ-
 λακὰς ὁ Μανουήλ, γλώττη πῶς τῇ Σαρακηνῶν τὸν Περσῶν ὅμιλον
 σπένδεσθαι πῶς πρὸς αὐτοὺς διήκουσε, καὶ συνθέσθαι τούτους αὐθις τὸ f. 43v
 5 στράτευμα τῶν Ῥωμαίων καταπροδοῦναι καὶ πρὸς τὴν | ἐξ ἧς
 ἀπέστησαν χωρεῖν κεφαλὴν. δῆλα γοῦν τῷ βασιλεῖ λάθρα ποιεῖ, καὶ ἑαυ-
 τὸν σῶζειν μετὰ λογάδων ἡξίου ἀλλ' οὐ περιμένειν τὴν αὖριον. καὶ “πῶς
 10 ἔσται τοῦ τοσούτου λαοῦ”, ἐπερωτήσαντος τοῦ βασιλέως, “ἡ σωτηρία,
 ἔμοι προσμεινάντων;” “σοί”, φησί, “μόνον ἔστω, βασιλεῦ, τὸ σῶζεσθαι ἐκ
 θεοῦ· οὗτοι δὲ ταχέως τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς διοικήσουσιν”. ὅψε γοῦν κατὰ τὸ
 10 περίορθρον τοῦ βασιλέως φυγῇ χρησαμένου καὶ πρὸς τὸ Χιλιόκω|μον B 129
 διασωθέντος, οἱ λειποτάκται τῶν στρατηγῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ προσ-
 απαντήσαντες ἀναξίους ἔφασκον εἶναι τῆς ζωῆς, βασιλέα ἐν πολέμῳ κατα-
 προέντες, καὶ ἅμα τοῖς ἑαυτῶν ἐγυμνοῦντο ξίφεσι καὶ τοῖς ποσὶν
 15 ὑπετίθουν αὐτοῦ, δάκρυσι βρεχόμενοι παρειάς. ἀλλ' ὁ Θεόφιλος τρωθεὶς
 ἐκείνων μᾶλλον αὐτοῦ τὴν ψυχὴν τῷ παραδόξῳ τοῦ θεάματος, “εἰ ἐγώ”,
 φησί, “σέσωσμαι ἐκ θεοῦ, σώθητε καὶ ὑμεῖς ἀγωνιζόμενοι κατὰ τῶν ἐχ-

Cap. 32: Gen 48.50–49.66; Log A 227.232–234 | PsSym 638.16–17; Scyl 76.77–77.94

24 ἀγωνισαμένων V 25 Ἰσμηλίται V 27 ἐστάναι con. Bekk Boor fort. recte 34 περι-
 στοιχισάντων Boor, sed cf. Gen 48.47 περιστοιχίσαντες 34 ante καὶ βαλλόντων αὐτούς
 add. αὐτοὺς edd 35 πανδεμεῖ V 35 ἐπιγινόμενος V: ἐπιγενόμενος edd 38 ἐφορμὰς
 Comb 32.6 ἀλλ' οὐ V: καὶ μὴ edd 6 αὖριον V: ἄλωσιν edd 6 πῶς V 8 φησιν V
 8 τὸ edd: τῷ V 10 Χιλιόκωμον con. Bekk in app Boor e Gen. 48.60: Χιλιόκόκωμον V
 edd 13 καταπροέντας edd 15 θεάματος V: πράγματος edd 16 φησιν V 16 σώθητε
 nos, cf. Scyl 77.90: σωθήσετε V: σωθήσεσθε Boor edd

contrary, that it was better by day, and the ruler was persuaded by them. Thus, when the day dawned, a fierce battle being fought, with the imperial divisions struggling bravely, the Ismaelites turned to flight, abandoning the fight. But the Turks, plying persistent archery and beating back the pursuit of the Romans, persuaded the Saracens to stand their ground and not to flee; whereupon these latter, supporting one another and shooting valliantly with their bows from afar, turned the battle around. Unable to approach them or even to look upon them from afar because of the fierce shooting, the Roman army turned their backs and abandoned the emperor. However, the leaders of the imperial divisions together with the Persians durst not do or think of this, but standing round the emperor they wanted to save him, with the enemy surrounding them on all sides in a circle and shooting at them. They would have perished in a mass if night had not come followed by a brief rain which slackened the bowstrings by which the enemy retaliated and derived their strength, whereas it provided the Romans respite from the missiles and only just afforded means of salvation.

32. For when the night had advanced, whilst Manuel was occupied with the watch, he somehow heard in the language of the Saracens that the Persian company had made some accord with them and that they had agreed to betray the army of the Romans and go back to the leader whom they had deserted. He informed the emperor of this secretly, and he begged him to save himself with the elite officers and not wait till morning. When the emperor asked, 'How will the great host of men who have remained with me find safety?', said the other, 'Suffice it, O emperor, to save yourself, with God's help; these men will swiftly look after themselves.' Late then, towards dawn, the emperor took flight and sought safety in Chiliokomon; and when the generals who had left the ranks met the emperor there, they said they were unworthy to live, having betrayed an emperor in battle; and stripping themselves of their swords they threw themselves at his feet, wetting their cheeks with tears. But Theophilus, touched even more than they in his soul at the strangeness of the spectacle, said, 'If I have been saved with God's help, then save

20 θρῶν". τοῦτο οὖν τὸ παρὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν στρατήγημα καὶ ἡ νυκτερινή πῶς
λαλιά τῶν Περσῶν, ταῦτόν δὲ καὶ σπονδὴ εἰπεῖν, τοῖς μὲν Θεοφόβου
ἐχθροῖς καὶ θάνατον ψηφίζομένοις αὐτοῦ δευτέρᾳ τις γέγονεν αἰτία
καὶ ἀφορμὴ, τῷ δ' ἡμεραμουνῇ ἀκηκοῦσι νίκης οὐ μικρᾶς καὶ κατὰ τοῦ
Ἀμορίου καταδρομῆς.

33. Ἦνωντο γοῦν κατὰ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως πατρίδα ἀμφοτέρᾳ τὰ
στρατόπεδα, αὐτοῦ τε τοῦ ἡμεραμουνῆ καί, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ προπολεμῆσαν
σφοδρῶς, τοῦ νίοῦ· ἦνωντο γοῦν καὶ χάρακα περιέβαλλον καὶ τῆς πο-
λιορκίας ἀπήρχοντο. καὶ τέως ἀπόπειραν ἐποίει ἀποστραφεῖς κατὰ τὸ
5 Δορύλαιον ὁ Θεόφιλος τοῦ δώροις αὐτὸν ἐκεῖθεν ἀποστῆσαι καὶ πρὸς τὰ
οἰκεῖα ποιῆσαι παλιννοστήσαι. ἀλλ' οὐ πείθεται, ἐνδομυχοῦσαν φέρων
τὴν τῆς πατρίδος αὐτοῦ ἄλῳσιν τε καὶ πόρθησιν. μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν ἐξου-
θένει καὶ ἀνδράποδον ἐκάλει τε καὶ δειλόν, μυκτηρίζων καὶ διακωμῳδῶν
οἷς οὐ πρὸ τούτου τούτῳ ἀλλὰ νῦν ἐπὶ ξυροῦ ἐστῶτι ἐπείθετο. εἶχε μὲν
10 οὖν καὶ τοὺς ἀποσταλέντας | πρέσβεις αὐτόθι που τῶν δρωμένων B 130
ἐπόπτας καὶ μάρτυρας.

34. Καὶ δὴ χρόνου παρωχηκότος διέφυγεν ἂν ἡ πόλις τὸν ὄλεθρον,
[τῷ] πᾶσαν ἰδέαν πολιορκίας τῶν μὲν ἐνδεικνύντων τῶν δὲ κα|τα- f. 44r
βαλλόντων, καὶ πολλῶν ἀνηρημένων ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων ἀνδρῶν, τῶν μὲν
ἀμνομένων τῶν δὲ πολιορκούντων, ἀπράκτων δὲ τέως μενόντων τῶν
5 Ἀγαρηνῶν καὶ τῆς πολλῆς ὀφρύος κατασπαυμένων τῷ πλῆθος ἀνηρῆσθαι
λαοῦ – καὶ γὰρ ὥσει χιλιάδες ἐβδομήκοντα ἐκλελοιπότες εὐρέθησαν μετὰ
τὴν ἄλῳσιν ἀριθμούμενοι –, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦν παρελθεῖν τὴν ἐκ θεοῦ μάχαιραν
ἠπειλημένην ἄνωθεν, οἷς ὑβρίζετο τὸ θεῖον αὐξανομένης δὴ τῆς αἰρέσεως.
διὰ τοῦτο ἀνὴρ τις τῶν ὑποβεβηκότων – Βοϊδίτζης οὗτος ἐκαλεῖτο ὁ
10 ἄθλιος – μέλλουσιν ἤδη πῶς ἀναχωρεῖν καὶ πρὸς τὴν οἰκείαν μετ'
αἰσχύνης παλιννοστεῖν “τί”, φησίν, “ὦ οὔτοι,” γράμματα διὰ βελῶν πε-
πομφῶς, “τοσοῦτον τεταλαιπωρηκότες μέλλετε ἀποφοιτᾶν, κεκμηκότες

Cap. 33: Gen 45.60–67, 49.66–71 | PsSym 639.4–8; Scyl 77.94–17 || 9 cf. Homerus II.
10.173, Theognis 1.557 et etiam Hesychius E no. 5023, Photius Lexicon E no.1651, Etymologi-
cum Magnum p. 49 ln. 15 et p. 362, ln. 24–26 etc. cf. infra IV.41.36–37 Cap. 34: GeorgMon
797.21–798.1; Gen 45.67–46.80, 46.85–95, 49.70–73; Log A 227.234–248 | PsSym 638.17–
639.4; Scyl 77.17–79.53.

17 τῶν om. edd 17 στρατήγημα V 18 ταυτὸν V 19 τίς V 20 post ἀφορμὴ add.
εὐκαιρος εἰς διαβολήν edd e Scyl 77.92 21 Ἀμορίοι V 21 καταδρομῆς nos: καταδρομή V
edd Boor : lacunam post μικρᾶς conī. Boor, cf. Scyl 77.92–94 τῷ δ' ἡμεραμουνῇ ἀκηκοῦσι τὴν
νίκην ἔδοξε μὴ μέλλειν, ἀλλ' ἀπίνειν πρὸς τὸ Ἀμόριον 33.1 Ἦνωντο Boor, cf. infra III.33.3
et Gen. 49.70 : ἦνων V: ἦνωτο edd 3 ἦνωντο γοῦν del. edd Boor 4 τὸ om. edd 5 Δορύ-
λαιον V Comb Boor, cf. Gen 49.68 : Δορύλαιον Bekk, cf. Scyl 77.8 (EMN) Δορυλαίῳ
6 πάλιν νοστήσαι Comb : παλιννοστήσαι Bekk 7 ἄλῳσιν V 8 τέ V 9 προτοῦτου V
34.1 δὴ : τοι conī. Bekk in app. 1 ὄλεθρον V 2 τῷ nos delendum putamus : τῷ V : τῷ edd
Boor 5 ὀφρὺς V 7 ἄλῳσιν V 9 διατοῦτο V 9 ἀνὴρ τίς V 10 πῶς V 11 παλι-
νοστεῖν edd 11 φησιν V

yourselves in combat against the enemy.’ This strategem of the enemy and the nocturnal conversation, that is to say, accord of the Persians was yet another motive and incitement, on the one hand to the enemies of Theophobos who were pressing for his death, but also to the ameramnounes, when he heard about this important victory, for an attack on Amorion.

33. The two armies, then, that of the ameramnounes and that of his son which had already fought fiercely, joined together near the emperor’s home city; they joined together, dug a trench round themselves and commenced the siege. Meanwhile, returning to Dorylaion, Theophilus attempted with gifts to make the other depart from thence and return to his own country. But the ameramnounes paid no heed, guarding in his inner thoughts the sack and pillage of his home city. Rather, he reviled and called him a slave and coward, sneering and mocking at the fact that Theophilus had not heeded him earlier but only now when he stood on the razor’s edge between success and failure. Thus did Theophilus have the envoys who had been dispatched there as observers and witnesses of what was going on.

34. Now, with the passing of time the city would have escaped ruin, for every sort of siegework that had been brought to bear by the one side was beaten back by the other, and many men were slain on both sides, those defending and those laying siege; and the Hagarenes, who remained yet unsuccessful, showed great distress on account of the multitude of the slaughtered host, for nearly seventy thousand men were counted missing after the conquest. But it was impossible for those who insulted the Godhead through the long increase of their heresy to escape the sword of God which threatened from above. Thus, a certain man – the wretch was called Boiditzes – from amongst the inferior ranks, said to the Hagarenes, sending letters with arrows as they were about to withdraw and return in shame to their own land: ‘Why, O men, do you intend to leave after suffering such hardship, having toiled and

- ἄπρακτα καὶ πεπονηκότες; ἔλθετε τοιγαροῦν κατὰ τοὺς πύργους ἐκείνους, ἔνθα μὲν βοῖδιον ἄνωθεν λίθινον ἔξωθεν δὲ λέων ἐκ μαρμάρου ἐφίσταται·
- 15 κάκεϊσέ μοι περιτυχόντες, τὰ ὑμέτερα δηλαδὴ φρονοῦντί τε καὶ διευθετοῦντι, καὶ ἄλλως ἀσθενεστέρων πεφυκότων ἐνθαδὶ τῶν ἐπάλξεων, ἐγκρατεῖς τε τῶν ἔσω γενήσεσθε καὶ ἐμὲ πολλοῦ ἄξιον κρινεῖτε". ἦλθον κατὰ τὸν λόγον ἐκείνου, καὶ εἰσῆλθον ἅμα τῇ προσβολῇ, παίοντες καὶ τιτρώσκοντες τοὺς καταλαμβανομένους. οὐκ ἦν δὲ ὅστις τῶν ἀποθνησκόντων B 131
- 20 οὐκ ἦν. πάντες δὲ ἀνηροῦντο καὶ ἐπιπτον ποταμούς· κινούντες ἔξ αἵματος. οὕτω μὲν οὖν αἰρεῖται τὸ Ἀμόριον καὶ χερσὶν ἀνόμων ἀνομωτέρως προδίδοται, ἐκείνων μόνων ζώντων τῶν μέχρι τοῦ Βαγδάδ παραπεμφθέντων, τῶν κατὰ τὰ θέματα τελούντων μεγιστάνων τε καὶ κραταιοτέρων ἀνδρῶν, οἷς καὶ οἱ τεσσαρακονταδύο μάρτυρες συνηρίθμηντο. οἱ
- 25 δ' ἄλλοι ἅπαντες μαχαίρας πολεμικῆς ἐγίνοντο τρόπαιον. οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδ' οὕτως ἔπεισε τὸν ἐχθρὸν ὁ Θεόφιλος πρέσβεις δευτέρους ἐπαποστείλας, ἐπὶ κεντηναρίοις διακοσίοις ἐξωνήσασθαι τε καὶ τῶν ἐχθρῶν λυτρώσασθαι τὸν αἰχμαλωτισθέντα λαόν, εἰ δ' οὖν, ἀλλὰ τοὺς γε τέως πρὸς γένος αὐτῷ πλησιάζοντας καὶ ἐπὶ συμμαχίαν ἀποσταλέντας ἐκεῖ. ἀλλὰ μέγα | f. 44v
- 30 μὲν οὖν γαυριῶν μέγα δὲ καὶ φυσῶν ἐκείνους τε τοὺς πρῶτους καὶ τοὺς δευτέρους τούτους ἀνταπέστειλε πρέσβεις, καταμωκῶμένος τε καὶ πλύνων ὕβρεσι, "τοσούτοις μόνοις", φάσκων, "ἐξωνήσασθαι βούλεσθε κεντηναρίοις, ἔνθα τῶν χιλίων μέχρι φιλοτιμίας ἔνεκα καὶ δωρεᾶς ἡμῖν κατανάλωται;" οἷς τὴν καρδίαν παθὼν ὁ Θεόφιλος, καὶ ὥσπερ ὑπὸ πυρός
- 35 τινος ἀναζέων ἢ ἐλαυνόμενος, ἐδεῖτο τοῦ περιψύχοντος ὕδατος ἐκ χιόνος προσφερομένου. χλιαροῦ δὲ πῶς τῷ τῆς καρδίας καύσωνι δοκοῦντος, συνέβη κάκεϊνον ἔξ ἐκείνης τῆς πόσεως δυσεντερίας νόσῳ περιληφθῆναι καὶ ἄκοντα, καὶ τῇ νόσῳ ταύτῃ τοῦ βίου γενέσθαι ἐκτός.
35. Καὶ τὰ μὲν κατὰ τὸ Ἀμόριον οὕτως. | κατὰ δὲ τὴν οἰκίαν χώραν B 132
παλινδρομήσας ὁ Ἀγαρηνὸς τοὺς εἰρημένους ἀρχηγούς ἐν φρουρᾷ τι

34.21 : die 12 Aug. a. 838 Amorion expugnatum est. 38 : die 20 Ian. a. 842 Theophilus obiit, cf. infra III.41.1–2

Cap. 35: Acta Mart Amor A, praes. 1.10–2.1, 4.29–5.17; Acta Mart Amor Z, praes. 65.11–25, 71.14–72.23

15 κακεῖσέ V 16 φρονοῦντί τε καὶ διευθετοῦντι nos : φρονοῦντά τε καὶ διευθετοῦντα V edd : φρονοῦντι καὶ διευθετοῦντι Boor 16 ἔνθα δὴ edd 17 πολλοῦ τε V 17 κρινεῖτε Boor : κρίνετε V edd 18 ἐκείνοι con. Boor dubitanter in app. 22 μόνον edd 22 ζώντων V 23 τὲ V 24 μβ' edd 26 ἐπ' ἀποστείλας V : ἀποστείλας edd 27 τὸν ἐχθρῶν V 28 αἰχμάλωτον edd 28 γένους con. Bekk 29 post συμμαχίαν add. αὐτῷ edd 30 δὲ καὶ : δὲ γε edd 32 βούλεσθαι V 33 ἔνεκα V 33 ὑμῖν edd 34 post οἷς add. καὶ edd 35 πυρός τινός V 37 κακεῖνον V 37 ἐξεκείνης V 38 βίου om. edd 35.1 κατὰ τὸ : κα| τὸ V 2 ἀρχηγούς edd Boor, cf. Acta Mart Amor (Z) 65. 11–12 : ἀρχηγός V

laboured in vain? Come therefore to the towers where the stone ox stands above and a marble lion outside, and there, meeting me who think the same as you and favour your cause, because the battlements are weaker in this place than elsewhere, you shall gain mastery over those within and shall judge me to be of great worth.' They came according to his word, and they entered with an assault, smiting and wounding those who were caught. There was no one who was not amongst the dying. All were slain and fell, shedding rivers of blood. In this way was Amorion captured and betrayed most impiously into the hands of the impious; those alone remained alive who had been sent to Bagdad, being officials and more important men in the themes, amongst whom were also the Forty-Two Martyrs. All the others became a victory mound of the sword of war. For Theophilus did not convince the enemy, even though he dispatched also second envoys with two hundred kentenaria in order to ransom and win the release of the captured host from the enemy or, if not, at least of those related to him by family who had been dispatched there in alliance. But with great vaunting and great swelling of pride the other sent back both the former and these second envoys. Mocking and heaping insults upon them he said, 'You wish to ransom for so few kentenaria that on which we spent thousands for the sake of honour and bounty?' By these words was Theophilus stricken at heart and, as if boiling or afflicted with fever, he required the chilling water from snow which was brought to him. But although this seemed to him somehow warm because of the burning heat of his heart, it came to pass because of this drink that he was overcome, involuntarily, by the disease of dysentery, and through this disease he lost his life.

35. Such were the events in Amorion, and returning to his own land the Hagarene imprisoned the abovementioned leaders, he shut them up in a dark

- σκοτεινῇ τῷ ξύλῳ ἀσφαλισάμενος καθεῖρξεν, βραχεῖ τινι ὕδατι καὶ ἄρτω
 5 τούτους ἐντειλάμενος ἀποζῆν. ἐν τοσούτῳ δὲ σκότει καὶ ἀσφαλείᾳ κατ-
 εἶχοντο ὡς μήτε κατὰ τὴν σταθερὰν μεσημβρίαν μικρόν τι αὐγάζεσθαι,
 ἀλλ' ἢ τῇ ἀλλήλων φωνῇ γινώσκεσθαι τε μόνη καὶ μόνων τῶν φυλάκων
 ἀπολαύειν, τῶν ἄλλων στερουμένους ἀνθρώπων, καὶ ὡς ἐν ἐρημίᾳ
 βαθυτάτῃ διάγειν. τούτοις τοῖς δεινοῖς ἐπὶ ἐπτά ὅλοις ἔτεσι προσε-
 10 καρτέρησαν. ἄρτι δὲ κατὰ τὴν πέμπτην τοῦ Μαρτίου μηνὸς ὁ τὸ Ἀμόριόν
 τε προδούς καὶ τὸν Χριστὸν ἀρνησάμενος Βοϊδίτζης κατὰ τὴν φυλακὴν
 γενόμενος, Κωνσταντῖνον ἄνδρα <λόγιον> καὶ σοφίᾳ ἐντεθραμμένον
 φωνήσας – Κωνσταντῖνῳ δὲ οὗτος ἦν ὑπηρετῶν τῷ πατρικίῳ κατὰ τὴν
 ἐν λόγῳ γραφὴν –, οὐ χρήζειν ἔφη τινὰ τῶν ἐντὸς παρεῖναι σοι καὶ τῶν
 15 ἑμῶν τυγχάνειν μυστηρίων ἀκροατὴν. ὡς δ' οὐδένα παρεῖναι ὁ Κωνσταν-
 τῖνος καθωμολόγει, “ἄγε δὴ”, ἔφησεν, “ὦ φιλάτῃ μοι καὶ γλυκεῖα ψυχῇ –
 γινώσκεις γὰρ τὸν ἀρχῆθεν πόθον σου συμφύεντα μοι –, βουλήθητι μετὰ
 τοῦ πατρικίου τῷ πρωτοσυμβούλῳ συνεύξασθαι καὶ μαγαρίσαι τὴν
 αὖριον, ἵνα μὴ παρανάλωμα γένησθε μαχαίρας καὶ αἰκισμῶν. τοῦτο γὰρ
 20 αὐτῷ διὰ σπουδῆς ἔχοντι καὶ μελετῶντι συμφέρον ἡγησάμην σοι ὡς
 φίλῳ δηλοποιῆσαι πιστῷ. θέλησον γοῦν αὐτῷ μὲν κατὰ τὸ φανερόν
 συγνεύσασθαι, θεῷ δὲ τῷ τὰ κρυπτὰ | ἐτάζοντι πίστευε κατὰ ψυχὴν, καὶ f. 45r
 τῆς αὐτοῦ οὐχ ἀμαρτήσετε αἰωνίου ζωῆς. τούτοις οὐ μαλακισθεῖς οὐδὲ B 133
 φρεναπατηθεῖς ὁ ἀήττητος “ἀπόστηθι”, ἔφη, “ἀπ' ἐμοῦ, ἐργάτα τῆς
 ἀνομίας, ἀπόστηθι”. καὶ ἅμα τῷ λόγῳ ἀπεφοίτησεν, διηγησάμενος ἰδίᾳ
 25 τῷ πατρικίῳ τῶν λεχθέντων μὲν οὐδὲν φανερόν, ἵνα μὴ τις δειλανδρίας
 ἐναποτεχθῇ αὐτῷ λογισμός, μόνον δὲ ὅτι “θανάτου ψῆφος καθ' ἡμῶν ἐς
 αὖριον ἐξενήνεκται”. εὐχαρίστησεν ἐπὶ τούτοις τῷ θεῷ ὁ πατρίκιος, καὶ
 διαθέμενος τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν διὰ τοῦ Κωνσταντίνου τοὺς συμπαρόντας
 ἅπαντας εἰς πάννυχον ὕμνωδιαν ἀνίστησιν.

36. Ἐωθεν δὲ μετὰ σοβαρᾶς τις φαντασίας ἄρχων ἐληλυθὼς τοὺς προ-
 εξάρχοντας μόνους τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελθεῖν ἐπιτρέπει. καὶ δὴ ἐξιάσιν ἄνδρες

Cap. 36: Acta Mart Amor A, praes. 5.17–22, 6.16–36; Acta Mart Amor Z, praes. 72.24–31, 75.15–76.18

3 τινὶ V 4 καὶ om. edd 11 <λόγιον> addidimus, cf. Acta Mart Amor (Z) 72.1–2 ἄνδρα
 λόγιον καὶ πάσῃ ἀρετῇ κεκοσμημένον : ἄνδρα φρόνιμον καὶ σοφίᾳ edd : ἄνδρα τῇ σοφίᾳ conī.
 Boor in app. 12 Κωνσταντῖνῳ Boor ex Acta Mart Amor (Z) 72.2 νοτάριον τελοῦντα
 Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ πατρικίου : Κωνσταντίνος V edd 14 οὐδ' ἔνα V 15 δὴ : μοι edd
 15 μοι om. edd 18 γίνησθε edd 20 φήλω V 20 αὐτὸ V 21 τῷ om. edd 21 πισ-
 τεύετε conī. Boor in app. 22 οὐχ (sic) V 22 μηδὲ edd 27 ἐς αὖριον καθ' ἡμῶν edd
 28 τοῦ om. edd 36.1 σοβαρᾶς : φοβερᾶς in Acta Mart Amor (Z) 72.24–25 1 τίς V
 1 ἐξεληλυθὼς edd 2 προεξάρχοντας V 2 ἐξιάσιν V Comb : ἐξιάσιν edd Boor

gaol, confining them in wooden stocks, and commanded that they should subsist on a little water and bread. They were kept in such darkness and security that even at high noon there was hardly any light; they recognised each other by voice alone and had only the company of their guards, deprived of all other men and living as in the most remote desert. In these dreadful conditions they persevered for seven whole years. Then, on the fifth day of March, Boiditzes, the man who had betrayed Amorion and renounced Christ, came to the prison and called out to Constantine, a man <of eloquence> and nurtured in wisdom – this same was in service to Constantine the patrikios for the writing of documents. ‘None of those inside must be with you,’ he said, ‘who might hear my secrets.’ When Constantine declared that no one was present, the other said, ‘Come now, my dearest, sweet soul – for you know the love which unites me with you –, consent, together with the patrikios, to pray with the protosymboulos and apostatise to-morrow, lest you be delivered to the sword and torments. For I have thought it profitable to inform you, as a trusted friend, of this thing for which he is very eager and is making preparations. Agree, then, to pray with him in public, but in your soul believe in God who examines things which are hidden, and you shall not fail in obtaining His eternal life.’ However, neither softened nor swayed by these words the invincible one said, ‘Get away from me, you worker of iniquity, get away!’ And with this word he went off, recounting in private to the patrikios nothing exact of what had been said, lest some cowardly thought might be engendered in him, but only that ‘the sentence of death has been brought against us for to-morrow.’ The patrikios thanked God for this, and having arranged his affairs through the service of Constantine he roused all those with him to all-night hymnody.

36. In the morning an official of stern appearance came and commanded that only the most prominent officers should come out, without the others.

- δύο καὶ τεσσαράκοντα, καὶ εὐθὺς κλεισθῆναι προστάττει τὴν φυλακὴν.
 ἡρώτα γοῦν πόσον ἔτος αὐτοῖς ἔστιν κατὰ τὴν φρουράν, καὶ ἄλλας ἐκίνει
 5 βαττολογίας, κατηκόους τούτους βουλόμενος τῶν αὐτοῦ ποιῆσαι φλυα-
 ριῶν. ἀλλ' οὗτοι τό τε ἔτος ἀποκριθέντες, ὡς ἑβδομον, καὶ πρὸς τοὺς
 ἐκείνων ἐκ τῆς θείας γραφῆς λόγους, ῥωμαλέως καὶ μετὰ γενναίας ἀντιταχ-
 θέντες ψυχῆς, τὴν ἐπὶ θάνατον φέρουσιν κατεκρίθησαν. ὡς δὲ κατὰ τὸν
 10 Εὐφράτην ἐγένοντο – καὶ γὰρ περὶ αὐτὸν ἡ πόλις αὐτῶν ὠκοδόμηται
 Σάμαρα –, ἐλέγχειν ἐπειράτο τὸν Κρατερὸν Θεόδωρον ὁ ἀλιτῆριος, εἴ πως
 ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε πείσει τὸν θάνατον ἐξαρνήσασθαι. καὶ “πῶς”, ἔφη, “σὺ
 Θεόδωρε, παρρησιαζόμενος διὰ θανάτου φοιτᾷς ἐλπίζεις πρὸς θεόν, οὗ
 15 τὰς σωτηρίας, ὡς φατέ οὐκ ἡγάπησας | ἐντολάς; οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν ἐξ ἱερατι-
 κοῦ κλήρου, ᾧ πάλαι σὺ ἐγκατείλεξο, πρὸς σχῆμα ἡλθες τῶν λαϊκῶν· οὐδὲ
 χεῖρας ἀθῶους οὐσας αἱμάτων σου νῦν ἐν πολέμοις ἐπλήρους πάλιν αὐτὰς
 τῶν μολυσμάτων τε καὶ μiasμάτων”. καὶ ὁ Θεόδωρος οὐκ ἐμβραδύνας,
 οὐδέ τινα χρόνον ἀναβαλλόμενος, “διὰ τοῦτο μέν”, ἔφη, “καὶ τὸ ἐμὸν
 20 ἐκχέαι αἷμα οὐ κατοκνήσω, ἵνα μοι λύτρον τε καὶ λουτρόν τῶν πεπλημ-
 μελημένων ἀναφανέν τὴν βασιλείαν δώῃ αὐτοῦ, ἣ καὶ ἀποδράσας τίς σου
 τῶν οἰκετῶν καὶ αὐθις ἐπανακάμψας τὴν σοι φίλην λειτουργίαν ἐκτελοῖη,
 25 εἰς τὴν συγγνώμης χώραν ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀγνωμοσύνης χωροῖη”. καὶ ἅμα εἰς
 τὸ τῆς ἀθλήσεως εἰσῆει ὥσπερ τις Ὀλυμπιονίκης στάδιον, καὶ πρὸς τὸν
 πατρίκιον Κωνσταντῖνόν φησι, τὴν ὑφέρπουσαν ὥσπερ αὐτοῦ δειλίαν
 καὶ φόβον ἀποσοβῶν, “ἄγε δῆ, ᾧ στρατιῶτα Χριστοῦ, τὸ πρόκριτος εἶ-
 30 ναι πάντων ἡμῶν πρὸς τὸν ἐπὶ γῆς βασιλέα λαχόν, πρῶτος καὶ τὸν τοῦ
 μαρτυρίου ἀναλαμβάνανε στέφανον”. ὁ δ' ἱερὸς Κωνσταντῖνος “σοὶ μᾶλλον
 ὡς καρτερῶ καὶ γενναίῳ”, ἔφη, “τὸ τοιοῦτον προσῆκεν ἀξίωμα, ὅθεν
 ἀκόλουθον ἔξεις ἐμέ, σαυτὸν πρῶτον εἰς θάνατον προδιδούς”. ἐπιρρώ-
 σαντες οὖν ἀλλήλους τοῖς παρακλητικοῖς, κατὰ τὰς κοσμικὰς ἀξίας πρὸς
 30 τὸν διὰ μαρτυρίου ἕκαστος ἐχώρει δὴ θάνατον, πάντων θαυμαζόντων
 τὴν μετὰ πεποιθήσεως καὶ γενναίας τούτων ψυχῆς ἄθλησιν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα
 μὲν ὕστερον.

36.29–30 : die 6 Mart. a. 845, in Samarra quadraginta duo captivi Amorienses martyrium accipiunt

|| 18–19 Analecta Hymnica Graeca, Canones Februarii dies 8, canon 9, oda 4, ln. 73

4 πόσον B edd 4 ἔτως V 4 ἔστιν edd 7 λόγους om. edd 8 μετὰ γενναίας ἀντι-
 ταχθέντες ψυχῆς Boor : μετὰ γενέας ἐκ τῆς θείας ἀντιταχθέντες ψυχῆς V : μετὰ γενναίας
 ψυχῆς ἀντιταχθέντες λόγους edd 8 ἐπιθάνατον V 9 γὰρ om. B edd 9 αὐτὸν : αὐτῶν
 V 11 σὺ V 13 σωτηρίου Boor 14 σὺ πάλαι edd 14 ἐγκατελέξω edd 15 οὐσας
 V 16 οὐκεμβραδύνας V 17 οὐδὲ : μηδέ edd 17 ἀναβαλλόμενος V 17 μέν om.
 edd 18 κατοκινήσω V 19 ἣ καὶ nos : ἣ καὶ V : ἣ edd : ἣ εἰ conl. Bekk in app. : ἣ <οὐχί> καὶ
 Boor, cf. Acta Mart Amor (Z) 75.30 ἣ οὐχί καὶ 20 καὶ : κἂν conl. Boor 20 τὴν σοὶ V
 Comb 23 φησὶ V 25 πρὸς τοῦ ... βασιλέως conl. Boor in app. 27 γενναίῳ καὶ
 κρατερῶ edd 28 με edd 28 παραδιδούς B edd

Forty-two men came out, and he ordered the prison to be shut forthwith. Then he asked which year it was of their imprisonment and uttered other vain words, wishing to make them obedient to his nonsense. But replying that it was their seventh year, and arraying themselves staunchly and with noble soul from Divine Scripture against the words of the others, they were condemned to death. And when they arrived at the Euphrates – for their city Samarra is built near it – the impious one attempted to test Theodore Krateros, to see whether he might somehow convince him to renounce death. ‘How, O Theodore,’ said he, ‘do you, with your bold speech, hope by means of death to enter the presence of God, whose commandments of salvation, as you call it, you have not kept? For you would not have come to the state of laymen from the priestly order, in which you were formerly enrolled, nor would you now again have filled your hands, which had been innocent of blood, with the defilement and pollution of war.’ Without hesitating, nor delaying for any moment, Theodore said, ‘It is for this reason that I shall not shrink from shedding my blood, that it might be the ransom and washing away of my sins and might grant me His kingdom. Even so, if one of your servitors ran off and, coming back again, performed a service dear to you, he would find forgiveness, not animosity.’ And as he entered the stadium of contest like an Olympic champion, he said to the patrikios Constantine, as if to shake off the timidity and fear which was stealing over him, ‘Come, O soldier of Christ, you who have received the foremost place before the emperor on earth, be also the first to receive the crown of martyrdom.’ But the holy Constantine said, ‘Such a great dignity befits rather you, who are strong² and noble, whereby you will have me as a follower, having given yourself first over to death.’ Thus fortifying each other with exhortations, each went off to death by martyrdom in the order of their worldly rank whilst all marvelled at their confidence and their nobility of soul in the contest. But these things happened later.

² Greek καρτερός: perhaps a play on Theodore’s name Κρατερός.

- | 37. Τότε δ' ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόφιλος οὐ φέρων τὴν ἐκ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν B 135
 ἤτταν καὶ ἄδοξίαν, τὸν πατρίκιον Θεοδόσιον, ὃς οὕτως ἐλέγετο ὁ Βα-
 βουτζίκος, πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα Φραγγίας στρατεύματα ἐκεῖ ἐξαποστέλλει αἰ-
 τῶν γενναῖά τε καὶ πολυάνθρωπα. οὐδὲ γὰρ χειρῶν ἀσθενεία ἢ ψυχῆς
 5 μαλακότητι τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ κέκρικεν ἡττᾶσθαι ποτε, φυγομαχίᾳ δὲ καὶ
 ταῦτόν εἰπεῖν προδοσίᾳ τοῦτο πάσχειν αἰεί. ἀλλὰ κἂν ἔλαβε πείραν καὶ
 τῶν ὦν προσεκαλεῖτο ἔθνων δύναμιν καὶ ἰσχύν – μετ' εὐφροσύνης γὰρ
 τὴν πρὸς βασιλέα ἐπικουρίαν ὁ ῥῆξ ἀπεδέδεκτο – καὶ αὐθις κατὰ τῶν
 Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐστράτευσεν ὁ δυστυχὴς Θεόφιλος – ταύτην δὲ τὴν προσ-
 10 ηγορίαν ἐκ τοῦ αἰεί πως ἡττᾶσθαι κατὰ πόλεμον ἐκληρώσατο –, εἰ μὴ ὁ
 ἀποσταλὴς Θεοδόσιος ἐκ τοῦ βίου ἔξω γενέσθαι προέφθασεν. ἐκείνου τε
 γὰρ ἢ ἀποβίωσις τὸν στρατὸν ἐκείνον πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐλθεῖν οὐ
 πεποίηκε, καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπικρατήσασα ἢ τῆς δυσεντερίας νόσος θα-
 νατᾶν ἐποίει ἀλλ' οὐ πρὸς ὅπλα χωρεῖν.
38. Ὡρα δὲ καὶ τὰ τοῦ Θεοφύλου εἰς μέσον θεῖναι καὶ πᾶσι καταστήσαι
 σαφῆ. ἔκ τε γὰρ τῆς εἰρημένης ἤδη κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐν νυκτὶ τὸν
 πόλεμον στήσεσθαι αἰτίας, ἀλλὰ δὲ καὶ τῆς κατὰ τὴν νύκτα γενομένης
 λαθραίας ὁμιλίας πρὸς τοὺς Σαρακηνοὺς, ὡς ἔφαμεν, καὶ ἄλλοθεν δέ ποθεν
 5 κατ' αὐτοῦ λοιδορία καθοσιώσεως ἐπιφυσῆσαι καὶ αὐξηθεῖσαι μισητὸν
 εἰργάζοντο τὸν ἄνδρα | καὶ φοβερὸν. καὶ ἐπεὶ μὴ οἷός τε ἦν ἀντισχεῖν, f. 46r
 εὐεξαπ' αὐτὸν ὄντα εἰδὼς τὸν Θεόφιλον, φυγαδεύει χρησάμενος πρὸς τὴν B 136
 Ἀμαστριν – πόλιν δὲ αὕτη Ποντικὴ – μετὰ τέκνων ὁμοῦ χωρεῖ τε καὶ γυ-
 ναικῶν καὶ τινων ἐκκρίτων ἀνδρῶν. ἀνήγετο γοῦν στόλος εὐθύς κατ'
 10 αὐτοῦ, καὶ πόλεμος σφοδρὸς ἐξηρτύετο ὡς πρὸς ἐχθρὸν τοῦ βασιλέως
 κατάδηλον, καὶ τοῦ τοιοῦτου στόλου ἀρχηγὸς ὁ τῆς βίγλης δρουγγάριος
 οὕτως Ὀρὺφας λεγόμενος. ἀλλ' ὁ Θεόφοβος τὸν τοῦ θεοῦ φόβον ἐν ἑαυτῷ
 συλλαβὼν οὐκ ἔφησε δίκαιον εἶναι Χριστιανὸν ὄντα αἵμασιν ἀνθρώπων
 χαίρειν πιστῶν· ὅθεν ὑπείκει τῷ βασιλεῖ ὅρκους δελεασθεὶς, καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν
 15 ἐπανάγεται τοῖς ὅρκους θαρρῶν. ἀλλ' ὁ Θεόφιλος τούτους θέμενος εἰς
 οὐδὲν νῦν μὲν εἰρκτῇ τινι καὶ φρουρᾷ τῇ κατὰ τὸν Βουκολέοντα τοῦτον

37.1–4 : die 18 Mai. a. 839 Ludovicus Pius legationem Theodosii Babutzici in Ingelheim accipit

Cap. 37: Gen 50.13–18, 51.47–51 | Scyl 79.53–61 Cap. 38: Gen 42.59–43.3; Log A
 231.314–330 | PsSym 646.9–647.2; Scyl 80.77–85

37.1 δὲ edd 2 τὸν om. edd 2 οὗτος V 3 ἐξαποστέλλει ante στρατεύματα ἐκεῖ edd
 4 γενναῖα τε V 5 ἡττᾶσθαι ποτὲ V 6 ταυτὸν V 6 καὶ ἂν edd 6 ἔλαβεν edd 7 καὶ
 τῶν : ἐκ τῶν conl. Boor dubitanter in app. 7 post ἰσχύν add. ἦσθετο Comb (del. Bekk)
 10 εἰττᾶσθαι V 11 ἔξω om. edd 14 θανατεῖν edd, sed θανατᾶν seu δυσθανατεῖν conl.
 Bekk in app. 38.3 συστήσεσθαι edd 3 δὲ καὶ : δὲ Comb : καὶ Bekk 8 αὐτῇ edd 8 τὲ
 V 9 οὖν edd 14 ὅρκους V 15 θαρῶν V 16 ante εἰρκτῇ add. ἐν Boor, cf. Scyl. 80.79 ἐν
 δεσμωτηρίῳ τίθησιν

37. At that time the emperor Theophilus, unable to bear the defeat and ignominy inflicted by the Hagarenes, dispatched the patrikios Theodosius, who was called Baboutzikos, to the king of Francia soliciting brave and numerous troops. For he believed that his own men were never vanquished by weakness of limb or effeminacy of spirit, but that they suffered this always through flight from battle, that is to say, through treason. And the wretched Theophilus – he had acquired this appellation from almost always being defeated in battle – would have made trial of the force and strength of the foreigners whom he had solicited (for with gladness the king had granted aid to the emperor) and would have once again taken the field against the Hagarenes if his envoy Theodosius had not first been taken from this life. For the demise of this latter stopped the coming of that force to the capital, and the illness of dysentery which had seised the emperor caused him to languish in the throes of death rather than take up arms.

38. But now it is time to place the affairs of Theophobos at the middle of attention and explain them to all. For the reason already mentioned, because of waging war against the Hagarenes in the night, and also on account of the secret conversation which, as we have said, had been held at night with the Saracens, as well as for certain other reasons, accusations of *lèse-majesté* arose against Theophobos and increased, causing the man to be hated and feared. And because he was unable to resist, since he knew that Theophilus was easily deceived, he took flight and went to Amastris – this is a Pontic city – together with his children and womenfolk and certain chosen men. Forthwith a fleet was raised against him and preparations were made for a fierce war, as if against a declared enemy of the emperor, and the leader of this fleet was the *drungarius* of the Watch, who was called Ooryphas. But Theophobos, gathering up the fear of God within him, said that it was unjust for a Christian to rejoice in the bloodshed of faithful men. He therefore yielded to the emperor, lured by oaths, and he was brought to him, trusting in the oaths. But Theophilus thought nothing of these latter and at first put him in a dungeon and prison in the Bucoleon, ordering that he be kept under guard; and

- τίθησι, φρουρεῖσθαι προστάξας· μιᾷ δέ τινι τῶν ἡμερῶν, ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ἑαυτὸν ἤδη ἀποβιοῦντα καὶ τὰ ἔσχατα πνέοντα, κεύει ἐν νυκτὶ ἐξ αὐθεντίας ἀποτμηθῆναι οἷόν τι πικρὸν αὐτοῦ ἐντάφιον καὶ λυπρὸν, καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
- 20 τὴν ἐκείνου ἀχθῆναι κεφαλὴν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἤχθη κατὰ τὸ πρόσταγμα, τῇ αὐτοῦ χειρὶ τὴν ἐκείνου ῥίνα λαβὼν, “νῦν γε”, ἔφησεν, “οὔτε σὺ Θεόφοβος οὔτ’ ἐγὼ Θεόφιλος”. εἰσὶ δὲ οἱ τὸν θάνατον τοῦ Θεοφόβου τῷ Ὀρούφῃ ἀλλ’ οὐ τῷ βασιλεῖ διδόασιν, φάσκοντες ὡς ἅμα τῷ πιστεῦσαι τούτῳ αὐτόν, τὴν κεφαλικὴν ἐπαγαγεῖν τιμωρίαν αὐτῷ λάθρα διὰ νυκτός. ἐκεῖ
- 25 ἴθεν οὖν καὶ διαβεβόηται μέχρι τοῦδε παρὰ Πέρσαις μὴ ὄψεσθαι θάνατον τὸν Θεόφοβον ἀλλ’ ἐν ἀφθαρσίᾳ διαζῆν, τῷ κρύβδῃ ἀλλ’ οὐκ ἀναφανδὸν τὸν ἐκείνου θάνατον γενέσθαι ποτέ

- | 39. Κατὰ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν καιρὸν Κρήτες παντὶ στόλῳ ἀράμενοι τὴν B 137 παράλιον ἐδήουν τῶν Θρακησίων καὶ ἠχμαλώτιζον. παρὰ τοσοῦτον δὲ αὐτῶν ἐχώρουν τὰ νεανιεύματα καὶ τὰ στρατηγήματα παρ’ ὅσον οὐ τὴν αἰγιαλίτιν μόνον ἐπειρῶντο καταδραμεῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ κατὰ τῶν ἐν τῷ ὄρει,
- 5 ὅπερ οὕτω καλεῖται Λάτρος, ἐνσκηνοῦντων καὶ τὸν μοναύλιον βίον ἀσπασαμένων γυμνῷ τῷ ξίφει χωρεῖν καὶ Μυσῶν λείαν τὰ ἐκέῃσε ποιεῖν. ἀλλὰ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ κατὰ τὸν Κοντομύτην τηνικαῦτα τὴν πρόνοιαν τοῦ θέματος τούτου ποιῶν, ἐπέπερ ἔξω πρὸς τὴν χέρσον | ἐγένοντο, ὡς f. 46v δελφῖνας τούτους ἀπέσφαξε καὶ γενναίᾳ χειρὶ τῇ ἀφανείᾳ πάντας
- 10 παρέδωκεν.

Καὶ κατὰ τὸν τῆς αὐτοκρατορίας δέξ χρόνον αὐτοῦ, κατὰ τὸν Ὀκτώβριον μῆνα, εἰς Ἰνδικτιῶνα ὀγδόην, ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στόλος ἐν τῇ νήσῳ τῇ Θάσῳ καταναυμαχηθεὶς ἄρδην ἅπας ἀπώλετο.

- Καὶ κατὰ τὸ ἐξῆς δὲ τὰς Κυκλάδας νήσους, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τὰς ἄλλας
- 15 ἀπάσας, ὁ τῶν Ἰσσηλιτῶν κατασύρων στρατὸς οὐκ ἐπαύετο.

Καὶ αὖθις ἐν Ἀβασγίᾳ ὁ τε Θεόφοβος καὶ ὁ τῆς Θεοδώρας ἀδελφὸς Βάρδας ἀποσταλέντες μετὰ στρατιᾶς ἰσχυρῶς ἐδυστύχησαν, ὀλίγων ἄγαν ἐκείθεν ὑποστρεψάντων.

39.11–13 : mense Oct. a. 829 strages classis Byzantinae iuxta Thassum insulam accidit 16–18 : expeditio in Abasgia fortasse a. 836 contigit, cf. Signes 2014, 250–256

Cap. 39: GeorgMon 798.1–7; Vita Theodoraе § 7.9–16; Gen 52.74–53.80 || 6 Photius, Lexicon M no. 632, cf. Diogenianus, Paroemiae cent. VI, sect. 42, Michael Apostolius, Paroemiae cent. XI, sect. 83, Mantissa cent. II, sect. 28 etc.

19 λυπηρὸν B edd 21 αὐτοῦ Boor : ἑαυτοῦ edd 21 ῥίνα V 22 οὐδὲ... οὐδ’ edd 25 καὶ om. edd 39.1 Κρήτες V 2 παρατοσοῦτον V 3 παρόσον V 5 τῶν edd 6 ἀσπασομένων edd 6 Μισῶν V 11 τὸν τῆς : τὸν αὐτὸν τῆς conl. Boor in app. 11 δὲ V edd : primum annum supplendum putavit Boor in app. 11 κατὰ τὸν Ὀ. : καὶ τὸν Ὀ. edd 13 ἀπάσας ante corr. (ας expunxit) V 14 τὸν ἐξῆς conl. Boor in app.

then one day, because he knew that he was already dying and breathing his last, he commanded in the night on his own authority that he should be beheaded and that his head should be brought to him – a funeral offering, as it were, bitter and spiteful. When, therefore, it was brought in accordance with the order, he took the other's nose with his hand and said, 'Now neither are you Theophobos (God-fearing), nor I Theophilus (God-loving).' There are also others who attribute the death of Theophobos to Ooryphas and not to the emperor, saying that no sooner had Theophobos been won over by Ooryphas than this latter carried out the capital punishment secretly at night. Hence has it been rumoured until the present day amongst the Persians that Theophobos would not see death, but that he lives on in immortality, since his death occurred sometime in concealment and not in the open.

39. At this same time the Cretans, raising an entire fleet, devastated the coast of the Thrakesian theme and took captives. Their insurrection and war operations advanced so far that they not only attempted to overrun the sea-coast but also proceeded with unsheathed sword against those who dwelt and followed the monastic life on the mountain which is called Latros, plundering there like Mysians. But Constantine Kontomytes, who then looked after the affairs of this theme, because they had come out onto the land, slaughtered them like dolphins and with a brave hand delivered them all to destruction.

In the year (?) of Theophilus's reign, in the month of October, in the eighth indiction, the fleet of the Romans was defeated in a sea battle off the island of Thasos and the whole of it perished utterly.

Afterwards, the host of the Ishmaelites ceased not in laying waste to the Cyclades, along with all the other islands.

And again, in Abasgia both Theophobos and Theodora's brother Bardas, who had been dispatched with an army, met with exceedingly bad fortune and only a very few men returned from thence.

20 Ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐχοὶ καὶ πάλιν χειμῶνες ἐξαίσιοι καὶ ὅλως ἀνωμαλῖαι καὶ
 20 δυσκρασίαι κατὰ τὸν ἀέρα γινόμεναι ἐκάκουν τὴν γῆν καὶ τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ,
 ἐξ ὧν σιτοδεῖναι καὶ λιμοὶ καὶ γῆς ἐκ σεισμῶν ἀνατιναγμοὶ οὐκ ἦν ὅτε μὴ
 ἐγίνοντο κατὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἅπασαν τῆς βασιλείας ἡμέραν.

| 40. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὅλην ἐκκενώσας τὴν τοῦ σώματος οὐσίαν τῇ τῆς γα- B 138
 στρὸς διαρροίᾳ καὶ φθόῃ, ὡς μηδαμοῦ στῆναι τῆς ψυχῆς ἔτι δυναμένης
 ἀλλ' ἀποπτῆναι αὐτῆς ζητούσης καὶ ἀποστῆναι, ἐδεδίει δὲ περὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ
 καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ γαμετῆς, ἐν τῇ Μαгнаύρᾳ πάντας ἐκκλησιάσας, ὅψε καὶ
 5 μόγις <ἐπὶ> κλίνης ὑπὸ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων κουφισθεὶς καὶ ἄρθεις, καὶ πολὺ
 ἀθροίσας πνεῦμα ἐν στεναγμῷ, “ἄλλος μὲν”, ἔφη, “ἀπολοφυρόμενος ἐν
 τοιαύτῃ νόσῳ καὶ καταιγίδι τὸ τῆς νεότητος ἄνθος ἐξετραγώδησε καὶ
 τὴν τοσαύτην εὐδαιμονίαν, αἷς ὁ ἐξ ἀρχῆς φθόνος ἐπιβασκαίνων με δεινῶς
 10 τὰ νῦν ἐποφθαλμίζει καὶ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ποιεῖ. ἐγὼ δὲ τὴν τῆς γαμετῆς
 χηρείαν μου προορῶν καὶ τὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ δυσποτμίαν καὶ ὀρφανίαν, πρὸς
 δὲ καὶ διακόνων ἥθεσι καλοῖς ἐντραφέντων καὶ θεραπειαῖς καὶ τῆς ἐμῆς
 συγκλήτου καὶ γερουσίας τὴν στέρησιν, ἀνακλαίομαι, ὦ παρόντες, καὶ
 ἀποδύρομαι οἷς τε ὑμᾶς χειροθήεις ὄντας καὶ πράους καταλιμπάνων πρὸς
 15 μοι προσαπαντήσεται ἔγνωκα. ἀλλὰ μέμνησθέ μου τέως τῆς ἥς οὐκέτι
 γλώττης ἀκούσεσθε κἄν ἦν ὅτε πικρὰ τοῦ πρέποντος ἔνεκεν καὶ συμφέ-
 ροντος: | καὶ τὴν μετὰ θάνατον εὐνοίαν εἰς τε υἱὸν καὶ γυναῖκα διαβαίνου- f. 47r
 σαν ταμιεύσασθε, ἐκεῖνο πάντως προσενθυμούμενοι, ὡς ὁποῖός περ ἕκασ-
 τος τῷ πέλας τούτου γενήσεται, τοιοῦτον καὶ αὐτῷ τὸ πρὸς τὸ μέλλον
 20 συμβήσεται”. τοιοῦτοις ῥήμασι τῆς βασιλικῆς | πάντας κατακληλούσης B 139
 γλώττης καὶ ἡμερούσης, οὐκ ἦν ὅστις ἀδάκρυτος ἦν, οὐδ' ἦν εἰκάσαι τὸν
 ἀναπεμφθέντα ἐκ τῶν παρόντων στεναγμόν τε καὶ ὄδυρμόν.

41. Μικρόν οὖν ἔτι ἐπιβιώσας κατὰ τὴν εἰκάδα τοῦ Ἰαννουαρίου μηνὸς
 τὸν βίον μετήλλαξεν, τῆς βασιλείας γενόμενος ἐγκρατῆς μῆνας τρεῖς ἐπὶ
 δώδεκα ἔτεσιν, πολλὰ τοὺς τῆς ὀρθοδόξου πίστεως περιεχομένους παρ'

41.1–2 : die 20 Ian. a. 842 Theophilus obiit, cf. supra III.34.38

Cap. 40: Gen 51.52–52.68 | Scyl 79.61–80.74 Cap. 41: Vita Ignatii cap. 8; Vita Ioannicii
 372A; Gen 54.10–13; Log A 216.2, 231.325–327 | PsSym 624.16–17, 646.17–19; Scyl
 80.74–76

21 ὧν V 21 σιτοδεῖναι V 40.3 δὲ del. Bekk : δὴ Boor 4 ὅψε nos : ὅτε V Comb : ὅτε del.
 Bekk : ὅ γε Boor 5 ἐπὶ suppl. Boor, cf. Gen 51.52. 5 πολὺν V 8 τοσούτον edd
 9 ante ποιεῖ add. με B edd 9 τῆς om. Comb 10 χηρίαν μου V : μου χηρίαν Comb : μου
 χηρείαν Bekk 10 δυσποτμίαν in marg B edd Boor : δυσποταμίαν V 12 ἀνακλαίομαι edd,
 cf. Gen 51.59 ἀποκλαίομαι : ἀνακλάωμαι V : ἀνακλάομαι Boor 13 πράεις edd 15 πρὸς
 ἀπαντήσεται V 15 οὐκ ἔτι V Comb 16 κἄν Boor : κἂν V : καὶ edd 18 πρὸς ἐνθυμούμε-
 νοι V 22 ὄδυρμόν V 41.1 Ἰαννουαρίου edd

There were also droughts, and in turn severe winters, and irregularities and disturbances occurring everywhere in the air brought harm to the earth and those upon it. On this account there was not a day in his reign when there were no shortages of food and famine and tremblings of the earth from quakes.

40. Now, because he had emptied the substance of his body through diarrhea of the belly and consumption, so that his soul was no longer able to stand but sought to fly off and depart, and because he also feared for his son and his wife, Theophilus gathered everyone in the Magnaura. And at length, with difficulty relieved and propped up on a couch by his close friends, he took breath with a sigh and he said, 'Another, lamenting in such illness and distress would bewail the flower of youth and good fortune upon which envy, begrudging from the beginning, now casts a jealous eye whilst carrying me off from men. But I, O you here present, weep in foreseeing the widowhood of my wife and misfortune and orphanhood of my son, as well as the loss of attendants bred in good manners and servitors and my senate and council; and I grieve to be leaving you, who are obedient and meek, to go to I know not what life and to exchange glory, knowing not what will come to me instead. But for the while remember my speech, which you will no longer hear, even if it was sometimes harsh for the sake of propriety and expediency; and keep your goodwill, passing it on after my death to my son and wife. At all events keep in mind that even as each man shall be unto his neighbour, so shall the same befall him in future.' With such words did the emperor's speech charm and mollify all; there was no one without tears, nor would it be possible to describe the sighing and lamentation brought forth by those present.

41. Living but a little longer, he exchanged this life on the twentieth of the month of January, having held the empire for twelve years and three months. Throughout his whole life he had greatly loathed those who clung to the

- ὅλον αὐτοῦ τὸν βίον μυσταττόμενός τε καὶ χειμῶνα πάντα κατὰ πάσας
 5 ὥραν καιροῦ ἐπάγων αὐτοῖς ἀφειδῶς, ἀνθ' ὧν ἔνεκεν καὶ τὸ 'δυστυχῆς'
 ὄνομα παρὰ παντὸς ἀνθρώπου ὥσπερ τινα κληρον ἐπήγετο, μηδέποτε
 τρόπαιον στήσας κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν βασιλικόν τε <καὶ> ἀξιέπαινον, μήτε
 μὴν τὴν προτέραν ἦτταν ἀναμαχέσασθαι δυνηθεῖς, καίτοι γε ὀκτωκαίδεκα
 10 πολέμους παρ' ὅλην αὐτοῦ τὴν ζωὴν κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν συστήσας, καὶ
 τοσαντάκεις αὐτοῖς συμπλακεῖς καὶ πρὸς παρατάξεις χωρήσας οὐκ ἄγεν-
 νεῖς.

42. Ἀλλὰ τοῦτον μὲν οὕτω καταστρέψαντα τὸν βίον ἐνταῦθα κατα-
 λιπόντες ἐπὶ τὰς καταλοιπούς τούτου οἰκοδομὰς αὐτοῦ που περὶ τὰ
 ἀνάκτορα οὔσας βαδιούμεθα, ἀξιολογωτάτας οὔσας καὶ μνήμης τυχεῖν
 5 εὐρήσεις αὐτάς. ὃ τε γὰρ Καριανός, ὃς οὕτω φέρει τὴν κλησιν διὰ τὸ ἀπὸ
 τῆς γραδῶσεως ἔχειν ἀπὸ λίθου Καριανοῦ οἶόν τινα πλατὺ ποτάμιον, ὃ
 καὶ χρηματίζων σήμερον βεῖστιάριον τῶν ἀποθησαυριζομένων πέπλων B 140
 ἐκ σηρικῶν, τῆς ἐκείνου προνοίας ἔργον ἐστίν, οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ
 ὁ γείτων αὐτοῦ καὶ κεχρυσωμένην ἔχων τὴν ὀροφὴν Τρίκογχος, ἐκ τοῦ
 10 σχήματος τὴν κλησιν λαχὼν· τρισὶ γὰρ κόγχαις μετεωρίζεται, μιᾷ μὲν
 κατὰ τὴν ἀνατολὴν συνοικοδομούμενος, ἥ καὶ ἐκ τεσσάρων κιόνων f. 47v
 Ῥωμαίων ὑποστηρίζεται, δυσὶ δὲ ἐγκαρσίαις, κατὰ ἄρκτον καὶ
 μεσημβρίαν φημί. τὸ πρὸς δύσιν δὲ τοῦ οἴκου μέρος ὑπὸ δύο μὲν κιόνων
 ἀνέχεται, <διὰ> τριῶν δὲ πυλῶν τὴν ἐξοδὸν δίδωσιν. τούτων ἡ μέση μὲν
 15 ἐξ ἀργύρου κατεσκευάσται, αἱ ταύτης δὲ ἐκατέρωθεν ἐκ γεγανωμένου
 χαλκοῦ. ἡ ἐξοδὸς δὲ εἰς τὸ καλούμενον οὕτω Σίγμα ἐξάγει, ἐκ τῆς πρὸς τὸ
 στοιχεῖον ὁμοιότητος τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν λαβόν, ὃ ἴσῃν τε καὶ ὁμοίαν τοῦ
 Τρικόγχου τὴν εἰς τοὺς τοίχους ἐπανθοῦσαν ὠραιότητα φέρει· ἐκ γὰρ λα-
 20 καρικῶν παμποικίλων τοῦτό τε κάκεῖνος ὀρθομαρμάρωται. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο
 μὲν τὴν ὀροφὴν ἔχει στερρὰν τε καὶ λαμπράν, ὅτι καὶ πεντεκαίδεκα κίοσιν
 ἠδρασται ἐκ λίθου Δοκιμίνου· διὰ στύρακος δὲ πρὸς τὸν θεμέλιον αὐτοῦ
 κατιῶν τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχοντα τοῦ σχήματος εἰκόνα τε καὶ ὁμοίωσιν εὐρήσεις,
 ἐννέα πρὸς ταῖς δέκα κίοσιν διαβασταζόμενον, καὶ τὸν περίπατον ἔχοντα
 25 ἐνδότερόν που καὶ ἀνατολικώτερον, τετράσε<ι>ρόν τι ὁ τεχνίτης ἐξήγει-

4 παρόλον V 5 ἔνεκεν fortasse delendum putavit Boor Kamb 7 τῶν : τὸν V 7 <καὶ>
 add. edd Boor 8 ἀναμάχεσθαι edd 8 καὶ τοί γε V 42.2 κατὰ λοιπούς V 2 τούτου
 om. edd 2 περὶ Bekk Boor : ἐπὶ V Comb 4 ante πρόσωπον add. τὸ edd 5 ἀπὸ : ἐπὶ
 conl. Bekk in app. : τὰ conl. Boor in app. 6 πλατὺν V 6 ποταμόν edd 6 ὃ V
 7 χρηματίζων V 8 ἐκ V Comb : ἐκ<εῖ> Boor : del. Bekk 9 καὶ κεχρυσωμένην : κεκε-
 χρυσωμένην B : κεχρυσωμένην edd 9 τὴν om. edd 11 σύν οἰκοδομούμενος V 11 ἡ V
 14 <διὰ> conl. Kamb 16 δὲ om. edd 17 τὲ V 19 κάκεῖνο edd 19 μαρμάρωται
 edd 24 δὴ : δὲ edd 24 πλησίον V edd 25 τετράσε<ι>ρόν nos : τετράσερόν V edd
 Boor

Orthodox faith, and he brought all possible tempests upon them in every season relentlessly. He therefore brought upon himself from all men the name 'Wretched,' as if a legacy, having never achieved any praiseworthy imperial victory over the enemy; nor was he ever able to make good his earlier defeat, though he waged eighteen wars against the enemy during the course of his life and engaged with them an equal number of times, going out to no negligible battles.

42. But taking leave here of Theophilus who had thus finished his life, we shall walk to his buildings which remain here and there round about the Palace and are most remarkable and deserving of mention. Straightaway facing you as you enter from the <church of the> Lord you will come upon them. For the Karianos, which has this name on account of it having a sort of broad band of Carian marble in its staircase and which serves to-day as vestry of the robes of silken fabrics kept in it, is a work of Theophilus's solicitude; likewise also the Triconchos beside it, which has a gilded roof and gets its name from its shape, for it is raised up on three conches, being constructed with one conch on the eastern side, which is supported by four columns of Roman marble [porphyry], and two conches athwart, that is, on the northern and southern sides. The western part of the building is held up by two columns, and has exit through three doors. The middle of these latter is made of silver, whereas the ones on either side of it are of polished bronze. The exit leads to the so-called Sigma, which takes its name from its similarity to this letter and whose beauty, flowering on its walls, displays similarity and likeness to that of the Triconchos; for the one and the other are revetted with many-coloured marble panels. Now, the Sigma has a solid and splendid roof, for it is secured by fifteen columns of Docimian marble; and going down the stairway to its basement you will find that it has the same semblance and likeness of form, being held up by nineteen columns, with an ambulatory paved with speckled marble. Near this ambulatory, somewhat further inside and to the east, the

- ρεν, τρισὶ καὶ αὐτὸ κόγχαις διειλημμένον κατὰ τὴν εἰκόνα τοῦ ἐπικειμένου Τρικόγχου αὐτῷ. ἀλλὰ τὴν μὲν μίαν πρὸς τὴν ἀνατολήν, τὰς ἑτέρας δὲ δύο μίαν μὲν πρὸς τὴν δύσιν θατέ|ραν δὲ πρὸς τὴν μεσημβρίαν συμπε- B 141
ριείληφεν. τὸ δὲ ἄρκτων μέρος ἐκ δύο κιόνων ἀληθινοπιπέρων ἔχει διαν-
30 ειργόμενον Μυστήριον· οὕτω τὴν κλῆσιν ἔχει τοῦτο κατάλληλον. καὶ ἡ
αἰτία ὅτι καθάπερ τὰ ἄντρα συνεπηχοῦν ἀβλαβῇ τὴν ἡχὴ διαπέμπει
πρὸς τοὺς ἀκούοντας· καὶ εἴ τις τῷ τοίχῳ πλησιάσας τῆς ἀνατολικῆς
κόγχης εἶτε δὴ καὶ <τῆς> δυτικῆς ἐν μυστηρίῳ τι εἴποι καὶ καθ' ἑαυτόν, ἐκ
35 διαμέτρου τε καὶ ἀντιπέρας ἰστάμενος ἕτερος, εἰ τὸ οὖς τῷ τοίχῳ ἐπιθῇ-
ται, τῆς ἐν μυστηρίῳ λαουμένης ἐκείνης φωνῆς αὐτήκοός πως γενήσεται.
τοιοῦτόν τι περὶ αὐτὸ θαῦμα ἐγγίνεται.
43. Τούτῳ δὴ τῷ οἴκῳ παρ<απ>έπηγέ πως καὶ συγκατεσκεύασται ὁ
τοῦ Σίγμα περίστυλος, ὁ πρότερον ἡμῖν εἰρημένος. ἐκ δὲ τούτου ὑπαιθρόν
τι καὶ ἐξάερρον κέχυται, μέσον μὲν φιάλην ἔχον χαλκῇν ἐξ ἀργύρου τὸ f. 48
5 κατωνόμασται μυστική τοῦ Τρικόγχου φιάλη, ἐκ τε τοῦ πλησίον ὥκο-
δομημένου Μυστηρίου καὶ τοῦ Τρικόγχου οἰκήματος ἐπωνυμίαν λα-
βοῦσα. ἐκ δὲ ταύτης αὐτοῦ που πλησίον καὶ ἀναβάθραι ἐστήκασιν ἐκ
Προικονησίου λίθου λευκοῦ, καὶ μέσον τῶν εἰρημένων ἀναβαθμῶν τρο-
πική ἐκ μαρμάρων ὑπὸ δύο λεπτοκαλάμων κιόνων στηριζομένη. αὐτοῦ
10 που παρὰ τὴν πλευρὰν τοῦ πρὸς τὸ εὖρος Σίγμα καὶ δύο χαλκᾶ λεον-
τοχάσματα ἐμπεπήγεισαν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὕδωρ ἐκφέροντα τὸ κοῖλον
ἅπαν τοῦ Σίγμα ἐπλήρουν τοῦ νάματος, τέρψιν οὐ μικρὰν παρέχοντα· ἡ B 142
δὲ δὴ φιάλη κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν τῶν δεξίμων, πιστακίων καὶ ἀμυγδάλων,
ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ κουναρίων πεπληρωμένη, κονδίτου ἐκ στροβιλίου ἐκδι-
15 δομένου, πᾶσιν ἐκίρνα καὶ παρεῖχε τρυφᾶν τοῖς ὅσοι δὴ ἐφέσεως εἶχον τῶν
ἐσθηκόντων ἐκεῖ, πᾶσι μὲν ἀναντιρρήτως τοῖς ἐκ θυμέλης, πλέον δὲ τοῖς δι'
ὀργάνων ψάλλουσι καὶ τὸ σύντονον. κατὰ μὲν δὴ τὰς ἀναβάθρας ὁ δῆμος
ἅπας ἰστάμενος καὶ τὸ πολίτευμα μετὰ τῶν περατικῶν ταγμάτων τὴν
20 εἰρημένην μαρμάρινον τροπικήν, εἰ μὲν τύχοιεν, ἔχοντες καὶ τὸν δομέστι-

Cap. 43: De Cer. 600.3–601.19.

27 αὐτῷ ante Τρικόγχου edd 29 κιόν V 31 συνεπηχοῦν conl. Bekk in app. Boor : συν-
επηχῶν V edd 31 ἡχῶ V 32 τήχῳ V 33 <τῆς> add. Kamb 33 τί V 33 εἴπη
edd 34 ἰστάμενος V 35 ἐπὶ θῆται V 35 αὐτήκοός V 43.1 παραπέπηγέ nos :
παρέπηγέ V : παρεπεπήγει edd : παρέστη γε Boor 3 ἔχεται ante corr. (κ sscr) V
3 χαλκῇν V 4 ἐστεμμένον edd : ἐστεμμένην V 4 ἡ V 4 στροβήλιον V 6 οἰκο-
δομημένου V 8 Προικονησίου edd 8 εἰρημένον V 9 ἐστηριγμένη edd 10 χαλκᾶ B
edd 11 ἐπεπήγεισαν edd 12 σίγμα V 13 δεξίμων edd 14 στροβηλίου V 15 δὴ :
δι' edd 16 δι' : ἐξ edd 17 post ψάλλουσι (et non post σύντονον) punxit V 18 περατικῶν :
ὑπηρετικῶν conl. Comb in marg. 19 ἀνεπληροῦν V : ἀπλήρουν B : ἐπλήρουν edd

artist has erected a kind of quatrefoil, this too comprising three conches in likeness to the Triconchos which lies above it. But it encompasses one conch on the eastern side, whereas of the other two one is on the western and the other on the southern side. The northern part, detached by two columns of speckled porphyry, contains the Mystery, for thus is this part appropriately called. The reason is that, resounding after the manner of caves, it transmits an undistorted echo to those who listen; and if anyone draw near the wall of the eastern conch, or the western, and say something in secret to himself, another person standing directly opposite, if he put his ear to the wall, will be witness to the speech uttered in secret. Such is the marvel that occurs in this place.

43. Annexed, as it were, and constructed together with this building is the peristyle of the Sigma, already mentioned by us. From this latter issues forth a sort of open terrace in the middle of which there is a bronze fountain with a silver rim. This fountain has a gilded pine-cone and is called the mystical fountain of the Triconchos, taking its name from the Mystery constructed beside it and the building of the Triconchos. In the same place, not far from this fountain, steps of white Proconnesian marble have been raised up; and in the middle of the said steps there is an archway of marble held up by two columns as thin as reeds. Here also, on the long side of the Sigma, two bronze lion's-head spouts have been affixed. These same brought forth water and filled the entire hollow of the Sigma with their stream, affording no little delight; and at the time of receptions the fountain was filled with pistachios and almonds, and also pine-nuts, whilst spiced wine came forth from the pine-cone, mixing the cup for all and affording revelry to everyone standing there with appetite, most certainly all the performers, but even more those who played the organs and sang. All the factions and the citizens together with the suburban divisions stood on the steps and performed the imperial ceremonial, having at their centre, that is under the aforementioned marble archway,

- κον τῶν σχολῶν μετὰ τοῦ ἑσκουβίτου καὶ τῶν δύο δημάρχων, τοῦ τε πρασίνου καὶ τοῦ βενέτου, πλησίον μὲν τοῦ δομεστίκου ἵσταμένου τοῦ τῶν βενέτων δημάρχου, πλησίον δὲ τοῦ ἑσκουβίτου τοῦ τῶν πρασίνων, εἰ δὲ μὴ τύχοιεν ὃ τε δομέστικος καὶ ὁ ἑσκούβιτος, ἀλλὰ τέως τοὺς γε
- 25 δημάρχους ἔχοντες. τούτων ἔφορος ἦν ἀπάντων ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ θυμηδίας ἀπάσης πληρούμενος, ἐν χρυσῷ διαλίθῳ θρόνῳ καθήμενος, καὶ μὴ πρότερον ἐξανιστάμενος, ὡς καὶ τακτικὰ βιβλία καὶ βασιλικά διαγορεύουσιν, ἢ τῶν σκιρτημάτων ἐκείνων ἐπαπολαῦσαι διὰ τῆς θεάς καὶ πολιτικῶν ἐξαλμάτων. οὕτω μὲν ταῦτα καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τῷ Θεοφίλῳ κατεσκευάσθη-
- 30 σαν, τοσοῦτος δὲ ἔρως ἦν τούτων αὐτῷ ὡς καὶ τὰς συνήθεις τῶν πραγμάτων ἀντιλήψεις καὶ καθ' ἡμέραν προελεύσεις | ἐν αὐτῷ δὴ τῷ f. 48v
Τρικόγχῳ ἐκτελεῖν. οὐ καὶ κατὰ πρόσωπον τῆς ἐξ ἀρ|γύρου κατεσκευ- B 143
ασμένης τῶν πυλῶν ἀνεστηκυῖά ἐστιν ὁροφὴ τέσσαρσι κίοσι μετεωριζομένη ἐκ Θετταλικοῦ, τοῦ καὶ πρασίνου, λίθου. ἀντικρὺ δὲ ταύτης καὶ
- 35 κατὰ μέτωπον, πλησίον δὴ τῶν εἰρημένων ἀναβαθμῶν, κατὰ τὸ πρὸς δυσμὰς μέρος τοῦ Σίγμα τρίκλινοι πεφυκότες τῷ Θεοφίλῳ ἐξωκοδόμηνται. Πυξίτης ὄνομα τῷ ἐνὶ τε καὶ κατωτέρῳ, ἄτερος δὲ ἀνώνυμος μὲν ἀνώτερος δὲ καὶ αὐτοῦ, τὸν βασίλειον κλῆρον ἐν ἑαυτῷ διαιτᾶσθαι λαχών. τούτου δὴ τοῦ Πυξίτου κατὰ τὴν πλευρὰν στίχοι λελατόμηνται,
- 40 ἀσηκρήτις ὄντες γεννήματα Στεφάνου μὲν ἔχοντος τοῦνομα, οὕτω δὴ τοῦ Καπετωλίτου προσαγορευομένου. οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸν τοῦ Σίγμα περίδρομον ἐγκολαφθέντες τοῦ οἰκουμενικοῦ διδασκάλου – Ἰγνάτιος οὗτος ἐκαλεῖτο – τυγχάνουσι. κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον δὲ μέρος, ὡς πρὸς ἀνατολὰς τοῦ Σίγμα, ἕτερός τις τρίκλιнос ἐξήρτηται, ὃς Ἔρως μὲν ἐπικέκληται, ὀπλοθήκη δὲ
- 45 αὐτῷ ἐχρημάτιζεν. ἐντεῦθεν οὐκ ἄλλο τι ἢ ἱστορημένας ἀσπίδας καὶ ὅπλα παντοῖα ἴδοι τις ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ ταύταις τοὺς τοίχους διαμορφουμένους, ὡς τὸ εἶκός. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Τρικόγχου ἄχρι δὴ τῶν δυσμῶν οὕτως ἔνεστιν ἰδεῖν τοὺς ἀνεγχευμένους οἴκους ἐκεῖ. κατὰ δὲ τὸ πρὸς ἀνατολὰς μέρος ἴδοις μὲν καὶ τὸν Μαργαρίτην προσαγορευόμενον. τρίκλιнос οὗτος
- 50 ἐκ βάρων τῷ Θεοφίλῳ ἀνεστηκώς, ὃς ὀκτῶ μὲν κίοσιν ῥοδοποικίλοις τὸν ὄροφον ὑποστηρίζεται, τοὺς τοίχους δὲ ζῳοῖς πεποικιλμένους παντοδαπῶς <καὶ> τὸ ἑδοφος ἔχει ἐκ Προικονησίου λίθου καὶ συγκοπῆς ἅπαν

21 ἑσκουβίτου edd 22 καὶ τοῦ : τοῦ τε edd 22 μὲν Bekk : δὲ V Comb 23 ἑσκουβίτου edd 24 τύχοι ἐν ὅτε B : τύχοι ἐνίοτε edd 24 ἑσκούβιτος edd 28 post καὶ add. τῶν B edd 31 μεθ' ἡμέραν Comb 31 προελεύσας V 31 τῷ om. edd 33 ἀνεστηκυῖα ἐστιν V 33 τέσσαρκίοσι V 34 μετεωριζομένην V 38 post ἀνώτερος δὲ (et non post καὶ αὐτοῦ infra) punxerunt edd Boor : καὶ delendum putavit Boor 38 διατᾶσθαι V 39 τοῦ om. edd 39 στίχοι V 40 δὴ : δὲ edd Boor 43 τυγχάνουσιν V edd 45 ἄλλο τι V 46 εἶδοι V 46 διαμορφομένης V edd 49 μάρ|γαρίτην V 50 ἐνεστηκώς ὁ Comb 51 στηρίζεται edd (ὑπό|στηρίζεται B) 51 πεποικιλμένους edd Boor : πεποικιλμένοις V 52 καὶ add. Bekk Boor 52 Προικονησίου edd

the domestikos of the scholai together with the head of the excubitors, if they happened to be present, and the two demarchs, the Green and the Blue, the demarch of the Blues standing near the domestikos and that of the Greens near the excubitor; if however the domestikos and the head excubitor were not present, nevertheless the demarchs stood there. The emperor was observer of all these things and, filled with great delight whilst sitting on a bejewelled golden throne, he did not get up – so the imperial ceremonial books recount – until he had taken his pleasure in the sight of these boundings and leapings of the citizens. It was for this reason that these things were constructed by Theophilus, and his love of them was so great that he also conducted the usual transaction of affairs and the daily processions in this same Triconchos. Now, in front of the door of the Triconchos which is made of silver a roof rises up, held aloft on four columns of Thessalian, or green, marble; and right opposite this, near the aforementioned steps on the western side of the Sigma, there are halls built by Theophilus. Pyxites is the name of the one lower down; another which has no name and is higher up than the Pyxites has been designated as the residence of the imperial clergy. In the stone on the side of this Pyxites verses have been carved, the creations of the a secretis named Stephen, surnamed Kapetolites, whereas the verses inscribed in the ambulatory of the Sigma are those of the patriarchal academician – Ignatius was his name. On the left side, to the east of the Sigma, yet another hall has been built, which is called the Eros and which served Theophilus as an armory. For this reason one would see nothing in it but depictions of shields and all manner of arms and the walls adorned with these same, as one would expect. So much then for what can be seen of the buildings erected beginning from the Triconchos and going toward the west. On the eastern side you would see the Margarites, as it is called. This is a hall erected from the foundations by Theophilus of which the roof is held up by eight variegated pink columns; and it has walls embellished with all manner of animal pictures and its whole floor paved with Proconnesian marble and *opus sectile*. And you

- κατεστρωμένον. ἴδοις δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἐν | αὐτῷ κοιτῶνος ἐκ τεσσάρων μὲν B 144
κίωνων Βαθυῖνων τὸν χρυσοκατάστικτον κύκλον τῆς ὀροφῆς ἀνεχόμενον,
55 ἐκ τεσσάρων δὲ Θετταλικῶν τὰς στοὰς ἀνεξηγερμένας τε καὶ βαστα-
ζομένας, τοῦ τε ἀνατολικοῦ μέρους καὶ τοῦ μεσημβρινοῦ, τοὺς τοίχους δὲ
καὶ τὸ ἔδαφος ὁμοίως τοῖς Μαργαρίτου κατεστρωμένους λαμπρῶς. οὗτος
μὲν ὁ κοιτῶν εἶχεν ἐν ἑαυτῷ διαιτῶμενον τὸν Θεόφιλον ἀπὸ τῆς ἐαρινῆς
ἰση|μερίας μέχρι καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς μετοπωρινῆς· ἄρτι δὲ τῆς χειμερινῆς γειτ- f. 49
60 νιαζούσης τροπῆς κατὰ τὸν ἄλλον μετωκίζετο κοιτῶνα τὸν κατὰ τὸν Κα-
ριανὸν τρίκλινον, καὶ αὐτοῦ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ὥκοδομημένου, διὰ τὰς τῶν
νότων ἰσχυροτάτας καὶ βιασιότατας πνοάς· ὁ καὶ νῦν τοῦ παπίου ἐστὶν
ἰδεῖν καταγώγιον. οὐχ ἤττον δὲ κατόψει καὶ τὸν ἐκείσε δὴ ἡλιακὸν ὑπ'
ἐκείνου καταβεβλημένον κατὰ πρόσωπον τοῦ βορρᾶ, ἐξ οὗ δὴ ὠρᾶτο καὶ
65 τὸ παλαιὸν τζουκανιστήριον, ἐκείσε τηνικαῦτα τυγχάνον, ἔνθα καὶ ἡ Νέα
ἔκτισται ἐκκλησία καὶ αἱ δύο φιάλαι εἰσὶν καὶ τὸ μεσοκῆπιον ὑπὸ Βασι-
λείου τοῦ αἰοδίου γενόμενα βασιλέως.
- Καὶ πρὸς μὲν τὸ ἀνατολικὸν μέρος αὐταὶ αὐτοῦ αἱ οἰκοδομαί· πρὸς δὲ
τὸν νότον πρῶτον μὲν αὐτὰ τὰ ἡλιακὰ πλατύνας, ὡς ἡμῖν πρότερον
70 εἴρηται, καὶ τοὺς νῦν ὄντας κήπους ποιήσας κουβούκλεια προσεδέματο
τόν τε Καμιλᾶν οὕτω λεγόμενον καὶ τὸ πλησίον ἐκείνου κουβούκλειον
δεύτερον καὶ τὸ τούτου πάλιν κατὰ τάξιν πλησίον τρίτον, ὁ καὶ νῦν τῆς
αὐγουστής ἐστὶ βεστιάριον. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν Καμιλᾶς ἐξ κίοσιν ἐκ Θετταλικοῦ
λίθου τοῦ καὶ πρασίνου τὴν χρυσοκατάστικτον ὀρο|φὴν μετεωρίζομενος, B 145
75 τῶν δὲ τοίχων τὰ κάτω μὲν ἔχων ἐξ ὁμοίων κατεστρωμένα πλακῶν, τὰ
δ' ἄνω ἐκ χρυσοαυγῶν ψηφίδων ἀγάλματά τινα τρυγῶντα καρπούς,
ἔτι δὲ καὶ τοῦδαφος ἐκ λίθων Προικονησίων, συνωκοδομημένον ἔχει
καὶ εὐκτήριον, δύο περιέχον βήματα, ἐν μὲν εἰς ὄνομα τῆς ὑπεραγίας
δεσποίνης θεοτόκου, θάτερον δὲ εἰς ὄνομα τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου Μιχαήλ.
80 ὑποβεβηκὸς δὲ τούτου μεσόπατόν ἐστιν, ὁ τὴν μὲν σκοπιὰν διὰ μαρ-
μαρίνου κλουβίου πρὸς τὸν Χρυσοτρίκλινον ἔχον εἰς βιβλιοθήκην ἀφ-
ώρισται παρὰ Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου πορφυρογεννήτου βα-
σιλέως· οὐπὲρ κάτω τὸ Ἀριστητήριον αὐθὺς ἐστὶν ἐκ λίθων μὲν Βαθυῖνων
τοὺς τοίχους ἔχον λελαμπρυσμένους, ἐκ συγκοπῶν δὲ καὶ διαφόρων
85 χροίων τὸ ἔδαφος πᾶν. τὸ δὲ μετὰ τὸν Καμιλᾶν κουβούκλειον δεύτερον,

54 χρυσῷ κατάστικτον edd 55 στοᾶς V 55 τε om. edd : τὲ V 57 post καὶ conī. τοῦ Boor in app. 57 κατεστρωμένους Boor : κατεστρωμένοις V : κατεστρωμένα edd 58 κοι-
τῶν V 59 μεσημερίας edd, sed conī. ἰσ- Bekk in app. 59 μέχρι καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς μετοπωρινῆς
Kamb : μέχρι τῆς μετοπωρινῆς καὶ αὐτῆς V : μέχρι τῆς μεσοπωρινῆς καὶ αὐτῆς B : μέχρι τῆς
μεσοπωρινῆς, καὶ αὐθὺς Comb : μέχρι τῆς μετοπωρινῆς, καὶ αὐθὺς Bekk 61 αὐτὸν ...
ὥκοδομημένον Comb 62 ἰσχυροτέρας καὶ βιασιότέρας edd 62 παπίου edd 63 τὸν :
τὸ edd 65 cf. τζουκανιστήριν/ίφ ThCont VI 438.22 et 472.17–18 65 τηνικαῦτα V
69 νότον V 69 πλατύνας : προτείνας edd 76 χρυσοαυγῶν V 76 ἀγάλματα τινα V
77 Προικονησίων edd 83 κάτω om. B edd 83 αὐθὺς ἐστὶν V 84 καὶ delendum putavit
Boor in app.

would see the gold-bespeckled ceiling of the dome of the bedchamber in the Margarites, which is held up by four columns of Bathy marble, and also the porches on the eastern and southern sides which are each raised up and supported on four columns of Thessalian marble, as well as the walls and floor which are splendidly revetted in similar wise to the Margarites. Theophilus resided in this bedchamber from the equinox in spring until that in autumn, and only when the winter solstice drew near would he shift to the other bedchamber near the hall of the Karianos, which also had been built by him, for the sake of the quite strong and powerful breezes from the south. This hall can now be seen to be the abode of the papias. You will also see the terrace laid out there by Theophilus facing north. From this terrace one could see the old Tzoukanisterion [polo-field] which was then there, in the place where the Nea Church was built and where the two fountains and the garden courtyard [mesokepion] are, which were constructed by the glorious emperor Basil.

These then are Theophilus's buildings on the eastern side. On the southern side, however, he first broadened the terraces, as was said by us earlier and, having created the gardens which are still there, he constructed also pavilions: the so-called Kamilas and a second pavilion next to it and then, following this latter in order nearby, a third, which is now the vestry of the empress. Now, the Kamilas rises up with its gold-bespeckled ceiling on six columns of Thessalian, that is, green marble, whilst the lower parts of the walls have revetment of slabs of the same marble and the upper parts have shining gold mosaics with figures gathering fruit; moreover, the floor is of Proconnesian marble. The Kamilas has an adjoining chapel comprising two sanctuaries, one in the name of the most-holy Lady the Mother of God, the other in the name of the archangel Michael. Standing beneath this is a mezzanine with a look-out through a marble grill facing the Chrysotriklinos; this has been made into a library by Constantine the Christ-loving emperor born in the Purple. And below this is the Aristeterion, with its brilliant walls of Bathy marble and its entire floor of *opus sectile* of diverse colours. After the Kamilas, the second

- τὴν ὀροφὴν ὁμοίαν τῷ προτέρῳ ἔχον καὶ ὑπὸ τεσσάρων κίωνων ἐστηριγμένον Δοκιμίων, τὸ ἔδαφος ἐκ Προικονησίου λίθου κατέστρωται, τῶν τοίχων πρότερον τὸν μὲν ἄερα ἐκ χρυσοειδῶν ψηφίδων ὅλως | κατη- f. 49v
 90 γλαίσμενον φέρον, δένδρα δὲ τινα καὶ ποικίλματα ἐκ πρασίνων ἔχοντα τὸ λεῖπον ψηφίδων ἀναπληρούμενον. τὸ τοῦτου δὲ ὑποβεβηκός, ὃ καὶ Μεσόπατος λέγεται, εἰς οἴκησιν τῶν τὴν γυναικωνίτιν ἐμπεπιστευμένων καρτζιμάδων ἐστίν. τὸ δὲ τρίτον μετὰ τοῦτο κουβούκλειον, τὸ καὶ νῦν τῆς αὐγούστης βεστιάριον χρηματίζον, ὁμοίαν ἔχει τοῦτοις τὴν ὀροφὴν καὶ τοῦδαφος ἐκ λευκοῦ λίθου Προικονησίου κατεστρωμένον, τοὺς τοίχους δὲ B 146
 95 ἅπαντας ὑπὸ εἰκόνων ὕστερον ἄλλ' οὐ τότε καταγλαίσθέντας ὑπὸ τοῦ υἱοῦ Μιχαήλ. τὸ τοῦτω δὲ ἡνωμένον καὶ συμπεφυκός κατάγειον ἐπτὰ μὲν κίοσι Καριανοῖς τὴν ὀροφὴν στηρίζεται, πέντε μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν δύο δὲ πρὸς ἀνατολήν, τοίχοις δὲ δύο ὠχύρωται, ἐκ πλακῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ Πηγανουσίων καὶ Καριανῶν, πρὸς δὲ καὶ πρασίνων καλλωπιζομένοις
 100 ποταμίων Θετταλικῶν. Μουσικὸς οὗτος κατονομάζεται διὰ τὴν τῶν μαρμάρων ἀκριβῆ συγκοπήν, ὅθεν καὶ τὴν τοῦ ἔδαφους λείωσιν ἐκ διαφόρων μὲν σχημάτων ἐκ διαφόρων δὲ καὶ ὥραιων λίθων ἐξηρτυμένην ἔχει· εἴποισ ἂν αὐτὸ ἰδὼν λειμῶνα εἶναι διαφόροις ἄνθεσι βρύνοντα. τοῦτω πρὸς μὲν δύσιν κατὰ πλευρὰν κουβούκλειον ἡνῶται τὴν τῶν μαρμάρων
 105 ὥραιότητα κατὰ πάντα φέρον ἐφόμοιον, ἔτι δὲ καὶ κίοσι πέντε Καριανοῖς, τρισὶ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν δύο δὲ πρὸς δυσμὰς, τὴν ὀροφὴν βασιάζουσιν. ἕτερον δὲ πρὸς πόδας τοῦτου ἐστίν, εἰς δύο μὲν δόμους διηρημένον, τῷ αὐγουστιᾷ δὲ πλησιάζον κοιτῶνι· ἔνθα καὶ Λέων ὁ φιλόχριστος βασιλεὺς εὐκτήριον τῆς ἁγίας Ἄννης ἐδείματο καὶ αὐτὸ ἐκ τεσσάρων μὲν
 110 κίωνων Βαθυῖνων τὴν ὀροφὴν ἀνεγειρόμενον, τὸ ἔδαφος δὲ ἐκ λίθου λευκοῦ Προικονησίου, πρὸς τοὺς τοίχους ἐκ Βαθυῖνων πλακῶν διαμορφούμενον. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν τῷ τῆς αὐγούστης πλησιάζει κοιτῶνι, ὡς ἔφαμεν· ἐκεῖνο δὲ τὸ πρὸς δύσιν τοῦ Μουσικοῦ τὴν μὲν κάθοδον ἐν τῷ προρρηθέντι ἔχει κοιτῶνι διὰ κλίμακος, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τὴν εἴσοδον· εἰσάγει δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὸν
 115 Καινούργιον κοιτῶνα καὶ τρίκλινον, ὃν Βασίλειος ὁ ἀοιδίμος ἔκτισε βα- B 147
 σιλεὺς, καὶ πρὸς τὸν πόρτικα τοῦ ἐμππτου | κουβουκλείου, ἐν ᾧ τὸ τοῦ f. 50r
 ἁγίου Παύλου εὐκτήριον ὑπὸ Βασιλείου τοῦ ἀοιδίμου ἰδρυται βασιλέως.

86 οἰμοίαν V 87 Προικονησίου edd 88 post τοίχων add. ὡς τὸ edd : lacunam conī. Boor 89 φέρων (sic) V 90 τοῦτου Boor, cf. supra III.43.80 : τοῦτω V 91 γυναικωνίτιν V 91 πεπιστευμένων edd 92 μετὰ τοῦτο κουβούκλειον Boor, cf. supra III.43.85 : μετὰ τοῦ κουβούκλειου (sic) V 93 αὐγουστῆς V 94 Προικονησίου edd 94 κατεστρωμένον edd Boor : κατεστρωμένου V 96 κατάγειον Boor : κατάγειον V : κατώγειον edd 103 εἰδῶν V 104 καταπλευρὰν V 105 ἐφ' ὅμοιον V 106 ὀροφὴν V 107 post βασιάζουσιν conī. καλλωπιζόμενον vel simile quid Boor in app. 108 αὐγουστηκῶ V 111 Προικονησίου edd 111 τύχους V 114 διακλίμακος V 115 τὸν καινούργιον V Comb : τὸ καινούργιον Bekk 117 ἀοιδίμου V

pavilion has a ceiling similar to that of the former, held up by four columns of Docimian marble, and its floor is paved with Proconnesian marble. The background of the walls was formerly adorned completely with golden mosaic, whilst certain trees and ornaments of green mosaic filled in the rest. Beneath this is the Mezzanine, as it is called, which is for lodging the eunuchs entrusted with the women's quarters. After this, the third pavilion, which now serves as a vestry of the empress, has a ceiling similar to the other two and a floor paved with white Proconnesian marble, and all the walls were adorned later – not at that time – with images by Theophilus's son Michael. The basement which is connected and forms part of this pavilion has its ceiling held up by seven columns of Carian marble, five on the southern and two on the eastern side, and it is reinforced by two walls embellished with slabs of Roman [prophyry] and Peganusian and Carian marble and also bands of green Thesalian marble. This is called the Mousikos, on account of the precise joining of the marbles, whereby the paving of the floor was also confected from various beautiful stones of various shapes. Upon seeing it one would say it was a meadow abounding in various flowers. Adjoined to the Mousikos on the western side is a pavilion displaying in every wise similar beauty of marbles, including the five columns of Carian marble, three to the south and two to the west, which bear up the ceiling. At the foot of this pavilion there is another, which is divided into two rooms and adjoins the empress's bedchamber. There the Christ-loving emperor Leo built the chapel of St Ann, the ceiling of which is held up by four columns of Bathy marble, whilst the floor of white Proconnesian marble is articulated with the walls made of slabs of Bathy marble. This pavilion is next to the empress's bedchamber, as we have said; and the other one, which is to the west of the Mousikos, has a way down through a staircase into this aforementioned bedchamber as well as its own entrance; and it leads also to the Kainourgios bedchamber and hall, which the glorious emperor Basil built, and to the porch of the fifth pavilion in which the chapel of St Paul was constructed by the glorious emperor Basil.

44. Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐν τοῖς ἀνακτόροις κατὰ τε βορρᾶν καὶ νότον ὑπὸ Θεοφίλου μὲν ἀνωκοδόμηνται, ὑφ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἱστορίᾳ παραδίδονται, ὅτι μὴ βουλόμεθα τὰ ἐκείνου ἔργα, ὅποῖά ποτ' ἂν ἦ, λήθῃ παραδίδοσθαι, εἰς διάγνωσιν τῆς ἐκείνου περὶ τὸν βίον προαιρέσεως.

5 Ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς τρικλίνοὺς, τὸν τε οὕτω καλούμενον Λαυσιακόν, προσέτι δὲ μὴν καὶ τὸν Ἰουστινιανοῦ, ἐκεῖνος τοῖς χρυσοειδέσι ψήφοις ἐκόσμησε καὶ τὴν καλάθωσιν ἐκ τῶν Βασιλίσκου τοῦ τυράννου παλατίων μεταγαγὼν τῷ Λαυσιακῷ περιέθηκεν.

Καὶ ἕτερον δὲ τρίκλινον μετὰ τεσσάρων κουβουκλείων σεμνῶν τε καὶ
10 λαμπρῶν, ὧν τὰ δύο μὲν πρὸς τὸ μεσόπατον τοῦ δευτέρου κουβουκλείου τοῦ μετὰ τὸν Καμιλᾶν, ὑπὸ τεσσάρων ἀψίδων τὴν χρυσοειδῆ ὀροφὴν ἔχοντα, πρὸς τὴν Πορφύραν εἰσίν, ἣτις οὕτω λέγεται διὰ τὸ τὴν δέσποιναν ἐκεῖσε ἔκπαλαι διανέμειν τὸ ὄξυ ταῖς ἀρχοντίσσαις κατὰ τὸν τῶν Βρου-
μαλίων καιρόν· ἕτερα δὲ δύο πρὸς τὸ μέρος τοῦ Λαυσιακοῦ, ἐξ ὧν καὶ τὴν
15 πρὸς αὐτὸν ἔχει κατασκοπὴν, εἰργάσατο μὲν, ἐκ λίθου Προικονησίου τὰ ἐδάφη καταστρώσας αὐτῶν, καὶ ἐκ χρωμάτων ἀλλ' οὐ μαρμάρων τοὺς τοίχους ὠραῖσας, ὑπὸ ἐμπρησμοῦ δὲ ὅμως ἀφανεῖα παρεδόθησαν.

Καὶ Θέκλα δὲ ἡ τούτου πρώτη θυγάτηρ τὸ κατὰ τὰς Βλαχέρνας κου-
βούκλειον, ἔνθα καὶ | τὸ τῆς πρωτομάρτυρος Θέκλης εὐκτήριον ἱδρυται, B 148
20 ἐκ τοῦ μὴ ὄντος ἡγάγεν εὐμορφότατον· ἐκεῖσε δὲ καὶ τὸν βίον οὔσα κλι-
νοπετῆς ἐξέλιπεν.

44.1 νότον V 3 ὅποῖα πότ' ἂν V 6 πρὸς ἔτι V 13 διὰ νέμειν V 15 Προικονησίου
edd 20 εὐμορφότατον V 21 κλινοπετῆς V

44. These buildings, then, were erected by Theophilus on the north and south side in the palace, and they have been committed to History by us because, for the purpose of discerning his way of life, we do not wish that his deeds, of whatever sort they might be, should fall into oblivion.

Theophilus also adorned the two halls, that called Lausiakos and likewise that of Ioustinianos, with golden mosaics; and transporting the coffering from the palace of the usurper Basiliscus he put it up in the Lausiakos.

He constructed also another hall together with four small and splendid pavilions, of which two give on to the mezzanine of the second pavilion, after the Kamilas, and have golden ceilings supported by four apses; they are near the Porphyra, which is so called because of the old practice whereby the empress distributed purple cloth there to the noblewomen at the time of the Brumalia. The other two pavilions are near the Lausiakos and have a view of it. Theophilus paved the floors of these pavilions with Proconnesian marble and adorned their walls with paints, not marbles; but they have been destroyed by fire.

And Thecla, Theophilus's first daughter built from the foundations a most beautiful pavilion at Blachernae, where the chapel of St Thecla was also constructed, and there, bed-ridden, she ended her days.

Περὶ τῆς βασιλείας Μιχαήλ τοῦ υἱοῦ Θεοφίλου. Λόγος δ΄

1. Τοιούτῳ μὲν δὴ τέλει τοῦ βίου ὁ Θεόφιλος ἐχρήσατο, τὴν δὲ βασιλείαν Μιχαήλ ὁ τούτου υἱὸς διεδέξατο, τρίτον ἔτος διανύων ἀφ' οὗ εἰς τὸν βίον προήχθη, σὺν τῇ μητρὶ αὐτοῦ Θεοδώρα. τῶν δὲ πραγμάτων ὑπῆρχον φροντισταὶ καὶ ἐπίτροποι οὓς ὁ Θεόφιλος κατέλιπεν, ὃ τε Θεόκτιστος
5 ὁ εὐνοῦχος, τηνικαῦτα κανίκλειος καὶ λογοθέτης τοῦ δρόμου τυγχάνων, καὶ ὁ πατρίκιος | Βάρδας ὁ τῆς αὐγουστής ἀδελφός, καὶ Μανουήλ ὁ f.50v μάγιστρος ἐξ Ἀρμενίων καταγόμενος, ὃς καὶ θεῖος ἀπὸ πατρὸς τῆς δεσποίνης ὑπῆρχεν. ἐπεπήγει μὲν οὖν τὰ πολιτικά, καὶ καλῶς τέως τὰ πράγματα διηυθύνετο, ἔμελλε δὲ καὶ ἡ τῶν θείων εἰκόνων προσκύνησις
10 ἀνακαινίζεσθαι τε καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀρχαίαν παλινδρομεῖν αὐθις τιμὴν. καὶ δὴ Μανουήλ νόσῳ πιέζεται δεινῇ καὶ χαλεπῇ· πρὸς δὲ εἰσρέοντες μοναχοὶ τῶν Στουδίου – καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ πίστις οὐκ ἀγεννῆς πρὸς αὐτοὺς – | B 149 ἀνάκλησιν τῆς ὑγείας ὑπισχνοῦντο ῥαδίαν τε καὶ ταχεῖαν γενέσθαι, εἰ μόνον τὴν τῶν ἁγίων προσκύνησιν εἰκόνων αὐτός τε θελήσοι καὶ τοὺς
15 κρατοῦντας πείσοι θεσπίσαι ἀπανταχοῦ. οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων ὁρῶν πολλοὶ τῶν θεοφόρων πατέρων προσφιλεῖς τούτῳ τυγχάνοντες, ἐκεῖθεν τὰς ἀρχὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν λαβόντες ὅτε τῶν Ἀρμενιакῶν ἐστρατήγει, προσφοιτῶντες καὶ ἐπὶ τοῖς ὁμοίοις παρακαλοῦντες ἔπεισαν ὁρθὰ φρονῆσαι ποτε καὶ τὸ ποθοῦμενον ὑποσχέσθαι αὐτοῖς, εἰ μόνον
20 ῥάων γένοιτο· ὃ καὶ γέγονε τῇ αὐτῶν πρὸς τὸν θεὸν εὐχῇ καὶ σπουδῇ.
2. Ἐπεὶ γοῦν οὗτος τῆς νόσου ἀπήλλακτο καὶ οἱ μοναχοὶ τῆς πρὸς τὸ πρᾶγμα σπουδῆς οὐκ ἡμέλουν, ἀλλὰ παρακλήσεσι χρώμενοι τῶν πρὸς θεὸν ὑποσχέσεων ἠξίουσαν μεμνησθαι, πλήρη τοῦτον τοῦ θείου ζήλου εἰργάσαντο· καὶ δὴ τοῖς συνεπιτρόποις ἀνακοινώσας τὰ τῆς βουλῆς, καὶ

1.1 : de die obiti Theophili cf. III.34.38 et III.41.1–2 2–3 : die 9–10 Ian. a. 840 Michael natus est et 20 Ianuarii a. 841 iam tertium annum aetatis suae inibat, cf. III.18.22–23

Cap. 1: Gen 55.15–20, 56.38–61; Log A 232.10–11 | Scyl 81.86–91, 81.3–82.34 Cap. 2: Acta Davidis 249.11–23; Gen 56.61–57.80, 58.2–10; Log A 232.3–6 | PsSym 647.5–9, 647.19–648.8; Scyl 82.34–83.50

1.1 δὴ om. edd 1 τοῦ om. edd 3 προήχθη σὺν Boor, cf. Scyl 81.88 ἀναδέχεται σὺν : προήχθησαν V : προήχθη edd 7 ἐξαρμενίων V : ἐκ τῶν Ἀρμενίων edd 11 εἰς ῥέοντες V 12 τῶν : τοῦ edd 13 ἀνάκλησιν V 13 ταχεῖαν V 13 εἰ : ἦν edd 14 ἁγίων V 14 θελήσει edd 16 ἄλλων : ἁγίων conit. Boor in app. 16 ὁρῶν V 16 πρὸς φιλεῖς V 20 ῥάων edd : ῥάων V 2.4 εἰργάσατο V 4 συνεπιτρόποις V

Concerning the Reign of Michael, Son of Theophilus. Book 4

1. Such was the end of Theophilus's life, and his son Michael, who was in his third year since entering this life, succeeded to the empire with his mother Theodora. But for the affairs of state there were as procurators and guardians, whom Theophilus left behind, the eunuch Theoktistos, who was then keeper of the Inkpot and logothete of the Course, the patrikios Bardas, brother of the augusta, and the magistros Manuel, of Armenian descent, who was also a paternal uncle of the empress. Now, the political situation had stabilised and the affairs of state were at the time well managed; and the worship of the divine images was about to be restored and regain its former honour. Manuel was suffering from a serious and grave illness, and monks from the monastery of Stoudios – for he had no slight faith in them – streamed in to him and promised that an easy and speedy return to health would result if only he himself was willing and convinced the rulers to ordain the worship of the holy images everywhere. Moreover, many God-bearing fathers from the other [?] mountains who were kindly affectioned to him, beginning from the time when he served as general of the Armeniacs, visited him and, entreating him on similar terms, at length convinced him to come to the right thinking and to promise them what they desired, if he should get better; and this came to pass through their prayer and earnestness toward God.

2. Now after Manuel had been delivered from his illness, the monks did not slacken in their attention to the matter but, repeating their entreaties, exhorted him to remember his promises to God and filled him with divine zeal. Manuel then communicated his plan to his fellow guardians and persuaded

- 5 πείσας ὥς ἐστι καλὸν ἀρχὴν δεξιὰν τοῖς πράγμασιν ἐπιθεῖναι, καὶ μεταρ-
 ρυθμίσας αὐτοὺς καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ βούλημα ἀγαγών, πρὸς τὴν Θεο-
 δώραν εἰσῆι τὰ περὶ τῆς ὑποθέσεως κοινολογησόμενος. ἀλλ’ ἐκείνη μὲν ἡ
 10 θεοφιλὴς καὶ ὄντως βασιλεία, ἐπεὶ περὶ τῆς ὀρθοδοξίας ἤκουσε, “τοῦτο”,
 ἔφη, “καὶ δι’ ἐπιθυμίας εἶχον αἰεὶ καὶ μελετῶσα διέλειπον οὐδαμῶς· ἀλλ’ ἡ
 τῶν πολλῶν με συγκλητικῶν καὶ τῶν ἐν τέλει τῇ τοιαύτῃ προσανα-
 15 κειμένων αἰρέσει πληθὺς ἐκώλυνεν ἄχρι τῆς σήμερον, οὐχ ἦττον δὲ καὶ οἱ
 τῆς ἐκκλησίας ὑπερμαχοῦντες μητροπολίται, καὶ μάλιστα ὁ πατριάρχης,
 ὃς μικρὰν | ἔχοντα τῆς τοιαύτης αἰρέσεως τὸν ἕμὸν ἄνδρα τὴν ρίζαν ἐκ B 150
 τῶν γονέων ἐπὶ πλεῖον | ἠὔξησέ τε καὶ στερεωτέραν εἰργάσατο ταῖς f. 51
 20 αὐτοῦ εἰσηγήσεσί τε καὶ πυκναῖς παραινέσεσιν, εἰς χαλεπὰς αἰκίας καὶ
 βασάνους ἐκτραπῆναι τοῦτον ποιήσας, ὃς ἐκεῖνος ὁσημέραι κατὰ τῶν
 ἁγίων ἐφεύρισκεν, ἀλείπτῃς τε καὶ διδάσκαλος τῶν τοιούτων κακῶν ὁ
 ἄθλιος γεγωνὴς”. “καὶ τί γοῦν οὕτω, δέσποινα, φρονοῦσάν σε καὶ βουλευ-
 25 ομένην τὰ κάλλιστα τὸ κωλύον ἐστίν”, ἀντέφησαν, “μὴ καὶ εἰς ἔργον
 ταῦτα ἀχθῆναι καὶ τὴν πάνδημον ταύτην κελεῦσαι εἰς πέρας ἐλθεῖν
 ἑορτήν;” εὐθύς γοῦν μετακαλεσαμένη τὸν τῆς βίγλης δρουγγάριον –
 Κωνσταντῖνος δὲ οὗτος ἦν, ὁ τοῦ πατρικίου Θωμᾶ καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα γε-
 γονότος λογοθέτου τοῦ δρόμου πατήρ – δηλοῖ τῷ πατριάρχῃ ὥς “πολ-
 30 λοι πολλὰχόθεν συνεληλυθότες εὐλαβεῖς τε <ἄνδρες> καὶ μοναχοὶ δέησιν
 ἐποιήσαντο πρὸς τὴν βασιλείαν ἡμῶν τοῦ τὰς πανσέπτους κελεῦσαι
 ἀναστηλωθῆναι εἰκόνας. εἰ μὲν οὖν ὁμόλογος εἴ τοῦτοις καὶ σύμφωνος, καὶ
 δὴ τὸν παλαιὸν κόσμον ἡ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησία ἀπολαμβανέτω· εἰ δ’
 ἀμφίβολος καὶ τὴν γνώμην οὐκ ἔχων εὐθῆ, τοῦ μὲν θρόνου ἔξω γενοῦ καὶ
 τῆς πόλεως, κατὰ δὲ τὸ προάστειόν σου μικρὸν διάβηθι, μέχρις ἂν ὁ
 30 σύλλογος τῶν ἁγίων πατέρων γένηται μετὰ σοῦ· οἶδε γὰρ ἔτοιμοι δια-
 δικάζεσθαί τε καὶ διαλέγεσθαι καὶ πείθειν σε περὶ τούτων κακῶς
 λέγοντα”.

3. <Ὁ δὲ πατριάρχης ἢ μᾶλλον φατριάρχης> κατὰ τὸν ἐν τῷ πατριαρ-
 χείῳ Θετταλὸν – τρίκλινος δὲ οὕτω κατονομαζόμενος – τηνικαῦτα
 ἀνέκειτο ἐπὶ σκίμποδος, τὰς βασιλικὰς ἀγγελίας δεχόμενος· ὃς ἅμα τῇ

|| 28 cf. Ps 50.12 Cap. 3: Vita Theodoraе 266.30–42; Acta Davidis 249.23–250.29; Gen 57.81–58.2, 58.10–28; Log A 232.6–10 | PsSym 647.9–11, 647.15, 648.8–649.3; Scyl 83.61–84.83 || 1 GeorgMon 802. 14–15

5 ὥς ἐστὶν V : fortasse ὥς ἔστι scribendum 5 ὑποθεῖναι conl. Bekk in app., sed cf. supra I.19.1 6 ἀγαγών V 7 κοινολογησόμενος edd : κοινολογησάμενος V 7 ἀλλ’ : καὶ edd 7 ἡ om. edd 9 εἶχον : ἤγον edd 10 με om. edd 10 συγκλητικῶν V 12 μητροπολίται V 14 ἐπιπλεῖον V 17 ἁγίων V 17 εὐρηκεν edd 17 τοι οὕτων V 19 ἀντέφη[σαν] conl. Kamb 21 γοῦν V 24 <ἄνδρες> supplevimus e PsSym 647.21 28 γεγόμενος PsSym 648.5 29 ὁ om. edd 30 οἶδε V 31 ἀλέγεσθαι V 3.1 <Ὁ δὲ – φατριάρχης> supplevimus e PsSym f 245r (φατριάρχης 648.8–9), cf. infra IV.38.1

them that it was a good thing to give a clever start to affairs of state; and having converted them and brought them over to his way of thinking, he went in to Theodora to deliberate on the subject. But that God-loving and true empress, when she heard talk of Orthodoxy, said, ‘This is what I always desired and never ceased taking thought for. But the majority of those in the Senate and government who are devoted to this heresy have hindered me down to this day, no less than the defenders of the Church, the metropolitans, and especially the patriarch, who with his instructions and repeated exhortations increased and rendered yet more solid the small root of this heresy which my husband had from his parents; he caused him to stray toward harsh tortures and torments which he devised every day against holy men, becoming, unhappy man, trainer and teacher of such evils.’ ‘What then, O mistress,’ they replied, ‘hinders you, who are so minded and desire to do what is best, from commanding these things to be put into effect and this feast of all the people to come to fulfilment?’ Forthwith, then, she summoned the drungarius of the Watch – this was Constantine, father of the patrikios Thomas who later became logothete of the Course – and informed the patriarch that ‘Many pious <men> and monks from many places have come together and made entreaty unto our imperial Majesty to command that the all-venerable images be set up. If you are in agreement and accord with these these things, then let God’s Church regain its former adornment. But if you are in doubt and have no straightforward opinion, then leave your see and the city, and go over to your estate for a little, until the assembly of the holy fathers comes to you, for they are eager to dispute and discuss and persuade you that you speak wrongly concerning these things.’

3. Now the patriarch, or rather patriarch, was at the time reclining on a couch in the Thessalos – the hall so called – in the Patriarchate when he received the imperial messages. And wounded in his soul upon hearing these

- ἀκοῇ τῶν | λόγων βληθεὶς τὴν ψυχὴν τὸν μὲν ἀποκομιστὴν τούτων, B 151
- 5 οὐδὲν ἕτερον φήσας ἢ βουλευέσασθαι περὶ τούτων καλῶς, ἅμα τῷ λόγῳ ἀπέστελλεν, καὶ θᾶττον ἢ λόγος ἐγχειρίδιόν τι λαβὼν τὰς κατὰ γαστέρα φλέβας ἀπέτεμεν, ἃς ἦδει δειλίαν μὲν καὶ οἶκτον ἐκ τῆς τοῦ αἵματος δαφυλοῦς ἐκχύσεως ἀποτεκεῖν τοῖς πολλοῖς, θάνατον δὲ ἢ τινα κίνδυνον οὐδαμῶς. θροῦς οὖν καὶ βοῇ εὐθύς τις περιήχει τὴν ἐκκλησίαν, οὐ μὴν δὲ
- 10 ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰς βασιλικὰς ἀκοάς, προφθάνουσα τὸν δρουγγάριον, ὡς ἡ δέσποινα ἐκ κελεύσεως τὸν πατριάρχην κατέσφαξεν. τῶν γοῦν λεγομένων ἐταστῆς ἀκριβὴς ὁ πατρίκιος | Βάρδας ἀποσταλεὶς αὐτάς τε τὰς πληγὰς f. 51v ἐκ προνοίας γενομένης ἡρέμα πῶς κατεφώρασεν, καὶ τὸ δράμα τὸν ἔλεγχον οὐ διέφυγεν, αὐτῶν τῶν θεραπόντων κατειπόντων αὐτοῦ, καὶ τὰ τῆς
- 15 τομῆς ὄργανα – φλεβοτόμα δὲ ἦν – εἰς μέσον καθυποβαλλόμενα. ἔκτοτε γοῦν οὐδενὸς λόγου ἀξιωθεὶς ὡς ἐπὶ τοιαύτῃ αἰτίᾳ καὶ γνώμῃ αὐτοφώρῳ ἐπειλημμένος, ἀπηλαύνετο μὲν καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἐξωθεῖτο ὁ ἀλιτήριος, κατὰ τὸ προάστειον αὐτοῦ τὸ οὕτω λεγόμενον περιορισθεὶς τὰ Ψυχά, εἰσήγετο δὲ ὁ πολλοῖς πόνοις καὶ κόποις τὰ τῆς ἀρετῆς σώσας ἀδια-
- 20 λώβητα, καὶ τῆς ἐγχρονίου μὲν καθεύξεως, καὶ ταύτης σαπρώσης, ὡς ἔοικεν, τὴν τῶν τριχῶν ἀπόρροϊαν κληρωσάμενος, παρὰ θεοῦ δὲ καὶ τῆς βασιλίδος Θεοδώρας τὴν τῆς ἐκκλησίας κυβέρνησιν τε καὶ πηδालιούχησιν· Μεθόδιος οὗτος ἦν ὁ μέγας καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀήττητος πρόμαχος. |
- B 152
4. Σκόπει δὲ καὶ ὅπως ἐν ταύτῳ συναγαγούσης τῆς γενναίας καὶ τῷ ὄντι βοηθοῦ γεγυμνασθῆναι τῷ ἀνδρί, ἀλλ’ οὐκ ἐναντίας, τοὺς ὅποι ποτὲ γῆς ὄντας ὀρθοδόξους, καὶ τὴν παρρησίαν ἀναλαβέσθαι θεσπίσασα, “ἄγε δὴ”, ἔφησεν, “ὦ κλῆρος θεοῦ καὶ πατέρες, ἐμοῦ τὴν τῶν ἱερῶν καὶ πανσέπτων
- 5 ἀναστήλωσιν εἰκόνων ὑμῖν χορηγούσης καὶ διδούσης ὅτι μάλιστά μου μετ’ εὐμενείας, ἀντεπιθεῖναι μοι δικαίαν χάριν καὶ αὐτοὶ δεσποίνῃ οὔσῃ βουλήθητε, οὐ ταπεινὴν τινα καὶ μικράν, ἵνα μὴ δὲ χάρις νομίζοιτο, οὐδὲ

3.17 : die 4 Mart. a. 843 Ioannes a sede patriarchali depositus est 19–24 : die 4 Mart. Methodius patriarcha designatus est et die 11 a synodo confirmatus est

Cap. 4: De Theophili absolutione 30 col. 1.1–18, col. 2.4–21; Acta Davidis 244.22–26 | PsSym 650.21–651.5

5 βουλευέσασθαι V, cf. PsSym 648.11 : βουλευέσθαι edd : βουλευέσθαι con. Boor in app. 6 ἀπέσταλκεν edd 7 ἡδη V 7 οἶκτον V 8 ἢ τινά V 13 γενομένης V 13 πῶς V 15 φλεβότομα V 15 καθ’ ὑποβαλλόμενα V PsSym f 245v : καθυποβαλλόντων con. Boor in app. : καθυπεβάλλοντο con. Kamb 16 οὖν edd 16 λόγου ἀξιωθεὶς om. B edd 16 ἐπιτοιαύτη V 16 αὐτοφώρῳ nos c PsSym 649.1 (αὐτὸ φόρῳ f 245v) : αὐτοφόνῳ edd : αὐτοφώνῳ V 17 ἐπειλημμένος post corr. V, ante corr. ἐπιλημμένος : PsSym 649.1–2 ὑπειλημμένος 20 τῆς ἐγχρονίου edd : τῆς ἐκχρονίου V : ἐκ τῆς χρονίου Boor 21 ἀπόρροϊαν V 4.1 ταυτῷ V 2 γεγυμνασθῆναι V 2 ὅποι V 6 ἀντ’ ἐπιθεῖναι V 6 αὐτῇ edd

words, he dispatched with his response the messenger who had brought them, saying nothing except that he had deliberated in thorough wise concerning these matters; and faster than can be recounted he took an implement and cut the veins in his belly which, he knew, would induce fright and pity on the part of the many, because of the profuse flow of blood, but in no wise death or any danger. Forthwith a rumour and shout went through the Church, reaching also the imperial ears even before the drungarius returned, that the empress had ordered the murder of the patriarch. Dispatched, then, as careful examiner of what was being said, the patrikios Bardas discovered that these wounds had been made somehow gently, with care; nor did the stage-effect escape censure, for the servants denounced him, and the instruments of the incision – these were lancets – were brought in evidence. Thereupon this offender was granted no opportunity to speak, having been caught out in such manifest motive and intent, and was driven out and expelled from the Church, exiled to his estate called Psicha; and he who had preserved his virtue unscathed through many toils and pains, was brought in: he who received as his lot from his long and, so it seems, fetid confinement the falling out of his hair, but from God and the empress Theodora the governance and direction of the Church. This was Methodios, the Church's great and invincible champion.

4. Now, behold how the empress, being the noble and true helper of her husband, not his opponent, and yet at the same time gathering together the Orthodox from wherever they might be on earth, ordained that they should recover their boldness of speech and declared: 'Come, O clergy of God and fathers, seeing that I bestow and grant you with utmost goodwill the restoration of the the holy and all-venerable images, deign you to return the favour to me your empress: not one humble or slight, lest it should not be con-

10 τοῖς διδοῦσιν ὑμῖν ἢ ἐμοὶ τῇ αἰτουμένη ἀνάρμοστόν τε καὶ ἀσύμφορον, ἐπιτηδεῖον δὲ καὶ μονίμου καὶ παρὰ θεῶ εὐαποδέκτου καθεστῶσης καὶ νομιζομένης. ἡ δὲ ἐστὶν ἢ εἰς τὸν ἑμὸν ἄνδρα τε καὶ βασιλέα περὶ τούτων διαβαίνουσα συγγνώμη τε καὶ συγχώρησις καὶ ἀμνηστία παρὰ θεοῦ τῆς τοιαύτης διαμαρτίας· ὥς εἰ μὴ τοῦτο γένηται, οὐτ’ ἐμὲν σχοίητε ἐπακολουθοῦσαν ὑμῖν οὔτε τὴν τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων προσκύνησιν καὶ ἀνάρρησιν, ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ τὴν τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀνάληψιν”.

5. Καὶ ἅμα τὸν λόγον κατέπαυσεν· “ὅτι μὲν οὖν δίκαια”, ἡ ὀρθόδοξος ἐκκλησία καὶ ὁ ταύτης ἐξάρχων Μεθόδιος ἔφασαν, “δέσποινα, ἐξαίτη, οὐδ’ ἡμεῖς | ἔχομεν ἀπαναίνεσθαι· δίκαιον γὰρ τοῖς εὐεργέταις καὶ ἄρχουσιν τὰς f.52
10 προσηκούσας χάριτας ἀντεπιτίθεσθαι δαψιλῶς, ὅταν μὴ τύραννος ἄρχῃ χεῖρ, ἀλλ’ ἔστι γνώμη θεοφιλῆς. ἀλλ’ οὐπω θεοῦ δίκην ἡμεῖς τὸν πρὸς ἄλλον | βίον διαβεβηκότα δυνατοὶ ἐξαρεῖσθαι, τὰ ὑπὲρ ἡμᾶς φανταζόμε- B 153
νοι. δυνατοὶ μὲν ἡμεῖς, καὶ κλεῖς οὐρανῶν πιστευθέντες παρὰ θεοῦ, τοῖς βουλομένοις πᾶσιν ἀνοιγνύναι αὐτάς, ἀλλὰ τοῖς κατὰ τοῦτον τὸν βίον ἔτι οἰκονομουμένοις, πρὶν ἀλλαχοῦ μεταστῶσιν. ἔστιν δ’ ὅτε καὶ τοῖς μεθ-
10 ισταμένοις, ὅταν τε μικρὰ τὰ σφάλματα ἢ καὶ μετάνοια τούτοις προσῇ· τοῖς δ’ ἤδη μετὰ πονηρῶν ἐλπίδων ἀπάρασι καὶ πρόδηλον φέρουσι τὴν κατάγνωσιν οὐχ οἰοί τε τὰς εὐθύνας διαλύειν τούτοις ἡμεῖς”.

6. Καὶ ἡ δέσποινα, εἴτ’ ἀληθῶς εἴτε καὶ ἄλλως τῷ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἀναθερμανθεῖσα φίλτρῳ – ὅπερ ἐστὶ, καὶ ἡμεῖς συγκατατιθέμεθα –, ἥ μὴν ἐνωμότως τὸν ἱερὸν ἐκείνον θίασον ἐβεβαίου ὡς “μεγάλα τραγωδούσης καὶ κατολοφυρομένης καὶ πάντα ἐκτραγωδούσης κατὰ τὸν τῆς ἐξόδου
5 τούτου καιρόν, καὶ διαγραφούσης ὡς οἷα ἐπακολουθήσει ἡμῖν μεμισημένοις ἐν τηλικαύτῃ πόλει περὶ τῆς τοιαύτης αἰρέσεως, εὐχῶν στέρησις, ἁρῶν ἐπέκτασις, λαοῦ ἐπανάστασις, εἰσῆι μετὰ μέλος τῆς αἰρέσεως. καὶ ταύτας ἅμα αἰτησάμενός τε καὶ κατασπασάμενος ζεούση
10 ψυχῇ, ἐμοῦ ἐν χερσὶ καθυποβαλούσης, τοῖς ἀπάγουσιν ἀγγέλοις τὸ πνεῦμα παρέδωκεν”. ταύτης ἐκεῖνοι ἀκηκοότες δὴ τῆς φωνῆς, καὶ τὸν

Cap. 5: De Theophili absolutione 30 col. 1.18–22, col. 2.21–25 || 6–7 cf. Matt 16.19
Cap. 6: De Theophili absolutione 20 col. 1.19 – 21 col. 1.15, 20 col. 2.19 – 21 col. 2.11, 30 col. 1.22 – 32 col. 1.20, 30 col. 2.21 – 33 col. 2.3, 37 col. 1.27 – 39 col. 1.28, 37 col. 2.28 – 39 col. 2.29; Vita Theodorae 264.3–265.41 | Scyl 84.92–93; PsSym 649.6–10, 651.5–22

8 τῇ om. edd 10 δὲ ἐστὶν V 10 τούτων V 11 τὲ V 12 οὐτ’ V 12 ἐμὲ sic V : ἐμὲ edd 5.4 χάριτας V 4 ἀντ’ ἐπιτίθεσθαι V 4 ὅταν V 4 τυραννίς edd 5 οὐ τῆς θεοῦ δίκης conl. Comb in marg. 8 ἀνοιγνύναι edd : ἀνοιγνύντες V Boor 8 αὐτοὺς scil. τοὺς οὐρανούς conl. Boor in app. (fortasse recte) 8 τοῦτον τὸν βίον : βίον τοῦτον edd 10 ὅταν V 6.4 κατωλοφυρομένης V 5 δια<ζω>γραφούσης conl. Kamb 5 οἷα V 8 αἰρέσεως : καθαιρέσεως τῶν εἰκόνων conl. Boor in app., coniecens repetitionem esse αἰρέσεως e l. superiore et verbum ταύτας mentionem imaginum praecessisse demonstrare

sidered a favour, or else one inappropriate or prejudicial to you who grant or me who entreat, but rather should stand and be considered suitable and permanent and acceptable to God. It is this: pardon and forgiveness extending to my husband and emperor with regard to these matters and amnesty from God for this gross fault. For if this is not done, you shall not gain my compliance nor the worship and proclamation of the venerable images, nor yet the recovery of the Church.’

5. When she ceased speaking, the Orthodox Church and its leader Methodios said, ‘Because what you request is just, O empress, we shall not reject it; for it is right to render fitting thanks in abundance unto benefactors and rulers when it is no tyrannical hand that rules and the intent is God-loving. But we cannot now, imagining ourselves greater than we are, like God, absolve one who has passed on into the other life. We are able, being entrusted by God with the keys of heaven, to open these unto all those who desire it – but to those who are still engaged in this life, before they pass away elsewhere. Sometimes this is possible also for those who are passing away, when their errors are small and they had regret for them; but for those who have already departed with evil expectations and incur manifest condemnation, we cannot release them from being called to account.’

6. And the empress, be it in truth, or else – and we concur that this is the case – fired by affection for her husband, assured that holy gathering verily with oaths that ‘Whilst I was greatly declaiming and lamenting and decking everything out in tragic phrase at the time of his departing this life, as well as describing all that would happen to us, hated as we were in this city on account of such a heresy, namely, privation of prayers, extension of curses, rebellion of the populace, repentance of his heresy came to him. And having requested these [same] and kissing them with fervent soul as I held them before him in my hands, he commended his spirit to the angels.’ Hearing her speech

- τρόπον τῆς αὐγούστης εὐλαβηθέντες – ἦν γάρ, εἰ καὶ τις φιλόχριστος –, καὶ ἅμα τὴν τῶν ἁγίων εἰκόνων ζητοῦντες τιμὴν, κοινῇ ψήφῳ καὶ γνώμῃ τῆς μὲν ἁμαρτίας ταύτης, εἰ οὕτως τοῦτ' ἔστιν, συγγνώμην ἔφασαν εὐρήσειν παρὰ θεῶ, καὶ ἅμα | δι' ἐγγράφου ἀσφαλείας τὴν πίστιν τούτου B 154
- 15 τῇ δεσποίνῃ ἐδίδοσαν. ἐφ' οἷς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ἀπολαβόντες καὶ Μεθοδίῳ τῷ ἁγιωτάτῳ τὴν τῆς ἀρχιερωσύνης ἀποδεδωκότες τιμὴν, τῇ πρώτῃ τῶν ἁγίων νηστείων κυριακῇ σὺν αὐτῇ τῇ δεσποίνῃ πάννυχον ὕμνωδιαν ἐν τῷ κατὰ τὰς Βλαχέρνας ἱερῷ τεμένει τῆς ὑπεραγίας ἡμῶν δεσποίνης καὶ θεοτόκου τετελεκότες, τῇ ἔωθεν μετὰ λιτῆς τῷ μεγάλῳ τοῦ θεοῦ λόγου
- 20 τεμένει καταλαμβάνουσι· καὶ τὸν κόσμον αὐτῆς αὐθις ἀναλαμβάνει ἡ ἐκκλησία, τῆς θείας μυσταγωγίας τελειωθείσης ἁγνῶς. καὶ ἡ μὲν ὀρθόδοξος οὕτως προέκοπτεν ἐκκλησία, ἀνακαινιζομένη ὡς ἀετός, τὸ τῆς γραφῆς, πάντων τῶν αἰρεσιωτῶν ἐν πάσῃ τῇ ὑψηλίῳ καθαιρέσει ὑποβληθέντων μετὰ καὶ τοῦ ἀρχιερέως αὐτῶν· Ἰωάννης οὗτος ἦν, ὁ διὰ f.52v
- 25 τὴν οἰκείαν ἀσέβειαν Ἰαννῆς παρὰ τῶν εὐσεβῶν μετονομασθεὶς, οὐκ ἔπηλὺς τις καὶ ξένος, αὐτόχθων δὲ καὶ τῆς βασιλίδος ταύτης τῶν πόλεων βλάστημα – φύεσθαι δὲ καὶ ἐν ἀμπέλῳ βάτον ἠκούσαμεν –, οὐδ' ἐξ ἀσήμου τινὸς ἀλλὰ καὶ λίαν εὐγενοῦς καταγόμενος σειρᾶς, τῆς οὕτω τῶν Μοροχαρζανίων λεγομένης.
7. Οὗτος οὖν, ἵνα καὶ τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν ἡ ἱστορία δηλώσῃ, τῆς μονῆς τῶν ἁγίων μαρτύρων Σεργίου καὶ Βάκχου τῆς ἐν τοῖς Ὁρμίσδου διακειμένης ἡγούμενος ἄνωθεν καὶ τῷ βασιλικῷ κλήρῳ καταριθμούμενος, διαφερόντως παρὰ Μιχαὴλ ἡγάπητο τοῦ τραυλοῦ, εἴτε μόνῳ τούτῳ τῷ
- 5 κοινωνὸς εἶναι τῆς τούτου αἰρέσεως, εἴτε καὶ τῷ διαφέρειν ἐπὶ λογιότητι δόξαν τινὰ ἐσχηκώς. πλὴν ἡγάπητο | καὶ τοῦ Θεοφίλου διδάσκαλος ἐγκαθίστατο. καὶ οὗτος ἐπεὶ τὰς τῆς βασιλείας ἔσχεν ἡνίας, σύγκελλον μὲν πρότερον τοῦτον τιμᾶ, εἴθ' ὕστερον καὶ πατριάρχην καθίστησι Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, προγνώσεις τινὰς διὰ λεκανομαντείας καὶ γοητείας αὐτῷ
- 10 ἀπαγγέλλοντα. καὶ ἡ γοητεία τοιαύτη· ἔθνος ποτὲ τρισὶν ὑφ' ἡγεμόσι στρατηγουμένου ἀπίστου τε καὶ σκληροῦ τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων χώραν κα-

6.16–19 : die 11 Mart. a. 843 sollemnis instauratio orthodoxiae 7.8–9 : de electione Ioannis Grammatici ut patriarchae cf. III.26.43–44

||22–23 cf. Ps 102.5; 27 Gregorius Nazianzenus, In laudem Athanasii vol. 35, p. 1.097 φύεσθαι δὲ καὶ ἐν ἀμπέλῳ βάτον ἠκούσατε Cap. 7: | PsSym 649.10–650.20; Scyl 85.94–86.34

14 ἐγγράφου V 16 τῷ ante Μεθοδίῳ edd 19 ἐν τῷ conl. Bekk in marg., sed cf. PsSym 651.18 21 θείας : ἁγίας edd 22 οὕτω edd 23 ὑφ' ἡλίῳ edd 24 μετὰ καὶ nos e PsSym 651.21 : καὶ V edd : μετὰ conl. Bekk in app. 25 ὀνομασθεὶς edd 26 ἔπηλὺς τις Boor e PsSym 649.7 (f 245v ἐπιλύς) : ἔπηλυστης V : ἔπηλυστης Comb : ἔπηλυστης Bekk 29 Μοροχαρζανίων sic V Scyl 84.93 (B), sed Μωροχαρζανίων Scyl 84.93 (ACEVN) et Μοροχαρζανίων Scyl 84.93 (M) : Μοροχαρζανίων edd : Μωροχαρδανίων PsSym f 245v (Μωροκαρδανίων 649.10) 7.2 ἁγίων om. edd 9 διαλεκανομαντείας V 9 γοντείας V

and holding the empress's manner in honour – for she was Christ-loving, as anyone ever –, as well as desiring the reverence of the holy images, by common vote and agreement they declared that, if this was so, Theophilus would be forgiven by God for this sin, and at the same time they gave the empress guarantee of this through written assurance. Whereupon, receiving the Church and bestowing on the most holy Methodios the dignity of hierarch, in the presence of the empress herself on the first Sunday of holy Lent they celebrated the all-night service of hymns in the holy sanctuary of our most holy Lady the Theotokos at Blachernae, and in the morning they went in procession to the great sanctuary of God the Word; and the Church again recovered its adornment whilst the divine mysteries were celebrated in hallowed fashion. Thus did the Orthodox Church progress, being renewed as an eagle, as Scripture has it, whilst all members of heresy in all the earth were subjected to annulation of their orders, together with their hierarch. This was John (Ioannes), who on account of his impiety was re-named Jannes by pious men: not some newcomer or foreigner, but a native and offspring of this queen of cities – we have heard that bramble grows even in a vinyard –, nor descended from some obscure race, but rather from one quite noble, called the Morocharzani.

7. This John, then, in order that our history might also relate the facts concerning him, was formerly abbot of the monastery of the holy martyrs Sergius and Bacchus in the quarter of Hormisdas and was on the rolls of the imperial clergy. He was particularly beloved of Michael the Stammerer, either simply because he shared in his heresy, or also because he had somehow distinguished himself for his eloquence. In any case he was beloved and was appointed as teacher of Theophilus. And when this latter took up the reigns of the empire, he first granted him the dignity of syncellus and then made him patriarch of Constantinople because he had explained to him certain signs of the future through divination with dishes and sorcery. And the sorcery was as follows. When once a certain nation, faithless and cruel and commanded by three leaders, was overrunning and laying waste to the land of the Romans

- τατρέχοντός τε καὶ καταλιζόμενου, καὶ ὡς εἰκὸς ἄθυμοῦντος ἐπὶ τούτῳ τοῦ Θεοφίλου καὶ τοῦ ὑπηκόου παντός, ἀποσκευάσασθαι πού τὴν ἄθυμίαν οὗτος συμβουλεύει καὶ θάρρους πληρωθῆναι τε καὶ χαρᾶς, εἶγε
- 15 μόνον τῇ τούτου ἐπακολουθοίη βουλῇ. ἡ δὲ ἦν τοιαύτη· ἐν τοῖς εἰς τὸν εὐριπὸν τοῦ Ἱπποδρομίου ἰδρυμένοις χαλκοῖς ἀνδριᾶσιν ἐλέγετό τις εἶναι ἀνδριάς τρισὶ διαμορφούμενος κεφαλαῖς, ἃς κατὰ τινὰ στοιχείωσιν πρὸς τοὺς τοῦ ἔθνους ἄρχηγούς ἀνῆγεν. σφύρας οὖν μεγίστας σιδηρᾶς ἰσαριθμούς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς προσέταττε γενέσθαι, καὶ ἀνδράσιν ἐγχειρισθῆ-
- 20 ναι ταύτας τρισὶν ἐπὶ χειρῶν γενναιότητι διαφέροντας· κατὰ δὲ τινὰ ὥραν νυκτερινὴν πρὸς τὸν εἰρημένον ἀνδριάντα πλησίον στάντας αὐτοὺς καὶ τὰς σφύρας ἐπὶ χεῖρας ἐν μετεώρῳ ἔχοντας, ἡνίκα τούτοις κελεύσειεν, μεθ' ὑπερβαλλούσης δυνάμεως ὁμοῦ ταύτας κατενεγκεῖν, ὡς ἐξ ἑνὸς κρούματός τε καὶ πλήξεως | τὰς τοιαύτας ἀποτεμεῖν κεφαλὰς. τούτοις τοῖς f.53
- 25 λόγοις εὐφρανθεῖς τε ἅμα καὶ ἐκπλαγεῖς ὁ Θεόφιλος ἐκέλευσε τὸ ἔργον ἐπαγαγεῖν. ὡς οὖν παρήσαν πόρρῳ δὴ τῶν νυκτῶν οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες τὰς σφύρας κατέχοντες, ὁ δὲ | Ἰωάννης διὰ λαϊκοῦ ἐνδύματος ἑαυτὸν πε- B 156 ρικρύπτων, ὡς ἂν μὴ κατάδηλος γένηται, καθ' ἑαυτὸν ὁ Ἰωάννης τοὺς στοιχειωτικoὺς λόγους ἐπειπὼν καὶ τὴν ἐνοῦσαν τοῖς ἄρχουσι δύναμιν
- 30 εἰς τὸν ἀνδριάντα μεταγαγὼν, ἢ μᾶλλον τὴν οὖσαν πρότερον ἐν τῷ ἀνδριάντι καταβαλὼν ἐκ τῆς τῶν στοιχειωσάντων δυνάμεως, παίειν ἕκαστον προστάττει νεανικῶς τε καὶ ἰσχυρῶς. καὶ οἱ μὲν δύο τὰς δύο τοῦ ἀνδριάντος κεφαλὰς ἀπέκοψαν· ὁ δ' ἕτερος μικρὸν μὲν κατέκλινεν, οὐ μὴν καὶ ὅλην τοῦ σκηνώματος ἐναπέτεμεν. τούτοις οὖν καὶ τὰ κατὰ τοὺς
- 35 ἡγεμόνας ἐπηκολούθει· ἔριδος γάρ τινος κραταιᾶς ἐπεισπεσοῦσης αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐμφυλίου μάχης, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἑνὸς οἱ δύο τῶν ἡγεμόνων πίπτουσι κατὰ τὴν <τῶν> κεφαλῶν ἐκτομήν, τοῦ τρίτου μόνου διασωθέντος μὲν, οὐχ ὑγιῶς δὲ οὕτως εἰς τὸ μηδὲν εἶναι τὸ ἔθνος χωρῆσαν πρὸς τὰ οἰκεῖα αὐθις μετὰ φυγῆς ἀφώρμα καὶ συμφορᾶς.

8. Ἄλλὰ τὰ μὲν τῆς γοητείας οὕτως. τῷ δὲ γόητι τούτῳ ἀδελφὸς ἦν σαρκικός, ὄνομα Ἄρσαβήρ, τὴν τύχην πατρίκιος παρὰ Θεοφίλου τιμηθεῖς. τούτῳ γοῦν προάστειον κατὰ τὸ εὐνυμνον μέρος τοῦ ἐκπλεομένου

Cap. 8: VBas 94.16–21; Log A 224.167–176 | PsSym 635.1–14; Scyl 86.35–48

13 ἀποσκευάσασθαι V : ἀποσκευάζεσθαι edd 16 ἰδρυμένοις V 20 αὐτὰς edd 20 for-
tasse διαφέρουσι scribendum (ex errore propter στάντας in l. sequenti?) 21 αὐτοῦ edd
Boor 22 κελεύσαιεν Comb, quod corr. Bekk 24 κρούσματος B edd 29 ἐπειπὼν Boor e
Scyl 85.24 et PsSym 650.11 : ὑπειπὼν V PsSym 246r 31 καταβαλὼν V 32 post δύο add.
ἰσχυροτάταις χρησάμενοι καταφοραῖς edd e Scyl 86.26 33 post ἕτερος add. μαλακώτερον
ποιήσας τὴν πληγὴν edd e Scyl 86.27 34 σκηνώματος ἐναπέτεμεν V, cf. PsSym 651.14 :
σώματος ἀπέτεμεν, post quae verba add. τὴν κεφαλὴν edd e Scyl 86.28–29 36 πίπτουσι B
edd : πίστουσι V 37 <τῶν> add. Boor e PsSym 650.17

and, understandably, Theophilus and all the subjects of the empire had therefore lost heart, this John advised him how to be rid of this disheartenment and to be filled with courage and joy, if only he would follow his counsel. And this counsel was as follows. Amongst the bronze statues set up on the spina of the Hippodrome there was said to be a statue formed with three heads, the which, by some sort of spell, he had connected with the rulers of this nation. He ordered then that very large hammers be made, equal in number to the heads, and that they be given to three men who excelled in the vigour of their arms; and that at a certain hour of the night these same men, standing near the aforementioned statue and holding the hammers in their hands up high, when he gave them the command, should bring down the hammers with overwhelming force, all together, so as to cut off the heads with one stroke and blow. At once gladdened and astonished by these words Theophilus commanded that the deed be done. And as the men stood by late in the night holding the hammers, John, concealing himself in lay attire, lest he should be discovered, pronounced to himself the magical words, transferring the power of the rulers to the statue, or rather, driving out that which was previously in the statue through the power of those who had cast a spell on it, and commanded each of the men to strike vigorously and with all force. And two of them severed two of the statue's heads; the third, however, only caused it to incline, but did not cut it off completely from its dwelling place. Now, the fortunes of the leaders concurred with these things. For strife broke out amongst them and civil war; and two of them were killed by the other, as with the cutting off of the heads, and only this third one found safety, though not in sound wise. Thus this nation, reduced to nothingness, rushed back to its country in flight and calamity.

8. Such, then, was his sorcery. And this same sorcerer had a brother by the flesh named Arsaber who had been honoured by Theophilus with the rank of patrikios. This Arsaber had an estate on the left side when sailing out from

- Εὐξείνου ἐν τῇ μονῇ τοῦ ἁγίου Φωκᾶ προσῆν, οἰκοδομὰς μεγίστας ἔχον
 5 καὶ πολυτελεῖς στοάς τε καὶ βαλανεῖον καὶ πρὸς τούτοις δεξαμενάς. ἐκέισε
 δὴ ὁ πατριάρχης συχνὰς ποιῶν τὰς καταγωγὰς λέγεται τι ὑπόγειον κα-
 τασκεύασαι ἐνδιαίτημα τῷ Τροφωνίου παρόμοιον, ὅπισθεν δὲ τῆς ἀνοι-
 γομένης θύρας κατὰ τὸ πρόχειρον πυλίδα εἶναι τινα | διὰ βαθμίδων οὐκ B 157
 10 πονηρὸν ἐργαστήριον. ἐκέισε δὴ τούτῳ τινὲς νῦν μὲν ἐταμιεύοντο θα-
 λαμηπολούμεναι, μονάζουσαι τε καὶ ἄλλως τὸ κάλλος γυναικες μὴ
 διαφθεῖρουσαι, αἷς συνεφθείρετο· νῦν δὲ μαντεῖαι δι' ἡπατοσκοπίας καὶ λε-
 κανομαντείας καὶ γοητείας καὶ νεκυομαντείας ἐνηργοῦντο, ταῦταις f.53v
 15 προσχωρῶμενον κοινωνοῖς τε καὶ βοηθοῖς. ὅθεν πολλάκις | καὶ τινα προλέ-
 γειν τούτῳ συνέβαινε τῇ τῶν δαιμόνων συνεργίᾳ ἀληθῇ, οὐ τῷ Θεοφίλῳ
 μόνῳ ἄλλα καὶ ἑτέροις τοῖς τούτου ὁμόφροσιν. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν τούτου τὸ
 μιᾶρὸν ἐνδιαίτημα ὅπερ ποτε πρὸς Βασίλειον τὸν τηνικαῦτα παρακοιμώ-
 μενον ἀπεμποληθὲν παρὰ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ εἰς ἱερὸν μετηνέχθη φρον-
 τιστήριον, οὐκ ἐκεῖνο μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ, καθὼς αὐτῷ διαφέροντα
 20 ἦν· καὶ ἐκ βάθρων ἢ τοῦ ἁγίου μεγαλομάρτυρος ἀνιδρύθη μονή.
 9. Τότε δὲ οὗτος καὶ πᾶσα ἡ αὐτοῦ, ὡς εἴρηται, συμμορία τῇ καθαι-
 ρέσει ὑποβληθέντες οὐχ ἡσυχῇ παραπέμπειν τὸν ἑαυτῶν βίον ἐδοκίμα-
 ζον, ἀλλ' ἔτι καὶ κατὰ τῶν ἁγίων εἰκόνων ἐνεανιεύοντο. μετὰ γοῦν τὴν
 5 καθαίρεσιν ὑπερόριος ἐν τινι μονῇ γεγωνός, εἰκόνας θείας κατὰ τὸν ὄροφον
 ἱστορημένης καὶ ἀτενῶς οἶον ἀτενιζούσης αὐτῷ, μὴ φέρων οὗτος ὄραν
 τὴν ἐκείνης πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐπικατιοῦσαν θέαν, καθαιρεῖσθαι ταύτην διὰ τινος
 οἰκέτου προστάττει καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς κατορύττεσθαι, τοῦτο μόνον
 10 ἐπιλέγων, ὡς “τὴν αὐτῆς οὐ δύναμαι μορφὴν ἐνορᾶν”. ἤκουστο γοῦν | B 158
 ταῦτα τῇ δεσποίνῃ, καὶ τῇ προσηκούσῃ μάλιστα καὶ παιδείᾳ διὰ
 σκυτάλης καθυποβέβλητο.
 10. Ἀλλ' οὐδ' οὕτως ἦν ἀγαπητὸν αὐτῷ τῆς ἡσυχίας ἐρᾶν, μῶμον δέ
 τινα καὶ ὡς ἐπειρῶντο τῷ ἐν ἁγίοις Μεθοδίῳ προσάπτειν· καὶ μῶμος εἰς

||7 εἰς Τροφωνίου μεμάντευται Suda EI no. 323, T no. 1065, Photius, Lexicon E no. 334, cf. Plutarchus Paroimiai cent. I, sect. 51 Cap. 9: GeorgCont (Istrin) 3.13–18; Gen 58.27–59.39 | PsSym 647.10–15, 652.1–10; Scyl 84.84–92, 86.48–49 Cap. 10: GeorgCont (Istrin) 3.23–4.7; Gen 59.40–60.83 | PsSym 652.10–653.2; Scyl 86.49–88.14

8.5 βαλανεῖα Scyl 86.38 6 τὰς om. edd 7 τῷ Boor e Scyl 86.40 : τῶν V 8 διαβαθμίδων V 9 τὸ om. edd 10 ἐργαστήριον V 12 γυναικες διαφθερούσαι conl. Boor in app., cf. Scyl 86.43 γυναικες τὸ κάλλος διαπρεπεῖς 12 ἡπατοσκοπίας V 15 συνεργείᾳ edd 20 post μεγαλομάρτυρος fortasse <Φωκᾶ> addendum, cf. Scyl 86.47–48 εἰς μονὴν κατεσκευάσθη ἐπ' ὀνόματι Φωκᾶ τοῦ μεγαλομάρτυρος 9.4 ὑπερορίας edd 4 θείας : μιᾶς edd 6 θέαν B edd Boor PsSym 652.6 : θεσάν V 8 ταύτης edd 10.2 μῶμον edd Boor

the Euxine, in the monastery of the holy Phokas, which comprised very large buildings and lavish porticoes and a bath, as well as cisterns. Making frequent sojourns there, it is said that the patriarch fitted out for himself an underground dwelling place, similar to that of Trophonius; and behind the door that opened to the outside, there was a postern which led thither those who desired by means of not a few stairs. That was his evil laboratory; and sometimes certain chamber-maids were kept there by him, monastics and women who did not otherwise fake beauty, with whom he would corrupt himself; and at other times divinations were practised through inspection of the liver and dish-divining and sorcery and necromancy, and he used these women as partners and assistants. Whereby it often happened that certain true things were foretold by him through the co-operation of the demons, not only to Theophilus but to others of like mind. But this foul dwelling-place of his was sometime later sold by his brother to the then parakoimomenos Basil and was converted into a holy monastery – and not only that place, but everything else that belonged to him; and the monastery of the holy Great Martyr was erected from the foundations.

9. When however, as has been said, he and all of his band had had their orders annulled, they did not think fit to pass their life in quiet, but still behaved with insolence against the holy images. For after his exclusion from orders, being banished to a monastery, there was a divine image depicted on the ceiling which, as it were, stared upon him intently; and not bearing to behold its gaze descending upon him, he ordered that it should be destroyed by one of the servants and its eyes gouged out, remarking only that ‘I cannot bear to look upon its form’. Word of this reached the empress, and he was subjected to an appropriate beating and chastisement with the rod.

10. However, not even thus was he willing to keep quiet; but in such wise did they try to bring reproach upon Methodios of saintly memory. The re-

- γυναικὸς φθορὰν παῖδα κεκτημένης μονογενῆ – Μητροφάνης οὗτος ἦν, ὁ μετ’ οὐ πολὺ τῆς Σμύρνης καθηγησάμενος –, ἦν καὶ χρυσίῳ ἱκανῶν
- 5 ἔξωνησάμενοι καὶ ἄλλα καθυποσχόμενοι, εἰ μόνον τούτοις συμφήσειεν, πολλὰ κατελέγοντο πρὸς τὴν δέσποιναν καὶ τοὺς ἐπιτροπεύοντας τοῦ παιδὸς αὐτῆς. βῆμα γοῦν εὐθέως καὶ κριτήριον φρίκης γέμον ἐκ πολιτικῶν ἀνδρῶν συγκροτούμενον καὶ ἐκκλησιαστικῶν. οὐ τῶν εὐσεβῶν τις ἀπῆν, οὐ τῶν ἀσεβῶν, οὐ τῶν μονήρη βίον ἐπειλημμένων, οὐκ ἄλλος τις τῶν
- 10 ἀκούειν ἢ δυναμένων λαλεῖν· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ ἢ πρὸς τὸ ξένον τῆς λοιδορίας κατηφιῶντας οἷον ἐνήγεν αἰδῶς, τοὺς δ’ ἢ τοῦ κροτεῖν καὶ χαίρειν ὑπ’ ἀκρασίας ἡδονῇ. ἦγοντο γοῦν οἱ κατηγοροῦντες εἰς μέσον, καὶ τῶν λεγομένων ἢ ἄνθρωπος ἔλεγχος. ὁ δὲ ἅμα τῇ παραστάσει τῆς γυναικὸς, οὐδὲν ὑποστειλάμενος οὐδαμῶς, “ὅπως τε ἔχεις κυρία” ταύτην ἐπηρώτα εἰς
- 15 ἐπήκοον – καὶ γὰρ | ἦν αὐτῷ γνωρίμος ἐκ πολλοῦ δι’ ἀρετὴν –, καὶ ὅπως ὁ δεῖνα καὶ ὁ δεῖνα, περὶ τοῦ ταύτης ἀνδρὸς καὶ τῶν προσηκόντων αὐτῇ· οὕτως τούτῳ ἐπήνθει τὸ ἄπλαστον. οἱ δὲ μᾶλλον ἐκβοήσαντες ἐγαυρίων ὑφ’ ἡδονῆς, τὰ τῆς κατηγορίας ἐπαύξοντες καὶ σαφῇ τὸν ἔλεγχον δόντες λοιπόν. ὥς δ’ οὗτος μόλις τῆς κατηγορίας ἐπήσθετο, ζήλω πυρωθεὶς, ὥς
- 20 ἂν μὴ δι’ αὐτοῦ τὰ τῆς ἐκκλησίας κινδυνέοι καὶ τοῦ Χριστοῦ ἄλλον μὲν εἶναι καιρὸν αἰδοῦς ἄλλον δὲ ὑποστολῆς καὶ σεμνότητος, μικρὸν ἐκ τοῦ θρόνου μετεωρίσας αὐτὸν καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τὸν κόλπον συναγαγὼν γυμνὴν ἐδείκνυεν τὴν αἰδῶ, τεθαυματουργημένην ἔχων καὶ οὐ κατ’ ἄνθρωπον, καὶ ἅμα διηγείτο τὴν θαυματουργίαν, ὥς πρὸ πολλοῦ κατὰ
- 25 τὴν πρεσβυτέραν Ῥώμην γενόμενος, σφριγώντων ἔτι καὶ τῶν παθῶν ἐνακμαζόντων, ἔρως τις αὐτὸν ἐξέκαιεν θερμότερον ἢ κατὰ πάθους ὁρμήν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἐκινδύνευεν καὶ περιγενέσθαι τούτου οὐκ ἦν οἷός τε, τὸν κορυφαῖον Πέτρον τῷ χεῖρει πρὸς τὸν ναὸν ἐκπετάσας ἐξελιπάρει τυχεῖν τινος ἐπικουρίας καὶ ἀρωγῆς. καὶ δὴ τῷ κόπῳ τῆς εὐχῆς ὁπὲρ πρὸς ὕπνον
- 30 κλιθεὶς, φανῆναί οἱ τὸν ἀπόστολον ἐκείνου τοῦ μέρους ἀπτόμενον καὶ τὰς ὁρμὰς σβεννύοντα τῶν παθῶν, τοῦτο μόνον προσεπιλέγοντα τὸ “ἀπολέλυσαι δὴ τῆς τῶν παθῶν ἐπικρατείας, Μεθόδιε”. τούτοις ἐκείνος τὸν μακρὸν ἐκείνον πέπεικε σύλλογον, αἰσχύνης πλήσας τοὺς τῆς ἀληθείας

10.3–4 : a. 857 Metrophanes ut Syracusae episcopus iam constat

|| 7 κριτήριον φρίκης γέμον apud Anonymus Professor 30, ln. 44 et Theodoretus Interpr. in xiv epist. Pauli, vol. 82, p. 705, ln. 19

4 ἦν V 5 ἄλλα: ἅμα edd 8 τίς V 9 ἄλλος τις V 10 λαλεῖν δυναμένων edd 11 τοῦ edd Boor : τὸ V 17 ἐκβοήσαντες edd : ἐμβοήσαντες V 20 καὶ exrüngendum conl. Boor in app. 21 εἶναι καιρὸν αἰδοῦς V : εἰδῶς εἶναι καιρὸν αἰδοῦς conl. Comb : εἶναι καιρὸν εἰδῶς αἰδοῦς conl. Boor in app. 23 γυμνὸν Comb 24 προπολλοῦ V 26 ἐνακμαζόντων τῶν παθῶν edd 26 ἢ καὶ edd (καὶ exrüngendum conl. Boor in app.) 28 τῷ V 28 τινὸς V 31 ὁρμᾶς V

proach was the seduction of a woman who had an only son – this was Metrophanes, who not long afterwards became bishop of Smyrna. Bribing this woman with ample gold and promising yet other things, if only she would agree with them, they recounted many things at length to the empress and her son's guardians. Forthwith a court and tribunal, full of terror, was assembled with men of state and church. No one from amongst the pious was absent, nor from amongst the impious, nor those who had embraced the monastic life, nor anyone else who could hear or speak. For shame on account of the strangeness of the abuse induced some to come, as it were, with downcast mien, whereas for others, it was the pleasure of applauding and revelling in intemperence. The accusers brought their case, and the woman was proof of their statements. But Methodios, undaunted in any wise whatsoever in the woman's presence, asked her, in the hearing of all, 'How are you, Madame?' – for he was long acquainted with her in all honour – and 'How is so-and-so and so-and-so?', with regard to her husband and those who were related to her. Thus did ingenuousness blossom upon him. Now the others, crying out, exulted with pleasure, adding to the accusations and deriving clear proof for the rest. But as soon as Methodios perceived the accusation, he was fired with zeal, lest through him the affairs of the Church and Christ should risk becoming sometimes occasion for shame, sometimes for reserve and solemnity; and rising a bit from his throne he drew up the folds of his garment and laid bare his privy parts. These latter had been miraculously transformed and were not like those of a human being, and at the same time he related the miracle: how when he was in the old Rome long before this, when the passions still swelled and raged, a desire burned within him more intensely than even the urge of passion. Because, then, he was at risk and was unable to escape this, he implored the supreme leader Peter, stretching out his hands toward the church, that he might receive some aid and succour. And when at length wearied by prayer he lay down to sleep, the apostle, appearing to him, touched that part and quenched the urges of the passions, adding only this: 'You are delivered from the power of the passions, Methodios.' With these words he convinced that broad assembly, filling with shame the enemies of truth. Now the magis-

- 35 ἐχθρούς. οὐ μὴν ὁ μάγιστρος Μανουήλ τούτοις ἡξίου λύεσθαι τὰς κατη-
γορίας, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῇ γυναικὶ ἡπείλει ἢ μὴν ἀπαγαγεῖν τῆς ζωῆς, εἰ μὴ τὴν
πᾶσαν διδάξῃ ἀλήθειαν. καὶ ἡ γ' εὐθέως ἔκπυστον καὶ σαφῇ τὴν πᾶσαν
δραματοουργίαν ποιεῖ, τόσου καὶ τόσου λέγουσα χρυσοῦ ἐξωνηθῆναι, καὶ
“ἔτι ἓν τινὶ μου τῶν κιβωτίων, οὕτως ὡς ἐδόθη, σεσημασμένον ἐστὶ καὶ
πεφύλακται σφραγίδι αὐτῶν”. αὐθωρὸν οὖν ἀποστείλαντες ἐκείνῳ | τε, ὡς B 160
- 40 ἔφησεν ἡ γυνή, εὗρον τὸ χρυσοῖον κατὰ τὴν κιβωτὸν καὶ ἡγάγον. καὶ οὗ-
τοι τῇ τοῦ πατριάρχου συμπαθεία καὶ παρακλήσει πρὸς τοὺς κρα-
τοῦντας οὐ ποινῶν καὶ βασάνων, ὧν ἦσαν ἄξιοι, ἀλλὰ συγγνώμης
ἡξίωσαν, τοῦτο μόνον εἰς ἔκτισιν λαβόντες καὶ τιμωρίαν, τὸ ἀνὰ | πᾶν ἔτος f.54v
- 45 σεβασμίου σηκοῦ τῆς θεομήτορος πρὸς τὸν θεῖον καὶ περιώνυμον τῆς
Σοφίας ἀφικνεῖσθαι νεῶν καὶ τὸ οἰκεῖον ἐνηχεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς ὥσιν ἀνάθεμα
διὰ τὴν πρὸς τὰς θείας εἰκόνας ἀπέχθειαν· ὁ καὶ τηρούμενον ἐφάνη ἐπὶ
πολὺ καὶ τῆς αὐτῶν μέχρις ἐταμειύθη ζωῆς. καὶ ἡ μὲν ἐφ' ἱκανὸν αὐξηθεῖσα
τοιαύτη αἵρεσις τοιοῦτον δὴ ἔσχε καὶ τὸ πέρας ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ· ἀνέλαμψαν δὲ
- 50 αἱ θεαὶ τῶν ἁγίων εἰκόνων μορφαί, οὐ θεϊκῶς ἡμῖν τυπούμεναί τε καὶ λα-
τρεύμενα κατὰ τὰς ἀχαλίνους γλώσσας αὐτῶν, σχετικῶς δὲ καὶ σε-
βασμίως τὴν δι' αὐτῶν πρὸς τὰ πρωτότυπα ἡμῶν τιμὴν πῶς διαπορ-
θμεύουσαι.

11. Ταύτην ἄγουσα τὴν ἑορτὴν ἡ Θεοδώρα δι' ἡδονῆς εἰστία ποτὲ ἐν
ταυτῷ τὸ τῆς ἐκκλησίας πλήρωμα πᾶν κατὰ τὰ ἐν τοῖς Καριανοῦ
ἀνάκτορα, ἃ, ὡς εἴρηται πρότερον ἡμῖν, τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔνεκεν θυγατέρων ὁ
Θεόφιλος ἀνεδείματο. οὐκ ἦν γοῦν ὅστις μὴ παρῇ ἐκεῖ τῶν ἱερέων καὶ
- 5 ὁμολογητῶν. τούτοις ἐναρίθμιοι Θεοφάνης τε ὁ τῆς Σμύρνης καὶ ὁ αὐτοῦ
Θεόδωρος ἀδελφός. ὡς οὖν τὰ τῆς εὐωχίας παρήκμασεν καὶ εἰς βρῶσιν τὰ
τραγήματα μετὰ τῶν πλακούντων παρέκειντο, συνεχῶς ἀτενιζούσης τῆς
βασίλιδος καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ μετώπῳ γράμματα τῶν πατέρων καθορώσης καὶ B 161
- 10 καὶ ταύτην ἐνιδεῖν ἀτενιζούσης αὐτοῖς. φησάντων γοῦν ὡς “τίς ἄρα,
δέσποινα, ἡ αἰτία τῆς πρὸς ἡμᾶς σου ὀράσεως ἀτενοῦς;” τὴν ἐκ τῶν
γραμματῶν ἔφη θαυμάζειν καρτερίαν ὑμῶν καὶ τὴν τοῦ ταῦτα δράσαντος

Cap. 11: | PsSym 653.3–654.5; Scyl 88.14–89.36

35 ἡ V 36 διδάξει V 39 σφραγίδι edd Boor : ἐσφραγίδι V : ἐν σφραγίδι conl. Boor in app. 44 λαμπάδων edd Boor, sed cf. Scyl 88.8 μετὰ λαμπάδων : λαμπάδων V 45 καὶ περιώνυμον edd Boor, cf. infra IV.45.2–3 et VBas 79.1: τοῦ περιωνύμου V 46 αὐτοῖς : αὐτῶν τοῖς conl. Boor in app. 48 ἐπιπολὺ V 49 εἶχε edd 51 τυπούμενά τε – γλώσσας αὐτῶν : λατρεθόμεναί τε καὶ τυπούμενα edd 52 ἡμῖν edd 11.2 ταυτῷ V 3 ἔνεκε V Boor : ἔνεκεν edd 4 ἐνεδείματο edd 4 γοῦν V 4 μὴ : οὐ edd, sed cf. PsSym 653.8 οὐκ ἦν ὅστις (ὅς τε f 246v) μὴ 9 πῶς V 9 καὶ om. edd 9 ἐξομολόγου V 10 ταύτη – ἀτενιζούση conl. Boor in app., cf. PsSym 653.13 ταύτην – ἀτενιζουσιν

tros Manuel demanded that these same should not be excused for their accusations, and he threatened for a surety to deprive the woman of her life unless she divulged the whole truth. Forthwith she made plain and clear the whole dramatisation, saying that she had been bribed with such and such a sum of gold, and 'It is still marked and preserved with their seal in one of my coffers, just as it was given.' Straightway they sent off and found the gold in the coffer, as the woman had said, and they had it brought thither. Now, through the sympathy and exhortation of the patriarch to the rulers, these men were not deemed worthy of punishment and tortures, which they merited, but of forgiveness, receiving only the following as retribution and penalty: to go every year on the feast of Orthodoxy with lamps from the holy sanctuary of the Mother of God in Blachernae to the divine and renowned church of Wisdom and to hear resounding their own ears the anathema against them on account of their enmity for the divine images. And this was manifestly observed for a long time, so long as they were given to live. Thus did this heresy which had attained considerable increase come at last to such an end through God: the divine forms of the holy images shone forth, not modelled or worshipped by us as gods in accordance with those men's unbridled tongues, but somehow conveying, in relative and reverential wise, our reverence through them unto the prototypes.

11. Now once, whilst celebrating this feast with pleasure, Theodora gave a banquet at the same time for the collective body of the Church in the palace of the quarter of Karianos, which, as was said by us earlier, Theophilus had rebuilt for his daughters. No one of the priests or confessors was absent. Amongst their number was also Theophanes of Smyrna and his brother Theodore. After the banqueting had run its course and it was time to partake of sweetmeats and cakes, because the empress was staring constantly, observing and bewailing the lettering on the fathers' foreheads, it happened that somehow, as if by argeement, their eyes met and they looked at her as she stared at them. When they asked 'What, O empress, is the reason for your constant gazing at us?', she said she was amazed 'by your endurance of the let-

- ἀπήνειαν εἰς ὑμᾶς. καὶ ὁ μακαρίτης Θεοφάνης μηδὲν εὐλαβηθεὶς τε καὶ τῶν προησφαλισμένων διανοηθεὶς “ὑπὲρ ταύτης”, ἔφησε, “τῆς γραφῆς εὖ μάλα
 15 τρανῶς ἐν τῷ τοῦ θεοῦ ἀδεκάστῳ δικαστηρίῳ σφοδρότερον διαδικάσομαι
 σὺν τῷ ἀνδρί σου καὶ βασιλεῖ”. τούτῳ περίλυπος γενομένη, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ
 σύνδακρυς “καὶ ταῦτα”, ἔφησεν ἡ βασιλεια, “ἡ ὑπόσχεσις καὶ αἱ δι’ ἐγ-
 γράφων ὁμολογίαι ὑμῶν, ὡς μὴ μόνον συγκεχωρηκέναι ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς
 ἀγῶ|νας ἐνάγειν τε καὶ καλεῖν;” “οὐ”, φησιν ὁ πατριάρχης αὐθωρὸν f. 55
 20 ἀναστὰς καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ τῶν ἱερέων, “βασιλεια, οὐ· ἀλλ’ ἔξει βεβαίως τὰ
 ἡμέτερα, τῆς ὀλιγωρίας τούτων λογιζομένης <εἰς> οὐδέν”. οὕτω μὲν οὖν
 ἐσιγάσθη ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἔθῃ ἀκύμαντα.

12. Καὶ ἑτέρα δέ τις αἴρεσις ἡ οὕτω τῶν Ζηλίκων λεγομένη ἀναφα-
 νεῖσα, σὺν τῷ ἑαυτῆς ἀρχηγῷ Ζήλικι μὲν ὀνομαζομένῳ, φέροντι δὲ τὴν
 τῶν ἀσηκρητῶν ἐν πρώτοις τιμὴν, ἑθεραπεύθη τε καὶ πρὸς θεοσέβειαν
 μετηνέχθη ἐν προόδῳ βασιλικῇ, τῆς τοῦ μύρου μόνου | μετὰ καινῶν B 162
 5 ἐμφωτίων τε καὶ ἐσθημάτων καταξιωθέντων κρίσεως τῶν ἀντιπιοιου-
 μένων αὐτῆς, καὶ τελειωθέντων λαμπρῶς.

13. Ὁ γε μὴν ἄρχων Βουλγαρίας – Βῶγαρις οὗτος ἦν – θρασύτερον
 ἐξεφέρετο γυναικὰ τῆς βασιλείας κρατεῖν διακηκῶς· ὅθεν καὶ τινὰς
 ἀγγέλους ἀπέστελλεν πρὸς αὐτήν, τὰς συνθήκας λέγων καταλύειν καὶ
 5 κατὰ τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐκστρατεύειν γῆς. ἀλλ’ αὕτη μηδὲν θῆλυ ἐν-
 νοοῦσα καὶ ἄνδρον “καὶ ἐμέ”, αὐτῷ κατεμήνηεν, “κατὰ σοῦ εὐρήσεις
 ἀντιστρατεύουσιν. καὶ ἐλπίζω μὲν κυριεῦσαί σου· εἰ δ’ – ὁ μὴ γένηται –
 ἐκνικήσεις με, καὶ οὕτω σου περιέσομαι, τὴν νίκην ἀρίδην ἔχουσα· γυ-
 10 ναῖκα γάρ, ἀλλ’ οὐκ ἄνδρα ἔξεις τὸν ἡττηθέντα σοί”. διὰ τοῦτο μὲν οὖν καὶ
 αὐτῆς ἀνένεου σπονδὰς.

13.9–10 : renovatio foederis cum Bulgaris ca. a. 852 in initio regni chagani Bogoris

Cap. 12: Gen 60.84–88 | PsSym 654.6–11; Scyl 89.37–41 Cap. 13: Gen 61.89–4
 | PsSym 664.5–13; Scyl 90.42–49

14 εὐμάλα V 15 σφοδρότερον om. edd 17 συνδάκρυς V 17 ταῦτα : αὕτη Scyl 89.29,
 cf. PsSym 653.21 αὕται αἱ... ὑποσχέσεις 18 ἐγγράφων V 19 τε om. edd 20 βᾶσιλεια
 V 21 <εἰς> add. Boor e PsSym 654.3 22 ἔθῃ V edd Boor : ἐτηρήθη con. Boor in app. :
 ἐσώθη con. Bekk in app. 22 post ἀκύμαντα add. διέμεινεν Boor e PsSym 654.5 12.1 ἡ om.
 edd 2 Ζήλικι Boor e Gen 60.85 et PsSym 654.7 Ζηλίκων : Ζήλι V : Ζήλι edd 2 μὲν om.
 edd 3 ἀσηκρητῶν edd 5 καινῶν ἐμφωτίων τε καὶ ἐσθημάτων V PsSym 654.10 : καινῶν
 τε καὶ ἐμφωτίων ἐσθημάτων con. Boor in app., cf. Gen 60. 87–88 ἐμφωτίους ἐσθῆσιν
 5 καταξιωθέντων edd Boor : καταξιωθέντες V 13.3 ἀπέσταλκεν edd 4 αὕτη Boor : αὕτη
 V : αὐτῇ edd 5 καὶ : ἡ edd 5 κατὰ σοῦ V : κατ’ αὐτοῦ B edd 6 ἐλπίζω μὲν Bekk Boor :
 ἐλπίζωμεν V : ἐλπίζομεν B Comb 6 κυριεῦσαι σου V 6 εἰ δ’ ὁ μὴ : εἰ δὲ μὴ B edd 6 post
 γένηται add. καὶ edd (ὁ μὴ γένοιτο dubitanter con. Kamb) 8 τὸν om. edd 8 διατοῦτο
 V 9 νεανιεύεσθαι edd

tering and the cruelty of him who did this to you.' And the blessed Theophanes, showing no reverence nor bearing in mind the covenants previously made, said 'On account of this inscription shall I dispute all the more clearly with your husband and emperor, very harshly, before the impartial court of God.' At this the empress grew sad, and also tearful, and she said, 'So, is this your promise and agreement in writing: not only not to have forgiven, but also to bring suit and issue summons?' 'No empress,' said the patriarch, getting up forthwith with the rest of the priests, 'No. Our words shall stand fast, whereas the contemptuousness of these men shall be considered as naught.' Thus was nothing more heard of these things and the customs of the Church were left undisturbed.

12. And yet another heretical sect which had sprung up, called that of the Zelikoi, together with its chief, named Zelix, who held office amongst the foremost of the a secretis, was healed and brought over to godliness in an imperial procession, its adherents receiving only unction of the myrrhon, with new baptismal tunics and garments, and being thus splendidly brought to perfection in the faith.

13. Now the ruler of Bulgaria – this was Bogoris – comported himself with great insolence when he heard that a woman reigned over the empire. He therefore sent certain messengers to her, saying that he was breaking his treaties and leading an army against the land of the Romans. But the empress, thinking no feminine or unmanly thoughts, informed him, 'You shall find me, too, leading an army, against you. I hope to gain mastery over you; but if – Heaven forbid! – you should vanquish me, even so shall I surpass you, receiving conspicuous victory, for you shall have defeated a woman and not a man.' Bogoris therefore remained quiet, daring no insolent action, and renewed once again the treaties of friendship.

14. Καί δὴ ζήτησιν τινα καὶ πολλὴν ἔρευναν περὶ τινος μοναχοῦ οὕτω καλουμένου Θεοδώρου, τὸ ἐπὶ κλην Κουφαρᾶ, εἴτε ἐκ τινων ὀνειράτων καὶ ὄψεως εἴτε καὶ ἄλλως πως, πρὸ πολλοῦ αἰχμαλωτισθέντος ἢ Θεοδώρα πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα Βουλγαρίας ἐποίει, καὶ αὐτὸν ἡξίου διὰ γραμμάτων
- 5 ἄνερυνῆσαι καὶ τιμῆς ὅσης καὶ βούλοιτο ἀπολυτρώσασθαι τοῦτον αὐτῇ. ἡξίου δὲ καὶ οὗτος, ἀφορμὴν ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν περὶ οἰκείας αὐτοῦ πρεσβεύειν ἀδελφῆς παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων μὲν αἰχμαλωτισθείσης ποτὲ κατεχομένης δὲ νῦν ἐν τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως αὐλῇ. αὕτη δὲ οὖν πρὸς τὴν πίστιν καλῶς μετενεχθεῖσα καὶ γράμματα κατὰ τὸν τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας παι- B 163
- 10 δευθεῖσα καιρόν, καὶ ἄλλως τὴν τῶν Χριστιανῶν τάξιν τε καὶ περὶ τὸ θεῖον αἰδῶ τε καὶ δόξαν, ὡς ἔστιν, θαυμάζουσα διαφερόντως, ἐπεὶ τῆς f. 55v
- ἐπανάδου τῆς πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν τετύχηκεν, οὐ διέλιπεν ἐκθειάζουσά τε καὶ παρακαλοῦσα καὶ σπέρματα καταβάλλουσα τῆς πίστεως πρὸς αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ – ἦν γὰρ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ εἰρημένου Κουφαρᾶ μικρά τινα παι-
- 15 δευθεῖς καὶ τῶν μυστηρίων κατηχηθεῖς – τοῦτον μὲν ἀποστείλας τὴν οἰκείαν ἐλάβμβανε μισθὸν ἀδελφῆν· πλὴν ἔμενεν ὅπερ ἦν, ἀπιστία κα-τισχημένος καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ θρησκείαν τιμῶν. ἀλλὰ τις πληγὴ ἐπιτεσοῦσα θεήλατος – λιμὸς δὲ ἦν, οὕτω μᾶλλον τῶν παχυτέρων καὶ γαιωδεστέρων, ὡς ἔοικεν, μεταπαιδευομένων καὶ τὰ κακὰ μεταμανθανόντων – τὴν αὐτοῦ
- 20 ἐπολιόρκει καὶ κατέτρυχεν γῆν. καὶ ὃς θεὸν ἐκείνον ἠνάγκαζεν ἐπικαλεῖσθαι πρὸς ἄμυναν τῶν δεινῶν, τὸν ὑπὸ τοῦ Θεοδώρου μὲν πολλάκις καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀδελφῆς θαυμαζόμενόν τε καὶ σεβόμενον, ὡς εἰκός. τυχόντες γοῦν τῆς ἀπαλλαγῆς τῶν δεινῶν, οὕτω δὲ πρὸς θεοσέβειαν μετατίθεται καὶ τῆς τοῦ λουτροῦ παλιγγενεσίας καταξιοῦται· καὶ Μιχαὴλ κατονο-
- 25 μάζεται κατὰ τὸ ὄνομα τοῦ βασιλέως παρὰ τοῦ πρὸς ἐκείνον ἀποσταλέντος ἀρχιερέως ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν πόλεων.
15. Καί τι δὲ τοιοῦτον ἐπισυμβῆναι φασίν, ὡς ἔρωτα δεινὸν περὶ τὴν κυνηγεσίαν τὸν Βώγωριν ἄρχοντα κεκτημένον ταῦτα καὶ κατὰ τινα οἶκον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ, ἐν ᾧ συνεχῶς ἀφικνεῖτο, θελήσαι ἐξιστορῆσαι, νύκτωρ ὡς ἂν ἔχοι καὶ μεθ' | ἡμέραν τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐντροφήματα. ὡς γοῦν B 164

14.24–26 : ca. a. 864–866 Bogoris chaganus Bulgarorum in baptisate nomen Michael assump-
sit, cf. infra IV.15 15.18 : de baptisate Bogoris, cf. supra IV.14

Cap. 14: GeorgCont (Istrin) 8.19–27; Gen 69.42–52; Log A 243.215–223 | PsSym
664.13–665.2, 665.11–18; Scyl 90.50–91.70 Cap. 15: | PsSym 665.18–666.7; Scyl 91.70–92.3

14.1 ζήτησιν τινὰ V 2 τοῦ ἐπὶ κλην edd 3 ὄψεως : fortasse legendum ὄψεων 3 καὶ
om. edd 3 πῶς V 3 προπολλοῦ V 6 τῆς οἰκείας Boor e Scyl 90.53 et PsSym 664.15
11 ἔστιν : εἰκός conl. Bekk in app. 13 παρὰ καλοῦσα V 14 καὶ om. edd 17 περιπε-
σοῦσα edd 19 μεταπεδευομένων V 22 τυχόντες : τυχὼν τε Boor, sed cf. Scyl 91.66
τυχόντες 23 οὖν edd 24 παλιν|γενεσίας V 15.1 φά|σι V 2 κατὰ τινα V

14. And either because of certain dreams and visions, or for some other reason, Theodora had the ruler of Bulgaria make an enquiry and earnest search for a monk called Theodore, by surname Koupharas, who had been taken captive long before, and solicited him in a letter to search him out and to release him to her for whatever price he might want. And Bogoris also solicited, taking this as an occasion to negotiate on behalf of a sister of his who had once been taken captive by the Romans and was now being held at the court of the emperor. Now, this sister had been happily brought over to the faith and had learned to read during the time of her captivity and, besides this, she particularly admired, as it happens, the Christians' order as well as their awe and honour for the Godhead; and when she obtained her return to her brother, she did not cease inspiring and pleading and sowing the seeds of faith in him. As for Bogoris, who had been taught somewhat and instructed in the Mysteries by the aforesaid Koupharas, he sent him off and received his sister as reward; however, he remained as he was, possessed by disbelief and holding in honour his own religion. But a plague came down, sent by God – famine it was, especially amongst the coarser and more rustic men who are thus, as is fitting, re-educated and unlearn their evil ways – and besieged and exhausted his land. Bogoris then required that prayer for warding off dangers should be made to the God often held in wonder and revered by Theodore and his sister, as was fitting. And when they had obtained deliverance from dangers, he was thus converted to piety and deemed worthy of the font of re-birth; and he was re-named Michael after the name of the emperor by the hierarch sent to him from the Queen of cities.

15. And they also say that such a thing came to pass: that the ruler Bogoris was possessed of a terrible passion for the hunt and desired to have this depicted in one of his houses where he continually went, so that he might have by night and by day such delights for his eyes. When, therefore, such a desire came over him, he summoned a certain monk from amongst us Romans who

- 5 ὁ τοιοῦτος αὐτὸν ἔρωσ ὑπείσῃλθεν, μετακαλεῖται μοναχόν τινα τῶν καθ' ἡμᾶς Ῥωμαίων ζωγράφον· Μεθόδιος ὄνομα τῷ ἀνδρί. τοῦτον οὖν στάντα κατὰ πρόσωπον ἔκ τινος θείας προνοίας οὐ τὰς ἐν πολέμῳ ἀνδροκτασίας ἢ τὰς ζώων καὶ θηρίων ἐπικελευῖσαι γράφειν σφαγὰς, ἀλλ' ἃ βούλοιο, τοῦτο μόνον ἐπειπὼν ὡς εἰς φόβον τοὺς ὀρώντας ἐκ τῆς θεάς ἐνάγεσθαι
- 10 βούλοιο καὶ ἅμα παρακαλεῖσθαι πρὸς ἐκπληξιν ἀπὸ τῆς γραφῆς. μηδὲν γοῦν οὗτος πρὸς φόβον ἕτερον ἐνάγειν ἢ τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ δευτέραν εἰδῶς παρουσίαν, ταύτην ἐκείσε καθυπέγραψεν, καὶ τοὺς δικαίους | ἐντεῦθεν τὰ f. 56 βραβεῖα τῶν πόνων ἀπολαμβάνοντας, ἐκείθεν δὲ τοὺς πεπλημμεληκότας τοὺς τῶν βεβιωμένων δρεπομένους καρπούς καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀπειλημένην
- 15 κόλασιν ἀπελαυνομένους τε καὶ ἀποπεμπομένους σφοδρῶς. ταῦτ' οὖν, ἐπειδὴ πέρας ἔσχεν ἡ γραφή, κατιδὼν, καὶ δι' αὐτῶν τὸν τοῦ θεοῦ φόβον ἐν ἑαυτῷ συλλαβὼν καὶ κατηχηθεὶς τὰ καθ' ἡμᾶς θεῖα μυστήρια, νυκτῶν ἄωρὶ τοῦ θείου μεταλαγχάνει βαπτίσματος. ἐφ' ᾧ καταφανὴς γεγρονῶς τὴν ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ ἔθνους αὐτοῦ καθυφίσταται ἐπανάστασιν, οὐς καὶ μετὰ
- 20 τινων ὀλίγων καταπολεμήσας, τὸν τοῦ θείου τύπον σταυροῦ ἐν κόλποις περιάγων αὐτοῦ, τοὺς καταλοιπούς οὐκέτι κρύφα, πάντας δὲ ἀναφανδὸν ἐποίησε καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐπιθυμοῦντας Χριστιανούς. ἐπεὶ γοῦν μετετέθη πρὸς θεοσέβειαν, γράφει δὴ πρὸς τὴν δέσποιναν περὶ γῆς στενούμενος πλήθει τῷ ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ ἀξιοῖ περὶ ταύτης παρρησιαστικώτερον ὡς ἤδη ἐν ἄλλ' οὐ
- 25 δύο ὄντων αὐτῶν, πίστει τε καὶ φιλίας συνδεθέντων τῇ ἄρραγεί, καὶ ἑαυτὸν ὑποθήσειν καθυπισχνεῖτο καὶ εἰρήνην ἐργάσασθαι αἰδιδόν τε καὶ ἀδιάπτωτον. ἡ δὲ εὐμενῶς τε ἤκουσεν αὐτοῦ, καὶ δέδωκεν ἐρήμην οὖσαν τηνικαῦτα τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς Σιδηράς, ταύτης δὴ τότε ὄριον τυγχανούσης Ῥωμαίων τε καὶ αὐτῶν, ἄχρι τῆς Δεβελτοῦ, ἣτις οὕτω καλεῖται Ζάγωρα
- 30 παρ' αὐτοῖς. οὕτω μὲν οὖν ἅπασα ἡ Βουλγαρία πρὸς εὐσέβειαν μετερρυθμίσθη, θεοῦ πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν μετακαλεσαμένου γινῶσιν αὐτοὺς [καὶ οὕτω] ἐκ μικρῶν σπινθήρων τε καὶ πληγῶν· καὶ οὕτω γῆς τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ὡς ἄλλης τινὸς ἐπαγγελίας ἀξιοθέντες πρὸς κοινωνίαν ἄρρηκτον καθυπέβαλλον ἑαυτοὺς.

5 ἐπείσῃλθεν edd 5 μοναχὸν τινα V 6 Ῥωμαῖον conl. Boor in app. e Scyl 91.74–75 Ῥωμαῖον τὸ γένος, ζωγράφον τὴν τέχνην 10 μὴ δὲν V 11 θεοῦ· Χριστοῦ Scyl 91.79 13 βραβεῖα V 14 ἡπειλημένην edd Boor 15 σφοδρῶς V 16 εἶχεν edd 21 οὐκ ἔτι V 21 πάντας Boor e PsSym 665.22 : πάντα V edd 22 χριανούς V 22 μετετέθει V 23 στενομένῳ conl. Boor in app., cf. Scyl 91.91 στενοχωρουμένων τῶν ὑφ' αὐτὸν (ὑπὸ αὐτὸν AB) et PsSym f 249v διὰ τὸ στενοῦσθαι ἐν τοῖς ἰδίοις τὸ πλήθος (πλήθος om. 666.1–2) ἑαυτοῦ 23 πλήθει ante στενούμενος edd 24 περὶ : παρὰ edd 24 παρρησιαστικώτερον V 27 ἐρημην V 29 Ζάγορα edd : Ζαγοράν Scyl 92.1 : Ζαγόρια PsSym 666.7 30 ἅπασα V 31 μετερρυθμίσθη V 31 ἡκίαν V 31 καὶ οὕτω (οὕτως edd) secl. Boor ut e sequenti-bus hic intrusum 34 καθυπέβαλλον edd Boor

was a painter; and the man's name was Methodios. And as this latter stood before him, by some divine providence, he commanded him to depict not the slaughter of men in battle or killing of animals and wild beasts, but whatever he wanted, adding only that he wanted those who beheld to be frightened at the sight and brought to consternation by the depiction. The monk, then, knowing of nothing else than the Second Coming to excite fear, depicted this there, with the Righteous on one side receiving the rewards of their toils, and on the other side those who had sinned, reaping the fruits of what they had done during their lives and being driven off and dispatched harshly to the threatened punishment. Seeing this, when the depiction was finished, Bogoris was thereby seized within himself by the fear of God and instructed in our divine Mysteries, and at dead of night he partook of divine baptism. But once it became known that he had done this, he was faced with insurrection from amongst all his people. Having defeated these in war with the help of a certain few, bearing the form of the divine cross on his breast he caused the others to become willing Christians, no longer in secret but all openly. When, therefore, he had been converted to godliness, he wrote to the empress in his constraint for land on account of the multitude of his people, and he asked for this with more boldness in as much as they were now one, not two, being bound by faith and indissoluble friendship, and he promised to submit himself and to make eternal and unfailing peace. The empress heard him with favour and granted him the then empty land from the Iron Gate, then the border between him and the Romans, up to Debeltos, which is called by them Zagora. Thus all of Bulgaria was brought over to piety, God having summoned them to knowledge of Himself through both tiny sparks and through plagues; and thus deemed worthy of the land of the Romans, like some other Promised Land, they submitted themselves in fellowship not to be broken.

16. Εἶχε μὲν οὖν οὕτω τὰ κατὰ τὴν δύσιν λαμπρῶς τε καὶ ἑτεθρύλητο πανταχοῦ. ἐφ' οἷς ἀγαλλομένη ἐκείνη, καὶ οἷον τρόπαια ἐπιθεῖναι μείζω δι' ἐφέσεως ἔχουσα, καὶ τοὺς κατὰ τὴν ἀνατολὴν Παυλικιάνους ἐπειράτο ἢ μετὰγειν ὥς βούλοιτο πρὸς εὐσέβειαν ἢ ἐξαίρειν καὶ ἀπ' ἀνθρώπων ποιεῖν· ὁ καὶ πολλῶν κακῶν τὴν ἡμετέραν ἐνέπλησεν. ἡ μὲν γὰρ πέμψασά τινας τῶν ἐπ' ἐξουσίας – ὁ τοῦ Ἀργυροῦ καὶ ὁ τοῦ Δουκὸς καὶ ὁ Σουδάλης οἱ ἀποσταλέντες ἔλεγοντο – τοὺς μὲν ξύλῳ ἀνήρτων, τοὺς δὲ ξίφει παρεδίδουν, τοὺς δὲ τῷ τῆς θαλάσσης | βυθῷ. ὥσει δέκα μυριάδες ὁ οὕτως ἀπολλύμενος ἡριθμεῖτο λαός, καὶ ἡ ὑπαρξίς αὐτῶν τῷ βασιλικῷ ταμείῳ ἤγετο καὶ εἰσεκομίζετο. ὑπῆρχεν οὖν τῷ στρατηγῷ τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν – Θεόδοτος οὗτος ἦν ὁ κατὰ τὸν Με|λισσηνὸν – ἀνὴρ τις εἰς τὴν ὑπηρεσίαν καταριθμούμενος, Καρβέας ὀνόματι, τὴν τοῦ πρωτομανδάτωρος πληρῶν ἀρχήν, τῇ πίστει τῶν εἰρημένων τούτων Παυλικιάνων ἐγκαυχώμενός τε καὶ σεμνυνόμενος. ὥς οὖν τὸν ἑαυτοῦ οὗτος ἀκήκοε πατέρα ἀνηρτῆσθαι τῷ ξύλῳ, πέρα δεινῶν τοῦθ' ἡγησάμενος καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ προοικονομῶν φυγὰς μετὰ καὶ ἐτέρων πέντε χιλιάδων τῆς τοιαύτης κεκοινωνηκότων αἰρέσεως πρὸς τὸν τὴν Μελιτηνὴν τηλικαῦτα κατέχοντα Ἄμερα γίνεται, κάκειθεν πρὸς τὸν ἀμεραμουνῆ παραγίνονται μετὰ πολλῆς ἀποδεχθέντες τιμῆς. καὶ λόγον ἀσφαλείας δόντες τε καὶ λαβόντες ὁμοίως ἐξέρχονται μετ' οὐ πολὺ κατὰ τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων γῆς, καὶ τῶν τροπαίων ἔνεκεν, ἐπεὶ πρὸς πολυπληθίαν ἐνεδίδοσαν, πόλεις τε κτίζειν ἐπιχειροῦσιν αὐτοῖς, τὴν οὕτω καλουμένην Ἀργαοῦν <καὶ τὴν Ἀμαραν>, καὶ αὐθις πολλῶν ἐκείσε ἐπιρρεόντων τῇ αὐτῇ κακίᾳ ἐνισχημένων καὶ ἐτέραν κτίζειν κατάρχουσι, Τεφρικὴν ταύτην κατονομάσαντες· ἅφ' ὧν ὁρμῶντες καὶ πολλοὶ κατ' αὐτὸ γινόμενοι, ὁ τε τῆς Μελιτηνῆς Ἄμερ, ὃν οὕτω πῶς συμφθεύροντες τὰ στοιχεῖα Ἀμβρόν ἐκάλεσαν οἱ πολλοί, καὶ ὁ τῆς Ταρσοῦ Ἀλῆς καὶ αὐτὸς οὗτος Καρβέας ὁ δέιλαιος, οὐκ ἔλγον αὐθαδῶς τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων λυμαινόμενοι

16.16–17 : ca. a. 843–844 Carbeas ad Melitenem fugit

Cap. 16: Petrus Historia §§184–185; Photius Contra Man. §§144–149 | Scyl 92.4–93.44

16.2 οἷς B edd Boor : ἡς V 2 μείζω V 3 δὲ ἐφέσεως con. Boor in app. 3 Παυλικιανούς edd 3 ἢ om. B edd 4 ἐξαίρειν Bekk 5 ἡ V 6 πέμψασα τινὰς V 6 cf. Scyl 92.11 ὁ τοῦ Ἀργυροῦ δὲ ἦν Λέων καὶ ὁ τοῦ Δουκὸς Ἀνδρόνικος καὶ ὁ Σουδάλης 8 παρεδίδων V 9 ταμείῳ, post quod lacunam statuerant edd 11 Με|λισσηνὸν Bekk Boor e Scyl 92.18 : Με- λισσηνὸν V Comb 13 Παυλικιανῶν edd 15 δεινὸν καὶ πέρα δεινῶν con. Boor in app., cf. infra IV.44.29 15 προοικονομῶν B edd 16 τῆς : τοῖς V 16 κεκοινωνηκότων V 17 τὴν Μελιτηνὴν V, sed cf. Scyl 92.23 Μελιτηνῆς : τῆς Μελιτινῆς edd 17 κατάρχοντα edd 18 post μετὰ add. δὲ edd 18 ὑποδεχθέντες dubitanter con. Kamb 19 ἀσφάλειας V 20 τῶν om. edd 20 ἔνεκεν V 21 ἐπεδίδοσαν con. Bekk in app., cf. Scyl 93.27 22 <καὶ τὴν Ἀμαραν> nos e Scyl 93.26 (Ἀμάραν edd e Cedreno) 23 ἐνισχημένους V 24 καὶ om. edd 25 Μελιτινῆς V edd 25 πῶς V 26 Ἀλῆς edd 27 ὁ ante Καρβέας edd

16. Thus affairs in the West proceeded in a splendid way and were the common talk everywhere. The empress rejoiced in this, and as if desiring to set up a greater trophy, she made an attempt also on the Paulicians in the east, either to convert them to piety, as she wished, or else to do away with and wipe them out from mankind; and this brought many evils upon our land. For she sent certain men of rank with authority – those dispatched were called the son of Argyros, the son of Doux and Soudales – and they hung some Paulicians on the furca, others they gave over to the sword and yet others to the depths of the sea. The host thus destroyed numbered some hundred thousand, and their property was given over and paid into the imperial treasury. Now, amongst the servitors of the general of the Anatoliacs – this was Theodotos of the family of Melissenos – there was a certain man by the name of Karbeas who held the office of protomandator and who prided himself and exulted in the faith of these aforesaid Paulicians. When he heard that his own father had been hung on the furca he considered this the most terrible of things and, taking thought for his own life, he fled as a refugee together with another five thousand adherents of this heresy to Amer who then occupied Melitene, and from there they went to the ameramnounes and were received with great honour. And having given and likewise received guarantees, they soon set out against the land of the Romans; and on account of their victories, when their numbers had increased, they endeavoured to found cities for themselves, one called Argoun, <and also Amara>. And again, after many who held fast to the same wickedness had streamed in there, they undertook to found another, calling it Tephrike. Setting out from these cities and assembling together, Amer of Melitene, whom the vulgar, somehow jumbling the letters, called Ambros, and Ales of Tarsus and also the wretched Karbeas, were unrelenting in their willful devastation of the land of the Romans. But Ales, who was dispatched as ruler of some country of the Armenians, ended his life there

- γῆ. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν Ἀλῆς ἐν τινι τῶν Ἀρμενίων χώρᾳ ἄρχειν ἀποσταλὲς ἐκέϊσε
 30 θάττον ἢ βουλῆς εἶχε, τὸν βίον κατέστρεψε σὺν τῷ ἑαυτοῦ ἀκαίρῳ
 στρατῷ· ὁ δὲ Ἄμερ μετὰ τοῦ συνάρχοντος αὐτοῦ – τοῦ Σκληροῦ οὗτος
 ἐλέγετο – εἰς ἐμφύλιον στὰς πόλεμον ἐκ φιλονεικίας ἐφθείρέτο τε καὶ ἐκείνῳ B 167
 ἀλλ' οὐκ ἄλλοις πολεμεῖν ᾤετο δεῖν. εἰς τοσοῦτον δὲ τούτοις ἡ ἔρις
 ἐπηύξητο καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἀντεστρατήγουν, ἄχρισ ἂν εἰς δέκα μόλις ἔληγεν
 35 χιλιάδας ἡ τούτων ἰσχὺς ἐκ πεντήκοντά που καὶ μικρόν τι πρὸς. ἐπεὶ
 γοῦν οὗτος τῶν ἐχθρῶν ὑπερίσχυσεν, ἔγνω αὐθις θρασύτητι κατα-
 στρατηγούμενος κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ὅπλα κινεῖν τῷ Καρβέᾳ ἐνούμενος.
 ἀντεστρατεύετο δὲ αὐτοῖς Πετρωνᾶς, τὴν τοῦ δομestikou τότε ἀρχὴν
 διοικῶν· λόγῳ μὲν γὰρ τῷ Βάρδᾳ ταύτην διέπειν ἐδέδοτο, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ μὴ f.57
 σχολάζειν οὗτος ἠναγκάζετο ὡς ἐπίτροπος, τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἡξίου, στρατη-
 40 γὸν ὄντα κατὰ τὸν Θρακῆσιον, πράγματι ταύτην διέπειν καὶ διοικεῖν.
17. Πλὴν ἀνθορμᾶν κατὰ τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν καὶ ἀντεπεξιέναι καὶ Μι-
 χαήλ ὁ βασιλεὺς – ἥδη γὰρ τὴν παιδικὴν ἡλικίαν παραμείψας πρὸς τὴν
 τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἡπείγετο – ἐβούλετό τε καὶ δι' ἐπιθυμίας εἶχεν αἰεὶ. ἔγνω δέ
 5 πῶς ταῦτα βουλευόμενος ἀπὸ τῶν ἐμφυλίων πρότερον, ὡς οὐκ ὤφειλεν,
 ἐναπάρξασθαι, οὐκ οἶκοθεν οὐδ' ἀφ' ἑαυτοῦ, τῇ δὲ τοῦ ἐπιτροπεύοντος
 Βάρδᾳ γνώμῃ τε καὶ βουλῇ· ὅθεν δὲ καὶ ὅπως, δηλώσει καὶ ταῦτα ἡ
 ἱστορία. κωφὸν γὰρ τῷ ὄντι πῶς καὶ διάκενον τὸ σῶμα τῆς ἱστορίας,
 ὅταν ἐστερημένῳς ἔχη τὰς αἰτίας τῶν πράξεων. ἀλλ' ἔνθα μὲν καὶ ἡμῖν ὑπὸ
 10 τοῦ χρόνου καλῶς οὐ διέγνωσται, συγγνώμην πάντως οἱ φιλομαθεῖς B 168
 ἀπονέμοιεν τοῖς ἀληθεῖς ἀλλ' οὐ πλάσματῶδεις γράφειν ἐθέλουσιν, ὧν
 οὐδὲ τῷ τυχόντι ἀπορία καθέστηκεν, ὅπου δὲ γνώριμος, δηλοῦν ταύτην
 καὶ σαφῇ καθιστᾶν τοῖς ἀναγινώσκουσιν, ὡς οὐκ ἄλλοθεν πάντως ἢ ἐκ
 τούτων χορηγουμένης τῆς ὠφελείας αὐτοῖς.

16.28–30 : a. 851 Ali ibn Yaha al-Armani, ut emirus Tarsi iam constat; postea a. 862 praeses Armeniae designatus est, ubi paulo post, forte a. 863 in proelio cum Byzantinis, occidit 37 : tempus haec expeditionis Petronae contra Amer et Carbeam dubium est, fortasse a. 856 sive 859 17.2–3 : 9–10 Ian. a. 854 Michael quartum decimum annum iniiit

Cap. 17: | Scyl 93.44–49

28 γῆ ante λυμαίνόμενοι edd 28 Ἀλῆς B edd 30 ὁ τοῦ Scyl 93.34 30 οὕτως edd 31 στᾶς V 34 χιάδας V 34 μικρὴν τι V 36 τῶν : τὴν edd 37 Πετρωνᾶς V 38 τῷ om. edd 38 μὴ om. edd 40 κατὰ τὸν Θρακῆσιον : τῶν Θρακῆσιων edd, cf. Scyl 93.43 17.1 πλὴν – ἀντεπεξιέναι ad finem cap. 16 inclusit Boor 2 ἥδη : ἄρτι edd Boor 4 ὤφειλεν V 8 ὁ τᾶν V 8 ἔχει edd 9 διέγνωσται V 10 τοῖς Bekk : τοὺς V Comb 11 δηλοῦν δεῖ Bekk : <δεῖ> δηλοῦν Boor, qui ante ὅπου distinxit 12 σαφῇ καθιστᾶν edd : σαφοι- καθιστᾶν V

sooner than he planned together with his ill-suited army; and Amer stood in civil war against his joint ruler – who was called the son of Skleros – and overcome by rivalry he thought it necessary to make war on him rather than others. The strife between them increased and they made war on each other to such an extent that from somewhat more than fifty thousand scarcely ten thousand men remained of their forces. When, therefore, Amer had overcome his enemies, he decided again with arrogance to take command and wage war against the Romans, joining forces with Karbeas. Against them Petronas took the field, who then exercised the office of *domestikos*. Officially, Bardas had been charged to perform this function, but because as imperial guardian he could not, of necessity, spare the time, he asked his brother, who was general of the Thrakesian theme, to direct and manage it in practice.

17. Now, the emperor Michael wished always and was eager to set out and march against the Ishmaelites, for he had already left the age of childhood and strove for that of manhood. Though formerly advised by his kinsmen that he should not do this, he somehow took the decision to make a beginning, not on his own or by himself, but on the counsel and advice of his guardian Bardas; and our history will show why and how. For History's body is indeed insensate and empty when it lacks the reasons for acts. Where we cannot judge properly, because of the elapsed time, the learned will surely make allowance for us who wish to write true, but not fictitious reasons – which anyone has in abundance – where, however, the reason is recognisable, to demonstrate this and make it clear to the readers, in as much as benefit is afforded them surely from nowhere else but from these reasons.

18. Ἐγένετο δὴ τούτῳ τῷ Βάρδα ἔρως τῆς βασιλείας οὐκ ἀγεννῆς, καὶ ἔρως οὐ κατὰ τοὺς ἄλλους, νῦν μὲν αὐξανόμενος νῦν δὲ ταῖς τοῦ λογισμοῦ ὁρμαῖς προσεπικοπτόμενος, ἀλλὰ δύσερως τις καὶ δυσαπάλλακτος. μᾶλλον δέ, ἵνα πορρωτέρω τὸν λόγον ἀγάγωμεν, ἐγένετο δὴ τῷ Μανουήλ
- 5 πρὸς τὸν Θεόκτιστον, ἀμφοτέροις ἐπιτροπεύουσι καὶ αὐτοῦ που κατὰ τὰ ἀνάκτορα διαιτωμένοις, διαφορὰ τις, ἥ καὶ καθοσίωσιν ἐπεκάλει, καὶ λάθρα ταχέως εἶχεν ὑπολαλουμένην αὐτῷ. ταύτην δὴ ὁ Μανουήλ εὐλαβούμενος, καὶ τὸν φθόνον ἄμαχόν τινα καὶ δυσκαταγώνιστον ἐνορῶν, ᾤκηθη δεῖν τοῦτον ἀκρωτηριάσαι καὶ καθελεῖν, εἰ μόνον γένοιτο
- 10 πορρωτέρω τοῦ παλατίου. <καὶ> δὴ κατὰ τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ κάτεισι κατὰ τὴν Ἀσπαρον ὄντα, ὃν καὶ εἰς σεμνείου τόπον ὕστερον ἐνηγάγετο καὶ τὸν χοῦν ἐκείσε κατέθετο. ἐκείθεν γοῦν ἐκάστοτε ἀφικνούμενος κοινωνὸς ἐγένετο τῶν κατὰ τὰ ἀνάκτορα διοικήσεων. τοῦτον οὕτως οὐ δι' ἑαυτοῦ ἀλλὰ διὰ τοῦ Θεοκτίστου ἀποσεισάμενος ὁ Βάρδας, ταῦτόν δὲ εἰπεῖν καὶ
- 15 ἀποφορτισάμενος, καὶ τὴν τύχην λαβὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ | σπουδαζόμενον κοινωνόν, ἐβουλεύετο καὶ αὐτὸς οὐκέτι δι' ἑτέρου δι' ἑαυτοῦ δὲ διανύσαι τὸ πᾶν, καὶ τέως καὶ τὸν Θεόκτιστον καθελεῖν, ἵνα μὴ τῆς ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω φορᾶς τοῦτο ἔχοι ἐμπόδιον καὶ ἅμα τὸν πολὺν ὄνειδον τὸν ἐπὶ τῇ νύμφῃ αὐτοῦ – καὶ γὰρ ὠνείδιζε τοῦτον διηνεκῶς – ἀπορραπίσοι καὶ
- 20 πορρωτέρω ποιησεται.
19. Ὑπῆρχε γοῦν τῷ βασιλεῖ Μιχαήλ παιδαγωγὸς ἀνάγωγός τε καὶ πόρρωθεν τρόπων τῶν εὐγενῶν. τοῦτον ἡξίου ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτόν τε τὸν Θεόκτιστον καὶ τὴν μητέρα ἀνωτέρω τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀξιωματῶν ἀναγαγεῖν καὶ μείζονα τούτῳ ἐπιβραβεῦσαι τιμῇ. οὐκ ἐπείθετο γοῦν τούτῳ ὁ
- 5 Θεόκτιστος, οὐδὲ ταῖς αὐτοῦ ἀρέσκειν ἀρεσκέαις ἠβούλετο, ἐπαξίως λέγων ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀναξίως τὰ τῆς βασιλείας δεῖν διοικεῖν. τοῦτον οὖν ὀργανον τὸν παιδαγωγὸν ὁ Βάρδας λαβὼν πονηρόν οὐκ ἐπαύετο ζιζάνια τινα περὶ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ ἐνσπείρων καὶ τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως ψυχῇ, ἀλλὰ τε πολλὰ περὶ τῶν κοινῶν διοικήσεων λέγων, ὥς οὐ καλῶς οἰκονο-

Cap. 18: GeorgCont (Istrin) 3.4–8; Gen 61.5–19 | Scyl 93.49–94.66. Cap. 19: GeorgCont (Istrin) 6.23–7.13; Gen 61.19–64.83; Log A 240.153–241.178 | PsSym 657.12–18; Scyl 94.66–95.4 || 7–8 cf. Matt 13.25 ἐπέσπειρεν ζιζάνια

18.1 δὴ : δὲ edd 3 δυσαπάλλακτος V 4 τὸν λόγον ante πορρωτέρω edd 5 ἀμφοτέροις V 5 ἐπιτροπεύουσιν edd 7 ὑπολαλούμενα edd 9 ᾤκηθη V 10 <καὶ> add. edd Boor 11 δὴ κατὰ – ὄντα (ἢ Ἀσπαρος, cf. Patria 88.1): κάτεισι εἰς τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ κατὰ τὴν κιστέρναν τοῦ (τὴν Scyl) Ἀσπαρος (Ἀσπαρον Scyl M) edd e Scyl 94.57–58 11 καὶ past ὃν om. edd 11 τόπον V Comb Boor Scyl 94.58 : τύπον Bekk 11 ἐνηγάγετο V B corr. in marg. : ἀνηγάγετο B Bekk in app. : μετηγάγετο Boor e Scyl 94.59 μετεσκεύασε 12 κοινωνὸς V 13 τοῦτον edd Boor : τοῦτων V 14 ταυτόν V 16 οὐκ ἐτι V 17 πᾶν : σπᾶν V 17 καὶ om. edd 18 τοῦτον edd Boor 19.2 τε τὸν conl. Boor in app. : τε καὶ V edd 4 ἐπιβραβεῦσαι V 5 ἠβούλετο Boor in app., sicut ubique in libris I-IV 6 ἀλλ' : καὶ B edd 6 οὖν om. B edd 8 ζιζάνια (sic) τινα V 9 ἀλλὰ τε V

18. This Bardas had no little desire for the imperial power, a desire unlike that of others which now increases, now holds itself in check through impulse of reason, but a mad and persistent desire. What is more, so that we may proceed further with our account, Manuel had a falling out with Theoktistos, both being regents <for Michael> and lodging somewhere near the Palace, and this then led to an accusation of *lèse-majesté* which was quickly whispered secretly in his ear. Being wary of this, and considering envy to be something one could not fight or refute, Manuel thought he might cut off and destroy it if only he moved further away from the Palace. He returned then to his own house which was near the <cistern> of Aspar and which he later converted to the site of a monastery and was laid down in earth there. Coming therefore from thence each time to the Palace he would take part in the administration. Thus disposing of – that is to say, getting rid of – Manuel not by himself but through Theoktistos, Bardas took Fortune as accomplice in reaching his goal. But then he resolved no longer to accomplish everything through another, but by himself and, to begin with, to destroy Theoktistos, so as not to have this obstacle to his way forward, and also so as to fend off and be rid of the reproach in connexion with his daughter-in-law – for Theoktistos reproached him without ceasing.

19. Now, the emperor Michael had a teacher who was unlearned and far removed from good manners. The emperor asked this same Theoktistos and his mother to advance this man higher in the imperial dignities and grant him a greater office. But Theoktistos was not persuaded by Michael, nor did he allow himself to be satisfied by his obsequious arguments, saying that it was necessary to administer the empire in fitting, not unfitting wise. Using this teacher, then, as an instrument of evil Bardas did not cease sowing tares about this man in his and the emperor's soul, saying also many things concerning the affairs of the public administration, to the effect that they were not being managed properly and that 'Although the empire was left to you in inheritance, this man is removing it far from you, and is making plans for the mar-

- 10 μούνται, καὶ ὅτι “σοὶ καταλειφθείσης ὡς κληρονομίας τῆς βασιλείας πόρρῳ σου ταύτην οὗτος ποιεῖ, γάμον τῇ μητρὶ σου ἢ τῶν ταύτης θυγατέρων μιᾷ ἐμμελετῶν, καὶ σοῦ τοῦ ταύτης υἱοῦ πόρρῳ που ποιῆσαι τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς”. ταῦτα γοῦν ὡς βέλη πῆξας ἐν καρδίᾳ τοῦ βασιλέως διήγειρέ τε, καὶ ὅπως μὴ ταῦτα γένοιτο, συνετῆς ἔλεγε δεῖν καὶ ταχίστης
- 15 βουλήs. ὡς δὲ πολλάκις περὶ τούτου συνήρχοντο πράγματος, μίαν ταύτην ἐκύρουν γνώμην καὶ ἀπέφαινον τοῦ ἐκ μέσου τὸν Θεόκτιστον ποιῆσαι δολοφονίᾳ τινὶ ἢ ὑπερορίᾳ. ἐδέδοκτο οὖν ταῦτα, καὶ πέρας ἔσπευδε τοῖς | βουλευθεῖσιν ἐπάγειν· τὸ δὲ ἦν ἐν τῷ τοῦτον μέλλειν πρὸς B 170 τὸν Λαυσιακὸν ἐξέρχεσθαι μετὰ τὴν <τῶν> ἀναφορῶν διοίκησιν, ἐπακο-
λουθῆσαι μικρὸν τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τοῦτο μόνον ἀνακραγεῖν τὸ “ἐπάρατε αὐτόν” τοῖς πραιποσίτοις. τότε ὁ Βάρδας ἐν τῷ Λαυσιακῷ συνεδρίαζεν. ὡς οὖν ὁ Θεόκτιστος προέκυπτεν ἐξιῶν, τὸ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ σύνθημα προ-
τρέχον ἅμα καὶ προφθάνον τοῦτον ὁρῶν ἔγνω φυγῇ τὴν σωτηρίαν πραγματεύσασθαι. ἡ φυγὴ δὲ πρὸς τὸν Ἱππόδρομον κατὰ τὰ
- 25 Ἀσηκηρεῖα· καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖσε τότε τὸ τῶν ἀσηκηρητῶν ὑπῆρχε καταγώ-
γιον. | ἀλλ’ ὑπὸ πολλῶν ὁ εἰς συλληφθεὶς μένειν ἀλλ’ οὐ φεύγειν κατη- f.58
ναγκάζετο· καὶ ξίφος ὁ Βάρδας γυμνῶσας αὐτοχειρὶ αὐτοὺς οἵτινες εἶεν διακωλύσοντες ἀμυνόμενος ἠπείλει, προσ<τάττων> τὸν φόνον τῶν ὑπὸ
χεῖρά τινι. ἀλλὰ ψαῦσαι μὲν ἐτόλμησε τούτου τότε οὐδεὶς, ἀπήγετο δὲ
- 30 πρὸς τὰ Σκύλα, φρουρᾷ τέως παραδοθησόμενος, μέχρις ἂν τὰ κατ’ αὐτοῦ
ἀποφῆναιτο. ὡς δ’ οὐ ζῆν δέει τῆς αὐγούστης αὐτὸν ἐβουλεύσαντο, ἵνα
μὴ καὶ θᾶττον ἀπολυθῇ, τῶν καθ’ ἑταιρείαν τινὰ ἐπαπέστειλαν γυμνὸν
ἐπισείοντα ξίφος αὐτῷ. ὡς γοῦν εἶδε ξιφήρη τὸν ἄνθρωπον, κατὰ τοῦ
σκάμνου οὗτος ὑπέδου, τὰς λαβὰς βουλόμενος ἐκφυγεῖν· ἀλλ’ ἔλαθε κατὰ
- 35 γαστέρα βληθεὶς καὶ θανάτῳ παραδοθείς, τῶν ἐγκάτων ἐκχυθέντων
αὐτοῦ. ὅτε δὴ καὶ ὁ Μανουὴλ φοιβόληπτος ὥσπερ γενόμενος τῷ Βάρδᾳ
καθαρῶς λέγεται ἀνειπεῖν |
“Ξίφος γυμνῶσας εἰς Θεοκτίστου φόνον,
ὅπλιζε σαυτὸν εἰς σφαγὴν καθ’ ἡμέραν”.

B 171

11 τῇ om. edd 13 ἐν <τῇ> καρδίᾳ conl. dubitanter Kamb 14 γένοιτο ante corr. V (ν
exrunctum, ut vid.) Boor : γένοιτο B edd 14 ἔλεγε V : ἔφασκε B in marg. edd 15 τούτου
edd : τοῦτο V : τοῦ αὐτοῦ Boor e Scyl 94.77 15 post συνήρχοντο add. τοῦ B edd
16 ἐκύρουν γνώμην καὶ ἀπέφαινον τοῦ nos : ἐκύρουν καὶ γνώμην ἀπέφαινον τοῦ V edd Boor :
ἐκύρουν γνώμην καὶ ἀπεραίνοντο conl. Bekk in app. 18 ἔσπευδε edd : ἔπευδε V
18 βουλευθεῖσιν edd, sed βουλευθείσιν conl. Bekk in app. 19 τῶν add. edd e Scyl 95.80
20 ἐπάρατε V 21 πραιποσίτοις V 25 ἀσηκηρεῖα V 25 ἀσηκηρήτων edd 27 αὐτο-
χειρὶ αὐτοὺς nos : αὐτοχειρίᾳ τοὺς V edd Boor 28 εἶεν διακωλύ[σ]οντες vel ἴοιεν
διακωλύσοντες conl. dubitanter Kamb 28 διακωλύσοντες ἀμυνόμενος V : διακωλύσοντες ἢ
ἀμυνόμενοι conl. Boor in app. e Scyl 95.87 κωλύσειν ἢ βοηθήσειν 28 προστάττων Comb :
πρὸς V : ante πρὸς lacunam statuit Boor 29 χεῖρα τινὶ V 30 Σκύλα edd 32 καὶ μὴ B
edd 32 ἐξαπέστειλαν edd 33 ὡς δ’ οὖν edd 33 post ἄνθρωπον add. ἐπιόντα edd e Scyl
95.92 34 κάτω τοῦ σκάμνου vel κατὰ τὸν σκάμνον conl. dubitanter Kamb 35 βληθεὶς :
πληγείs edd e Scyl 95.93 37 ἂν εἴπειν V

riage of your mother or one of her daughters and to deprive you her son of your eyes.' Driving these things like arrows into the emperor's heart and rousing him, he said that there was need of wise and most speedy counsel, lest these things should come to pass. After they had come together many times concerning this matter they made up their minds and decided upon getting rid of Theoktistos by some sort of murder or banishment. It was resolved, therefore, to do this, and there was haste to carry out the plan. This latter was the following: as Theoktistos was about to go out towards the Lausiakos, after controlling the official reports, the emperor was to follow a little after him and to shout to the praepositi simply: 'Seize him.' Bardas was then sitting in council in the Lausiakos. Now, as Theoktistos emerged he saw Michael's standard, which preceded and arrived before the latter, and he judged it prudent to seek safety in flight. His flight was toward the [Covered] Hippodrome by way of the Asekreteia, for at that time the lodging of the a secretis was there. But being one apprehended by many he was constrained to stay and not flee; and drawing his sword Bardas threatened that he would requite with murder whoever might hinder the action, <commanding> one of the men in his service to commit the murder. But no one then dared touch Theoktistos, and he was brought to the Skyla, to be kept under guard until it was decided what should be done with him. When, out of fear of the empress, they had decided that he should not live, lest he should be released straightway, they sent one of the members of the Hetaireia brandishing a bare sword against him. And when he saw the man with the sword, Theoktistos crawled under the bench, wishing to flee the blows. But he failed and was struck in the belly and given over to death, with his entrails spilling out. Whereupon, Manuel, as if possessed by Phoebus, is said to have proclaimed clearly to Bardas:

'Having drawn the sword for Theoktistos's murder
Arm yourself day by day for slaughter.'

0

20. Ἄλλ’ ὁ μὲν Θεόκτιστος οὕτω τὸ τοῦ βίου πέρας ἀπείληφεν, καὶ μετὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ σφαγὴν ὁ Βάρδας τὴν τοῦ κανικλείου φροντίδα τε καὶ τιμὴν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἀνελάμβανεν· ἡ δὲ δὴ Θεοδώρα τούτων ὡς ᾗσθητο, λυσίκομος δὴ θέουσα, πολλὰ κατολοφυρομένη ἀνέκλειεν καὶ ὀδυρμῶν τὰ βασίλεια
 5 ἐπλήρου, ἀραιῖς ἀμφοτέρους καθυποβάλλουσα καὶ “ὦ ἀναιδεῖς καὶ παμμίαροι”, λέγουσα, “θῆρες. τί σὺ μὲν, ἀχάριστον γέννημα, τὸν δευτέρου σου πατέρα πονηρὰ ἀντέδωκας ἀγαθῶν; καὶ σὺ βάσκανε δαῖμον καὶ πονηρὴν”, τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἐπιτραγωδοῦσα, “τὴν ἐμὴν ἐμίανας ἀρχήν, καθαρὰν φυλαχθεῖσαν καὶ ἄχραντον; ἔστι θεὸς τῶν τολμωμένων ἔφορος, ὃς
 10 ἀμφοτέρους οὐκ ἀλλοίω’ ἀλλ’ ὁμοίῳ θανάτῳ παραδώσει δήπου καὶ φονικῶ”. καὶ ἅμα ἐπεθείασέ πως, τὰς χεῖρας πετάσασα, “ἴδοιμι ἐπιπεσοῦσαν, κύριε, ἴδοιμι τὴν τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τούτου ἐκδίκησιν”. ταύτης οὖν ἔκτοτε τὰς πυκνὰς ἀρὰς μὴ φέροντες καὶ ὀνειδισμούς, καὶ ἅμα τὴν κατ’ αὐτὸν ἐλαύνων ὁ Βάρδας ὁδόν, ἔγνωσαν καὶ ταύτην ἐκεῖθεν ἀπώσασθαι καὶ
 15 γυμνῇ χωρεῖν πρὸς ἅπαν αὐτοῖς τὸ δοκοῦν κεφαλῇ. ὅπερ ἐκείνη καταφωράσασα – καὶ γὰρ ἦν ἰδεῖν <καὶ στοχάσασθαι δυνατὴ – ἀντιπράττειν οὐκ ᾔετο δεῖν>, φόνους τε ἀνθρώπων καὶ | ὁμοφύλων βλάβας f.58v ἐκφεύγουσα· τὸν δὲ τέως πλουτὸν, τὸν σήμερον ἐν τοῖς ἀνακτόροις ἀποθησαυριζόμενον, ἔγνω τῇ συγκλήτῳ ποιεῖν φανερόν, τὸν υἱόν τε τῆς
 20 | ἀφειδοῦς δαπάνης κωλύουσα καὶ τὴν ἑαυτῆς κηρύττουσα ἀρετὴν. καὶ B 172 δὴ εἰς ἐπήκοον στᾶσα ἐξεβόησεν ὡς πρὸς τοῖς ἐνεήκοντα χίλια μὲν χρυσοῦ τῷ βασιλικῷ ταμείῳ κεντηνάρια ἐναπόκεινται, ἀργυρίου δὲ ὡσεὶ τριῶν, καὶ τῶν μὲν εἶναι τὸν ταύτης ἄνδρα θησαυριστὴν τε καὶ ποριστὴν, τῶν δὲ αὐτὴν, μὴ καταναλίσκειν φιλούσης καὶ κατασπαταλᾶν.
21. Ἀλλὰ καίτοι τοσοῦτος ὁ βασιλικὸς ὦν θησαυρὸς εἰς οὐδὲν ἐχώρησε παντελῶς τῇ ἀπονοίᾳ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ καὶ ἀκαίρῳ φιλοτιμίᾳ. ταῖς γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἀμίλλαις, εἴπερ τις ἕτερος, ἀγαλλόμενος, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖνος ἡνιοχεῖν – ὦ τῆς τότε ταπεινωθείσης τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας – οὐ παραιτούμενος, τῶν συμπαιζόντων αὐτῷ καὶ συνηνιοχούντων ἐκ τοῦ θείου

20.1 : die 20 Nov. a. 855 Theoctistus occisus est 14 : die 15 Mart. a. 856 Michael solus imperator et Theodora regentis auctoritate privata est

Cap. 20: GeorgCont (Istrin) 7.14–18, 7.30–34; Gen 64.87–95; Log A 241.178–184 | PsSym 657.18–23; Scyl 95.5–96.28 Cap. 21: VBas 27.15–17 | PsSym 659.2–660.3; Scyl 96.29–97.58

20.2 τε om. edd 4 κατολοφυρομένην V 4 ἀνέκλειεν ante corr. V (λ sscr) : ἀνέκλειεν edd 5 καθυποβάλλουσα V 6 γέννημα V 8 ἐπὶ τραγωδῶσα V 10 ἀλλοίω V : ἀλλοίως edd Boor 11 ἴδημι V 11 ἐπιπεσοῦσαν edd : ἐπιπεσοῦσα V 14 ἐλαύνας Comb 17 <καὶ στοχάσασθαι – δεῖν> add. edd Boor e Scyl 95.13 – 96.14 17 τε : τῶν B edd 22 ταμείῳ edd 23 θησαυριστὴν V 21.1 καὶ τοι V 1 ὦν V 5 παραιτούμενος ante corr. V

20. Now, such was the end of Theoktistos's life, and after his murder Bardas took for himself the office and dignity of the keeper of the Inkpot. But when Theodora heard of these things, she ran about with hair unkempt, and with great wailing she wept aloud and filled the Palace with lamentations. Bringing curses upon both she said, 'O shameless and all-foul beasts! Why have you, ungrateful child, repaid your second father's good deeds with evil? And you, jealous and evil demon,' she said descanting in distress upon her brother, 'Why have you defiled my reign which had been kept pure and without blame? God is beholder of these shameless acts, and He shall deliver <you> both to no other, but to the same murderous death.' And she adjured God, spreading out her hands, 'May I see, O Lord, may I see the avenging of this man!' Thereafter they could not bear her constant curses and reproaches, with Bardas all the while following his own path, and they resolved to drive her away and pursue their plans without disguise. Detecting this – for she was adept at observing and guessing – Theodora did not think it fit to oppose them, for she fled the killing of men or harm of those of her own race. But for the present she decided to make known to the Senate the wealth which was then stored up in the Palace, hindering her son's lavish expenditure and proclaiming her own virtue. Standing before the audience she cried aloud that more than ninety thousand kentenaria of gold and some three thousand of silver were laid up in the imperial treasury, her husband having been the collector and provider of one part and she of the other, for she did not like lavish spending or wanton living.

21. But great though the imperial treasure was, it was reduced completely to nought by Michael's senselessness and untimely munificence. For revelling as anyone ever in the races of horses, nor forgoing to take the reigns himself – alas the humiliation suffered then by the empire of the Romans! – he stood as god-father to the children of his playfellows and fellow charioteers and de-

- βαπτίσματος τὰ τέκνα υἱοθετούμενος τὸν βασίλειον κατεκένου πλοῦτον, πεντήκοντα δὴ καὶ τεσσαράκοντα καὶ τὸ ἐλάχιστον ἐκάστῳ τριάκοντα χρυσίου λίτρας ἐπιχορηγῶν. ποτὲ δὲ τινι πατρικίῳ – Ἰμέριος οὗτος ἐκα-
 10 λεῖτο ὁ Χοῖρος, διὰ τὴν τοῦ προσώπου οὕτω κατονομαζόμενος ἀγριότητα – ἄλλως αἰσχρολογοῦντι κατὰ τὴν τράπεζαν καὶ ψόφον ἐκ τῆς βεβήλου αὐτοῦ γαστρὸς κατὰ πρόσωπον τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τῶν συν-
 15 δειπνούντων ἀφίεντι, ὥς καὶ τὸ φατλίον τὸ τούτους φωταγωγοῦν ἐκ τοῦ τηλικούτου ψόφου ἀποσβέσαι, τῷ παραδόξῳ τοῦ τοιούτου θαύματος χρυσίου λίτρας δέδωκεν ἐκατόν. καὶ Χειλᾶ δὲ ἄλλοτε τοῦ σὺν αὐτῷ ἡνιο-
 15 χούντος τὸν υἱὸν ἐκ τοῦ θείου λουτροῦ ἀναδεξάμενος ὁμοίως χρυσίου λίτρας δέδωκεν ἐκατόν. οὕτως ἐκεῖνος | εἰς οὐδὲν δέον τὰ δημόσια κατανά- B 173
 λισκεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐντὸς ὀλίγου καιροῦ τὸν τοσοῦτον πλοῦτον ταῖς τοιαύταις σκηνικαῖς καὶ ἀθέστοις κατανάλωσε πράξεσι, δεινὸς ἐραστῆς ὢν τῆς ἵπποδρομίας, ἦλθεν δὲ ὁ τῆς διανομῆς τῶν βασιλικῶν δωρεῶν καιρὸς,
 20 καὶ χρημάτων πόρος οὐκ ἦν δι' ὧν τὰ στρατεύματα φιλοτιμούμενα τὰς τῶν ἐχθρῶν παρατάξεις ἀμύνονται, τὴν τε χρυσὴν ἐκείνην καὶ | πολυ- f.59
 θρύλλητον πλάτανον καὶ τοὺς δύο λέοντας, πρὸς δὲ καὶ τοὺς δύο γρυῖπας ὀλοχρύσους ὄντας καὶ σφυρηλάτους, καὶ τὸ ὀλόχρυσον ὄργανον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἕτερα ἔργα τῆς βασιλικῆς ἐκθέσεως, ὀλκὴν ἔχοντα τῶν διακοσίων οὐκ
 25 ἔλαττον κεντηναρίων, χωνεύσας, χαράξαι δέδωκεν ἐν τῷ βασιλικῷ ταμείῳ. καὶ στολὰς δὲ τινὰς βασιλικὰς καὶ αὐγουστιακάς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς, τὰς μὲν ὀλοχρύσους τὰς δὲ χρυσοῦφάντους, οὐσας ἐν τῷ Εἰδικῷ πρὸς τῷ τέλει ἐκδέδωκεν ἐξαπορῶν, ὥς ἂν χαραχθῶσι. πλὴν οὐκ ἔφθασαν χωνευθῆναι, καὶ ἐκεῖνος μὲν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο, ταύτας
 30 δὲ Βασίλειος ὁ αἰίδιμος τὴν βασιλείαν λαβὼν καὶ καταλαβὼν ἔτι ἀλυμάντους τὸ νῦν σενζάτον καλούμενον χαραχθῆναι ἐκέλευσεν, ἐκ το- σοῦτου πλούτου μηδὲν ἕτερον εὐρηκῶς ἢ χρυσίου μὲν <κεν>τηνάρια τρία, μιλιάρισια δὲ σακκία ἑννέα, ἃ καὶ δημοσιεύσας καὶ πᾶσι δῆλα ποιήσας ἀπωδύρετο τῆς συγκλήτου ἐνώπιον τὴν ὅθεν ἔμελλε ποιήσεσθαι
 35 τῆς πολιτείας διοίκησιν. | B 174

6 ἐξεκένου edd 7 δὴ edd : δὲ V 7 πεντήκοντα δὴ – τριάκοντα : ἐκατόν καὶ ὀγδοήκοντα, καὶ τοῦλάχιστον πεντήκοντα Scyl 96.34–35, cf. PsSym 659.7 ρ' ἢ τὸ ἐλάχιστον ν' 8 χρυσίου V 8 ἐπὶ χορηγῶν V 11 τῷ ante corr. V 13 κατασβέσαι edd 13 παραδόξου V 14 δέδωκεν V : ἔδωκεν edd 14 ἐκατόν sic Scyl 96.41, sed cf. VBas 27.25 πεντήκοντα 16 οὗτος V 18 τῆς post ὧν om. edd 22 πολυθρύλλητον edd 22 post δύο add. χρυσοῦς edd e Scyl 97.47, sed cf. PsSym 659.18 22 τὰς δύο γρυῖπας V 26 ταμείῳ Scyl 97.51, sicut ubique in libris I–IV 26 αὐγουστηκάς V 30 αἰίδιμος V 31 ἀλυμάν- τους ἀνεκαλέσατο καὶ edd e Scyl 97.55 ταύτας ἀνεκαλέσατο : ἀλμάντους V 31 ἐκελεύσατο edd : ἐνεκελεύσατο coni. Bekk in app. 32 μὲν <κεν>τηνάρια Boor e Scyl 97.56 : μὲν τηνάρια V : κεντηνάρια edd

pleted the imperial wealth, bestowing fifty, or forty, or at the least thirty pounds of gold on each. And once, when a certain patrikios – he was named Imerios the Pig, so called on account of the fierceness of his face – was being generally abusive at table and let out a noise from his foul belly in the presence of the emperor and those dining with him, a noise so great as to extinguish the torch which was giving them light, Michael bestowed on him a hundred pounds of gold, on account of the strangeness of this marvel. And on another occasion he likewise bestowed a hundred pounds of gold when he stood as godfather for the son of Cheilas, a fellow charioteer. Thus did he squander the public funds to no purpose. And since, being the zealous lover of horse-racing that he was, he had in a short time squandered so much wealth on such theatrical and illicit things, when the time came for the distribution of imperial largesse and there was no means of providing the money to reward the armies which kept the lines of the enemies at bay, he melted down that celebrated golden plane tree and the two lions, as well as the two griffins of pure gold worked with the hammer, and the organ of pure gold and other works of imperial exhibition, all weighing not less than two-hundred kentenaria, and gave it to be minted in the imperial treasury. Finally, in great difficulty, he gave up vestments of the emperor and empress and also those of the Senate, some of pure gold and others embroidered with gold, which were kept in the Eidikos, so that they could struck as coin. But they had still not been melted down when he left this life, and when the glorious emperor Basil assumed the imperial office, he found them still intact and commanded that the senzaton, as it is now called, should be minted, for he found nothing else remaining from such great wealth except three kentenaria of gold and nine bags of miliaresia; and producing these latter as evidence and showing them to all, he expressed his despair before the Senate as to how the administration of the state was to be run with these means.

22. Ἄλλα ταῦτα μὲν προϊόντος τοῦ χρόνου γέγονασιν· τότε δὲ εἴθιστο ἡ Θεοδώρα κατὰ τὸν ἐν Βλαχέρναις θεῖον συχνῶς πῶς ἐπιφοιτᾷ νάον, ὁμοῦ μὲν εὐχὰς τινὰς ἀποδιδούσα θεῷ, ὁμοῦ δὲ καὶ τοῦ λουτροῦ μετέχουσα. ὥς γοῦν ὅψε ποτ' ἀφίκετο, τὸν Πετρωνᾶν ἀδελφὸν αὐτῆς ὄντα
- 5 πέμψαντες ὁ Μιχαήλ τε καὶ Βάρδας ἀποκείρουσί τε ταύτην μετὰ τὰς θυγατέρας ὁμοῦ, καὶ τοῖς κατὰ τὰ Καριανοῦ ἀνακτόροις τότε μὲν περιορίζουσιν· ὕστερον δὲ οὐχ ἅπαξ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ δις ἀποστείλαντες εἰσεκόμισαν τὸν ἐνόντα πλοῦτον αὐταῖς, καὶ κοινῶς πῶς καὶ ἰδιωτικῶς ἀλλ' οὐ βασιλικῶς εἶασαν ζῆν. ἀλλ' ἐκείνη μὲν μετ' οὐ πολὺ τῶν τῇδε
- 10 μεθίστατο, καὶ <Βασίλειος ὁ ἐν> βασιλεύσιν αἰοίδιμος αὐτῆς τε τὸν νεκρὸν καὶ τὰς αὐτῆς θυγατέρας πρὸς τὸ τῆς μάμμης ἔπεμπε μοναστήριον ἐνδαιτᾶσθαι, οὕτω τῶν Γαστρίων κατονομαζόμενον, καὶ ὁσίως ζῆν τε καὶ πολιτεύεσθαι. αὕτη μὲν οὕτως ἀπεβίω, ὄνομα τῷ υἱῷ, οὐχ ὥς ἐκεῖνοι, πονηρὸν ἀλλ' ἀγαθὸν ἀπολιποῦσά τε καὶ σεμνόν.
- 15 Ἐδήλου δὲ καὶ ἡ πρὸ ταύτης βίβλος ὅθεν τε καὶ τίνων ἐξέφυ καὶ ὅπως ἦλθεν εἰς τὰ βασίλεια, καὶ τὰς αὐτῇ ὅσαι δὴ θυ|γατέρες ἐκ κοιλίας f.59v γεγέννηται· δηλώσει δὲ καὶ αὕτη συγγένειαν αὐτῆς τὴν λοιπὴν. ἦσαν μὲν οὖν οἱ δηλωθέντες ἄρρενες δύο αὐτῇ ἀδελφοί, ὃ τε Πετρωνᾶς στρατηγὸς κατὰ τὸν Θρακῆσιον καὶ πατρίκιος τηνικαῦτα, καὶ Βάρδας ὁ
- 20 δηλωθεὶς, ὃς καὶ παρὰ Θεοφίλου εἰς τι τῶν οὐ δεόντων καταληφθεὶς, τῆς συνήθους προελεύσεως ἰσταμένης κατὰ τὸ ὥρολόγιον, ἐτύφθη μαγλάβια ἐξήκοντα· ἀδελφαὶ δὲ | τρεῖς, ἡ τε εὐφύμῳ οὕτω καλουμένη ὀνόματι Κα- B 175 λομαρία καὶ Σοφία καὶ ἡ <Εἰρήνη>. ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν Σοφία εἰς κοίτην ἐδίδοτο Κωνσταντίνῳ τῷ κατὰ τὸν Βαβούτζικον, ἡ δὲ Καλομαρία Ἀρσαβῆρ τῷ
- 25 τηνικαῦτα μὲν πατρικίῳ ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ μαγίστρῳ, †τῷ Εἰρήνης† τῆς μητρὸς τοῦ μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν πατριαρχικὸν θρόνον ἀντιλαβομένου Φωτίου ἀδελφῷ· μεθ' οὗ καὶ δύο τεκνώσασα παῖδας, Στέφανόν τε τὸν

22.5–6 : a. 858 Theodora cum filiis tonsurata est 9–10 et 13 : paulo post a. 867, Basilio Macedone regnante, Theodora obiit 26–27 : die 25 Dec. 858 Photius patriarcha designatus est

Cap. 22: GeorgCont (Istrin) 7.19–25, 7.27–29; Gen 64.84–87; Log A 241.184–242.191, 242.195–196 | PsSym 657.23–658.8, 658.10–13; Scyl 97.59–98.78

22.2 ἡ om. edd 4 ποτε edd 10 <Βασίλειος ὁ ἐν> βασιλεύσιν αἰοίδιμος nos, cf. VBas 71.26–27, 94.28, cf. Scyl 97.68 ὁ βασιλεὺς Βασίλειος : βασιλεύσιν αἰοίδιμος V : βασιλεὺς ὁ αἰοίδιμος Βασίλειος edd : βασιλεύσας Βασίλειος ὁ αἰοίδιμος conl. Boor 13 οὗτος V 14 ἀπολιποῦσα τὲ V 15 προταύτης V 17 καὶ om. edd 18 μὲν om. edd 18 αὐτῇ om. edd 19 τὸ edd 21 προ ἐλεύσεως V 21 ἐτύφθη : apud Log A 219.63–64 et PsSym 628.2 Petronas fustibus verberatur 21 μαγλάβια edd 23 Εἰρήνη suppl. taciter edd, cf. Scyl 98.72 : spatium ca. duodecim litterarum praebebat V : lacunam statuit Boor, suspiciens Scylitzae fictionem c IV.22.25 infra 25 τῷ Εἰρήνης V Boor : fortasse <ἡ δὲ> Εἰρήνη Σ<εργίω> τῷ vel simile scribendum cf. Scyl 98.73 Εἰρήνη δὲ Σεργίῳ : <ἡ δὲ Εἰρήνη> τῷ Εἰρήνης edd 26 τὸν om. Comb

22. But these things occurred later, when time had gone by. At the time in question Theodora used to go rather often to the divine church of the Blachernae, now offering certain prayers to God, now partaking in the bath. Once, when she arrived somewhat late in the day, Michael and Bardas sent Petronas, who was her brother, and had her tonsured together with her daughters, and they confined them for the while to the palace in the quarter of Karianos; but later they sent them away not only once, but twice, and requisitioned the wealth they possessed, making allowance for them to live in common and in private, but not in imperial fashion. Not long afterwards, however, Theodora departed from this world and Basil, glorious amongst emperors, sent her remains together with her daughters to take up their abode in the monastery of their grandmother, called Gastrion, to live and dwell there in piety. Thus did she depart this life, leaving her son a good and venerable name, not a bad one as did those others.

The Book preceeding this present one made known from whom she was descended, and how she came to the Palace, and how many daughters were born of her womb; and this Book will make known also the rest of her family relations. There were, then, the two aforementioned brothers, Petronas, general of the Thrakesian theme who was then a patrikios, and the aforementioned Bardas, who had been caught doing something wrong by Theophilus and, when the the usual [daily] procession had assembled, was given sixty lashes by the clock [outside the Chrysotriklinos]. And there were three sisters, the one called by the auspicious name Good Maria, Sophia and <Irene>. Sophia was given as wife to Constantine Baboutzikos, Good Maria to Arsaber, who was then a patrikios and later magistros, <and Irene to Sergius>,

- μάγιστρον καὶ Βάρδαν τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφὸν καὶ μάγιστρον, τὸν τοῦ πα-
 τρικοῦ Κωνσταντίνου καὶ στρατηγοῦ Σικελίας [τὸν] τοῦ Κοντομύτου
 30 γαμβρὸν – ἐκεῖθεν γὰρ αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ τοῦ Κοντομύτου ἐκληρώθη προσ-
 ηγορία –, τὴν συγγένειαν πρὸς τὸν πατριάρχην ἔσωζε Φώτιον· ἐξάδελ-
 φοι γὰρ οἱ δύο μάγιστροι οὗτοι τούτου ἐτύγχανον. αὕτη δὲ οὖν ἡ
 μήτηρ τῶν εἰρημένων, ἐπεὶ τοῦ προτέρου ἀνδρὸς διὰ θανάτου ἡμάρτανεν,
 οὐχ εἴλετο καὶ δεύτερον ἰδεῖν μάτην ἀποβιοῦντα, ζῶσα δὲ χήρα καὶ τῇ
 35 ἑαυτῆς συνοῦσα ἀδελφῇ κατὰ τὰ βασιλεία, αὐχμηράν τινα καὶ ταπεινὴν
 ἐστολισμένη στολήν, ἔτι δὲ μὴν καὶ μέλαιναν, τὸν ὕπαρχον ἀπολαμβά-
 νουσα τῆς χειρός, οὐ μὴν δὲ καὶ τὸν τειχιώτην, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν νούμερον
 συνεπαγομένη, κατὰ νομηνίαν ἀπῆει βάδην τε καὶ πεζὴν διὰ τῶν Σχολῶν
 πρὸς τοὺς ἐν τοῖς δεσμοτηρίοις κατεχομένους τῆς τε Χαλκῆς καὶ τοῦ
 40 Πραιτωρίου καὶ τῶν Νουμέρων, τίνος τε χάριν ἀποκέκλεισται ἕνα
 ἐρωτῶσα καθ’ ἕνα καὶ διοικοῦσα τοὺς μὲν δι’ ἑαυτῆς τοὺς δὲ διὰ τῆς πρὸς
 τὴν ἀδελφὴν ὑπομνήσεως, ἐκάστω τῶν φρουρουμένων εὐλογίαν
 ἐπιχορηγοῦσα οὐ μικράν καὶ ἐλεημοσύνην. καὶ τὰ μὲν κατὰ τὴν γυ-
 ναικωνίτιν οὕτω. |

23. Ὁ δὲ Βάρδας ἦν ὅλος τὰ τῆς βασιλείας ἐπιτροπεύων καὶ δι|οικῶν
 καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν ὡς συγγενῆς τοῦ βασιλέως ἀγαπώμενος· ἔνθεν καὶ τὴν
 κουροπαλάτου, οἷον ἄθλον ἐπὶ τῇ ἀδελφῇ, τιμὴν ἀναδέχεται, καὶ κατὰ
 τῶν Ἰσαμηλιτῶν καὶ τοῦ Ἄμερ, ὥσπερ εἴρηται, ἀντιστρατεύονται μετὰ
 5 τοῦ Μιχαήλ, ἄρτι τελοῦντος αὐτοῦ εἰς ἄνδρας ἐξ ἀγενείων, δυνάμει πάση
 τε καὶ χειρί. ὥς δ’ οὖν τῆς τῶν ἐναντίων ἐπέβησαν γῆς, κατὰ πόλιν Σαμό-
 σατα λεγομένην, δυνάμει τε βρίθουσας καὶ ἰσχύι ἄγονται, καὶ ταύτην
 ἐπεχείρουν πολιορκεῖν. ἀλλ’ ἐλελήθεισαν οὐ κατὰ Θεοδώρας αἶροντες
 χεῖρα, κατὰ δὲ πολυτρόπων ἀνδρῶν. ὥς γὰρ τρίτη μὲν ἦν τούτοις τῆς
 10 ἐφεδρείας ἡμέρα, ἡ πρώτη δὲ καὶ κυρία τῶν ἡμερῶν, ἔμελλον δὲ τὴν
 ἀναίμακτον μυσταγωγίαν ἐκπληροῦν ὥς ἂν τῶν θείων μυστηρίων μετὰ-
 σχοιεν, ἐξαίφνης, εἴτ’ ἀφυλάκτως τελοῦντες αὐτά, εἴτε καὶ καταφρονητικῶς
 ἔχοντες πρὸς τὴν πόλιν δι’ ἀπειρίαν ὥς μὴ πρὸς βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων ἄραι

B 176

f.60

23.3–5 : prima expeditio contra Amer, Bardae consilio prompta, forte a. 859

Cap. 23: GeorgCont (Istrin) 8.6–8, 8.28–33; Gen 64.1–65.21; Log A 242.204–205 | PsSym
 658.21–23; Scyl 98.78–99.7 || 9 cf. Homerus, Od.1.1

29 [τὸν] τοῦ Boor : τοῦ καὶ conl. B in app. 32 δὲ edd 33 πρότερον V 33 διαθα-
 νάτου V 35 αὐχμηρόν B V 38 συνεπαγομένη edd : συνεπεγνωμένη V 38 ἀπεί V
 44 γυναικωνίτιν V 23.2 post τῶν λοιπῶν add. διαφερόντως edd e Scyl 98.79 : ante τῶν λοι-
 πῶν conl. ὑπὸ dubitanter Kamb 6 καταπόλιν V 7 σαμόσάτα (sic) V 8 ἐλελήθεισαν
 edd : ἐλήθεισαν V 10 ὥς γὰρ τρίτη μὲν ἦν τούτοις τῆς ἐφεδρείας : ὥς μὲν γὰρ ἦν τρίτη τῆς
 ἐφεδρείας τούτοις edd 11 θείων : ἀγίων edd 13 πόλιν V

brother of the mother of Photios who later acceded to the patriarchal throne. By him she had two sons, Stephanus the magistros and his brother Bardas the magistros, the brother-in-law of the patrikios and general of Sicily Constantine Kontomytes – for thereby did Bardas acquire the name Kontomytes – and so she kept alive the ties of family to the patriarch Photios; for these two magistroi were thus cousins of Photios. Now this woman, the mother of the two men mentioned, having lost her former husband through his death, chose not to see another die in vain, but living as a widow and dwelling with her sister near the Palace, clad in an austere and humble garment – and moreover a black one –, taking the eparch by the hand, and also accompanied by the commander of the Walls, and the commander of the Noumera as well, set out at the beginning of each month on foot, step by step, through the Scholai to [visit] those confined in the prisons of the Chalke and the Praetorium and the Noumera, asking one after the other why he had been imprisoned; and she looked after their interests, some by herself and others through mention of them to her sister, bestowing also no small charity and mercy. Such were the affairs in the women's quarters.

23. Now Bardas alone administered the affairs of the empire and managed also other affairs as a beloved relation of the emperor. For this reason he received, as a reward under the authority of his sister, the dignity of curopalates and, as has been said, took the field with all power and force against the Ishmaelites and Amer together with Michael, who had just arrived at the age of manhood from that of adolescence. When they had forced their way into the land of the enemy, they advanced against the city called Samosata bristling with power and might, and tried to take it by storm. But they did not understand that it was not against Theodora that they were raising their hands, but against versatile men. On the third day of their siege, which was the first and chiefest of the week, as they were about to complete the bloodless mystical rites, so that they might partake of the divine mysteries, suddenly, either because they celebrated these rites in ungarded fashion or else, through inexperience, they had disdained to keep watch on the city lest anyone might dare raise his hand against the emperor of the Romans, at the very moment they

- 15 τολμώντος χειρά τινος, κατὰ τὴν ὥραν ἐν ἣ τῶν θείων ἔμελλον μετασχεῖν
 20 μυστηρίων πάντοθεν μεθ' ὀπλων ἐκπεπηδηκότες τῆς πόλεως, οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν
 τὸν ὅστις Ῥωμαίων οὐκ ἐχρήτο φυγῇ. ἔνθα καὶ ὁ Μιχαὴλ μόλις πού τὸν
 ἵππον ἀναβάς φεύγων καθωρᾶτο, ἀλλ' οὐ προπολεμῶν· οὕτω πού μόγις
 25 ἐκσέσωστο, σκηνὰς αὐτὰς καὶ τὴν ὅσην τούτοις θεραπείαν προσῆν ἐκεῖ κα-
 ταλελοιπῶς. ἔνθα καὶ τὸν προμνημονευθέντα φασὶν ἀριστεύσαι Καρβέαν B 177
 30 τὸν τὴν Τεφρικὴν | οἰκοδομησάμενον, καὶ πολὺν οὐ μόνον δὴ τοῦ χυδαίου
 φθόρον λαοῦ κατεργάσασθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν μεγάλων δὴ στρατηγῶν
 ζωγρεῖα λαβεῖν τὸν τε Τζαγγότουβον τὸν Ἀβεσαλῶμ καὶ Σηὼν τὸν Πα-
 λατῖνον, καὶ ἑτέρους ὑποστρατήγους καὶ τουρμάρχας ἄχρι τῶν ἑκατόν.
 25 ἐτηροῦντο γοῦν οἱ δηλωθέντες στρατηγοὶ μετὰ τὴν τοῦ πολέμου παρα-
 δρομὴν ἐν τῇ φυλακῇ· καὶ δὴ χρήματα ἱκανὰ τῷ Καρβέᾳ ἐδίδουσαν, οἶκοθεν
 μεταπεμψάμενοι, τὴν αὐτῶν ἀπολύτρωσιν ἐξαιτούμενοι. ὥς δ' ἔλαβεν ἐπὶ
 30 χεῖρας ὁ Καρβέας, ἡρώτα τὸν Σηὼν εὐθύς εἰ πρὸς ἀφροδίσια ἔχοι
 ἐρωτικῶς καὶ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα κίνησιν ἔχοι τὴν ἐμπαθῇ· ὥς δ' ἀπηγόρευ-
 σεν ὁ Σηὼν καὶ πάσχειν τι τοιοῦτον ἀπέφησεν, ἡρώτα πάλιν τὰ ὅμοια f. 60v
 30 τὸν Ἀβεσαλῶμ. | ὁ δὲ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ φωράσας κακίαν καὶ μοχθηρίαν, εἴτε καὶ
 ἄλλως ἀληθῶς, τοῦτό τε πάσχειν καὶ κίνησιν ὑπομένειν εἰπὼν, τούτῳ μὲν
 “λυτρωῦσαι”, ἔφη, “τῶν δεσμῶν”, καὶ ἅμα ἀπέλευεν, τῷ δὲ Σηὼν “οὐ
 βούλεται σε τὸ θεῖον λυθῆναι δὴ τῆς φρουρᾶς”, καὶ ἅμα ἐδίδου τε τούτῳ
 35 ἄχρις οὗ τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπεστάλαξεν.
24. Ἐπεὶ δὲ δεῦτερος ἦδη χρόνος παρέδραμεν καὶ μυριάδας ἤκουε τρεῖς
 κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐκστρατεύειν, τὴν ἥτταν αὐθις ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἀνακαλέ-
 σασθαι ἐπιθυμῶν, Θρᾶκας τε καὶ Μακεδόνας μέχρι τῶν τεσσάρων συνη-
 θροικῶς μυριάδων, ἐξῆει πρόθυμος κατ' αὐτοῦ. ὥς δὲ κατὰ τι χορτοφόρον
 5 πεδίον Κελλάριον οὕτω λεγόμενον κατεσκήνητο, ἄρτι δὴ Ἄμερ αὐτὸν κα-
 ταστρατηγῶν πορρωτέρω τῆς τετριμμένης ἦει ὁδοῦ, πρὸς τὸ Χωνάριον B 178
 ἐπισπεύδων. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἐγγύτερόν τε γενόμενος καὶ χεῖρας δὴ προσβα-
 λὼν καὶ πόλεμον συνάψας νεανικὸν φεύγειν ἀλλ' οὐ μένειν τὸν βασιλέα
 ἠνάγκαζεν. ἀλλὰ φεύγειν μὲν ἐπειρᾶτο, ἕως τὸν τῶν ἵππων ἀκμάζειν

24.1–4 : secunda expeditio contra Amer forte a. 861

Cap. 24: GeorgCont (Istrin) 9.1–15; Gen 65.22–66.65 | Scyl 99.7–16

14 χεῖρα τινός V 14 ἔμελλον edd : ἔμελλε V 18 τούτοις : τούτῳ conl. Boor in app.
 20 οἰκοδομησάμενος V 20 δὴ om. edd 23 παλατίον V 24 οὖν edd 25 παρὰ δρο-
 μὴν V 26 ἐξαιτούμενοι V 29 τί V 30 αὐτοῦ edd 31 τοῦτο τε V 31 πάσχειν edd :
 πάσχων V 32 λυτρώ σε conl. Boor in app. 32 τῷ edd : τὸν V 33 τὸ : τὸν V 33 δὴ B
 edd Boor : δεῖ V 33 τε om. edd 24.1 ἦδη V 3 θράκας V 3 τῶν : ante corr. τὸν V, for-
 tasse secludendum. 3 τεσσάρων V 4 κατὰ τι V 5 Κελλάριον Gen 65.26 5 αὐτόν :
 αὐτῷ edd 6 ἦει Bekk Boor : εἶη V Comb

were to partake of the divine mysteries there were men with arms everywhere who had sallied forth from the city, and it was impossible to see any Roman who was not fleeing. There also Michael, scarcely mounted on his horse, was observed to be fleeing and not engaging battle; thus did he barely manage to save himself, abandoning on the spot the tents and all those in attendance on them. There also, they say, did the aforementioned Karbeas, who had built Tephrike, show his prowess, wreaking not only great destruction on the host of common soldiers, but also taking captive Abesalom Tzaggotoubos and Seon Palatinos from amongst the high generals, and also as many as one hundred subordinate generals and turmarshs. At the end of the fighting the said generals were kept in prison; and they gave sufficient money to Karbeas, having sent messages home requesting their ransom. When he received the money, Karbeas asked Seon whether he took sexual pleasures with amorous craving and if his body had passionate emotion; and when Seon denied this and said he did not suffer from any such thing, Karbeas asked Abesalom the same thing. And when Absalom, detecting the other's own baseness and depravity, said – even if the truth was otherwise – that he both suffered from this and endured emotion, the other said to him, 'You are ransomed from your bonds,' and he released him; but to Seon he said, 'The Godhead does not wish that you should be freed from prison,' and he gave Abesalom the ransom that had been given for him, and he confined him to prison until his soul trickled away.

24. Two years had already gone by when Michael heard that Amer had put thirty thousand troops in the field against the Romans; and desiring now to make good his defeat, Michael assembled some forty thousand Thracians and Macedonians and eagerly went out against him. But just as he pitched camp on a grassy field called Kelarion, Amer, outwitting him by strategem, made his way at a distance from the trodden road, hastening onward to Chonarion. Here, drawing closer, raising arms and engaging vehement battle, he compelled the emperor to flee, not to stay. He attempted to flee for as long as he perceived the running of the horses to be at full pace and not to slacken. When high noon was upon them and there was no little heat from the burn-

- 10 δρόμον ἀλλ’ οὐ διακόπτεσθαι ὑπελάμβανεν. καὶ δὴ σταθερᾶς τε μεσημβρίας ἐνούσης καὶ καύματος οὐκ ὀλίγου θάλλποντος ἐκ τῆς τοῦ ἡλίου φλογώσεως, κατὰ τινὰ ὀρεινὸν ἀναβαίνειν τόπον βιάζονται, Ἀνζῆν οὕτω λεγόμενον, δυσπρόσοδόν τε καὶ τραχέσι λίθοις οὐκ εὖδον. ἐκεῖσε δὴ φεύγων ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐνηυλίζετο, καὶ ἐκ ποδὸς ὁ Ἄμερ αὐτῷ ἐπακολουθῶν
- 15 περικυκλοῖ, ὥς ἐν δικτύῳ θέλων λαβεῖν. κἂν ἔλαβεν αὐτὸν δοριάλωτον, ἀλλ’ ἡ τῶν βασιλικῶν ταγμάτων ἰσχὺς καρτερῶς ἀπομαχομένη καὶ τὸ τοῦ τόπου ἀνεστηκός τε καὶ ὑπερέχον μικρόν τι τούτους διέσωσεν. ἔνθα καὶ τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς αὐτῶν κίνδυνον ἀγωνιζομένων καὶ δεδιότων, βουλὴν ἠνάγκαζε τὸν Μανουὴλ λέγειν ὁ Μιχαὴλ τὴν ἀμφοτέρους δὴ διασώσουσαν. ὁ δὲ τὰ δι’ ὧν ἐστι φανερός ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀφελέσθαι συμβουλευσάμενος,
- 20 καὶ ἰδιωτικὸν ἀναλαβόμενον σχῆμα μετὰ λογάδων ἀνδρῶν καὶ δυνάμει προεχόντων τὴν τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἔφη φάλαγγα διαρρήξαντα ἔξω τούτων γενέσθαι περιφανῶς. ὥς δὲ καὶ περὶ τοῦ παραμένοντος ὄχλου τε καὶ στρατοῦ δεύτερον ἐπυνθάνετο, | ὅπως δὴ σωθεῖεν, ὁ Μιχαὴλ, “ἀλλὰ σὲ f.61
- 25 μὲν γένοιτο”, φησὶν, “βασιλεῦ, σώζεσθαι ἀβλαβῆ, θεῷ δὲ μελήσει περὶ αὐτῶν· οὐ γάρ ἐστιν ἐπ’ ἴσης βασιλέα καὶ Ῥωμαίων τινὰ αἰχμάλωτον γενέσθαι ἐχθροῖς”. ἀλλαξάμενος οὖν τὴν ἐσθῆτά ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ | περὶ τὸν B 179
- Μανουὴλ ὅλος γενόμενος ἔσπευδεν ἐπακολουθεῖν, τούτου μεθ’ ἐτέρων διαρρηξάντων τὴν φάλαγγα. ἀλλ’ ὅτε δὴ κατὰ τὸ δεινὸν ἐγένοντο καὶ τῆς παρατάξεως πλησίον πού τῶν ἐχθρῶν, ἔρημος τῷ φόβῳ δυνάμεώς τε γενόμενος καὶ χειρῶν ἐναπομένειν ἡγάπα, ἀλλ’ οὐ προτρέχειν αὐτοῦ. ὥς δ’ ὁ Μανουὴλ τὴν φάλαγγα διακόψας τε καὶ περισωθεὶς τὸν βασιλέα οὐκ εἶχεν ὀρᾶν, αὐθις τὴν κατόπιν ἔθει ὁδόν, τὸν ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ κίνδυνον δεδιώς. ὥς δὲ πάλιν ἐγένοντο συμβολαὶ καὶ πολλὸς φόβος συνέπιπτε τῶν Σαρακηνῶν, ἔγνω δὴ πορρωτέρω χωρήσειν ὁ Ἄμερ, νάματά τινὰ ζητῶν καὶ
- 30 χορτάσματα, σημήνας τὸ ἀνακλητικόν· ὅτε καὶ τυχῶν ἀδείας ὁ Μιχαὴλ μόλις πού ἐκεῖθεν διεσέσωστο ἀδεῶς, καὶ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανήρχετο.
- 35

25. Δεύτερος οὖν μόλις πού παρῆλθε χρόνος, καὶ αὐθις ἐκστρατεύσας ὁ Ἄμερ σὺν τεσσαράκοντα χιλιάσι στρατοῦ ὁμοῦ μὲν τὸν Ἀρμενιακὸν ὁμοῦ δὲ καὶ τὴν πρὸς θάλασσαν Ἀμισὸν ἐξεπόρθει τε καὶ κατεδουλαγώγει τῇ

25.1–3 : a. 863 Amer ultimam incursionem in Byzantium fecit

Cap. 25: GeorgCont (Istrin) 9.16–30; Gen 67.66–69.39; Log A 243.208–209, 243.224–244.232 | PsSym 664.3–6, 666.8–12; Scyl 99.17–101.66

12 Ἀνζῆν edd, cf. III.31.13 et Gen 66.1 Ἀνζῆς : ἄνζην V 14 ἐκ σποδὸς V 15 δορυάλωτον B edd 18 δεδειότων V 20 ἐστι V 29 τῆς om. B edd 34 φόβος con. Bekk in app. Boor, cf. Gen 66.59–60 πολλῶν – ἀναιρεθέντων Σαρακηνῶν : φόβος V edd 36 καὶ χορτάσματα ζητῶν edd 25.2 τὴν Ἀρμενικήν edd

ing sun, they were constrained to ascend in a mountainous place called Anzes, which was difficult of access and not easy to pass on account of jagged stones. Fleeing there the emperor made camp; and following on foot Amer surrounded him, wishing to capture him as if in a net. And he would have taken him captive, but the troops of the imperial divisions resisted staunchly, and the elevated and projected nature of the place just barely saved them. It was there, too, whilst they were fighting and fearing danger for their lives that Michael compelled Manuel to give counsel which was to save them both. He advised him to remove the things whereby it was clear that he was emperor, and told him to put on the clothes of a private person together with select men excelling in strength, in order to break through the enemy's line and to get fully clear of them. And when Michael asked a second time about the host and army which remained, as to how they might be saved, he said, 'So be it, emperor, that you are preserved unscathed, and God will take care of them. For it is not the same if an emperor or just any Roman be taken captive by the enemy.' Changing his clothes, then, and becoming completely like those around Manuel, Michael hastened to follow as he and the others broke through the line. But when they were in danger and near the line of the enemy, he was bereft of strength and force out of fear and was content to remain and not to run on ahead. When Manuel had broken through the line to safety, because he could not see the emperor, he ran back again fearing that he was in danger. And when the armies joined battle once again and there was great slaughter of the Saracens, Amer decided to withdraw far off, in search of streams and pastures, and signalled the retreat. Obtaining safe conduct then, Michael only just managed to escape there with impunity, and returned to the imperial city.

25. Then, hardly two years had gone by when Amer again took the field with forty thousand troops and, in the absence of anyone to hinder him, ravaged and reduced to subjection both the Armeniac theme and Amisos on the sea. It was then that he is said to have suffered the same thing as foolish

- τοῦ κωλύοντος ἐρημίᾳ· ὅτε δὴ καὶ ταῦτόν ἐκείνῳ τῷ ἄφρονι Ξέρξῃ λέγε-
 5 ται παθεῖν, καὶ κελεῦσαι ῥάβδοις τύπτειν τὴν θάλασσαν, ὅτι μὴ
 πορρωτέρω προκατεστόρεστο ἀλλ' ἐγγὺς αὐτόν λεηλατοῦντα καταλαμ-
 βανομένην κεκώλυκεν. ἐφ' οἷς ἀσχάλλοντα τὸν Μιχαὴλ καὶ ἀδημονοῦντα
 10 κελεῦσαι τὸν Πετρωνᾶν, ἀδελφὸν τῆς βασιλίσσης τυγχάνοντα καὶ τῶν
 Θρακησίων τὴν στρατηγίδα διέποντα, παντὶ σθένει συμπαραλαβόντα B 180
 τὰς τῶν Ῥωμαίων δυνάμεις χωρῆσαί ποι κατ' αὐτοῦ καὶ μὴ παρορᾶν
 ἐπὶ πολὺ τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων καταληϊζόμενον γῆν. ὁ τοῦ Βάρδα τότε τῶν
 βασιλικῶν ταγμάτων τε καὶ σχολῶν ἦρχεν υἱός, παῖς ἔτι κομιδῇ περὶ
 15 δέκα ἢ καὶ ἐννέα ἔτη που ὦν· ὄνομα τοῦτ' Ἀντίγονος. ὁ καὶ θαυμάζειν μοι
 ἔπεισιν, ὅπως ἀγχινοίας τε καὶ σοφίας, ὡς φασίν, ἀντιποιοῦμενος, ἑαυτῷ
 20 πάντα οἷον λαφύσσων καὶ προσαγόμενος, οὐχ ἑτέρῳ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐνε-
 χεῖ|ρει ἀρχὴν ἐν καιρῷ δεινῷ τε καὶ δυσχερεῖ. πλὴν ἐδίδου τὸ ταύτης f.61v
 προσωπεῖον τέως τῷ ἀδελφῷ. ὁ δ' ὡς τῶν βασιλικῶν ἤκουσε γραμμάτων
 πρὸς τὸν ἐχθρόν αὐτόν καθοπλιζόντων καὶ ἀνδραγαθεῖν παρακελευ-
 ομένων, ἀλλοιωθεὶς τε καὶ περὶ τῶν πραγμάτων τὴν ὅπως ἔξουσι καλῶς
 25 βουλευόμενος ἐν τῷ κατὰ τὴν Ἑφεσον ἀγίῳ ὄρει προσήδρευεν, εἴτ' ἀπο-
 λεγόμενος εἶτε καὶ τῆς ἄνωθεν ἐπικουρίας δεόμενος. ἐκέισε γοῦν αὐτοῦ τὸ
 τέως ἐνδιαιτωμένου, φήμη τις ἄγγελος προτρέχουσα Ἰωάννην ἐκείνον, τὸν
 μοναχόν τε καὶ περιβόητον, μακρὸν ὄντα τὸ εἶδος, ἀνυπόδετον τοὺς
 30 πόδας ἀεὶ κατὰ τὸ Λάτρος ἐνδιατρίβοντα, αὐτομολοῦντα διήγγειλεν.
 τοῦτον ἡσυχάζοντα καὶ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ κελλίου μήποτε ἐξερχόμενον ὁ
 χρόνος ἐκείνος ἐθαύμαζεν. ὡς δ' οὖν περὶ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ὁ πατρίκιος δια-
 κήκοεν ὡς ὅτι που πλησίον ἐστὶν ὄνாரιον ἐποχοῦμενος, ἀπήντα θέων τὸν
 35 μοναχόν καὶ τοὺς πόδας αὐτοῦ κατελάμβανεν. ὁ δὲ μηδὲν μελλήσας
 “ἄπιθί”, φησιν, “κατὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν τοῖς βασιλικοῖς πειθόμενος
 γράμμασιν, ἄπιθι· θεὸν γὰρ ἔξεις ῥυόμενόν σε καὶ προπορευόμενον, εἰ
 40 μόνον τὸν | αὐτῷ ἡγαπημένον Ἰωάννην ἀντ' ἄλλου τινὸς φυλακτηρίου B 181
 ταῖς ἀσπίσι πάντων ἐγγεγραμμένον φέρεις τρανῶς”. καὶ ἅμα προσετίθει
 ὡς “οὐκ ἄλλου τινὸς ἔνεκεν ἢ τούτου τὴν ἐνταῦθα πορείαν πεποιήμαι”.
 τούτου ταῖς εὐχαῖς καθοπλισθεὶς κατὰ τινά τόπον οὕτω λεγόμενον
 45 Πόσοντα, φυσικὴν τινά ἀσφάλειαν διὰ πετρῶν ἔχοντα καὶ κρημνῶν, τὸν
 Ἄμερ καταλαμβάνει πανστρατιᾷ. τούτῳ καὶ ποταμὸς παραρρεῖ ἀπὸ τὸ

|| 4–5 cf. Herodotus, 7.35

4 ταυτόν V 6 προκατεστόρεστο Bekk : προκατεστόρετο V Comb 7 ἐφ' οἷς φασι conl.
 Boor in app. 8 ἀσχάλλοντα τὸν – ἀδημονοῦντα κελεῦσαι V : ἀσχάλλον ὁ – ἀδημονῶν
 ἐκέλευσε edd e Scyl 99.22–25 ἀσχάλλον ὁ – ἐκέλευσε 8 πετρωνᾶν V 10 χωρῆσαι ποι V
 11 ἐπιπολὺ V 13 καὶ om. edd 19 τὴν delendum conl. Boor in app., sed cf. infra IV.25.59
 (fortasse βουλὴν vel simile quod addendum putavit Kamb) 22 τίς V 22 τὸν om. edd
 31 τινὸς V 32 φέροις edd 33 τινὸς V 35 Πόρσοντα Gen 68.18 35 διαπετρῶν V

Xerxes and he ordered the sea to be beaten with reeds, for it did not lie paved in his path to plunder, but took him by surprise hard by and hindered him. Grieved and troubled by these events, Michael ordered Petronas, who was the empress's brother and exercised command of the Thrakesians, to assemble the Roman forces with all strength, to advance somehow against Amer and not to look aside for long as he laid waste to the land of the Romans. The son of Bardas was then leader of the imperial divisions and the scholai, though he was still just a child of ten or even nine years of age. His name was Antigonos. Now, it behoves me to wonder at this: how Bardas, who they say strove after shrewdness and wisdom, gulping down and procuring everything for himself, did not entrust such an office to someone else in a dangerous and difficult time. For a while, however, he did give power as deputy to his brother. And when this latter heard read out the imperial letters arming him against the enemy and commanding deeds of valour, he was confused and, deliberating by which course affairs would turn out well, he took up abode on the Holy Mountain by Ephesos, thereby either declining the command or seeking assistance from above. Whilst he was dwelling there, a report went round in advance announcing that John, the famous monk, who was tall of figure, always unshod of foot, and who dwelt near Latros, had gone off. At that time John was marvelled at as a solitary who never left his cell. When the patrikios heard about the man, that he was somewhere near by riding on an ass, he ran off to meet the monk and embraced his feet. Without hesitating in the slightest the other said, 'Set off against the Saracens in obedience to the imperial commands, set off! For you will have God preserving you and going before you, provided you bear His beloved John, in the place of all other protection, clearly inscribed on the shields of all.' And straightway he added, 'I have made this journey for no other purpose than this.' Armed with John's prayers, he and his whole army caught up with Amer at a place called Posonta, which had its own natural protection through rocks and cliffs. Through this place flows a river, running from North to South, called Lalakaon, and there is a spring

- ἀρκτῶν πρὸς τὸ μεσημβρινὸν ἐλαυνόμενος, Λαλακάων ὀνομαζόμενος, καὶ
 λιβάδιον παράκειται Γύριν ἀγροικικῇ φωνῇ πως καλούμενον. ἔγνω γοῦν
 ὁ Πετρωνᾶς ἐκεῖσε τοῦτον ἐναυλιζόμενον, καὶ πάντη ἔσπευδεν
 40 ἀδιεξόδευτόν τε καταστῆσαι καὶ ἄφυκτον. καὶ δὴ τοὺς μὲν τὸ ἀρκτῶν
 μέρος καθέξοντας στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἀρμενιакῶν καὶ Βουκελλαρίων καὶ
 Κολωνείας καὶ Παφλαγονίας ἐπαπέστελλεν αὐθωρόν, τὸ δὲ μεσημβρινόν,
 τὸν Ἀνατολικῶν, τὸν Ὀψικίου καὶ Καππαδοκίας στρατηγοὺς σὺν τοῖς Σε-
 λευκείας καὶ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ κλεισουράρχαις· αὐτὸς | δὲ μετὰ τῶν βασι- f.62
 45 λικῶν τεσσάρων ταγμάτων καὶ τῶν Θράκης καὶ Μακεδονίας στρατη-
 γῶν – καὶ γὰρ εἰρηνευόντων τῶν Βουλγάρων νόμος ἦν αὐτοῖς μετὰ τῶν
 Ἀνατολικῶν συγκινδυνεύειν καὶ συστρατεύειν – τὸ δυτικὸν μέρος κατ-
 εἴληφεν, ἔχων καὶ τὸ θέμα τῶν Θρακησίων μεθ’ ἑαυτοῦ. ὥς γοῦν οὕτω
 50 πάντοθεν περιφρουρεῖσθαι καὶ ὥς θηρίον ἐναποκεκλειῆσθαι παρὰ
 Ῥωμαίων ὁ Ἄμερ ἀκήκοεν, ἔγνω δεῖν οἰωνίσασθαι, καὶ τινα τῶν αἰχμα-
 λώτων μετακαλεσάμενος ἠρώτα τήν τε τοῦ τόπου προσηγορίαν καὶ τοῦ
 λιβαδίου τε καὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. ὥς δ’ ὁ ἐρωτηθεὶς αἰχμάλωτος μικρὸν πα-
 ραγραμμα | τίσας Πτώσοντα ἔφησεν ἀντὶ Πόσοντα, τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σημαίνειν B 182
 55 πτώσιν ὁ Ἄμερ διεσάφησεν, λαοῦ τε κάκωσιν παραφράζων τὸν ποταμόν,
 καὶ γυρισθῆναι δεινῶς αὐτοὺς παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐκ τῆς τοῦ λιβαδίου
 συνεμπτώσεως, ὅπερ ἐκαλεῖτο Γύριν. “ἀλλ’ ὅμως οὐκ ἀποκητέον”, φησίν,
 “ἀλλὰ καὶ διεγερτέον καὶ πρὸς τὸν αὔριον γενησόμενον πόλεμον ἀνδρι-
 στέον”. καὶ ἅμα ὀπλίζεσθαι πάντας καὶ νεόσμηκτα δεικνύειν ὥς νευργὰ τὰ
 60 ξίφη ἐκέλευεν. ἐπεὶ δ’ ἡμέρα ἄρτι ἐξαντέλλουσα τὴν ὅπως περιγένηται
 τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ἀνάγκην ἐπέφερεν, δεῖν ἔκρινε πρὸς μὲν τὸ ἀρκτῶν μέρος
 φυλάττοντας τὴν ἔξοδον αὐτοῦ ἐκζητεῖν, ὥς δ’ ἡ τε τοῦ τόπου κακία καὶ
 τῶν ἐκεῖσε ταχθέντων στρατηγῶν εὐανδρία ἀπήντα τοῦτον καὶ διεκώ-
 λυνεν, ἐπὶ τὸ μεσημβρινὸν ὀρμᾶσθαι ἐξεβιάζετο. ὥς δὲ κάκειθεν τὴν ὁμοίαν
 εὗρισκεν τῶν ἐναντίων παράταξιν, ἔγνω δεῖν ὑπὸ τοῦ τόπου ἐφ-
 65 ελκόμενος – καὶ γὰρ ἦν λείος καὶ εὐπρόσιτος τῶν λοιπῶν – κατ’ ἐκείνον
 μᾶλλον χωρεῖν, ἣ καὶ τὸν Πετρωνᾶν ἐώρα κατασκηνούμενον καὶ φυλάτ-
 τοντα. καὶ δὴ κρότῳ καὶ βοῇ κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἐφαλλόμενος οὐδ’ ὅλως
 εἵκοντας τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ἐφεύρισκεν, ἀλλ’ ἰσχυροτέρους καὶ αὐτὸν
 ἀνδρικῶς ἀντικρούοντας καὶ μᾶλλον ἀνισταμένους νεανικῶς· διὸ καὶ μι-

37 μεσημβρινόν V 38 γύριν V, sed cf. Scyl 100.33 (Γυρήν) et 39 (Γύρην) et infra IV.25.56
 38 πως om. edd 39 πετρονᾶς V 41 βουκελλαρίων V 42 ἐπέστελλεν edd 43 for-
 tasse τοὺς τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν, τοῦ Ὀψικίου coniecendum 53 παραγραμματιζών edd
 56 γύριν V, cf. Scyl 100.33 (Γυρήν) et 39 (Γύρην) et supra IV.25.38 56 φήσιν V 57 καὶ post
 ἀλλὰ om. edd 59 ἐκέλευεν V : ἐκέλευσεν edd 59 δὲ B edd : δ’ <ῆ> con. dubitanter Kamb
 59 τὴν ὅπως cf. supra IV.25.19 60 τῶν Ῥωμαίων con. Comb in marg. 60 ἀνάγκην Boor :
 ἀνάγκην V : ἀνοχὴν edd : fortasse ἀνάγκη scribendum 60 μὲν : τοὺς con. Boor in app.
 60 μέρος om. edd 61 αὐτῷ edd 61 ante τῶν ἐκεῖσε fortasse ἢ addendum putavit Kamb
 63 ὀρμᾶσθαι V 66 πετρονᾶν V 68 ἤκοντας V 69 ἀνισταμένους Bekk

beside it, called Gyrin in the rustic tongue. Petronas knew that Amer had encamped there, and he hastened to render the place impossible to pass through or to flee. Immediately he sent the generals of the themes of the Armeniacs and Bucellarii and Koloneia and Paphlagonia to hold the North; the South was to be held by generals of the themes of the Anatolics and Opsikion and Cappadocia together with the kleisourarchs of Seleukeia and Charsianon; and he himself took the western side, together with the imperial divisions and the generals of Thrace and Macedonia – for when the Bulgars were at peace it was a rule for them always to brave danger and fight wars with the Anatolics – and he also had the theme of the Thrakesioi with him. When Amer heard that he was blockaded closely and shut up on all sides like an animal by the Romans, he decided it was necessary to take an omen; and calling one of the captives he asked him the name of the place, the stream and the river. When the captive who had been asked altered a bit the spelling and said Ptosonta [Fallen] instead of Posonta, Amer understood this to mean his own ruin, and he interpreted the river as ‘Destruction of the people’, and that they would be fearfully turned back by the Romans because of the coincidence of the stream, which was called Gyrin [Turn]. ‘However, we must not shrink back,’ he said, ‘but must rouse ourselves and be manly in face of the battle on the morrow.’ And straightway he commanded that all should arm themselves and display their polished swords as if newly made. Now, because the newly dawning day brought the necessity that he escape the Romans, Amer decided that he had to seek his way out against those guarding the northern side; but because the difficulty of the place and the courage of the generals stationed there confronted and hindered him, he was constrained to turn toward the south. Now, when he found there a similar line of the enemy, attracted by the place – for of all the others it was level and easy of approach –, he decided that he should rather press forward there, where he saw that Petronas had made camp and was keeping guard. Rushing upon his enemy with a clash and

- 70 κρὸν συσταλὲς καὶ εἰς ἑαυτὸν αὐθις γενόμενος ἐπεβάρει πάλιν μετὰ δυ-
νάμεως, ἐκπόρευσιν τινὰ καὶ κάθοδον ἑαυτῷ ποριζόμενος. ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐθις | f.62v
τούτῳ οὐκ ἐνδόντες ἀλλ’ ὑπαντήσαντές τε καὶ ἀνα|στρέψαντες τῷ συμ- B 183
πεφράχθαι, καὶ μέχρι τρίτης τοῦτον τοῦτο ποιεῖν κατηνάγκασαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ
πάντοθεν ἀναφανέντας καὶ ἄλλους ἄλλοθεν ἐκπηδῶντας τοὺς τὰ ἀρκτῶα
75 καὶ μεσημβρινὰ μέρη κατοικοῦντας καθεώρακε, τότε ἤδη τὴν σωτηρίαν
ἀπογνοὺς καὶ τὰς φρένας ὥσπερ τινὶ κεραυνῷ βληθεὶς ἐχώρει κατὰ ξιφῶν,
οὐδὲ πρότερον ἀμελῶν· ἔνθα καιρίαν πληγὴς αὐτός τε πτῶμα γίνεται
χαλεπὸν, καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ διασώζεται οὐδεὶς οὐδαμοῦ. ὥς δὲ τὸν τούτου
80 Χαρσιανοῦ κλεισουργάρχης καταλαβὼν οὐκ ἄποθεν χειροῦται τε μετὰ τοῦ
στρατεύματος καὶ τῷ στρατηγῷ φέρων δίδωσι Πετρωνᾶ.
Οὕτως μὲν οὖν ὁ Πετρωνᾶς τὰ κατὰ τοῦ Ἄμερ στήσας τρόπαια διὰ
πολλῆς εἶχεν ἔκτοτε τὸν μοναχὸν αἰδοῦς καὶ τιμῆς, προφήτην ἄλλον ἀπο-
καλῶν. καὶ δὴ καὶ τὰ τῆς ψυχῆς τούτῳ ἀναθεὶς πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
85 εἰσελεύσιναι τοῦτον ἐπιφερόμενος, πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τὸν Βάρδαν τὴν
τοῦ ἀνδρὸς <ἐκ>θειάζων καλῶς ἀρετὴν. ἀλλ’ ὁ μὲν Πετρωνᾶς τὸ τοῦ δο-
μεστίκου οὐκέτι προσωπεῖον καθυπεκρίνετο, ἀλλ’ αὐτὴν ἐλάμβανεν ἐκ βα-
σιλέως τιμὴν· καὶ ὁ μοναχὸς τὴν πρὸς θεὸν ἐκδημίαν παρ’ αὐτοῦ διδαχθεὶς
90 τὸν Πετρωνᾶν ἀνεδίδασκεν ὥς διὰ ταχέων μέλλων ἀποδημεῖν. “καὶ ποῖ με
δὴ”, ὁ Πετρωνᾶς, “ἀπαίρων τὸ σὸν ἀρνίον, ὦ ποιμὴν μου καὶ ἐραστά,
βούλει καταλιπεῖν;” μετὰ κλαυθμοῦ ἐπυνθάνετο. “ἄρα τούτῳ τῷ βίῳ;
ἀλλὰ δέδοικα μὴ πρὸς τὸν πρότερον ὀλισθὼν αὐθις παραρρυῶ καὶ
95 γένωνται μοι τὰ ἔσχατα τῶν προτέρων οὐ κρεῖττονα.” “καὶ βούλει”, B 184
φησὶν ὁ μοναχός, “ἐμοὶ συνεπακολουθήσαι;” καὶ οὗτος “ναί, πάτερ”, ἔφη,
“μεθ’ ἡδονῆς”. καὶ δὴ νόσῳ καὶ οὗτος βληθεὶς ἅμα τῇ εἰς οἶκαδε ὑπο-
στροφῇ ἐδήλου τὰ συμπύπτοντα τῷ ἀββῆ, καὶ ἀντεδηλοῦτο ὥς “μετ’
ἐμοῦ γενήσῃ ὥς ἡτήσω μετὰ μικρόν”. καὶ δὴ τινων ἡμερῶν παρελθουσῶν
ὁ μοναχός τε μετεκαλεῖτο πρὸς τὸν θεὸν καὶ οὗτος αὐθωρὸν ὥς ἐκ
100 συνθήματος ἐπηκολούθει λαμπρῶς· καὶ τοσοῦτον ἦν κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν | f.63
καιρὸν ἀμφοτέρων ἢ ἐκείθεν ἀποδημία ὥς ἄτερος ἐτέρου, καίτοι γε μικροῦ

25.77–78 : die 3 Sept. a. 863 Amer in proelio occisus est

71 ἐκπόρευσιν τινὰ V 72 τε om. edd 73 μέχρις B edd 73 τρίτης om. B edd
73 τούτων edd 75 κατοικονομοῦντας con. Boor in app. 77 προτέρων edd (πρότερον
con. Bekk in app.) 79 ἀποδράναι που V 81 τὸ V 81 πετρονᾶ V 82 πετρονᾶς V
86 ἐκθειάζων Boor c Scyl 101.61, cf. infra IV.27.50 : θειάζων V 86 ἀλλ’ V : καὶ [ἀλλ’] edd
86 πετρονᾶς V 87 οὐκ ἔτι V 89 πετρονᾶν V 89 μέλλω con. Boor in app. : μέλλη dubi-
tanter con. Kamb 90 πετρονᾶς V 90 ὁ ποιμὴν μου B edd 92 δέδῃκα V 92 παρα-
ρυῶ V 94 φησὶ V 95 εἰς om. B edd 96 post ἀντεδηλοῦτο add. φάναι edd 97 γενήσῃ
μετὰ μικρόν ὥς αἰτήσω ante corr. B edd

a cry he found the Romans in no wise disposed to yield but very strong and valliant in resisting him and holding their ground most vigorously. Contracting, therefore, and drawing his forces together for a short time, he then again bore down with force, seeking for himself an exit and descent. But again they did not give way but withstood him and made him withdraw by fencing him in; and they forced him to make the attempt three times. When he saw those positioned to the north and south appear from everywhere and make sallies each from every side, Amer despaired of his salvation and, as if struck by a bolt of lightening in his mind, went forward with intent against the line of swords. Thereupon mortally wounded, he had a harsh death, nor was any one of his men anywhere saved. Now, when they heard that Amer's son had run off with one of the contingents, and the kleisourarch of Charsianos caught up with him not far off together with his army, he defeated him and, bringing him to the general Petronas, handed him over. Thus Petronas, having set up trophies of victory over Amer, held the monk henceforth in great reverence and honour, calling him another prophet. Confiding, then, the thoughts of his soul to this same, Petronas returned to the capital taking him along, happily extolling the man's virtue as divine before the emperor and Bardas. Now, Petronas no longer feigned to play the part of the domestikos, but received this dignity from the emperor; and the monk, having learned from God of his departure to Him, informed Petronas that he would soon depart. 'But you who are going off, O my shepherd and beloved one, where do you intend to leave me, your little lamb?', asked Petronas with sobbing. 'In this world? But I fear lest I should again fall upon the slippery path, and the last days of my life should be no better than the former ones.' 'Do you want, then, to follow me?' asked the monk. Said Petronas, 'Yes father, with pleasure.' And he was stricken with illness, and on the return journey he related to the abba the things which had happened; and the other replied, 'You shall be with me, as you have asked, after a short while.' And after a few days had passed the monk was summoned to God, and at the same hour Petronas, as by covenant, followed in splendour. And the departure thither of both was so close in time,

τοῦ διαστήματος ὄντος, μὴ ἀκοῦσαι τὸν θάνατον. τοιοῦτῳ μὲν δὴ τέλει τοῦ βίου ὁ Πετρωνᾶς χρησάμενος λέγεται, ἐτελεύτα δὲ καὶ πρὸ τούτου ὁ Μανουὴλ νόσῳ δὴ τινι κρατηθεῖς.

26. Μετέβαινε δὲ καὶ ὁ Βάρδας καὶ τὰς ἐκ βασιλείως ἡμειβε συνεχῶς τιμάς, ὥσπερ τις νέος γαῦρός τε καὶ φιλότιμος τὰς ποικίλας τῶν πρὸς τέρψιν στολάς. μετέβαινε γοῦν καὶ πρὸς τὴν καίσαρος ἀνῆι δόξαν τε καὶ τιμήν, τοῦ Μιχαὴλ οὐ πρὸς ἕτερόν τι τῶν πολιτικῶν τοσοῦτον ἐπτο-
 5 ημένου ἢ θέατρα καὶ ἵππων ἀμιλλητήρια. καὶ τὸ δὴ χαλεπὸν, οὐκ ἡγάπα μόνον θεατῆς εἶναι, εἴ γε καὶ τοσοῦτον ἐσχόλαζεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸς ἡνιοχεῖν – ὡ τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας – θέαμα τυγχάνων καὶ παίγνιον πᾶσι δὴ καὶ κατὰγελως. οὕτως ὁ Βάρδας τοῦ ἀδελφιδοῦ ἐπετροπέυεν, καὶ οὐδὲ ζῆν, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἠθέλησεν, εἰ μὴ τοῦτο μεταπίσειε τὸ ἀνδράποδον.
 10 πλὴν διώκει τέως αὐτὸς τὰ πολιτικά, καὶ τῆς βασιλείας κατεστοχάζετο B 185 ὡς αὐτὴν εὐκαίρως περιληψόμενος. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν εἰς τὸ μέλλον ἐτα-
 15 μιεύετο· τότε δὲ τῆς ἔξω σοφίας ἐπιμεληθεῖς – καὶ γὰρ ἦν τῷ τοσοῦτῳ χρόνῳ παραρρυῖσα καὶ πρὸς τὸ μηδὲν ὅλως κεχωρηκυῖα τῇ τῶν κρατησάντων ἀγροικίᾳ καὶ ἀμαθίᾳ – καὶ διατριβὰς τῶν μαθηματικῶν
 15 κατὰ τὴν Μαгнаύραν ποιήσας αὐθις ἀκμάζειν καὶ ἀνηβᾶν ταύτην ἐσπούδαζέ τε καὶ πεφιλοτίμητο. καὶ τοῦτο τῶν ἔργων αὐτοῦ κάλλιστόν τε καὶ περιβόητον ὃν οὐκ ἴσχυσέ πως τὰς ἐνούσας ἄλλως κῆρας αὐτῷ ἀπονίψασθαι. ἦρχε δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης σχολῆς τὴν μὲν φιλοσοφίαν ἐξηγούμενος Λέων ἐκεῖνος ὁ μέγας τε καὶ φιλόσοφος, ὃς κατὰ συγγένειαν
 20 μὲν τὴν ἐξαδέλφου τῷ πατριάρχῃ Ἰαννῇ ὠκείωτο, τὸν θρόνον δὲ τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης κατέχων, ἐπειδὴ νῦν ἐκ καθαιρέσεως ἐσχόλαζεν, εἰς ταύτην προεβιάζετο τὴν σχολήν, τὴν ἀμαθίαν πόρρω ποι ἀπελάνων καὶ ἐκ-
 20 τρεπόμενος.
27. Ἄξιον δὲ μὴ δ' ὅπως εἰς γινῶσιν ἦλθεν ὁ τηλικούτος ἀνὴρ τῷ τότε κρατοῦντι παραδραμεῖν. Θεόφιλος δὲ ἦν, ὁ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ σπορευς καὶ πατήρ. οὗτος | οὖν ἐπεὶ τὴν τῶν μαθημάτων εἰς ἄκρον ἐπιστήμην f.63v

25.101–102 : die 11 Nov. (fortasse a. 865 secundum Halkin *AB* 62 [1944] 196–197) Petronas obiit 102–103 : de morte Manuelis ca. a. 863 cf. Signes 2013 26.3–4 : die 26 Apr. a. 862 Bardas Caesar designatus est 20–21 : a. 843 Leo Philosophus a sede Thessalonicense expulsus est

Cap. 26: GeorgCont (Istrin) 9.31–10.2; Gen 69.39–41; Log A 243.210–213 | PsSym 664.6–8; Scyl 101.65–83 Cap. 27: Log A 227.249–228.261 | PsSym 640.3–16; Scyl 101.84–104.71

102 πετρωνᾶς V 26.2 γαῦρος τε V 6 εἶναι V 7 ὡ V : ὁ B edd 8 καταγέλως V : γέλως Scyl 101.71 9 τοῦτον B edd Boor 9 μεταπίσει B edd 10 τέ ὡς V 11 παραληψόμενος Scyl 101.72 13 παραρρυῖσα V 15 τὴν om. edd 15 μαгнаύραν V 15 ἀγκμάζειν V 18 post δὲ add. καὶ edd 19 τέ V 20 τὴν : τοῦ edd 20 ἐξ ἀδελφοῦ V 23 ἀποτρεπόμενος edd 27.1 τῷ τότε : τῷ ante corr. V (τὸ inser.)

though there was some little distance, that neither one heard of the other's death. Such an end of life is Petronas said to have had; and Manuel also died before him, seized by an illness.

26. Now Bardas passed on and constantly changed dignities granted by the emperor even as a proud and ambitious youth changes many-coloured garments for joy. Thus he passed on and rose to the glory and dignity of cesar, whilst Michael was excited by nothing to do with affairs of state as by spectacles and races of horses. And what was grave was that he not only loved to be a spectator, though he also took time for this, but also himself drove the horses – alas for the empire of the Romans! – being a spectacle and game and laughing-stock to all. Bardas thus acted as guardian of his nephew, and he did not want to live, so it appeared, unless he could change this knave's persuasion. But for the meanwhile he himself administered the affairs of state and he aimed at the imperial office, so that he might take possession of it in propitious wise. But he laid this up for the future; for the present he cultivated secular wisdom – for at that time it had disappeared from memory and come to a state of absolute nullity through the rusticity and lack of culture of those who had ruled – and he caused the practice of learning to flourish again in the Magnaura and endeavoured and took pride in restoring youthful vigour to this latter. But although this most beautiful and celebrated thing was one of his works, it could not wash away the blemishes which otherwise belonged to him. The director of this school was that Leo, expounder of philosophy and a great philosopher himself, who was related as cousin to the patriarch Jannes. He had occupied the see of Salonica, but because of his deposition he was now at leisure, he was put in charge of this school, in order to drive off far away and dispel the lack of culture.

27. It is also fitting that we should not omit mention of how this man came to the acquaintance of the then emperor. This latter was Theophilus, the progenitor and father of Michael. Now, because Leo had come to the ut-

- ἐξήσκησεν, τοσοῦτον χωρήσας δι' ἀπασῶν, τῆς τε φιλοσοφίας καὶ τῶν
 5 αὐτῆς ἀδελφῶν, ἀριθμητικῆς τέ φημι καὶ γεωμετρίας καὶ ἀστρονομίας,
 ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς πολυθρυλλήτου μουσικῆς, καὶ εἰς ἄκρον αὐτῶν ἐλάσας ὥς
 οὐδὲ μίᾱς ἕτερος σπουδῇ τε πολλῇ καὶ βίῳ ἀπράγμονι καὶ μεγέθει φύσεως,
 εὐτελεῖ τινι καταλύματι χρώμενος καὶ καταγωγίῳ τοὺς εἰς αὐτὸν φοι-
 τῶν|τας ἐπαίδευεν, ἐκδιδάσκων ἦντινα ἐπιστήμην καὶ βούλοιντο. ὥς B 186
- 10 δ' ἤδη χρόνος παρίππασεν καὶ τῶν μαθητῶν οὐκ ὀλίγοι κατὰ τὰς
 ἐπιστήμας προέκοπτον, συνέβη τινὰ νεανίαν τῶν ἑαυτοῦ φοιτητῶν, τῆς
 γεωμετρικῆς ἐπιστήμης ἄρτι τὸ πέρας κατειληφότα, ὑπογραφέα γενέσθαι
 τινὸς στρατηγίδα τάξιν διέποντος, καὶ προκοπῆς ἔνεκεν τοῦ βίου ἀγα-
 πῆσαι τούτῳ ἀκολουθεῖν. ὥς δὲ κατὰ τὸν πόλεμον ἅμα τούτῳ ἐγένετο,
 15 ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως, ζωγρεῖται καὶ τῶν ἐπιφανῶν τινι εἰς
 δουλείαν διὰ τὸ νέον τῆς ἡλικίας δίδοται. Μαμοῦν ἐκεῖνος οὕτω κα-
 λούμενος τηνικαῦτα μὲν τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν ἐτέλει ἀμεραμουνῆς, ἄλλοις τε
 μαθήμασι σχολάζων Ἑλληνικοῖς καὶ δὴ καὶ γεωμετρίας ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πλεῖ-
 στον οὐκ ἀμελῶν. λόγου δέ ποτε παρὰ τοῦ τὸν νεανίαν ἔχοντος δεσ-
 20 πότου κινηθέντος περὶ τῆς σπουδῆς τοῦ ἀμεραμουνῆ καὶ τῆς τῶν
 μαθημάτων ἐπιμελείας, ὥς δὴ καὶ περὶ τῆς γεωμετρίας ἔλεγεν, ἀκοῦσαι
 τούτου εἶπεν ὁ νεανίας ἐπιθυμεῖν καὶ τῶν αὐτοῦ διδασκάλων, ὥς καὶ
 αὐτοῦ τινὰ ἔχοντος ἐπιστήμην γεωμετρικὴν. ὥς οὖν ἀνέμαθεν ὁ ἀμεραμ-
 25 ουνῆς, μετὰ περιχαρείας εἰσκαλεῖται πολλῆς, καὶ τὸν αἰχμάλωτον ἐπυν-
 θάνετο εἰ γινώσιν τῆς τοιαύτης κέκτηται ἐπιστήμης. καὶ ἐπεὶ τὴν συγκα-
 τάθεσιν ἐποιήσατο, ἔτι μὲν ἀπιστίαν πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνου λόγους ὁ
 βάρβαρος κεκτημένος οὐκ ἔλεγεν ἐτέρους εἶναι ὑπὸ τὸν οὐρανὸν τῶν
 ἐκείνου διδασκάλων ἐκτός. ὥς δ' ὁ νεανίας ἔλεγε τούτων διακοῦσαι ἐπιθυ-
 30 μεῖν καὶ | τῆς αὐτῶν διδασκαλίας, εὐθύς οὗτοι παραστάντες ἀπήρχοντο B 187
 ταύτης, καὶ διεχαράττοντο τρίγωνά τε καὶ τετράγωνα σχήματα, | καὶ f.64

27.14–15 : Logotheta hoc bellum ad Amorii expugnationem in a. 838 falso attribuit 16–17 : Mamun ut calipha apud Saracenos ab a. 813 usque ad a. 833 regnavit, sed in Bagdad imperium tantummodo post Aug. a. 819 accepit

4 δι' ἀπασῶν V : διὰ πασῶν edd 4 τε om. edd 5 τῶ αὐτῆς ante corr. V (v inser.)
 6 περιθρυλλήτου edd 7 οὐδὲ μίᾱς V Boor, cf. Scyl 101.85 οὐδὲ μίαν ἕτερος : οὐδεμιᾶς edd
 7 ἀπράγμονι V 8 τινὶ edd 9 ἐκδιδάσκων ἦντινα – βούλοιντο edd e Scyl 101.86–102.87
 ὁποῖαν ἕκαστος βούλοιτο : ἐκδιδάσκων ἦντινα – βούλεται V Boor : ἔκ<αστον> διδάσκων –
 βούλεται conl. Boor in app. : ἐκδιδάσκων ἦντινα ἐπιστήμην <ἕκαστος> [καὶ] βούλοιτο conl.
 dubitanter Kamb 10 παρείπασεν V : παρίπασεν Comb 13 στρατηγίδα Bekk, cf. Scyl
 102.89 ὑπογραφέα... τινὸς στρατηγοῦ : στρατηγίδος V Comb Boor 16 διὰ : δαὶ V ut
 vid. 17 ἀμερουμνῆς V, sed cf. infra IV.27.79 et supra IV.16.18 20 τοῦ om. edd (conl.
 addendum esse Bekk in app.) 20 ἀμερουμνῆ V 23 ἔχοντος edd Boor : ἔχοντα V 24 ἀμε-
 ρουμνῆς V 27 ἀπὸ τῶν οὐρανῶν Comb 28 διδασκάλως V 28 ἔλεγεν edd 30 διεχα-
 ράττοντο V Boor, cf. Scyl 102.9 : διεχάραττον τὰ B edd

most perfection in the knowledge of the branches of learning, advancing to such an extent in all of them, Philosophy and her sisters, that is Arithmetic, Geometry and Astronomy, as well as much-famed Music, and had progressed to the summit of these same as no one else in any other single branch through his great zeal and life removed from public affairs and sublimity of nature, he instructed the pupils who came to him making use of a simple lodging and residence, teaching whichever subject they desired. When much time had gone by and not a few of his disciples had made progress in their studies, it happened that one youth from amongst his pupils, who had just finished the study of Geometry, became the secretary of a man who held the rank of general; and for the sake of advancement in his life, he agreed to follow this latter. And when he went off to battle with him, he was captured somehow by the Hagarenes and was given in servitude to one of the distinguished men because of his young age. At this time, the man called Mamun held office as amernounes of the Ishmaelites, and besides studying other branches of Hellenic learning, he was particularly careful not to neglect Geometry. Now, when the master who owned the youth once talked about the zeal of the amernounes and his occupation with learning, and that he also held discourse on Geometry, the youth said that he desired to listen to him and to his teachers, in as much as he also had some knowledge of Geometry. When the amernounes learned this, he summoned him with great joy, and he asked the captive if he had acquired knowledge of this science. When he replied in the affirmative, the barbarian, who was still incredulous of his words, said that there were no other teachers under the sun besides his own. But when the youth said that he wanted to listen to these same and to their teaching, the men came and commenced this latter forthwith, and triangular and quadrangular shapes were drawn, and they brought forth the Euclidian tables; and whatever they taught in manly and scholarly fashion, saying that this and the other had this or that name, with regard to the cause or reason, or to the question why this was so and had such a name, they gave no appropriate answer,

- τοὺς Εὐκλείδου κανόνας προσέφερον, καὶ τὸ μὲν ὃ τι ἐδίδασκον ἀνδρικῶς
 καὶ ἐπιστημονικῶς, τοῦτο λέγοντες τοιαύτην ἔχοι τὴν κλῆσιν καὶ
 τοιαύτην τὸ ἕτερον, αἰτίαν δὲ καὶ λόγον, καὶ <τὸ> διότι οὕτως τε ἔστιν
 35 καὶ κλῆσιν ἔχοι, κατάλληλον ἀπεδίδοσαν οὐδαμῶς, ἀμαθίαν καὶ ἄγνοϊαν,
 ἀλλ’ οὐ στενότητα γλώττης πως ἔχοντες. ὥς οὖν τούτους γαυρουμένους
 ἑώρα καὶ μέγα φρονούντας ἐπὶ τῇ τῶν σχημάτων ὁ νεανίας καταγραφῇ,
 “τί”, φησίν, “ὦ οὔτοι, ἐπὶ παντὸς λόγου καὶ πράγματος τῆς αἰτίας τὸ
 κράτος ἐχούσης καὶ τοῦ διότι, ὑμεῖς τὴν ὑπαρξιν μόνον λέγοντες τοὺς
 40 τούτων παρατρέχετε λόγους ὥς οὐκ ἀναγκαίους, καὶ εἰς ταῦτὸν τὸν δι-
 δασκόμενον ἄγετε ὅπου καὶ τὸν μηδὲν παιδευόμενον μὴ δέ τι περὶ τούτων
 διαγινώσκοντα;” τῶν δὲ ἀπορησάντων καὶ τὰς αἰτίας τούτων διευκρινεῖν
 καὶ διδάσκειν παρακελευομένων, ἐπεὶ διερμηνεύοντα καὶ σαφῶς λέγοντα
 ταύτας δīήκουον, ὥς τοῦτο μὲν διὰ τόδε καὶ τοῦτο διὰ τόδε τὴν εἰρημένην
 ἔχει κλῆσιν τε καὶ γραφήν, καὶ ἅμα αὐτῶν ὁ νοῦς διηνοίγετο καὶ τῶν λε-
 45 γομένων συνείσαν, θάμβει λοιπὸν συσχεθέντες ἡρώτων ὁπόσους τὸ
 Βυζάντιον τοιοῦτους τρέφει ἄνδρας καὶ ἐπιστήμονας. ὥς δὲ πολλοὺς
 οὗτος ἔλεγεν καὶ ἑαυτὸν τῷ τῶν μαθητιώντων χορῷ ἀλλ’ οὐ τῶν δι-
 δασκόντων κατέλεγεν, περὶ τοῦ διδασκάλου τοῦτον αὖθις ἐπανηρώτων,
 εἰ ζῶσιν ἔτι ἡρίθμηται καὶ ὑπεράνω πέφυκε γῆς. ὁ δὲ “ἔστι τε”, | ἔφησεν, B 188
 50 “ὑπὲρ γῆς”, καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀρετὴν ἐξεθείασεν, ἀκτῆμονά τε βίον διάγειν
 λέγων αὐτὸν καὶ τοῖς πολλοῖς ἄγνωστον ἐπὶ σοφία διαλάμποντα.
 γράμματα γοῦν εὐθύς ὁ Μαμοῦν πρὸς ἐκεῖνον διαχαράττει τόνδε τὸν νοῦν
 περιέχοντα, “ὥς ἐκ τοῦ καρποῦ τὸ δένδρον ἐπέγνωμεν, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ μαθη-
 55 τοῦ τὸν διδάσκαλον. ἐπεὶ γοῦν τόσος ὢν περὶ τὴν ἐπιστήμην τῶν ὄντων
 δι’ ἀρετὴν καὶ γνώσεως βάθος ἄγνωστος εἶ τοῖς σοῖς συμπολίταις καὶ τῆς
 σοφίας καὶ γνώσεως οὕτω τοὺς καρποὺς ἀπειλήφας, ὅτι μὴ δὲ | τιμῆς f.64v
 ἡξίωσαι παρ’ αὐτῶν, μὴ ἀπαξιώσης ἐλθεῖν πρὸς ἡμᾶς καὶ τῆς σῆς διδα-
 σκαλίας μεταδοῦναι ἡμῖν. εἰ γὰρ οὕτω τοῦτο γένηται, τοὺς αὐχένας
 σοι κλινεῖ γένος ἅπαν τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν, καὶ πλούτου καὶ δωρεῶν
 60 ἀξιωθήσῃ, ὧν οὐδεὶς πώποτε ἀνθρώπων ἡξίωται”. ἐπιδούς οὖν τὰ
 γράμματα τῷ νεανίᾳ καὶ δώροις αὐτὸν φιλοφρονησάμενος τὸν διδάσκα-
 λον καταλαμβάνειν ἐκέλευσεν, καὶ τιμὰς εὐθύς ὑπίσχεντο καὶ δωρεὰς καὶ

|| 53 Matt 7.17–20

31 ὅτι edd Boor 31 ἀνδρικῶς V 32 ἔχοι : ἔχει conl. Bekk in app. Boor, cf. Scyl 102.11
 φέρι 33 λόγον edd Boor e Scyl 102.12 : λέγον V 33 τὸ ante διότι add. Boor e Scyl
 102.12 33 τέ ἔστιν V 34 ἀμαθείαν edd 35 γλώτ|τῆς V 36 μεγάλφρονοντας V
 37 φησιν V 38 τοῦ Bekk, cf. Scyl : τὸ V 39 ταυτὸν V 40 τὸν μηδὲν edd Boor : τὸ
 μηδὲν V 41 διαπορησάντων edd 43 διατόδε V 44 κλῆσιν τε V 44 γραφῇ ante corr.
 V (v inser.) 46 καὶ om. edd 49 εἰ V Boor, cf. Scyl 103.25 εἰ περίεστιν : οὐ edd (εἰ conl. Bekk
 in app.) 49 ὑπὲρ ἄνω V 50 τε om. edd 52 διαχαράκτει V 52 τόνδε V 53 καὶ om.
 edd

though through lack of learning and ignorance rather than any inadequacy of speech. Now, when he saw that they were proud and gave themselves airs over their drawings of the forms, the youth said, 'Why, O you men, though the cause and the question 'why' prevails in the case of every argument and thing, do you simply mention the existence of these things, neglecting the reasons for them as unnecessary, and bring the pupil to the same state as one who learns nothing nor discerns anything concerning these things?' Being at a loss, even when they were bidden to examine and teach the reasons for these things, when they heard him interpreting and explaining clearly, that one had such a name and design for such and such a reason, and the other had another name and shape for another reason, their minds were opened up and they understood what he said, and seized with marvel they enquired how many such men and scholars Byzantium nurtured. When he said that there were many, and that he was ranked amongst the company of pupils and not the teachers, they asked him further about his teacher and whether he was still counted amongst the living and was upon earth. Said he, 'He is on earth,' and he extolled his virtue, saying that he shone in wisdom whilst living a life of poverty and unbeknown to the common people. Forthwith Mamun drew up a letter to him with the following sense, 'As from the fruit we know the tree, so from the pupil the teacher. Seeing that, although you are so great in the science of things through virtue and depth of knowledge, you are unknown to your fellow citizens and have not yet received the fruits of wisdom and knowledge, in that you have not been awarded any dignity by them, do not disdain to come to us and impart your teaching to us. For if this come to pass, all the race of the Saracens shall bend the neck unto you, and you shall be deemed worthy of wealth and bounties, whereof no man has ever been deemed worthy.' Giving the youth the letter and indulging him with gifts, he commanded him to return to his teacher, and he promised yet further bounties and, if he desired, the return home, if only he would convince the other to leave the land of the Romans. Now, when he arrived in the imperial city and

- αὔθις, εἰ βούλοιτο, τὴν εἰς οἶκον ἐπάνοδον, μόνον εἰ τοῦτον πείσειε τὴν
 65 τῶν Ῥωμαίων καταλιπεῖν γῆν. ὥς γοῦν τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἔφθασε καὶ
 τοῦ διδασκάλου πρὸς πρόσωπον ἔστηκεν, ἡ τούτου θεὰ ἀναφλέξασά τε
 καὶ οἶον ἀναθερμάνασα ὀλοφύρεσθαι κατηνάγκαζε καὶ δάκρυσιν οὐ πα-
 70 ρειὰς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τράχηλον καὶ στέρνα διάβροχα ἐμποιεῖν. καὶ τὸ μὲν
 πρῶτον ἀφασία τῶν δρωμένων τὸν διδάσκαλον κατελάμβανεν, τίς τε εἴη
 οὐκ εἰδώς, καὶ ὅτου ταῦτα ἔνεκεν διαπράττετο· ἡ τε γὰρ τούτου μορφὴ B 189
 ἀλ|λοιωθεῖσα τῷ χρόνῳ καὶ τῇ τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας κακουχίᾳ ἄλλοιον τὸν
 νεανίαν ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐκείνον εἶναι τὸν γνωριζόμενον ἀνεδίδασκεν. ὥς δὲ τὴν
 τούτου γνῶσιν κατὰ μικρὸν ἐδίδου, ὄνομα καὶ μαθήματα ἐπειπών, καὶ
 προσετίθει τὰ τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς ἀπολυτρώσεως τε καὶ
 75 ἀφίξεως, καὶ ἅμα εἰς χεῖρας ἐδίδου δὴ τὴν γραφὴν, τότε δὴ κοινῇ τὴν
 τραγωδίαν ἐπλήρουν καὶ θρηνωδίαν. πλὴν οὐκ ἀκίνδυνον εἶναι λογισά-
 μενος τὴν ἐκ τῶν ἐχθρῶν γραφὴν, εἴ γέ ποτε κατάφωρος γένοιτο, τῷ λο-
 γοθέτῃ πρόσεισι – Θεόκτιστος οὗτος ἦν ὁ παρανάλωμα τῷ Βάρδᾳ γενό-
 80 μενος – καὶ διηγεῖται τὰ τοῦ αἰχμαλώτου πάντα καὶ μαθητοῦ, καὶ ἅμα εἰς
 χεῖρας δίδωσιν τὴν τοῦ ἀμεραμουνῆ γραφὴν. αὕτη ἡ αἰτία τῆς τοῦδε
 τοῦ ἀνδρὸς πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα γνώσεώς τε καὶ οἰκειώσεως. οὗτος ὁ
 μαθητὴς καὶ τοῦτο τὸ γράμμα τὴν τε τοῦ Λέοντος σοφίαν ἐν ὑπαίθρῳ
 γενέσθαι ἐν γωνίᾳ τέως οὔσαν ἐποίησεν καὶ τῆς εὐτελείας ἐκείνης καὶ
 πενίας ἔξω παρήγαγεν. τό τε γὰρ γράμμα ἐμφανίζει τῷ Θεοφίλῳ ὁ
 85 λογοθέτης, καὶ προσκαλεῖται τοῦτον αὐτός, καὶ πλουτίζεται καὶ ἐν τῷ
 τῶν ἀγίων τεσσαράκοντα μαρτύρων ναῷ διδάσκειν δημοσίᾳ παρὰ τοῦ
 βασιλέως ἐπείγεται. οὐ πολὺς γοῦν χρόνος, καὶ ἐπεὶ διέγνω | ὁ Μαιμῶν f.65
 μὴ βούλεσθαι τὸν φιλόσοφον τῆς οἰκείας τὴν ἄλλοτρίαν ἀλλάξασθαι,
 διὰ γραφῆς ἐκτίθησιν ἀπορίας γεωμετρικῶν τε καὶ ἀστρολογικῶν
 ζητημάτων καὶ τινων ἐτέρων δυσδιαγνώστων κεφαλαίων, καὶ τὴν λύσιν
 90 τούτων κομίσασθαι ἀξιοῖ. ὥς δ' οὖν ἕκαστα προσηκόντως ὁ Λέων
 ἡρμήνευσεν καὶ τὰς τούτων λύσεις ἐξέθετο, προσεφῆρμοσέ τε τούτοις καὶ
 τινα προγνώσεως, ἐκπλήξεως | ἔνεκα, τότε δὴ μεγάλως ἐπὶ χεῖρας B 190
 λαβρόντα αὐτὰ τὸν ἀμεραμουνῆ τρωθῆναι δὴ τῷ τούτου πόθῳ, καὶ μέγα

64 γοῦν om. edd 64 τὴν: γῆν Comb 65 πρὸς: κατὰ conl. Boor in app. 66 θερμαίνουσα edd 66 ὀλοφύρεσθαι V 67 παρειὰς edd: πόδας V Boor 67 μὲν om. edd 72 καταμικ-
 ρὸν V 72 μαθήματα V 78 ὁ παρανάλωμα – γενόμενος fortasse a lectore in marg. adscripta
 et in textu ab librario inserta putavit Boor, eundem autem codicem habuerit Scyl 103.40 ὁ παρὰ
 τοῦ Βάρδα μετὰ ταῦτα ἀναιρεθεῖς 78 διηγέτο edd 79 εἰς χεῖρας om. edd 80 τῆς –
 γνώσεως τε καὶ οἰκειώσεως Boor: τῆς – γνώσις τε καὶ οἰκείωσις (sic) V: τῆς – γνώσεως τε καὶ
 οἰκείωσις edd: fortasse τις – γνώσις τε καὶ οἰκείωσις, cf. Scyl. 103.43–44 γνῶσις γίνεται καὶ
 οἰκείωσις 85 τεσσαράκοντα μαρτύρων: μ' edd 89 καὶ τινων V 90 ἕκαστον B edd
 91 ἡρμήνευσεν ante ὁ Λέων edd 92 τινα προγνώσεως: τινὰς προγνώσεις conl. Bekk in
 app.: τινὰ προγνώσεως ἐμπλεα Boor, cf. Scyl 103.51–52 καταπλήξεως χάριν καὶ τινα τῶν
 μελλόντων σημεῖα προγνωστικά

stood face to face with his teacher, the sight of the latter rekindled a flame and warmed him, and caused him to weep and to drench not only his cheeks but also his neck and breast. At first speechlessness took hold of the teacher concerning these actions, not knowing who this might be nor why he did these things. For the other's form had been changed through time and the misery of captivity, and it made him think that this was some other youth than the one he knew. But when, little by little, he disclosed to him his identity, pronouncing his name and studies, and added the account of his captivity and the reason for his release and arrival there, then he put also the letter in his hands, and they lamented and wailed together. But considering the letter from the enemies not to be without danger if ever it should be discovered, Leo went to the logothete – this was Theoktistos, who fell victim to Bardas – and he recounted everything about the pupil and his captivity, and at the same time he put the letter of the ameramnounes in his hands. This is the reason for this man's acquaintance and relation with the emperor. This pupil and this letter caused Leo's wisdom, which had been so long in the shadow, to come into the open and brought it forth from such shabbiness and poverty. For the logothete showed the letter to Theophilus, and this same summoned him, and he became rich and was urged by the emperor to teach in public in the church of the Forty Martyrs. Not long afterwards, when Mamun had understood that the philosopher did not want to exchange his own for a foreign land, he expressed by letter his difficulties in geometric and astrologic question and certain other obscure arguments, and he requested him to convey to him the solution of these things. And after Leo had interpreted each matter in appropriate wise and expounded the solutions, adapting to these also certain elements of prognosis for the sake of surprise, then the ameramnounes, taking the letter with these things in his hands, was affected greatly with longing for him and uttered a great cry, marvelling at this man of Philosophy and learning. Whereupon he sent a letter not to him, but to Theophilus, with the following sense, 'I would have wanted to come to you, fulfilling the duty of

- 95 ἀνακραγεῖν, τὸν ἄνδρα τῆς φιλοσοφίας καὶ τῶν μαθημάτων ὑπεραγάμε-
νον. ὅθεν εὐθύς οὐ πρὸς ἐκείνον πρὸς δὲ τὸν Θεόφιλον ἐπιστολὴν πέμπει,
τὸν νοῦν τοῦτον ἐμπεριέχουσιν ὡς “ἐβουλόμην μὲν αὐτὸς ἀφικέσθαι σοι,
ἔργον φίλου τε καὶ μαθητοῦ ἐκπληρῶν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ τε προσανακειμένη μοι
100 ἀρχὴ καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὑπὸ τὴν χεῖρά μου τελῶν καὶ ἐξουσίαν λαὸς τοῦτο οὐ
συγχωρεῖ, ἀξιῶ τὸν ὃν ἔχεις ἐπὶ φιλοσοφίᾳ καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις ἐπιστήμαις
περιβόητον ἄνδρα βραχύν τινα χρόνον ἐπαποστεῖλαι, καὶ συγγενέσθαι
μοι τοῦτον πείσαι, τρόπῳ διδασκαλίας τῆς αὐτοῦ ἐπιστήμης μετα-
διδόντα καὶ ἀρετῆς τῷ οὕτως ἔχοντι ἐμοὶ πρὸς ἐκείνας ἐρωτικῶς. πάντως
δὲ οὐκ ἀναβολὴ τις γενήσεται ὅτι τε τῶν οὐχ ὁμογλώσσων ἐγὼ καὶ ὅτι
105 τῆς πίστεως ἀλλότριος· ἀλλ’ ὅτι μᾶλλον τοιοῦτος ὁ ἀξιῶν, πέρας ἢ
αἴτησις λήψεται παρὰ φίλοις ἐπεικέσι τε καὶ χρηστοῖς. χάρις δέ σοι κα-
ταβληθήσεται ὑπὲρ τούτου χρυσίου μὲν εἴκοσι κεντηνάρια, εἰρήνην δὲ καὶ
σπονδαὶ ἀΐδιοι τε καὶ ἀτελεύτητοι”. τοσοῦτοις μὲν ἐκείνος τὴν αὐτοῦ
ἐξωνεῖτο παρουσίαν καὶ ἀφίξιν· ἀλλ’ ὁ Θεόφιλος ἄτοπον κρίνας καὶ ἄλο-
γον τὸ οἰκεῖον δοῦναι ἑτέροις καλὸν καὶ τὴν τῶν ὄντων γνῶσιν ἔκδοτον
110 ποιῆσαι τοῖς ἔθνεσι, δι’ ἧς τὸ Ῥωμαίων γένος θαυμάζεται τε καὶ τιμᾶται
παρὰ πᾶσιν, ἐκείνῳ μὲν οὐκ ἐπένευσε, τοῦτον δὲ διὰ τιμῆς πλείονος σχῶν
τὸν Ἰωάννην τοῦ | πατριαρχικοῦ τότε θρόνου ἀντιποιοῦμενον κατὰ B 191
τὴν Θεσσαλονικέων μητρόπολιν, καὶ ὡς πλήρη σοφίας ὄντα καὶ ὡς
ᾧκειωμένον τούτῳ κατὰ συγγένειαν, χειροτονεῖν ἐγκελεύεται.
28. Ὅς ἐπεὶ μετὰ τὴν χειροτονίαν κατὰ τὴν Θεσσαλονικὴν ἐγένετο, εἶχε
μὲν ἅ|παντας τὴν αὐτοῦ εὐλαβουμένους τε καὶ τιμώντας ἀρετὴν, εἶχε δὲ f.65v
μᾶλλον τιμώντας τοῦτον λαμπρότερον ἔκ τινος αἰτίας ἣν ὁ λόγος δηλοῖ.
περὶ τὰς τῶν καρπῶν γονὰς στεῖρά πως τοσοῦτον ὥρᾳτο ἢ γῆ καὶ ἄτεκ-
5 νος κατ’ ἐκείνο καιροῦ ὡς <τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας ἢ μετανάστας γενέσθαι
ἐλπίζειν> ἢ θάνατον κατεπείγεσθαι. οὐς ἰδὼν τῷ τῆς συμπαθείας οἶκτῳ
βληθεὶς μήτ’ ἀθυμεῖν παρήνει μήτε μὴν συμφοραῖς ἐπαπολύσθαι, εἴ γε δὴ
βούλοιντο τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ ἐπικουρίας καὶ αὐτοῦ γε τυχεῖν. περὶ τινα γοῦν
καιρόν, ὃν ἐκ τῆς ἀστρολογικῆς ἐδιδάσκετο ἀστέρων τινῶν ἐπιτολαῖς τε

27.112 : de tempore designationis Ioannis cf. III.26

Cap. 28: | Scyl 104.71–82

95 ὑπεραγάμενον nos, cf. Scyl 104.54–55 : ὑπεραγάμενος V edd Boor 98 post ἀρχὴ add. ἐκ
θεοῦ edd e Scyl 104.57 98 τελῶν V 101 συγγενέσθαι μοι V 103 ἀναβολὴ τίς V
103 οὐχ (sic) V 106 εἴκοσι : ἐκατὸν Comb in marg. e Scyl 104.65 108 ἄτοπον κρίνας :
ἀνταποκρίνας edd 110 ἔθνεσι edd : ἔθει V 110 ἧς : ἦν Boor e Scyl 104.67 110 ante
Ῥωμαίων add. τῶν Bekk, sed cf. Scyl 104.67 111 τοῦ τὸν V 28.5 καιροῦ V 6 τοὺς ἐνοι-
κοῦντας ἢ μετανάστας γενέσθαι ἐλπίζειν conl. Kamb, cf. Scyl 104.76–77 καὶ πάντες ἢ μεταν-
άσται γενέσθαι τῆς πατρίδος, ἢ λιμῶ καὶ ἐνδείᾳ τῶν ἀναγκαίων διαφθαρῆσεσθαι ἠλπίζον :
lacunam statuit Boor 6 ἢ : καὶ edd 7 ἐπαπολύσθαι V 9 ὃν : ᾧ vel καθ’ ὃν conl. Boor in
app., sed cf. Scyl 104.78 9 ἐπιτολαῖς edd e Scyl 104.79 ἐπιτολὴ : ἐντολαῖς V

friend and pupil. But because the realm which is entrusted to me and the numerous populace under my rule and authority does not permit this, I ask you to send for a short time the man whom you have who is acclaimed in Philosophy and other sciences, and to persuade him to keep company with me sharing, after the manner of a teacher, his knowledge and virtue with me who fervently desire them. There is to be no delaying on any account because I do not speak the same language and am of a different faith; but rather, because it is such a one who asks, the request is to be accepted amongst respectable and upright friends. As thanks to you for this, twenty kentenaria of gold shall be laid down, as well as peace and eternal, unceasing treaties.' With these things he was purchasing the other's presence and arrival; but Theophilus, judging it to be out of place and unreasonable to give one's own advantage to others and to betray to foreigners the knowledge of existing things, whereby the nation of the Romans is admired and honoured by all, did not give his ascent to the other but, holding Leo in yet greater honour, he commanded John who then held the patriarchal see to ordain Leo to the metropolis of Salonica, in as much as he was full of wisdom and was related by consanguinity with the former.

28. Now, after his ordination Leo went to Salonica, and he received reverence and honour from everyone for his virtue, but he received even more splendid honour for a reason which our account will reveal. At this time the earth became somehow so barren and unproductive in the bearing of fruit that <the inhabitants hoped to emigrate,> or else to confront death. Seeing them, he was stricken with compassionate sympathy and exhorted them not to despair nor to succumb to calamities if they desired to obtain God's aid and his own. At a certain time then, when he learnt from astrology through the risings and phases of certain stars that there was to be a certain effluence

- 10 και φάσσει ἀπόρροϊάν τινα καὶ συμπάθειαν τοῖς περιγείοις προσγίνεσθαι, τὰ σπέρματα τῇ γῇ κατεβάλλετο καὶ ὑπὸ κόλπους ταύτης ἐδίδου, ὧν τοσαύτην γενέσθαι συνέβη τὴν εὐφορίαν τε καὶ εὐκαρπίαν, ἐπεὶ τὸ ἔαρ ἀνέτελλεν καὶ ὁ τοῦ θέρους ἐφειστήκει καιρὸς, ὥς πολλοὺς ἐπαρκέσαι χρόνους αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰς τὸ ἐξῆς, πάντως οὕτω τοῦ θεοῦ τὸν ἄμνητον
- 15 πολύχουν ἐνεγκαμένον, ταῖς τῶν ἀναγκαζομένων λιτανείαις ἐπιδόντος καὶ ἱκετείαις, ἀλλ’ οὐ τῇ ἐκείνου περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ματαιοπονίᾳ. τοῦτο γοῦν τὴν ἐπὶ πλέον τῶν Θεσσαλονικέων ἡΐξησε πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα στοργὴν καὶ τὸ φίλτρον αὐτῶν διήγειρεν, ὥς εἰκός.

29. Θαυμαζόντων δὲ πολλῶν | περὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ σοφίας, καὶ ὅπως εἰς B 192 ἄκρον ἔφθασε πασῶν τῶν ἐπιστημῶν, λέγεται πρὸς τινὰ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ συνήθων φάναι ὡς τὴν μὲν γραμματικὴν καὶ ποιητικὴν κατὰ τὴν Κωνσταντινουπόλιν διατρίβων κατάρθωσεν, ῥητορικὴν δὲ καὶ φιλο-
- 5 σοφίαν καὶ ἀριθμῶν ἀναλήψεις κατὰ τὴν νῆσον Ὑάτρον γενόμενος· ἐκεῖσε γάρ τινι σοφῷ ἀνδρὶ ἐντυχὼν καὶ τὰς ἀρχὰς μόνον καὶ τινὰς λόγους παρ’ αὐτοῦ λαβὼν, ἐπεὶ μὴ ὅσον ἐβούλετο εὗρισκεν, τῇ χέρσῳ ταύτης περινο-
- 10 στῶν καὶ μοναστήρια καταλαμβάνων καὶ τὰς ἀποκειμένας βίβλους ἀνερευνῶν τε καὶ ποριζόμενος, καὶ πρὸς τὰς κορυφὰς τῶν ὀρέων σπουδαιότερον ταύτας ἐμμελετῶν, πρὸς τὸ τῆς γνώσεως οὕτως ὕψος ἀνεβιβάζετο, ὅτε δὴ καὶ κόρον σχῶν πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν αὐθις ὑπέστρεψεν, τὰ σπέρματα τῶν ἐπιστημῶν ταῖς τῶν βουλομένων διανοαῖς καταβαλλόμενος. f.66

- Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν πρότερον· καὶ νῦν δὲ ἐπεὶ μετὰ τρεῖς χρόνους – το-
- 15 σοῦτος δὲ ὁ τῆς τοῦ θρόνου ἀντιλήψεως χρόνος – ἐκ τῆς καθαιρέσεως αὐθις ἐσχόλαζε, τῆς κατὰ τὴν Μαγναύραν μὲν οὗτος ἦρχε φιλοσόφου σχολῆς, ὁ δὲ δὴ τούτου φοιτητῆς Θεόδωρος τοῦ τῆς γεωμετρίας διαιτητηρίου προϊστάτο, καὶ Θεοδήγιος τοῦ τῆς ἀστρονομίας, καὶ Κομητᾶς τῆς τὰς φωνὰς ἐξελληνιζούσης γραμματικῆς· οἷς ὁ Βάρδας καὶ δαψιλῶς ἐπαρκῶν
- 20 καὶ ἐκ φιλομαθίας πολλάκις ἐπιφοιτῶν καὶ τῶν διδασκομένων τὰς φύσεις ἐπιρρωννύς, ἐντὸς τοῦ καθήκοντος χρόνου ὥσπερ πτερὰ τοῖς λόγοις διδοὺς πτεροφυεῖν ἐποίει καὶ προβαίνειν εἰς τοῦμπροσθεν. | B 193

29.14–15 : Leo Philosophus inter a. 840 et a. 843 sedem Thessalonicensem ut episcopus tenuit

Cap. 29: Gen 69.53–70.76 | Scyl 104.82–105.8 || 21–22 cf. Homerus, Il., 1.201

12 τὴν om. B edd 13 ante πολλοὺς coní. ἐπὶ Boor in app. e Scyl 104.81 15 ἐπιδόντος edd : ἐπιδότος V (ante corr. ἐπε-) 17 ἐπιπλέον V 29.3 φάναι V 4 ῥητορικὴν V 5 Ὑάτρον coní. Boor in app., verbis τῇ χέρσῳ ταύτης ad Andrum insulam non spectare videntibus, cf. Vita Ignatii col. 496–497 de insula Hyatro et monasteriis illae proximis : Ἄντρον V Scyl 105.85 (ACEVBMNF) Boor : Ἄνδρον edd e Scyl 105.85 (H) 11 post σχῶν add. τῶν μαθημάτων edd e Scyl 105.90 16 ἐσχόλαζεν V 18 κομητὰς V 21 ἐπιρρωννύς V 22 τύμπροσθεν V

and concord with the things on earth, he threw down the seeds upon the earth and gave them into her bosom; and from these, as Spring arose and Summertime stood near, there came great fertility and abundance, so that this sufficed for the people for many years to come, though of course it was God who thus brought the plentiful harvest, awarding the prayers and intercessions of those in need, not the other's vain efforts in this matter. This then further increased the Thessalonians' love for the man and roused their affection, as is reasonable.

29. Whilst many marvelled at his wisdom and how he had arrived at the summit of all sciences, it is said that he told one of his habitual acquaintances that he had mastered Grammar and Poetics whilst dwelling in Constantinople, but Rhetoric and Philosophy and learning of numbers whilst on the island of Hyatros. For there he had found a wise man and, taking only incipits and certain discourses from him, because he did not find what he wanted, he wandered about the mainland of the island and went to the monasteries, searching for and procuring the books stored up there. Studying these more seriously on the summits of the mountains he rose up to the heights of wisdom, and when he had had enough he returned again to the imperial city laying down the seeds of the sciences in the minds of those who were desirous of them.

But this was earlier. Now, however, because after three years – for this was the duration of his tenure of the see – he again had free time as a result of his deposition, he took charge of the school of Philosophy at the Magnaura, and his pupil Theodore was at the head of the room of Geometry, Theodegios that of astronomy, and Kometas that of Grammar which polishes Greek speech. Helping these latter in abundant wise and often attending out of his love of learning, Bardas strengthened the pupils' character and caused them to grow plumage and progress forward within the appropriate time, as if giving feathers to words.

30. Καὶ τοῖς τοῦ Ἱπποδρόμου δὲ συνεχῶς ἑαυτὸν ὁ Βάρδας ἐδίδου κριτηρίοις καὶ <τῇ φιλοπρωτείᾳ>, ἔραστῆς νομίζεσθαι ταύτης φιλοτιμούμενος. ἔτυχε δ' ἂν ταύτης τῆς γνώμης παρὰ πολλοῖς, τοῦ χρόνου τὰ γεγονότα καλύψαντος· ἀλλὰ πάλιν τὰ τῆς ἐκκλησίας κυκήσας τε καὶ ἀνα-
 5 ταραξας, καὶ ἀντὶ γαλήνης φιλονεικίας αὐτῇ καὶ κακώσεων καὶ ὀλεθρίων αἴτιος γεγονώς, εἰκότως οὐ τὴν κρείττω δόξαν ἀλλὰ τὴν ἐναντίαν ἠνέγκατο. ἄρτι γὰρ τὸν βίον Μεθοδίου μετηλλαχότος, τέσσαρας μόνους χρόνους τὸν τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως θρόνον κεκρατηκότος, Ἰγνατίον
 10 μοναχὸν ὄντα καὶ τῆς μονῆς ἡγούμενον τοῦ Σατύρου, τὸν Νικηφόρου μὲν τοῦ βασιλέως ἔκγονον, υἱὸν δὲ Μιχαήλ, τὸν ἐπ' εὐλαβείᾳ καὶ ἀρετῇ παντοίᾳ μαρτυρηθέντα πρὸς τὸν τῆς πατριαρχίας θρόνον ἀναβιβάζουσι καὶ τῆς οἰκουμένης τοὺς οἰκάκας ἐμπιστεύουσιν. οὗτος οὖν μετὰ τινας
 15 χρόνους τὸν Βάρδαν ἐπὶ τῇ τοῦ οἰκείου γυναιίου ἀλόγως καὶ ἀναιτίως ἀποβολῇ τῆς αὐτοῦ δὲ νύμφης περιπλοκῇ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀπειργων, ἐπεὶ μὴ τῶν θείων κανόνων ἡμέλει, τὴν ἣν ἐκείνῳ ἐδίδου ποινὴν τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀποπεμπόμενος, ταύτην εἰσπράττεται παρ' αὐτοῦ. καὶ ἵνα τὸν λιμὸν καὶ τὴν δίψαν παρῶ καὶ τὰς ἐπὶ γῆς τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐκτάσεις τε καὶ ῥαβδισμοὺς καὶ τὰς καθ' ὅλον τὸ σῶμα ὠμοτάτας | πληγάς, ἐν τούτῳ μόνον ἐγὼ εἰ- f.66v
 πῶν ἐπὶ τὰ συνεχῇ βαδιοῦμαι τῆς ἱστορίας.
31. Παρεδίδου τὸν Ἰγνατίον ὁ Βάρδας φρουρᾷ, καὶ φρουρᾷ ἀπηνεῖ τε καὶ χαλεπῇ· ἡ δὲ ἦν ἐν τῷ τῶν ἱερῶν ἀποστόλων τεμένει, οὐκ ἐν αὐτῷ δὴ τῷ μεγάλῳ τε καὶ σεμνῷ, ἀλλ' ἔνθα οἱ | τάφοι καὶ λέγονται καὶ εἰσίν. ἐκέισε B 194
 5 παγέτῳ γυμνότερον ὑπέρου, <τὸ> τῆς παροιμίας, ἐν μετεώρῳ ἐπι- καθίσαντες τὰ τοῦ κρυμοῦ καὶ χειμῶνος πάσχειν ἐξεβιάζοντο· τὰ δὲ ἦν ἡ δυσεντερία τε καὶ τῶν ἐντὸς ἀναγκαίων ἐκ τῆς τοῦ ψύχους ὑπερβολῆς διὰ γαστροῦς ἀπόρροια καὶ θάνατος ἐκ τούτου πικρός. ἀπεβίω δ' ἂν ἐκ τῆς

30.7 : die 14 Iun. a. 847 Methodius obiit 11–12 : 3 sive 4 Iul. a. 847 Ignatius patriarcha designatus est 31.1–2 : die 23 Nov. a. 858 Ignatius patriarcha in vincula coniectus est

Cap. 30: Vita Ignatii §17; GeorgCont (Istrin) 10.14–21; Gen 70.77–71.93 | PsSym 667.6–13; Scyl 105.9–106.27 Cap. 31: Vita Ignatii §17–20; GeorgCont (Istrin) 10.21–30; Gen 71.95–72.46 | PsSym 667.13–668.2; Scyl 106.27–37 ||5 Prov 23.31, cf. Suda Γ no. 491, Λ no. 218, Υ no. 342.

30.1 ὁ Βάρδας ante ἑαυτὸν edd 2 post κριτηρίοις lacunam statuit Boor, coniciens quaedam veluti τὴν τῶν νόμων ἀκριβείαν ἀνηβᾶν ποιῶν e Scyl 105.10 καὶ τοὺς νόμους ἀνηβᾶν αἴτιος γέγονε, τοῦ χρόνου καὶ τὴν περὶ αὐτοὺς ἀκριβείαν συγκαλύψαντος 2 τῇ φιλοπρωτείᾳ add. Kamb, cf. Scyl 106.13 ὁ τῆς φιλοπρωτείας ἔρως et 107.43 τὰ τῆς φιλοπρωτείας... νεανίσματα 2 post ταύτης add. τῆς γνώμης edd 3 ταύτης τῆς γνώμης om. edd 5 καὶ del. Bekk 10 τὸν edd : τοῦ V 12 post τῆς οἰκουμένης conī. dubitanter <αὐτῷ> Kamb 13 ἀλόγῳ καὶ ἀναιτίῳ Boor e Scyl 106.22 ἀναιτίῳ 31.1 ἀπηνεῖ V 3 αὐτῷ δὴ τῷ : τῷ δὴ edd 4 ἐνί V Boor : ἐν edd 5 παγέτῳ edd 5 τὸ add. Bekk

30. Now Bardas devoted himself constantly to the legal proceedings of the [Covered] Hippodrome <and his love of first rank>, and he prided himself on his striving for this. He would have acquired this reputation amongst many men, since the time gone by had concealed events; but he stirred again confusion and trouble in the affairs of the Church, and instead of calm he was the cause of strife and ruinous abuses and, accordingly, he received no good fame, but quite the opposite. For just after Methodios left this life, having held the see of Constantinople for only four years, Ignatios, who was then monk and abbot of the monastery of Satyros, the grandchild of the emperor Nikephoros and son of Michael, who bore witness in piety and all virtue, was promoted to the patriarchal throne and entrusted with steering the ecumenical see. Now, several years later Ignatios, because he was not neglectful of the divine canons, excluded Bardas from church on account of his irrational and unreasonable rejection of his wife and involvement with his daughter-in-law; and the penalty which Ignatios had given Bardas by banishing him from church, was now exacted from him. I skip over the hunger and thirst, and the stretching of the man on the ground and the beatings and brutal blows over all his body, mentioning only this one instance before I proceed with rest of the account.

31. Bardas confined Ignatios to prison, to a cruel and harsh prison. This latter was in the precinct of the Holy Apostles; not in the great and holy part, but in the place which is called the tombs, and where they indeed are. There they shut him up, barer than a pestle, as the proverb has it, in cold and frost in a certain tomb of Kopronymos, setting him up in mid-air and forcing him to endure the effects of cold and winter. These were dysentery and effluvia of the internal vitals through the belly on account of the excessive cold and, as a result, bitter death. He would have perished from the cruelty and savagery of

- τῶν φρουρούντων δεινότητος καὶ ὠμότητος – ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι ὃ τε Γοργονίτης Ἰωάννης καὶ ὁ Σκουτέλοφ Νικόλαος καὶ Θεόδωρος ὁ Μωρός –, εἰ μὴ τις οἴκτῳ βαλλόμενος – Κωνσταντῖνος ἦν ὁ Ἀρμενιάκος – τῇ τούτων ἀπουσίᾳ ἐν τῷ μέλλειν σιτίζεσθαι ἐκεῖθεν τε τὸν ἄνθρωπον κατεβίβαζε, καὶ οἶνῳ βραχεῖ, ἔτι δὲ καὶ ἄρτῳ καὶ μικρᾷ τινι περιθάψει τὸ λυποῦν ἐπ’ ὀλίγον παρεμυθεῖτο. ὥς δὲ τὸ τῆς τιμωρίας ἀρκοῦντως ἐδόκει αὐτῷ, τότε
- 15 δὴ ὑπερόριον μὲν τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον κατὰ τὴν νῆσον Μιτυλήνην ποιεῖ· ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τινες τῶν ἐπισκόπων ἀντέλεγον καὶ τὴν δίκην πόρρῳ που δὴ οὔσαν καὶ ἀποφοιτήσασαν ἐπεκαλοῦντο καὶ οὐκ, εἴ τι γένηται, ἄλλον δέξασθαι ἠπείλουν, ἀλλὰ τῆς ἐκκλησίας συναπορρήγνυσθαι, τὸν ἐκ τούτου τάραχον δὴ κατευλαβηθεὶς ἔγνω καὶ τούτους ἀπάτη περιελθεῖν
- 20 καὶ ἄλωπεκῇ, ἰδίᾳ γοῦν καὶ κρυφῇ τούτων ἕκαστον μετακαλούμενος οὐ μικρόν τι καὶ ταπεινὸν ὑπισχνεῖτό τε καὶ ἐδίδου, εἰ μόνον ἀποσταῖεν τοῦ Ἰγνατίου, ἀλλὰ τὸν θρόνον αὐτὸν Κωνσταντινουπόλεως. ὥς δ’ ἐνεδίδοσαν ἅπαντες καὶ τῆς μὲν δόξης ἡττῶντο, τοῦ | δὲ καλοῦ ἔνεκεν καὶ B 195 νομίμου ἀντέλεγεν οὐδεὶς, τότε δὴ τότε ὑπετίθει ὥς ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς αὐτοῖς
- 25 τὰς ὑποσχέσεις μὲν ἐκπληρώσειεν, αὐτοὶ δὲ “τὸ εὐσχημον τηροῦντές τε καὶ σεμνὸν ἅμα τῷ πρὸς αὐτὸν κληθῆναι μὴ πρὸς | τὰ διδόμενα κατα- f.67 νεύσητε, ἵνα καὶ αὐτός”, φησί, “τῆς ὑμῶν εἴη ὑπεραγάμενος ἀρετῆς”. οὕτως δὴ ἕκαστον οὐχ ὁμοῦ ἀλλ’ ἰδίᾳ καὶ κατὰ μόνας πρὸς τὸν Μιχαὴλ εἰσκαλούμενος μὴ αὐθωρὸν ἐπιπηδᾶν τῇ τιμῇ ἀνέπειθεν. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἐκ
- 30 μόνου προσρήματος ἀξιούμενοί τε καὶ ἀπαρνούμενοι ἔλαθον ἑαυτοὺς παραδειγματίσαντες· τῆς τε γὰρ ἀρετῆς ἐξέπιπτον τῷ τῆς δόξης νικώμενοι ἔρωτι, καὶ ταύτης αὐθις ἡμάρτανον, ὅτι μὴ καλῶς ἀλλ’ ἐπιβούλως τὸν Ἰγνατίον παρεδίδοσαν.
32. Οὕτως οὖν ἐπεὶ καὶ οὗτοι ἄνθρωποι ὄντες ἐφάνησαν καὶ οὕτω δὴ ἡπατήθησαν, Φωτίῳ ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ μὲν ὄντι γνωρίμῳ ἀνδρί, τῆς κοσμικῆς δὲ τάξεως ἀντιποιοιμένῳ καὶ τὴν τοῦ πρωτοασσηκρήτις δεδραγμένῳ τιμὴν, τὸν θρόνον ἐδίδου τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως. καὶ ἵνα δὴ καὶ τὰ αὐτῶν
- 5 κραταιότερα ἀποφήνωνσιν, τοποτηρητὰς μὲν ἐκ Ῥώμης ἐπ’ ἄλλαις προ-

31.14–15 : Aug. a. 859. Ignatius ad insulam Mitylenem relegatus est 32.2–4 : die 25 Dec. a. 858 Photius patriarcha designatus est

Cap. 32: Vita Ignatii §21; GeorgCont (Istrin) 10.30–32; Gen 71.93–95 | PsSym 668.2–14; Scyl 106.37–107.43

9 οὗτος Comb 10 Γοργονίτης edd e Gen 71.9 Γοργονίτη : γοργωνίτης V 10 σκουτέλοφ V : Σκουτέλλοπι Gen 71.10 (L) Boor : Σκουτελόπτης edd 11 Ἀρμενιάκος edd : Ἀρμένιος Gen 72.37 12 ἀπουσία V 12 κακατεβίβαζεν (sic) V 13 τινὶ V edd 18 συναπορρήγνυσθαι V 19 κατευλαβηθεὶς V 19 περιελθεῖν edd Boor : παρελθεῖν V 20 καλούμενος V 23 ἐν ἐδίδοσαν V 25 τηροῦντες τε V 28 καταμόνας V 29 προσκαλούμενος edd 31 τε om. edd 32.2 τῆς om. edd 3 τάξεως V 3 πρωτοασσηκρήτις V

the gaolers – these were John Gorgonites and Nikolaos Skoutelops and Theodore Moros – if someone had not been moved by mercy when they went out to eat. This was Constantine Armeniakos, who let him down from there and comforted his pain for a while with a bit of wine and bread and a little warmth. When it seemed to Bardas that the punishment was sufficient, he then banished the man to the island of Mitylene. But because some of the bishops were opposed and objected to this judgement as being somehow excessive and exaggerated and threatened not to accept another, but rather, no matter what happened, to separate themselves from the Church, Bardas, in order to avoid tumult on this account, decided to get round them with deceit and trickery. Summoning each of them in private and in secret he promised and gave no small or modest gift, but the see of Constantinople itself, if only they would estrange themselves from Ignatios. When they had all given in and were vanquished by glory, whereas no one was opposed for the sake of goodness and lawfulness, then at length did he propose that, although the emperor would fulfil the promises for them, ‘You should,’ he said, ‘preserve respectability and reverence when summoned to him and should not accept that which is offered, in order that he might be in amazement at your virtue.’ Thus did he convince these same, as they were summoned to Michael not all together but alone and in private, not to make a rush straightway for the dignity. Being honoured by the designation alone and refusing, it escaped notice that they had made a spectacle of themselves. For they fell away from virtue, having been vanquished by the desire for glory; and they failed to attain this latter, too, because they did not commit themselves to Ignatius in honest, but rather in treacherous wise.

32. Thus, since these men had been revealed as such and were in such wise deceived, Bardas gave the see of Constantinople to Photios, a man indeed known for his wisdom, but who exerted himself in the secular order, having obtained the office of protasekretis. Now, in order that they might argue their case more forcefully, they summoned locum tenentes from Rome on other

- φάσει – κατὰ γὰρ τῶν εἰκονομάχων σταλέντας – μεταπεμφάμενοι, κατὰ δὲ Ἰγνατίου μετὰ τοῦ καιροῦ γεγονέναι παρασκευάσαντες· καὶ συνεδρίασαντες, καὶ ἐν τῷ τῶν θείων ἀποστόλων τεμένει δεδημοσιευμένη καθαιρέσει τοῦτον καθυποβαλόντες, ἐπεὶ τῆς ἐξορίας μετεκαλῆσαντο, πυγμαῖς τὰ πρόσωπα καὶ τοὺς ὀδόντας συνθλάσαντες, πᾶσαν σκοτόμαιναν κατὰ τῶν ἱερέων κακῶν <...> καὶ δεύτερος | τῶν ὄντων ἐπὶ γῆς μηδέπω φανῇ. B 196
- 10 ἄλλ’ ὅσα μὲν καὶ ἄλλα κατὰ πάντων τῶν ἱερέων ἐνεανιεύσατο, φυλακαῖς τε καὶ ὑπερορίαις καὶ ποιναῖς ὡμοτάταις ὅσημέραι παραδιδούς, ἵνα τῷ Φωτίῳ συγκοινωνήσωσι, βίβλοι τε πολλαὶ καὶ ὁ πᾶς οὐκ ἐπιλίπτοι
- 15 χρόνος ἐκτραγῶδων.

33. Ἐντεῦθεν γοῦν τὰ μὲν τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἢ τῶν Ῥῶς ἐκάκου ἐπιδρομὴ – ἔθνος δὲ οὗτοι Σκυθικὸν ἀνήμερόν τε καὶ ἄγροικον – τὸν τε Πόντον αὐτόν, οὐ μὴν δὲ καὶ τὸν Εὐξείνιον, κατεμπίμπρα καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν πόλιν περιεστοίχιζεν, τηνικαῦτα τοῦ Μιχαὴλ κατὰ τῶν Ἰσμηλιτῶν ἐστρατεύοντος. πλὴν ἄλλ’ ἐκεῖνοι μὲν τότε θείας ἐμφορηθέντες ὀργῆς, Φωτίου τὸ θεῖον ἐξιλεωσαμένου τοῦ τῆς ἐκκλησίας τοὺς οἶκας ἔχοντος, οἶκαδε f.67v
- 5 ἐπεπόρευντο· καὶ μετ’ οὐ πολὺ πάλιν τὴν βασιλεύουσαν πρεσβεία αὐτῶν κατελάμβανεν, τοῦ θείου βαπτίσματος ἐν μετοχῇ γενέσθαι αὐτοὺς λιταεύουσα, ὃ καὶ γέγονεν.

34. Τὰ μὲν οὖν ἢ τούτων ἐκάκου ἐπιδρομῇ· τὰ δὲ ὁ τῆς Κρήτης στόλος ἀναγόμενος· ὃς κουμβαρίων ἄχρι εἴκοσι, ἑπτὰ γαλέας καὶ τινες σατούρας μεθ’ ἑαυτοῦ ἐπαγόμενος ἐληΐζετό τε καὶ κατεδουλαγώγει, νῦν μὲν τὰς Κυκλάδας νήσους περινοστών, νῦν δὲ ἄχρι Προικονήσου τὴν παράλιον
- 5 ἄπασαν.

Τὰ δὲ οἱ συνεχεῖς τῶν σεισμῶν ἐκυμαίνοντό τε καὶ πρὸς τοῦδαφος ἔβαλλον, νῦν μὲν καθ’ ἣν ἢ τοῦ κυρίου καὶ σωτῆρος ἡμῶν ἀνάληψις ἐορτάζεται τὸ πρὸς νότον τρίτον τοῦ Ἐξακινίου πρὸς γῆν ἐδαφίζοντες,

32.7–9 : primo vere a. 861 Synodus depositionem Ignatii sanxit 33.1 : die 18 Iun. 860 expugnatione Constantinopolis ab Rhos. 34.6–11 : terrae motibus moderni pleraque tempora inter a. 861 et 866 assignant

Cap. 33: Photius Homiliae 3 et 4 ; Vita Ignatii §28; GeorgCont (Istrin) 10.34–11.13; Log A 246.259–247.273 | PsSym 674.18–675.3; Scyl 107.44–49 Cap. 34: Vita Ignatii §39; GeorgCont (Istrin) 12.10–14; Gen 74.16–22 | PsSym 677.5–9; Scyl 107.50–59.

11 κακῶν conl. Kamb : κακῶς V edd : κυκῶσι conl. Comb in marg., quod dubitanter accipiens in app., antea lacunam in textu statuit Boor 11 post κακῶν lacunam statuimus : <κατετόξευον, ἵνα ... > conl. dubitanter Kamb 12 τῶν om. edd 33.2 ἄγροικον edd, cf. ἄγριον Scyl 107.46 : ἄγροικον V 3 δὲ om. edd : ἄλλα conl. Bekk in app. 3 κατεμπίμπρα edd : κατεμπιμπρᾶ Boor, cf. supra I.13.4 4 τῶν om. B edd 7 ἐκπεπορεύοντο edd 34.2 ὃς Boor : ὡς 2 κουμβάρια VBas 59.7 et 60.5 2 εἴκοσι, ἑπτὰ edd : εἰκοσιεπτὰ V 2 σακτούρας VBas 60.6–7 4 νῦν δαί V 4 Προικονήσου edd 6 post σεισμῶν add. <κλόνοι> Boor e Scyl 107.51 6 ἐκυμαίνοντό το V : ἐλυμαίνετό τε edd 6 τοῦδαφος V 7 post ἣν add. ἡμέραν Boor e Scyl 107.52 8 προσόντον V 8 τρίτον : τεῖχος Scyl 107.54 8 Ἐξακινίου edd

pretexts – for they were dispatched against the enemies of the icons –, but they contrived that they should be against Ignatios. And after they had held a council and subjected him to deposition, as announced in the sanctuary of the Holy Apostles, when they had brought him back from banishment, having fractured his face and teeth with fists, <they lanced [?]> all manner of evils in secret against priests <...> and might prove second to none other yet on earth [?]. But many books and any amount of time would fall short in exploring all the other things that they wantonly devised against all priests, consigning them every day to prisons and banishments and most cruel penalties, in order that they should be in communion with Photios.

33. Now, at this time, when Michael was on campaign against the Ishmaelites, the attack of the Rhos – these being a savage and wild Scythian nation – devastated the lands of the Romans, burning the Pontus and the very Euxine to ashes, and surrounding the city itself. But after Photios, who held direction of the Church, had entreated the Divinity, the Rhos had their fill of divine wrath and returned home. And not long afterwards an embassy from them reached the imperial city beseeching that they might become participants in divine baptism, and this came to pass.

34. Thus the invasion of the Rhos wrought destruction on the one hand, and on the other the fleet of Crete put to sea. This latter, bringing to bear some twenty koubarioi, seven galeai and a number of satourai, wrought destruction and took captives, going now round the Cyclades islands, now along the entire coast of Proconnesus.

Moreover, continuous earthquakes shook and threw down to the ground [the following]: first, on the day when our Lord and Saviour's Ascension is celebrated, the third column on the south side of the Hexakionion together

- ναούς | τε εὐπρεπεῖς καὶ οἴκους λαμπρούς, νῦν δὲ στήλας τήν τε κατὰ B 197
 10 <τὴν> Χρυσὴν πύλην τῆς πόλεως Νίκην ἐγκαθιδρυμένην <καὶ τὰς ἐν τῷ
 Δευτέρῳ> κατὰ τὴν ἁγίαν Ἄνναν στεργῶς ἵσταμένας ἐγκατασεῖσαντες· ἦν
 ὁ μαθηματικὸς Λέων καταπεπτωκυῖαν ἰδὼν τὴν τοῦ δευτέρου ἐκ βα-
 σιλέως πτῶσιν ἔλεγεν ἐπαπειλεῖν καθαρῶς.
 Μακρὸν εἶη λέγειν ποταμῶν ἀφάνειαν καὶ πηγῶν καὶ ἄλλ’ ἄττα
 15 παθήματα κατὰ τε τὴν Ἰσαυρίαν καὶ καθ’ ἐκάστην χώραν ἐπιγινόμενα.
 35. Ἄ πάντα ὁ βασιλεύων ἐν δευτέρῳ θέμενος ὅλος εἶχετο τῶν ἵππικῶν
 ἀγώνων κατὰ τὸν ἐν Εὐξείνῳ ἀνεγχευμένον ναὸν τοῦ ἁγίου μάρτυρος
 Μάμαντος. καὶ ποτε δὲ – ἀλλὰ συνήθειάν τινα διηγῆσομαι πρότερον, ἢ
 τὴν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν καθ’ ἡμῶν ἐκστρατείαν διὰ πυρσοῦ ἐν ἀκαρεῖ ἐδήλου
 5 καὶ παρεγύμνου τῷ βασιλεῖ. ἔρυμά τι καὶ φρούριον τῇ κατὰ Κιλικίαν
 Ταρσῷ πλησιάζον καὶ γειτονοῦν οὕτω καλούμενον Λοῦλλον ἔστιν. οἱ τε-
 ταγμένοι οὖν τοῦτο φρουρεῖν ἅμα τῷ τὴν ἐκείνων ἰδεῖν ἐκδρομὴν διὰ φα-
 νοῦ δηλοῦσιν τοῖς κατὰ τὸν Ἀργαῖαν βουνόν, καὶ ὃς αὖθις τοῖς κατὰ τὴν
 Σάμον, καὶ τοῖς κατὰ τὸ Αἰγίλιον, καὶ τοῦτο τοῖς κατὰ τὸν Μάμαντα πάλιν
 10 βουνόν· εἴτα τοῦτον ὁ Κύριζος διαδεχόμενος, καὶ αὖθις τοῦτον ὁ Μώκιλος,
 ἐκ τούτου δὲ ὁ τοῦ ἁγίου Αὐξεντίου βουνὸς τοῖς ἐν τῷ μεγάλῳ παλατίῳ
 κατὰ τὸν ἡλιακὸν τοῦ Φάρου ἐπὶ τούτῳ δαιταρίοις ἀφωρισμένοις ἐν βρα-
 χεῖ ἐποίει δὴ φανεῖρά – ποτε γοῦν τοῦ Μιχαὴλ κατὰ τὸν εἰρημένον τοῦ f.68
 μάρτυρος Μάμαν|τος ναὸν ἱππάσσεσθαι μέλλοντος καὶ τὸ σύνθημα τῆς ἱπ- B 198
 15 ποδρομίας δεδωκότος, ἐπεὶ κατὰ τὴν ἐσπέραν ὁ ἐκ τοῦ Φάρου φανὸς διὰ
 τοῦ παπίου ἐδήλου τὴν τῶν ἔθνων ἐκδρομὴν, εἰς τοσοῦτον ἤλθεν ἀγῶνα
 καὶ φόβον ὁ βασιλεὺς δέει τοῦ μὴ παροφθῆναι τὴν ἡνιοχείαν αὐτοῦ
 ὑπὸ τῶν θεατῶν τῆς τοιαύτης ἔνεκεν ἀγγελίας, εἰς ὅσον ἄλλος τις ἤλθεν

Cap. 35: Gen 72.47–51; Const Porph Tres, II.619–630 (De Cer 492) | PsSym 681.21–682.18;
 Scyl 107.59–108.86

10 τὴν add. Boor e Scyl 107.55 11 post ἐγκαθιδρυμένην add. καὶ τὰς ἐν τῷ Δευτέρῳ Boor e
 Scyl 107.55–56 15 τὴν om. edd 35.1 εἶχετο V 2 κατὰ τὸν ἐν Εὐξείνῳ : κατὰ τὸν ἐν τῷ
 Σπενῶ Scyl 107.60–61 : κατὰ Προποντίδα Gen 72.48 2 μάρτυρος om. edd 3 συνήθειαν
 τινὰ V 4 ἐκστρατίαν V 4 διαπυρσοῦ V 6 Λοῦλλον ἔστιν V : Λοῦλλον ἔστιν edd
 7 τοῦτο edd : τούτῳ V 8 Ἀργαῖαν V, sed cf. PsSym 682.10 Ἀργαῖαν et Scyl 108.70 Ἀργαῖα :
 Ἀργεῖαν Boor e Const Porph Tres, II.620 (DeCer 492.11) et VBas 46.20–21 et 49.15 : Ἀργαῖον
 edd 8 ὃς : οἱ edd : ὡς conl. dubitanter Kamb : om. Ps Sym 682.10 8 τοῖς edd Boor, cf.
 PsSym 682.11 : τῆς V 9 τὴν Σάμον V Boor, cf. PsSym 682.11 : fortasse τὸν Σάμον scribendum,
 cf. Const Porph Tres, II.621 (De Cer 492.12–13) ὁ βουνὸς ὁ Σάμος : τὴν Ἰσάμον edd : τὸν Ἰσα-
 μον Scyl 108.71 (Ἰσαβον M) 9 ante τοῖς add. οἱ edd 9 μαμάντα V 10 κατὰ τὸν
 Μάμαντα – βουνόν, cf. Scyl 108.73 et PsSym 682.12 : ὁ βουνὸς ὁ Ὀλυμπος Const Porph Tres,
 II.623 (De Cer 492.14–15) 10 Μώκιλος V, sic Scyl 108.74 et PsSym 682.13 : Μούκιλον Const
 Porph Tres, II.625 (De Cer 492.17) 12 τὸν nos, cf. supra III.43.63 et PsSym 682.14 et Const
 Porph Tres, II.627 (De Cer 492.20) ὁ ἐν τῷ παλατίῳ – ἡλιακός : τὸ V edd 12 τούτῳ conl.
 Bekk in app. Boor : τούτου V edd 12 δαιταρίοις ἀφωρισμένοις V 14 ἱππάσσεσθαι B edd
 14 σύμθημα V 16 παπίου edd 18 ὑπὸ : παρὰ edd

with glorious churches and splendid houses; and then, another time, they shook down statues, both the Nike which was set up at the Golden Gate of the city and those standing firmly at the church of St Anna in the Deuteron. And when the mathematician Leo saw that it had been thrown down he said that it clearly portended the fall of the second in command after the emperor.

It would take too long to relate the disappearance of rivers and springs and all the other misfortunes which occurred both in Isauria and in every land.

35. But considering all these things as secondary, the emperor was wholly absorbed by the racing of horses near the church of the holy martyr Mamas which had been erected on the Euxine. Once – But first I shall relate a custom which through a signal fire immediately announced and revealed to the emperor the expeditions of the Saracens against us. There is a defence and fortress near the border with Tarsus of Cilicia which is called Loulon. Now the men who are charged with defending this latter, as soon as they see an incursion of the Saracens, announce this by beakon to those on the mountain of Argæia; and this same again to those on Samos, and to those at Aigilon; and this yet again to those on the mountain at Mamas. Then Kyrizos received it, and in turn Mokilos; and from thence the mountain of the holy Auxentios quickly informed those on duty for this on the terrace of the Pharos in the Great Palace. – Once then, as Michael was preparing to drive the horses in the vicinity of the aforementioned church of the holy martyr Mamas and had given the flag signal for the races, when the papias brought news the evening before that the beakon had announced the invasion of the heathens, the emperor came to a great state of anxiety and dread, for fear lest his racing should be ignored by the spectators on account of these tidings, as someone might

20 κινδυνεύων ὑπὲρ ψυχῆς καὶ τοῦ μὴ πλησιάσαι τούτους μάλλον ἀγωνιζόμενος. οὕτως ἐκείνος ἑθεατρίζετο τε καὶ οὐκ ἡσυχύνετο. ὅθεν ἵνα μήτε τις τῶν αὐτοῦ ἀγώνων ἀπολιμπάνοιτο μήτ’ ἄλλο τι τῶν ἐκείθεν ἀνιαρῶν προσπίπτων χαλαρωτέρους ποιήσῃ τοὺς θεατάς, μηκέτι τοὺς πλησιάζοντας φανούς ἐνεργεῖν προσέταξεν, ἀλλὰ σιγῇ βαθεῖα καὶ λήθη τὰ τοιαῦτα παρακαλυφθῆναι μακρᾷ.

36. Ἄλλοτε δὲ πάλιν, ἵνα σαφεστέρα γένηται ἡ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἀναγωγία καὶ ἄνοια, αὐτοῦ ἐφ’ ἄρματος ἵσταμένου καὶ τῆς βαλβίδος μέλλοντος ἐκπηδᾶν – ἐπάτει δὲ βένετος, καὶ πράσινος ὁ λογοθέτης Κωνσταντῖνος, ὁ τοῦ πατρικίου Θωμᾶ καὶ γεγονότος λογοθέτου τοῦ δρόμου πατήρ, 5 λευκὸς δὲ ὁ Χειλᾶς καὶ ρούσιος ὁ Κρασᾶς· οὐκ ἦν δὲ οὐδὲ τῷ πρωτοασκηρῆτις σχολάζειν, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ τῷ πρωτονοταρίῳ τοῦ δρόμου, ἀλλ’ ὁ μὲν ἦν κομβιογράφος τῶν βενέτων, ὁ δὲ τῶν πρασίνων – αὐτῶν οὖν ἐφ’ ἄρματος ἵσταμένων μετὰ καὶ τῆς ἡνιοχικῆς στολῆς, καὶ ἐπαγγελίας φθασάσης ὅτι δεινῶς ὁ Ἄμερ κατατρέπει καὶ <καὶ> κατασύρει τὸν Θρακῆσιον 10 καὶ τοῖς Μαλαγίνοις πλησιάζει καὶ προσδοκῶνται ὅσον οὐδέπω δεινά, καὶ | ἐπὶ τούτῳ συγνάσαντος μὲν τοῦ πρωτονοταρίου, ἀπαγγεῖλαντος δὲ μετὰ κατηφείας τὴν ἐκ τοῦ δομεστίκου τῶν σχολῶν ἀπόκρισιν καὶ ἅμα ἐπὶ χεῖρας τὰ γράμματα φέροντός τε καὶ δεικνύοντος, “τίνι”, φησὶν, “ὦ οὔτος, τόλμῃ χρησάμενος τοιαῦτα κατὰ τὸν ἀναγκαῖον τοῦτον ἀγῶνά 15 μοι διαλέγειν ἐπιχειρεῖς, τοῦτο μόνον σπουδάζοντι, μὴ τὸν μέ<σον εὐώνυμο>ν ἰδεῖν παρατετραμμένον; ὑπὲρ οὗ μοι πᾶς ὁ ἀγών”.

37. Καὶ οὐχὶ τούτῳ μὲν τῷ πό|θῳ, ἢ εἰ βούλει γε πάθει ἡλίσκετο, 168v ἐτέρων δὲ τῶν ἀπρεπεστερῶν ἐκτὸς ἦν, ἀλλὰ καὶ μέτριον ἦθος ἀμέτρως καταδιώκων ἐξέπιπτε τοῦ πρέποντος καὶ τῆς βασιλικῆς ἀξίας τὰ μάλιστα. καί ποτε γυναιῳ, ἧς τὸν παῖδα υἰοθετησάμενος ἦν, κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν

Cap. 36: GeorgCont (Istrin) 15.18–25; Log A 255.428–256.433 | PsSym 660.4–16, 681.13–21; Scyl 108.86–109.3 Cap. 37: | PsSym 660.17–661.12; Scyl 109.3–25

19 τῆς ψυχῆς edd 21 ἄλλο τι V 22 μηκέτι V 23 βαθεῖα V 36.2 τῆς βαλβίδος edd et PsSym 660.7 : τοῦ βαλβίδος PsSym f 248r : βαλῶδος (sic) V 3 ἐπάτει : ἱππηλάτει conl. Boor in app., cf. PsSym 681.16 ἱππευσεν 4 τοῦ post ὁ om. edd 5 καὶ πράσινος – γεγονότος – ὁ Χειλᾶς : Κωνσταντῖνος δὲ ὁ ἐξ Ἀρμενίων ὁ πατήρ Θωμᾶ πατρικίου καὶ Γενεσίου δρουγγαρίου τῆς βίγλας λευκός, πράσινος δὲ Ἀγαλλιανὸς PsSym 681.16–18 5 Κρασᾶς : Κρασσός PsSym 681.18–19, sed Κρασᾶς f 253r 5 οὐκ V 6 πρωτοασκηρῆτις ante corr. (post corr. -ῆτις) V 9 καὶ add. edd 9 τὸ Θρακῆσιον edd : fortasse καὶ τὸ Ὀψίκιον addendum, cf. PsSym 660.8, τὸ Θρακῆσιον (sed f 248r τὸ Θρακῆσιον) καὶ τὸ Ὀψίκιον et Scyl 108.91 τὴν Ἀσίαν 10 πλησιάζει edd e PsSym 660.9 : πλησιάζει V 10 πρόσδοκῶνται V 10 ὅσον οὐδέπω : ὡς οὐδέπω PsSym 660.9 : ὅσον οὕτω Scyl 108.92 13 φέροντες τὲ V 13 φησὶ V 15 μοι : μου PsSym 681.16 15 διαλέγεσθαι conl. dubitanter Kamb 16 μὴ τὸν μέ<σον εὐώνυμο>ν nos, cf. PsSym 660.15 μὴ τὸν μέσον εὐώνυμον, et Scyl 109.2 ἢ μὴ τὸν μέσον εὐώνυμον : μὴ τὸν εἰς ἡμῶν manu secunda V, ut vid. : εἰ μὴ τὸν μέσον εὐώνυμον edd 37.1 μὲν ante τούτῳ edd 1 ἡλίσκετο V 2 τῶν om. edd 3 μεταδιώκων Scyl 109.6 3 ἀξίας : τιμῆς edd 4 πέδα V

have done fearing for his life and contending lest these beacons approach. Thus did he make a spectacle of himself and lose all shame. Then, lest anyone should be absent from his contests nor report of any evil occurring unexpectedly elsewhere render the spectators languid, he commanded that the approaching beacons should no longer function, but that such tidings should be covered in deep silence and long oblivion.

36. Another time, so that the man's lack of discipline and folly might become clear, as he was standing on a chariot and was about to cross the starting line – he walked on as Blue; the logothete Constantine, father of the patrikios Thomas who also became logothete of the Course, as Green; Cheilas as White, and Krasas as Red; no one was at leisure, neither the protasecretis nor the protonotarios of the Course, but the former was kombinographos of the Blues, and the latter of the Greens. As they stood, then, on the chariots in racing attire, the news came that Amer was overrunning and ravaging the Thrakesian theme in dire fashion and was approaching Malagina, and terrible things were expected as never before. And when, filled with gloom over this the protonotarios announced with dejected mien the rescript of the domestikos of the scholai, bringing and showing the letters in his hands, 'What insolence is this,' said Michael, 'that you undertake to speak with me during this important contest, when the only thing I seek is not to see the middle driver diverted to the left? This is my only goal.'

37. Nor was he consumed by this desire or, if you will, passion, whilst free of other, more indecent ones; but pursuing moderate custom in immoderate wise he fell foul of moral fitness and most especially of imperial dignity. Once in the road he met a woman, for whose son he had stood god-father; she was

- 5 συντυχὼν ἐκ βαλανείου μὲν ἐρχομένη τὴν ἑαυτῆς δὲ κάλπιν ἐπὶ χεῖρας ἔχουσῃ, τοῦ ἵππου ἀπορριφεῖς τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ὅσοι τῶν ἐκ τῆς συγκλήτου τούτῳ ἐπηκολούθουν κατὰ τὰ ἐκέισε ὄντα ἀνάκτορα ἐξαπέ-
 10 στείλιν, ἀκόλαστα δὲ τινὰ καὶ μυστικά ἀνδράρια ἐταιρισάμενος ἀπῆι μετὰ τῆς γυναικὸς, τὴν κάλπιν τῶν ἐκείνης χειρῶν ἐπαναλαβὼν, καὶ “ἄγε δὴ, ὦ γύναι, θαρροῦσα”, ἐπέλεξεν, “ἐμὲ κατὰ τὸ οἰκημὰ σου ἀπόδεξαι, ψωμοῦ πιτυρώδους ἔφεσιν ἔχοντα καὶ ἀσβεστοτύρου”. δεῖ γὰρ τὴν ἐκείνου λέξιν εἰπεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῷ ξένῳ τοῦ θεάματος ἡ γυνὴ ἦν ἐνὸς καὶ πάντων ἡπόρει, μήτε μὴν τράπεζαν μήτε τὰ ταύτην στολίζοντα ἔχουσα, ὁ Μιχαὴλ θᾶπτον ἢ λόγος εἶχε στραφεῖς, τὸ δ’ ἔφερε σάβανον ἐκ | τοῦ βαλανείου ἐτι B 200
 15 διάβροχον ὃν λαβὼν, ἀντὶ λεπτῆς ὀθόνης, ἡ τῇ τραπέζῃ ἐπίκειται, χρῆσάμενος, καὶ τὴν κλεῖδα τῆς γυναικὸς ἀφελὼν αὐτὸς ἦν τὰ πάντα, βασιλεύς, τραπεζοποιός, μάγειρος, δαιτυμῶν. ἐκβαλὼν δὲ τὰ ἃ εἶχε τῆς πενιχρᾶς ἐκείνης ἡ κιβωτός, εἰσιτῆτο ταύτῃ καὶ συνεδείπνει, τὴν μίμησιν πρὸς τὸν ἐμὸν ἀναφέρων Χριστὸν καὶ θεόν. κάκεῖθεν βάδην αὐθις ἀπῆι
 20 πρὸς τὰ ἀνάκτορα, πολλῆς εὐηθείας καὶ ἀλαζονείας καὶ τύφου καταγι- νώσκων τῶν πρὸ τοῦ βασιλέων· οὗ ἐκείνοι λήρου εἰ ἤκουσαν, “ἀλλ’ οὐκ ἄλλως τρυφῶντα καὶ παίζοντα ταῦτα”, ἔφησαν, “ἐχρῆν σε ποιεῖν καὶ τὸν ἡμέτερον τύφον καταγινώσκειν, ἀλλὰ προπολεμοῦντα καὶ τῶν ἀναγ-
 25 καίων σπανίζοντα καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις σύνδειπνον ὄντα καὶ ἐραστὴν, ἀλλ’ οὐ γυναιῶν καπηλίδων καὶ μοχθηρῶν”. ταῦτ’ οὖν ἅπαντα μισητόν τε ἐποίει τὸν Μιχαὴλ καὶ τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκίνει δικαιοτάτην ὀργήν.
38. Καὶ τὸ δὴ χαλεπώτερον, ἡ τῶν ὦν εἶχε μεθ’ ἑαυτοῦ φατρία, Σάτυροί τινες οὗτοι καὶ πρὸς πᾶσαν αἰσχροουργίαν ἀκόλαστοι· εἶπεν ἄν
 5 τις αὐτοὺς θιασώτας εἶναι Διονύσου καλῶς. οὓς ἐκεῖνος διὰ τιμῆς ἄγων f.69
 τε καὶ αἰδοῦς, τῶν θείων κατολιγωρῶν, ἱερατικὰς στολὰς χρυσοῦφάντους
 5 τε ἐπετίθει καὶ ὠμοφόρια, καὶ ἄλλως ἠνάγκαζεν ἀσχημόνως τε καὶ ἀνάγκως τελεῖν τὰ ἀγνά, καὶ πατριάρχην τὸν ἑξαρχον τούτων ἐκάλει, οὕτω Γρύλλον καλούμενον, τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς ἑνδεκα μητροπολίτας τῶν
 ἐξαίρετων θρόνων τε | καὶ λαμπρῶν, οἷς εἰ μὴ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκοινώνει, οὐδὲ B 201
 βασιλεύειν ἡξίου· ὅθεν ὁ Κωλωνείας οὗτος ἐλέγετό τε καὶ ὀνομάζεται

Cap. 38: Vita Ignatii §42, 46 | PsSym 661.13–662.16; Scyl 109.25–110.43

5 δὲ: δὴ Comb 6 ante τοῦ ἵππου add. ἐκ edd 6 τῶν om. edd 8 μυστικά: πορνικά Scyl 109.12 9 κάλπιν V 9 ἀναλαβὼν edd e PsSym 661.2: ἀπαναλαβὼν conl. Boor in app. 10 γύναι V 10 υπόδεξαι conl. Boor in app. e PsSym 661.3, sed f 248r ἀποδέξαι 13 ταύτην conl. Bekk in app.: ταύτης V edd Boor 17 ὁ βασιλεύς PsSym 661.9 17 μάγειρος V 17 εἶχεν V 18 εἰσιτῆτο V edd Boor: συνεισιτῆτο PsSym 661.11 sed f 248v εἰσιτῆτο 38.1 φατρία V, cf. Scyl 109.25 et PsSym 661.14 et supra IV.3.1: φρατρία edd 2 σατύριοι PsSym 661.14 2 αἰσχροουργίαν edd: αἰσχροργία V 7 Γρύλλον nos e Scyl 110.30, 40, 48, 49 et PsSym 661.18, 662.6, 663.4: Γρύλλον V edd Boor: Γροῦλλον VBas. 78.1, 80.6, 82.5 8 ἐξ αιρετών V 9 Κωλωνείας V 9 ὀνομάζετο Scyl 110.32

coming from the bath, carrying her pitcher in her hands. Leaping off his horse he dispatched all those who were accompanying him and who belonged to the Senate to the palace in that place, and choosing as comrades certain of his licentious and intimate fellows he went off with the woman, taking the pitcher from her hands. 'Come, O woman,' he said, 'receive me in your house, I who have an appetite for bran bread and dry cheese.' – For we must use his words. And since the woman was speechless at the strangeness of the spectacle, wanting in everything, having neither table nor the things with which to lay it, Michael turned round faster than word can tell, took the towel, still damp, which she had brought from the bath, and used it instead of the fine cloth which lay upon the table. Taking the woman's key, he was everything: emperor, table-servant, cook, guest. Getting out everything which that poor woman's chest contained, he feasted and dined with her, affecting imitation of my Christ and God. From thence he went off on foot to the palace, denouncing the great silliness and pretension and vanity of the emperors before him. But if they had heard his trumperies, they would have said 'It is not by revelling and playing at these things and denouncing our pretension that you should conduct yourself, but by waging wars of defence and sparing necessities and being the table companion and lover of soldiers, not of low tavern women.' All this caused Michael to be hated and roused God's most righteous wrath.

38. Worst of all was the company of those whom he kept about himself. Satyrs they were, unbridled in every obscenity; with right would one say that they were worshippers of Dionysus. Treating them with respect and reverence, and utterly insulting divine things, he put upon them gold-woven hieratic vestments and stoles and forced them besides to perform hallowed rites in indecorous and unholy wise. He called their leader, a man called Grylos, patriarch, and the other eleven he called metropolitans of the chosen and splendid sees; and if he could not be one of their fellows, he would not have seen fit to reign as emperor. Thus he was called and given the name of bishop

- 10 πρόεδρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἄδειν ἔχρην αὐτοὺς καὶ τελεῖν τὰ μυστήρια, τὰς μὲν
 ὥδὰς ἐξεπλήρουν διὰ κιθάρας, νῦν μὲν ἡρέμα πως οὕτω καὶ λιγυρῶς ἐπη-
 χοῦντες, τὰ μυστικά μιμούμενοι, νῦν δὲ ἀνέτω φορᾶ καὶ διαπρυσίω, τὰς
 ἐκφωνήσεις δῆθεν τῶν ἱερώων. καὶ σκευὴ δὲ διάχρυσα καὶ ἐκ μαργάρων
 15 συγκεῖμενα ὄξους τε καὶ σινήπεως ἐκπληροῦντες τοῖς οἷς ἐβούλοντο μετα-
 λαμβάνειν ἐδίδοσαν, τῶν ἀχράντων οὕτω καταπαίζοντες μυστηρίων.
 οὗτος οὖν ὁ Γρύλος καὶ ὄνω ἐπωχεῖτο τὰς δημοσίας προόδους τελῶν, καὶ
 τὸν τοιοῦτον θίασον συνεπόμενον ἔχων ἡγάλλετο. καὶ ποτε συνέβη συν-
 τυχεῖν Ἰγνατίω τῷ μακαρίτῃ πατριάρχῃ κατὰ πρόοδον τῇ ἐκκλησιασ-
 20 τικῇ λιτῇ μετὰ τοῦ ἱερατικοῦ κλήρου ἐφεπομένω. ὥς οὖν εἶδεν αὐτὸν ὁ
 Γρύλος, ἄσμενος τοῦ πράγματος ἐλόμενος ἐξήρχε τε τῶν κρουμάτων, καὶ
 τὸν φελόνην ἀναστείλας μετὰ τῶν αὐτοῦ συμμυστῶν εὐτονωτέρας τε
 ἔκρουε τὰς κιθάρας καὶ τοὺς εὐαγεῖς ἐκείνους λοιδορίαις καὶ αἰσχίστοις
 ἔβαλλε ῥήμασι.

39. Καὶ Θεοδώραν δὲ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μητέρα ἔτι ζῶσαν ἐν τοῖς ἀνακτόροις
 διαιτωμένην μετεκαλέσατό ποτε εὐλογηθησομένην παρ' αὐτοῦ, πλα-
 σάμενος τοῦτον εἶναι τὸν μακαρίτην Ἰγνάτιον. ὥς οὖν ἐξῆι μετ' εὐλαβείας
 5 αἶμα καὶ αἰδοῦς ἡ ἱερωτάτῃ γυνή, ἔρριπεν εἰς τοῦδαφος ἑαυτὴν ἐξαι-
 τουμένη εὐχὴν – καὶ γὰρ ἐλάνθανε τέως τὴν γενειάδα κρύπτων –, κατὰ τὸ
 πρόχειρον | φόφον ἀναθορῶν ἐπαφείς δυσωδίας πλήρη καὶ ῥήματά τινα B 202
 ἀπρεπῇ τὰς ἐκείνης καὶ τῶν εὐσεβεστέρων εἰς ἑαυτοὺς ἐξεκαλεῖτο ἀράς· ἡ
 καὶ τὸ μέλλον ἀποφοιβάσασα τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ προνοίας τε καὶ χειρὸς ἕξω
 γενέσθαι διεσάφει τῷ Μιχαήλ.
 10 Ἄλλ' οὐκ ἦν ἄνδρα παρατραπέν|τα δὴ τῆς εὐθείας καὶ ἀποστάντα τῆς f.69v
 ἀρετῆς αὐθις ἀνακληθῆναι καὶ τῆς μακαρίας λαβέσθαι ὁδοῦ. ὅθεν οὐδὲ
 πορρωτέρω δὴ τὰ κακὰ, ἀλλ' ἑαυτοῖς ἐκείνοις πλησιάζειν ἐποιοῦν οἱ τῶν
 τοιούτων αἵτιοι καὶ ἐφευρεταί. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ὁ Βάρδας
 ταῦτα ἐπέφερεν, μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ Θεόκτιστος ὁ κανίκλειος πρὸ αὐτοῦ, εἴτε
 15 δὴ τῷ παντελῶς τούτῳ χαρίζεσθαι πάντας δὴ ὁμοθυμαδὸν καὶ μὴ τῶν
 πονηροτέρων ἀνακόπτειν διδασμάτων ὥς ἐπιτρόπων ἐπιχειρούντων,
 εἴτε δὴ τοῦ μὲν ἐνὸς τυχὸν ἀναστέλλοντος, τοῦ δ' ἑτέρου μὴ τὰ ἴσα φρο-

Cap. 39: GeorgCont (Istrin) 4.8–15; Log A 232.13–233.21; ThCont 137.16–18 | PsSym 663.18–664.4; Scyl 110.43–111.57

11 πῶς V 13 ἱερέων edd, sed Scyl 110.35 ἱερώων 16 γλύρος V 16 ἐποχεῖτο V, cf. PsSym f 248v ὄνω ἐπωχεῖτο λευκῶ (λευκῇ 662.6) 19 ἐκκλησαστική V 19 ἱερατικοῦ V 20 πραγματοσλομενος V 20 ἐξῆρχε τέ V 21 εὐτονώτερον conl. Boor in app., cf. PsSym 662.10 et VBas 22.11 22 εὐ ἀγεῖς V 39.1 ἐτί V 1 κᾶν Boor, cf. PsSym 663.18 ἐν (f 249r ἐκ): καὶ V 2 μετεκαλέσατο ποτέ V 4 αἶμα om. edd 4 post γυνή conl. καὶ Bekk in app. 4 τοῦδαφος V 6 ἀναθορῶν V, cf. PsSym f 249r ἀναθορῶν : ἀναθορὸν B : αὐθορὸν edd 6 τινα om. edd 11 αὐθις om. edd 11 ἀνακληθῆναι ante corr. V, post corr. -κλιθῆναι 14 καὶ : ὁ edd 14 προαυτοῦ V 16 ἐπιτρόπους ἐπιχειροῦντας conl. Boor in app. 17 τυχὸν om. edd 17 ἀναστέλλοντος edd : ἀνατέλλοντος V

of Koloneia. And when they were to sing and celebrate the Mysteries, they performed the chants with the lyre, resounding now somewhat quietly and clearly, in imitation of the Mysteries, now with unconstrained and loud pronunciation, after the manner of the exclamations of priests. Filling all-golden and pearl-encrusted vessels with vinegar and mustard they gave communion to those who desired, thus mocking the undefiled Mysteries. This Grylos, then, would ride mounted on an ass, performing the public processions, and rejoiced in having such a confraternity following him. And once during his procession he happened to come upon the patriarch Ignatios of blessed memory in procession as he followed the litany of the Church together with the hierarchic clergy. When Grylos saw him, he was glad to join in the matter and started striking; and raising his stole together with his fellow initiates he struck a more vigorous lyre-tone and assaulted those pious men with abuses and most shameful words.

39. Once, pretending that this Grylos was Ignatios of blessed memory, Michael summoned his mother Theodora, when she was still living in the Palace, so that she might receive his blessing. When the most holy woman came forth and with reverence and awe threw herself upon the floor asking for a prayer – for at first he escaped notice, hiding his beard –, springing up and emitting on the impulse a noise full of stench and certain indecent words, he provoked the curses, uttered amongst themselves, of this woman and other pious persons; and she, prophesying the future, made clear to Michael that he had withdrawn himself from the providence and hand of God.

But it was impossible that a man who had turned aside from the straight line and renounced virtue should come to his senses and choose the righteous path. Therefore the men who were the cause and inventors of such things did not keep distance from evil but rather attracted it to themselves. Bardas first brought it upon himself, or rather Theoktistos, the keeper of the Inkpot, before him, either because, whilst all indulged Michael wholeheartedly in every wise, they did not as guardians attempt to restrain him in his lessons in wickedness; or else because even if one of them may have restrained him, the other, out of selfish ambition, was not of the same mind nor

νοῦντος ἐξ ἐριθείας καὶ συναναστέλλοντος, ἀλλ’ ἐπιτρέποντος μᾶλλον, ὥς καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐν τοῖς καθ’ ἡμᾶς χρόνοις τοιούτους ἐθεασάμεθα.

- 20 Πλὴν ἐπήγαγον εἰς ἑαυτοὺς τὰ κακά, καὶ ὁ μὲν Θεόκτιστος νῦν μὲν, ὥς εἴρηται, σφαττόμενος, νῦν δὲ ταῖς αἷς ἐπεχειρεῖ δουλείαις μὴ κατενδο-
δούμενος. καὶ γὰρ πολλῶν στρατιῶν πολλάκις προκριθεὶς ἡγεμὼν, καὶ
κατὰ πολλῶν ὁρμήσας πολέμιων νῦν τε καὶ πρὸ τούτου οὐδαμοῦ νικήσας
ὑπέστρεψεν ἢ τὸ σύνολον τῶν ἐχθρῶν καθυπερτερῶν, ἡττώμενος δὲ καὶ
25 πανωλεθρίᾳ τὰ στρατεύματα παραδούς, οὐκ οἶδα εἴτε φρονήσεως ἀμοι-
ρῶν καὶ λόγου καὶ τῶν ἐν πολέμοις ἀνδραγαθῶν ἀπείρως ἔχων ἅτε B 203
δὴ μὴ δὲ μελετήσας ταῦτά ποτε, ἢ τινι ἄλλῃ μείζονι αἰτίᾳ καὶ ὑπὲρ ἡμᾶς, ἢ
καὶ τῇ εἰρημένῃ νυνί. καὶ γὰρ ἡλιακῶν ποτε ἐκλείψεων δύο γεγεννημένων,
κατὰ τῶν Ἀβασγῶν οὗτος προκριθεὶς στρατηγὸς θεομηνίας ἀπέλαυσε
30 δυστυχῶς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ναυαγίῳ περιπεσόντες περὶ τὴν ἑαυτῶν ζωὴν
ἐδυστύχησαν, οἱ δὲ καὶ τῆς ξηρᾶς ἐπιβάντες ταῖς ἐκείνων δυστυχίαις
συνεκοινωνήσαν. καὶ οὗτος μὲν οὕτως ἀπώλετο ὁ στρατός· μετ’ οὐ πολὺ
δὲ πάλιν θρασύτερον ἀψάμενος τοῦ πολέμου ὑπὲρ τὰς τέσσαρας μυριάδας
ἀπέβαλε τοῦ στρατοῦ. καὶ αὖθις κατὰ τῶν ἐν Κρήτῃ Ἀράβων στρατεύσας
35 ἄπρακτος ὑπέστρεψεν, οὐκ ὀλίγους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἐκέϊσε καταλιπὼν διὰ
τὸ φυγῇ χρησάμενον ἀθρόως ἀπαλλαγῆναι αὐτῆς. | f.70
40. Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἐκεῖνος καὶ πρότερον, νῦν δὲ σύμβολά τινα προ-
φανῇ καὶ κομήτων ἐπιτολαὶ καὶ ὄψεις ὄνειράτων γινόμεναι τὰ μέλλοντα
τῷ Βάρδᾳ δεινὰ παρεγύμνου, οὐκ ἐξ αὐτομάτου πάντως ἢ καὶ ἄλλως
ἀλόγῳ φορᾷ, προνοίᾳ δὲ τινι τοῦ μὴ τὸν θάνατον ζητοῦντος ὥς τὴν ἐπι-
5 στροφὴν τοῦ ἀμαρτωλοῦ. κατὰ τοὺς ὕπνους γοῦν ἔδοξεν οὗτος πρὸς τὸ
τοῦ θεοῦ λόγου τέμενος, ᾧ ἐπώνυμον Σοφία, μετὰ τοῦ Μιχαήλ ἐν
πανδημῷ πανηγύρει καὶ προελεύσει φοιτᾷν. ὥς οὖν ἀφίκοντο καὶ κατὰ
μέσον ἐγένοντο τοῦ ναοῦ, λευκοφόροι τινὲς ἀνεφαίνοντο δύο τὸν ἀριθμὸν,
τὸ σχῆμα ἀγγελοειδεῖς· ὥς δὲ προσωτέρω μᾶλλον ἐχώρησαν, ἄλλο μὲν
10 ὁρῶσιν οὐδέν, ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ θρόνῳ τινα γηραιὸν ἐγκαθήμενον | – Πέτρον εἶ- B 204

39.28–30 : *navalis expeditio Theoctisti in Abasgia fortasse a. 840 (secundum Huxley ByzSlav 50 [1989] 9–10) contigit*

Cap. 40: GeorgCont (Istrin) 12.10; Gen 73.83–74.3 | PsSym 677.5, 677.15–678.6; Scyl 111.57–81 || 4–5 Ez 33.11;

18 ἐρεριθείας V Comb : ἐρεσχελίας conl. Comb in marg. 27 μὴ δὲ : μήτε edd 27 ποτὲ V edd 27 ἢ τινὶ V 27 μείζονι V 27 καὶ : τῇ edd 28 ποτὲ edd 29 ἀπήλαυσε edd 30 ναυαγίᾳ conl. Bekk in app. 33 θρασύτερον edd Boor : θρασύτερος V 35 κατὰ λιπῶν V 40.1 καὶ om. edd 1 δὲ Bekk : μὲν V Comb 1 σύμβολα τινὰ V 2 κομητῶν edd 2 (ἐπ)ι(τολαί) post corr. V 3 ἐξ αὐτομάτου iteravit V 5 τὸν ὕπνον edd 6 λόγου om. edd 10 περὶ – τὸν θρόνον Boor e Scyl 111.64 : περὶ – τῷ θρόνῳ V Comb : ἐπὶ – τῷ θρόνῳ Bekk

restrained Michael, but rather prompted him, just as we ourselves have seen such men in our own times.

But they drew evil down upon themselves: in the case of Theoktistos, both now, being slain, as we have said, and also at other times failing to succeed in the tasks he undertook. For he was many times chosen as leader of many armies and, taking the field against many enemies, he never, neither this time nor before, returned in victory or having prevailed over the enemy in any wise, but rather in defeat and having delivered the armies to utter destruction. I know not whether this was because he lacked judgement and reason and was unacquainted with the exploits of war, in as much as he had never studied this, or on account of some graver cause which eludes us, or else, on account of the one we name now. For once, after there had been two solar eclipses, Theoktistos was chosen general against the Abasgoi and haplessly experienced God's wrath. For some suffered shipwreck and paid for the misfortune with their lives, and even those who trod on dry land shared in the misfortune of the others. Thus did this army perish. And not long afterwards, again waging war yet more boldly he lost over forty thousand of his army. And again taking the field against the Arabs in Crete he returned unsuccessful, leaving behind not a few of his men because of his precipitous departure in flight from the island.

40. So much for Theoktistos earlier. Now, however, there occurred certain conspicuous signs and risings of comets and visions in dreams which revealed to Bardas terrible things to come in the future, surely not through accident or by any otherwise unaccountable force, but by some providence of Him who does not seek the death but the conversion of the sinner. In his sleep, then, Bardas seemed to make his way with Michael in the public celebration and procession to the sanctuary of the God which bears the name of Wisdom. As they arrived and came to the middle of the church, there appeared men dressed in white, two in number and angelic in form. And as Bardas and Michael grew closer, they saw nothing else but an old man sitting on

- ναι τοῦτον τὸν κορυφαῖον τῶν ἀποστόλων ὑπώπτευσαν – καὶ περὶ τοῦς ἐκείνου πόδας τὸν μακαρίτην Ἰγνάτιον καλινδούμενον καὶ τὴν παρ’ ὧν ἐπεπόνθει δεινὰ ἐκδίκησιν ἰδεῖν ἐξαιτούμενον. ὁ δὲ ἐκείνῳ τε οἷα συμπάσχων ἔφησε δοῦναι οὐκ εἰς μακράν, καὶ τῶν ἐφεστώτων ἐνὶ – δύο δὲ
- 15 τούτῳ χρυσοφοροῦντες ἐφαίνοντο – μάχαιραν οὐ μεγάλην δούς, “ἄγε δὴ, ταύτη”, ἔφησε, “τὸν μὲν τῇ τῶν εὐωνύμων χώρᾳ ἐγκαταστήσας μεληδὸν διάτεμνε τὸν θεόργιστον”, οὕτω δὲ <τὸν> καίσαρα εἰπών, “τὸν δ’ ἄλλον, ἀσεβότεκνον”, οὕτω <τὸν βασιλέα> κατονομάσας, “κατάλεγε μὲν τοῖς δεξιοῖς, τὴν δ’ ὁμοίαν δίκην ἀπεκδέχεσθαι πρόσειπε”. καὶ ὁ μὲν ὄνειρος οὕτω
- 20 δὴ ἐτελεύτα· ὁ δὲ ὕπαρ ἀλλ’ οὐκ ὄναρ ἐστίν.

41. Ἄρτι κατὰ τῶν Κρητικῶν πανδημεὶ μετὰ τοῦ Μιχαήλ καθωπλίζετο, καὶ πρὸς τὸν τῆς ὑπεραγίας δεσποίνης ἡμῶν θεοτόκου ναόν, ὃς οὕτω δὴ “Ὁδηγοί” κατονομάζεται, προσφοιτήσας εἰσῆει μετὰ λαμπάδων τὸν συντακτῆριον ἐκπληρῶν. ὥς οὖν τοῖς ἀδύτοις πλησιάσων
- 5 ἀπήει, ἄφνω τῶν αὐτοῦ ὤμων ἢ χλανὶς ὀλισθήσασα αἰσθῆσθαι τοῦτον καινοτέρων δεινῶν ἐνεποίησεν. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ πρὸ μιᾶς ἡμέρας τοῦ μέλλειν αὐτὸν ἀπαίρειν ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως, εἴτ’ ἀφ’ αὐτοῦ εἴτε καὶ ἄλλως ὑπὸ τοῦ | f.70v μέλλοντος ἐλανόμενος, τοὺς φίλους συναγαγὼν εἰς ταῦτόν καὶ συμποσιάσας μεμνησθῆναι τε τῆς αὐτοῦ παρῆναι φιλίας αὐτοῦς καὶ λεγᾶτα ὡς τοῦ βίου ἥδη γινόμενος ξῶ ἐπέδωκεν. ἀλλ’ ἔδει ταῦτα τέλος λαβεῖν.
- 10 Ὡς οὖν κατὰ τῆς Κρήτης ἐξήεσαν καὶ τῷ θέματι τῶν Θρακησίων ἐπέβησαν κατὰ Κήπους, τόπον | τινὰ οὕτω κατονομαζόμενον, οἱ τούτοις B 205 ὑπηρετοῦντες προφθάσαντες τὰς σκηναὶς κατεπήγνυνον ἀμίλλη χρώμενοι καὶ σπουδῇ. ἔνθα πῶς, εἴτε δὴ κατὰ πρόνοιαν εἴτε δὴ καὶ ἄλλως δι’
- 15 ἄγνοιαν, τὴν μὲν τοῦ Μιχαήλ ἐπὶ πεδιάδος χωρίου καὶ ὁμαλοῦ αὐλαίαν ἐκπετανύουσιν, εἰς λόφον δὲ τινα καὶ ὑπερανεστηκότα χώρον τῆς γῆς τὴν τοῦ καίσαρος· ὅπερ ὡς ἔρμαιόν τι καὶ ἀπροσδόκητον κέρδος λαβόντες οἱ τοῦ Μιχαήλ κατεβόων τοῦ καίσαρος καὶ τὰς κατ’ ἐκείνου ἔρραπτον

41.1–2 : primo vere a. 866 navalis expeditio in Cretam

20 Homerus Od. 19.547, cf. Nicetas David Laudatio in Greg. Theol. 12.77 Cap. 41: VBas 17.33–60; 17.1–28; GeorgCont (Istrin) 11.31–12.10, 12.18–13.30; Gen 73.67–82, 75.23–76.60; Log A 248.292–252.361 | PsSym 675.20–679.14; Scyl 111.82–113.19

12 καλινδούμενον : κυλινδόμενος conl. Boor in app. e Scyl 111.66 ἐκυλινδέιτο 12 παρῶν V 13 ἐπεπόνθη V 13 οἷα V 17 τὸν add. Bekk e Scyl 111.68 17 καίσαρα V 17 δὲ edd 18 τὸν βασιλέα add. edd e Scyl 111.71 18 κατέλεγε V 41.4 πλησιάζων edd 5 ἐπήει conl. Boor in app., cf. Scyl 111.76 προσήγγισεν 5 χλανὶς : χλαμὺς Scyl 111.77 et Gen 73.79 6 καινοτέρων V 6 προμιάς V 8 ταυτόν V 9 συμπασιάσας ante corr. V, ut vid. 9 λεγάτα V Gen (L) 73.75 : ληγάτα Scyl 111.81 14 ἐνθα πῶς V : ἐνταῦθα πῶς Scyl 112.85 17 καίσαρος V 17 ἔρμαιόν τι edd 18 οἱ V 18 τοῦ : τῷ edd, cf. Scyl 112.88 18 τοῦ καίσαρος V : τῷ καίσαρι κατητιώντο τὸ γεγονός edd e Scyl 112.88–89

the throne – they suspected this was Peter, the chief of the apostles – and Ignatios of blessed memory who busied himself at his feet and made entreaty that he might see vengeance for the terrible things he had suffered. And the other, as if sharing in his suffering said he would soon grant this, and giving a small knife to one of those who stood by – two men dressed in white appeared to him – he said, ‘Come now, take the God-hated one off to the place of those on the left and with this knife cut him limb from limb,’ thus speaking of the cesar; ‘and as for the other godless child,’ thus referring to the emperor, ‘count him with those on the right, but tell him to expect the same punishment.’ Thus ended this dream, which was no dream but a waking vision.

41. Bardas was just then making preparations for war together with Michael and the entire host against the Cretans, and going in procession to the church of our Most Holy Lady the Mother of God which is called the ‘Hodegoi’ he went in with lamps to celebrate the office. As he was going off to approach the sanctuary, his mantel suddenly slipped from his shoulders, giving him a foreboding of new dangers. And the day before he was to set out from the city, either on his own or otherwise prompted by what was to come, he assembled his friends for a banquet and entreated them to remember his friendship and delivered his testamentary documents, as if he was leaving this life. But these things had to come to an end.

As they were setting out against Crete and landed in the theme of the Thrakesians, near a place called Kepoi [Gardens], their servants went ahead and set up the tents, showing eagerness and zeal. Somehow, whether by Providence or else through ignorance, they pitched the tent of Michael on a plain and level ground, but that of the cesar on a hill and projecting ground. Seizing this as a piece of luck and unexpected gain, Michael’s men denounced

- συμβουλᾶς. ἀλλ' ἔθραττεν αὐτοὺς καὶ νωθροτέρους πῶς πρὸς τὴν ἐγ-
 20 χείρησιν ἐποίει ἢ τοῦ καίσαρος κραταιοτέρα ἰσχύς· ὃ τε γὰρ δομέστικος
 τῶν σχολῶν Ἀντίγονος τοῦτ' ἄλλον, ἀλλ' οὐ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὡς υἱὸς ἐπει-
 θάρχει καὶ ἡγετο, οἳ τ' ἄλλοι δὴ στρατηγοί, καὶ ὁ τοῦ δρόμου τοὺς
 λόγους διδούς, οὕτω καλούμενος Συμβάτιος, ἐπὶ θυγατρὶ αὐτοῦ ὑπάρχων
 25 γαμβρὸς ἀναντιρρήτως τὰ ἐκείνου φρονεῖν ἠναγκάζετο. ἀλλ' ἔλαθεν οὗτος
 κλαπείς καὶ μᾶλλον τὸν φόνον κατεργασάμενος. ὥς οὖν ἡ βουλή ἡρτύθη
 καὶ ὁ λόχος [εὐτρέπιστο] καὶ οἱ τὸ ἔργον εἰς πέρας ἄγοντες ἔτοιμοι,
 σύνθημα ὁ Συμβάτιος ἀλλ' οὐκ ἄλλος εὐτρέπιστο. ἄρτι γοῦν ἐξήει τὰς
 ἀναφορὰς ἀναγνοὺς ἐξ αὐτῶν, καὶ τὸ σημεῖον ἐδίδου τοῦ φόνου σταυρὸν
 30 εἰς τὸ πρόσωπον ἐγχαράττων αὐτοῦ. ἀλλ' αὐθις ἀναβολαί τινες ἦσαν καὶ
 ἀτολμιαί τῷ παρουσιάζειν καὶ κατὰ πρόσωπον ἴστασθαι τὴν τοῦ
 καίσαρος ἐταιρείαν· ὅπερ ὁ Μιχαὴλ εὐλαβούμενος μὴ κατὰφωρος γένηται
 καὶ καθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἐπισπάσῃ τὴν μάχαιραν, ἔθαρσοποιεῖ τε τοὺς ἄνδρας διὰ
 πιστοῦ τινος καὶ θαρραλεωτέρους ἐδείκνυ ταῖς ὑποσχέσεσι καὶ τιμαῖς. B 206
 35 κὰν παρῆλθεν καὶ τὸν φόνον ὁ καῖσαρ ἐξέφυγεν, τῷ δέει τούτων κα-
 ταπλησσομένων καὶ ἀθυμία καταβαλλομένων· ἀλλὰ πάλιν δι'
 ἀποκρίσεων ἐδήλου τῷ Βασιλείῳ – παρακοιμώμενος δὲ οὗτος ἦν – τὴν ἐπὶ
 40 ξυροῦ ἐστῶσαν ἀνάγκην, καὶ ἀπελέγετο τὴν ζωὴν, καὶ πρὸς τὸν φόνον | f.71
 καθώπλιζεν. ὦν ἀκηκοὺς ὁ Βασίλειος, καὶ περὶ τοῦ βασιλέως κατ-
 ορρωδῶν, ἀπορρίψαι πείθει τὸ δέος αὐτοῦς, καὶ “ὦ τῆς ἀνανδρίας”, εἰ-
 πὼν, “καὶ ἀτόλμου ψυχῆς”, ἐπτέρωσε τε ἄφνω αὐτοὺς καὶ εἰσπηδήσαι
 πρὸς τὸν ἀγῶνα ἐποίησεν. οὗς ὁ Βάρδας ἀθρόως ξιφῆρεις ἰδὼν καὶ κατα-
 πλαγεῖς ἔγνωκέ τε τὸν θάνατον καὶ πρὸς τοὺς πόδας ἔρριψε τοῦ βα-
 45 σιλέως αὐτόν. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦν τοῦτον διεκφυγεῖν· ὅθεν αὐθωρόν ἐκεῖθεν τε
 αὐτόν ἀποσπῶσι καὶ μελῆδὸν κατατέμνουσιν, μηνὶ Ἀπριλλίῳ, εἰκάδι
 πρώτῃ, ἰνδικτιῶνος τεσσαρεσκαιδεκάτης. εἴτα κοντῷ τὰ παιδογόνα
 τούτου ἀπαιωρήσαντες μόρια παραδειγματίζουσιν τε καὶ θριαμβεύουσιν.
 θορύβου δὲ πολλοῦ γενομένου καὶ ταραχῆς, ἦν ἰδεῖν καὶ τὸν Μιχαὴλ μι-
 κροῦ τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς θέοντα· ἀλλ' ὁ τῆς βίγλης δρουγγάριος – Κωνσταν-

41.43–45 : die 21 Apr. a. 866 Bardas apud Cepas in Asia trucidatus est

|| 36–37 cf. supra III.33.9

19 ἔθραττεν edd, cf. Scyl 112.89 ὑπέθραττε : ἔθραττε V 24 γραμβρὸς V 25 post φόνον
 add. τοῦ πενθεροῦ edd e Scyl 112.95–96 25 κατεργασόμενος edd 26 post ἔτοιμοι conī.
 dubitanter <ῆσαν> Kamb 26 εὐτρέπιστο seclusimus, ut e sequente anticipatum :
 ηὐτρέπιστο B edd 27 εὐτρέπιστο secludendum Boor in app. putavit, ut e precedente repeti-
 tum 27 οὖν edd 28 τοῦ φόνου ante corr. V (p expunxit) : om. edd 30 τῷ edd : τὸ V
 30 post κατὰ add. τὸ edd 33 τινὸς V 34 κὰν V 34 post παρῆλθεν add. τὸν κίνδυνον
 edd e Scyl 112.7 36 ἀποκρίσεως edd 39 ἀπορρίψαι V 40 ἀνανδρίας – ἀτόλμου conī.
 Boor : ἀνδρίας – ἀτόλμου V : ἀνδρίας – εὐτόλμου edd 43 αὐτόν edd e Scyl 112.13 (ἑαυτὸν
 AE) 44 μελῆδων V 45 τεσσαρεσκαιδεκάτης V

the cesar and devised plots against him. But the cesar's mighty power troubled them and made them more reticent toward the undertaking. For the domestikos of the scholai Antigonos obeyed and followed him, not the emperor, like a son, as well as the other generals; and the director of the Public Course, called Symbatios, being the husband of Bardas's daughter, was obliged to take his side without objection. But Symbatios had secretly been won over and it was he who committed the murder nevertheless. When the plan was set and the snare and those who would carry out the deed ready, it was none other than Symbatios who set the signal. Now, just as Bardas, having read his reports, was departing from them, Symbatios gave the signal for the murder, making the sign of the cross on his face. But there were again hesitations and fears because the company of the cesar was present and stood face to face. Being wary of this, lest Bardas should become aware and draw his sword against him, Michael tried to encourage the men through one of his faithful servants and to make them bolder with promises of honours. Now, the cesar would have got away and escaped the murder, for these men were seized with fear and stricken with despondency; but again through messages Michael informed Basil – he was the parakoimomenos – that the matter stood on a razor's edge and he despaired of his life, and he called him to arms for the murder. Hearing this Basil was filled with dread for the emperor, and he persuaded the men to abandon their fear; and saying 'O what effeminacy and cowardice of soul!' he roused them forthwith and caused them to leap to the struggle. Seeing them suddenly armed with swords Bardas was stricken with panic and knew that it was his death, and he threw himself down at the feet of the emperor. But it was impossible for him to escape. Straightway they took him away and cut him in pieces, on the twenty-first of April in the fourteenth indiction. Then, fixing his genital organs on a pole, they showed them off in triumph. But a great noise and confusion arose, and even Michael was in peril of his life; however, the drungarius of the Watch – it was Constantine –

50 τῖνος δὲ ἦν – ἐν μέσῳ που συρρυνεῖς τὸν πολὺν ἐκείνον διέλυσε θροῦν, εὐφημαῖς τε βάλλων αὐτὸν καὶ παρατάξεις ἀνθοπλίζων κατὰ τῶν ἐπανισταμένων. ὁ μὲν δὴ Βάρδας οὕτως ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο, καὶ οὕτως ἡ κατὰ τῶν Κρητῶν διελύθη στρατιά, τοῦ βασιλέως κατὰ τὸ Βυζάντιον ὑποστρέψαντος.

42. Καὶ ἕτερον δὲ σημεῖον πρὸ δύο ἢ καὶ τριῶν ἡμε|ρῶν τῷ Βάρδῃ B 207 παρεσημαίνετο· ἡ γὰρ Θεοδώρα, εἴτ’ ἄλλως θεοφορομένη εἴτε δὴ καὶ ὑπὸ τινος τῶν μεμελετημένων διακούσασα, ἐσθῆτά τινα παγκάλην μὲν καὶ χρυσαῖς πέρδιξι πεποικιλμένην, οὐκ ἀναλογοῦσαν δὲ τῷ μήκει τῆς 5 ἡλικίας αὐτοῦ ἀλλὰ καὶ πολὺ ἀποδέουσαν αἰνιγματωδῶς ἐξαπέστειλεν. τό τε γὰρ πέρδικας ἀλλὰ μὴ τινας ἄλλας τῶν ὀρνίθων ἐνυφᾶναι, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τὸ τῆς ἐσθῆτος ἐνδένον εἰς δόλον ἐμπεσεῖν θᾶττον ἢ ἔδει προυσήμεινεν.

43. Πλὴν ἀλλ’ ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς ὑπέστρεφε καὶ τὸν Βασίλειον, ἐπεὶ μὴ εὐμοίρει παιδός, υἰοποιεῖται καὶ τῆς τῶν μαγίστρων τιμῆς ἀξιοῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ χρόνου προϊόντος τὰ κοινὰ διοικεῖν οὐχ οἷός τε ὁ Μιχαήλ ἦν καὶ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἀφελείας ἡσθάνετο καὶ ἅμα ἐπανάστασιν μελετᾶσθαι καὶ ἀποστασίαν 5 παρὰ τῆς συγκλήτου διήκουεν τῷ τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων πράγματα διοικεῖσθαι κακῶς, καὶ τὸ περιμάχητον διάδημα τῇ κεφαλῇ αὐτοῦ ἐπιτίθησι, καὶ βασιλέα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῆς πεντηκοστῆς, μηνὶ Μαΐῳ, εἰκάδι ἔκτῃ, ἰνδικτιῶνος τεσσαρεσκαιδεκάτης, ἀναδείκνυσί τε καὶ ἀναγορεύει κατὰ τὴν μεγάλῃν f.71v ἐκκλησίαν ἢ ἐπώνυμον Σοφία θεοῦ. ἀλλ’ ὅστις μὲν οὗτος ὁ Βασίλειος καὶ 10 ὅθεν, καὶ ὅπως εἰς γινῶσιν ἦλθε τοῦ κρατοῦντος, ἡ κατ’ αὐτὸν ἱστορία δηλώσει· τὰ νῦν δὲ τῆς βασιλείου δόξης ἀξιωθεὶς εἶχετο μὲν τῆς βασιλείας, ἀπείχετο δὲ τῶν καθ’ ἐκάστην ἀμιλλητηρίων καὶ ἵπποδρομιῶν καὶ τῶν περὶ τὸν αἰσχροτάτον Γρύλον καὶ ψευδοπατριάρχην αἰσχροσυργιῶν, ὧν ἀκαίρως ἐνετρύφα ὁ Μιχαήλ. | B 208

43.6–9 : die 26 Maii a. 866 Basilius imperialem coronam accepit

Cap. 42: GeorgCont (Istrin) 12.14–18 | PsSym 677.9–15 Cap. 43: GeorgCont (Istrin) 13.31–14.20; Gen 79.49–68; Log A 252.362–253.389 | PsSym 679.15–680.6; Scyl 113.20–25

51 ὕτως V 52 στρατεία coni. Boor in app., cf. VBas 17.60 στρατεία et Scyl 113.20 ἐκστρατεία 42.1 post καὶ add. πρὸ edd 3 ἐσθῆτα τινα V 6 γὰρ: μὲν Comb 6 ἄλλας edd: ἄλλως V 6 ἐνυφάναι V: ἀνυφάναι Comb 7 προσήμεινεν edd 43.1 καὶ τὸν: τὸν τε edd 3 οὐχ V 5 πράγματα om. edd 6 καὶ post κακῶς secludendum dubitanter putavit Kamb 6 τὸ: τῷ V 6 ἐπιτίθησι ante corr. V 7 τῆς om. edd 10 ἦλθεν (sic) ante εἰς γινῶσιν edd 10 καταυτὸν V 12 ἀπήχετο V 12 ἵπποδρομιῶν edd Boor: ἵπποδρομίῶν V 13 τὸν: τῶν edd

somehow got to the centre and dispersed the great clamour, praising Michael and drawing up ranks against the insurgents. Thus did Bardas leave the world of men, and thus was the expedition against Crete dispersed, the emperor returning to Byzantium.

42. There was also another sign that appeared to Bardas two or three days earlier. For Theodora, either somehow inspired by the Divinity, or else, having heard from those who had hatched the plot, sent him by way of a riddle a garment that was very beautiful and adorned with golden partridges, but was not in proportion to the length of his stature but much too short. For the embroidery of partridges, instead of some other birds, and also the shortness of the garment was a sign that he would fall victim to treachery sooner than was fitting.

43. But the emperor returned and, because he had no children, adopted Basil and granted him the dignity of magistros. And because, in the course of time Michael was unable to administer state affairs and was conscious of his own simplicity, when he heard that an uprising and revolt was being plotted by the Senate on account of the bad administration of the Roman state, he also placed the highly sought after crown upon his head and declared and proclaimed him emperor in the Great Church named after the Wisdom of God on the day of Whitsun, the twenty-sixth of May, in the fourteenth indication. Now, who this Basil was and where he was from, and how he had come to the knowledge of the emperor, will be revealed in the History concerning him. At this time, having been granted the imperial glory, he held fast to the imperial office; but he kept away from the daily contests and horse races and the base acts of those around the most shameless fake-patriarch Grylos, in which Michael importunately revelled.

44. Πάντων μὲν γὰρ κόρον εἶναι καὶ τῶν αἰσχυρῶν καὶ τῶν φυσικῶν εἴρηται τε πολλοῖς, καὶ ἡ πείρα τούτων διδάσκαλος ἀκριβής· Μιχαήλ δὲ τῷ τότε κρατοῦντι οὔτε τῶν ἵπποδρομιῶν οὔτε μὴν τῶν ἄλλων ἀκρατοποσιῶν τε καὶ αἰσχυρῶν κόρος ἦν, ὥς φασίν. ἃ πειρώμενος κωλύειν ὁ
- 5 Βασίλειος καὶ πορρωτέρω τούτων ποιεῖν αὐτόν, νῦν μὲν παραινέσει χρώμενος, νῦν δ' ἄλλως μῖσος παρὰ τῶν πολιτῶν καὶ τὰς παρὰ τῶν ἱερέων ἀρὰς καὶ τὰς τῆς συγκλήτου ἐπαναστάσεις προτιθεὶς καὶ οἷον ἐνώπιον αὐτοῦ ἀναζωγραφῶν, ἔλαθε τῷ φθόνῳ ἑαυτὸν καθυποβαλὼν, καὶ ἀντὶ φίλου ἐχθρὸς καὶ μεμισημένος ὁ υἱοθετηθεὶς ἐνομιζέτο. ἐντεῦθεν οὐ
- 10 πολὺ τὸ ἐν μέσῳ, καὶ τινα ἄλλον, τοῦ βασιλικοῦ δρόμωνος ἐρέτην τῆνικαῦτα τελούντα – Βασι<λι>κῖνος οὗτος ἐλέγετο, καὶ ἀδελφὸς ἦν Καπνογένους ἐκείνου τοῦ τὴν ὑπαρχικὴν ἀξίαν ἡξιωμένου τὸ δεύτερον – ἀγαγὼν, τὴν πορφύραν τε ἐνδύει καὶ τὸ διάδημα περιτίθησιν, καὶ τὰ παράσημα τῶν ὑποδημάτων περιβαλὼν ἐξάγει πρὸς τὴν σύγκλητον τῆς
- 15 χειρὸς ἔχων αὐτόν, καὶ πρὸς τὴν γερουσίαν φησὶν ὥς “ἔδει πάλαι με τοῦτον εἰς τουτονὶ τὸν περίβλεπτον κόσμον, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπαγαγεῖν, ὦ πρῶτον μὲν εἶδος ἄξιον τυραννίδος, δεύτερον δὲ συμφυὲς πέλει στέφος, ἅπαντα δ' ἀρμόζουσι πρὸς τὴν ἀξίαν,
- 20 ἢ τὸν Βασίλειον, ἐφ' ὃ καὶ μεταμετέλῃμαι ἐφ' οἷς αὐτὸν ἐβασίλευσα”.
- Αὕτη τῆς καταλύσεως αὐτοῦ ἡ ἀρχή. τοῦτο πάντας περιηχῆσαν ἐκπλαγῆναι τε τούτους ἐποίησε καὶ ἀφασίᾳ καταληφθῆναι πολλῇ, ὅτι B 209 <ἡ> γῆ κατὰ τοὺς μυθικοὺς Γίγαντας βασιλέας σπαρτοὺς καθ' ἐκάστην ἡμέραν ἀναδίδωσιν. ἠϋξητο μὲν οὖν ἔκτοτε τὸ πρὸς τὸν Βασίλειον μῖσος,
- 25 καὶ σφοδρότερον κατὰ τὴν τοῦ πυλῶρος φύσιν ἐγένετο, ὑπέκκαυμα ἔχον καὶ f.72 αἴτιον τὸ μήτε συμφεیرهσθαι βούλεσθαι τούτοις αὐτὸν μήτε μὴν συν-

44.9–13 : ca. 1 Sept. a. 867 Basiliscinus imperialem coronam accepit

Cap. 44: VBas 25.4–28; 24.40–47; GeorgCont (Istrin) 15.18–17.24; Gen 79.69–80.84; VBas 25–26; Log A 255.430–260.5 | PsSym 681.13–21, 682.19–686.12; Scyl 113.27–114.52 || 1 Homerus, Il. 13.636; 17 Euripides, Aeolus fragm. Nauck 15.2;

44.3 ἵπποδρομιῶν edd Boor : ἵπποδρομίῶν V 4 ἀκρατοποσιῶν Boor : ἀκρατοποσίῳν V 8 ζωγραφῶν edd 9 μεμισημένος V 11 Βασι<λι>κῖνος edd, cf. VBas 25.10–11 et Scyl 113.29 Βασιλικῖνον : βασικῖνος V : Βασιλίσκιανός PsSym 682.20 et 683.10 GeorgCont (Istrin) 5.24, 34 et 16.14, 24 16 ὦ Boor, cf. Scyl 113.34 ἐφ' ὃ : ὁ V : om. edd 18 ante δεύτερον add. τὸ Boor e VBas 25.20, Scyl 113.37 (ACEB) et PsSym 683.13 : καὶ δεύτερον edd e Scyl 113.37 (FH) 18 συμφυὲς V 19 ἅπαντα V PsSym f 253v 19 post ἀξίαν add. καὶ ὅτι πόσον ἦν κάλλιον τοῦτον με ποιῆσαι βασιλέα edd e VBas 25.22, cf. PsSym 683.15 καὶ ὅτι πόσον οὖν κάλλιον – βασιλέα 20 καὶ om. edd 20 ἐφ' fortasse delendum putavit Boor 23 <ἡ> γῆ coni. Kamb : δῆ V, quod om. edd 25 ἔχων V

44. It is said by many that there is a limit in all things, both shameless and natural, and experience is an accurate teacher in this. But Michael, who was then emperor, never had his fill, as they say, either of horse racing or of any other drinking of unmixed wine or shameless acts. Basil attempted to prevent him from doing this further, now employing exhortations, now presenting and, as it were, painting before his eyes the hatred of the citizens and curses of the priests and insurrections of the Senate; but it escaped Basil's notice that in so doing he made himself an object of envy, and instead of a friend the adopted one was considered a hated enemy. For this reason, not long afterwards, Michael took another man, then serving as an oarsman of the imperial dromon – this one was called Basilikinos and was the brother of that Kapnogenes who was granted the dignity of prefect for the second time –, and vested him in purple and placed the diadem upon him; then putting on his feet the conspicuous shoes he led him off to the Senate, holding his hand, and before the council he said, 'O ye men, would that I formerly had brought this man to this conspicuous office –

Firstly, his form is Monarchy's due

Secondly, the crown is Nature's accrue:

All conspires to his worth! –

rather than Basil, whom I regret to have made emperor.'

This was the beginning of his undoing. When word of this got round it caused all to be astonished and left them in great perplexity, for after the manner of the mythical giants the earth was bringing up sown emperors every day. From that time on hatred toward Basil increased and became more intense after the nature of fire, having as its fuel and cause Basil's desire not to be corrupted together with the others nor to be carried away in their licen-

- υπάγεσθαι ταῖς ἀκολάστοις γνώμαις αὐτῶν. εἰς τοσαύτην γὰρ ὁ Μιχαὴλ
πολλάκις ἄνοιαν ἐξ ἀκρατοποσίας καὶ μέθης ἐξώκειλεν ὥς κατ' αὐτὴν μὲν
30 γὰρ ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὰ ὦτα καὶ ἄλλου τὴν ῥίνα καὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἑτέρου
προσέταπτεν· ἃ εἰ μὴ τινες οἴκτω κρατούμενοι παρημέλουν καὶ πρὸς τὴν
αὔριον ἔπεμπον, ἀνάκλησιν τινὰ καὶ μεταμέλειαν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐκδεχόμενοι,
ὅπερ καὶ ἦν, κἂν ἀπώλετο σύμπας ὁ παραμένων αὐτῷ καὶ συγκαρτερῶν.
35 μικροῦ δὲ καὶ Βασίλειος συναπώλετο, τῆς παροινίας οὐκ ὀλιγάκις
παίγνιον γεγονώς. ἀλλ' ἐκαρτέρει καὶ ἔμενε μετάμελόν τινὰ γενεθῆναι
κατὰ τὸν ἄνδρα ὁπὲ γοῦν ὑποτοπάζων. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦν τοῦτον ὥσπερ
ἀρμάτειον τροχὸν ἐκ πρώτης ἡλικίας καμφθέντα, οὐδ' ἂν εἴ τι γένοιτο, τὴν
ἐξ ἀρχῆς εὐθυωρίαν λαβεῖν. τοιγαροῦν καὶ μείζονα κατὰ Βασιλείου
40 συρράπτει ἐπιβουλήν. ἡ δὲ ἦν ἐν τῷ κυνηγίῳ λόγῳ μὲν κατὰ τῆς θήρας
ἔργῳ δὲ κατὰ τοῦ Βασιλείου τὴν τῆς λόγχης ῥίψιν ποιῆσαι τινὰ τῶν
ὑπασπιστῶν. καὶ τοῦτο αὐτὸς ὁ προσταγείς καὶ τὴν λόγχην ἀφείς κατὰ
τὸν τῆς ἐξόδου καιρὸν ἐξαγορεύσας δῆλον πεποίηκε καὶ πιστόν. ἀφῆκε B 210
μὲν οὖν οὗτος τὴν λόγχην ὁ κελευσθεὶς, διημάρτανε δέ· καὶ οὕτω σέσωστο
ὁ Βασίλειος, ἔγγιστα θανάτου γενόμενος, ὑπὸ τοῦ τὸν θάνατον καταπε-
45 πατηκότος θεοῦ. ταῦτ' οὖν ἔκπυστα γενόμενα πᾶσι καὶ φανερά τὴν κατ'
αὐτοῦ ἠκόνησε μάχαιραν. ἵνα γὰρ μὴ καὶ τὸν Βασίλειον ὥς πρὸ μικροῦ
τὸν καίσαρα σφαττόμενον ἴδωσι, καὶ πρὸ τούτου αὐτὸν Θεόκτιστον, εἴτε
βουλῇ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς εἴτε γνώμῃ τῶν φιλοῦντων τὸν Βασίλειον –
κοινὸς γὰρ καὶ κατ' αὐτῶν ὁ θάνατος ἐπηπείλητο – σφάττεται ὑπὸ τῶν
50 προκοίτων τοῦ βασιλέως ἀνδρῶν, κατὰ τὰ ἀνάκτορα τοῦ ἁγίου μεγα-
λομάρτυρος Μάμαντος, μηνὶ Σεπτεμβρίῳ, εἰκάδι τετάρτῃ, ἰνδ. α', ἔτους
ἐξακισχίλιοστοῦ τριακοσιοστοῦ ἑβδομηκοστοῦ ἔκτου, ὥρᾳ τῆς νυκτὸς | f.72v
τρίτῃ, βεβασιλευκῶς ἔτη μετὰ μὲν τῆς Θεοδώρας τῆς τούτου μητρὸς
τέσσαρα καὶ δέκα, καὶ μόναρχος δέκα καὶ ἕν, καὶ πρὸς τοῖς τρισὶ μῆσι
55 χρόνον α' ὕστερον μετὰ Βασιλείου.

45. Καὶ τὰ μὲν εἰρημένα σκηνικά τε ἅπαντα καὶ θεατρικά, ἄξιον δὲ με-
μνησθαι καὶ τῶν ἐπαινετῶν. ἡ γὰρ τῶν ὧν ἔφερεν ἀναθημάτων ἐν τῷ πε-

44.49–53 : die 24 Sept. a. 867 Michael imperator trucidatus est

36–38 cf. Plutarchus, De liberis educandis 2D: οἱ δ' ἀρμάτειοι τροχοὶ πόνῳ καμφθέντες οὐδ' ἂν εἴ τι γένοιτο τὴν ἐξ ἀρχῆς δύναιντ' ἀναλαβεῖν εὐθυωρίαν Cap. 45: Scyl 114.52–55

27 συνέπαγεσθαι edd 27 τοσαύ|τὴν V 32 ἀνάκλησιν τινὰ V 32 ἐκδεχόμενοι edd : ἐκδεχομενος V 33 κἂν V 35 μετὰ μελόν τινὰ V 36 ἀλλοῦκ V 37 ἀρμάτιον V 38 λαβεῖν : ἀναλαβεῖν Plut. de liberis educandis 2D 38 καὶ om. edd 40 ῥίψιν V 40 ποιῆσαι τινὰ V 45 ἔκπυστα V 48 βουλῇ V 48 τὸν om. edd 49 καταπτόν V 51 ἰνδικτιῶνος πρώτης edd 52 ἐξακισχίλιωστοῦ τριακοσίουστοῦ ἑβδομηκοστοῦ ἔκτου V 52 ἐκ τοῦ V 55 α' : ἕνα edd 55 ὕπερον V

tious inclinations. For Michael often ran aground into such frenzy from wine drinking and drunkenness that at the moment and for the time it lasted he would issue frightful – and worse than frightful – commands. One man he ordered to be deprived of his ears, and another his nose, and another his head. And if, out of pity, certain men had not neglected these orders and left them for the morrow, expecting some kind of recollection and repentance of the man – which indeed there was – all who remained and stood by him would have perished. Basil, too, nearly perished, having been often the plaything of the other's madness. But he abided and persisted in the expectation of the man's later repentance. But, like a chariot wheel bent from its first age, it was impossible for Michael, no matter what happened, to regain his rectitude of origin. Thus did he stitch together a yet greater plot against Basil. This was that, on the hunt, one of the guards should in word lance the spear against the beast, but in fact against Basil. The man who had been commanded to do this and had thrown the spear made this clear and worthy of belief in his confession at the time of his death. As ordered, he lanced the spear, but he missed; and thus Basil, coming very close to death, was saved by God who had trampled down death. When these things were heard and became known to everyone they caused the knife to be sharpened against Michael. For lest they should see Basil murdered as the cesar had been shortly before, and Theoktistos before him, either by deliberation of the assembly of the Senate or by intent of those who loved Basil – for a common death threatened them – Michael was murdered by the imperial chamberlains in the palace of the holy great martyr Mamas on the twenty-fourth of the month of September, in the 1st indiction, in the year six-thousand-three-hundred-seventy-six, at the third hour of the night. He had reigned for fourteen years with his mother Theodora, and for eleven alone, and afterwards one year and three months with Basil.

45. So much for all the theatrical and stage pranks we have mentioned. But it is also right to remember praiseworthy things. For the fabrication,

ριωνύμῳ ναῶ τοῦ θεοῦ κατασκευή φιλεργῶς τελεσθεῖσα καὶ φιλοτίμως
 ἐπαινετή. οὔτε γὰρ τῷ δίσκῳ τῶν παλαιῶν τι κειμηλίων καὶ ἱερῶν, καὶ
 5 τῶν ἀφ' οὗ γεγόνασιν ἄνθρωποι τεχνουργηθέντων ἐν ναοῖς, κατὰ τὸ
 μέγεθος ἐξισάζεται, οὔτε τις εὐπρέπεια καὶ ὠραιότης τινὶ τῶν γενομένων
 ἐπήνησεν, πάντων ἐκεῖ τῶν ὠραίων καὶ τιμίων συνδεδραμηκότων· | καὶ B 211
 τὸ ποτήριον δὲ τούτῳ λίαν κατάλληλον.

Οὐ μὴν δὲ καὶ ὁ εἰς φωταγωγίαν κατασκευασθεὶς αὐτῷ κύκλος, ὅπερ
 10 φασὶ πολυκάνδηλον, τινὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἡλάττωται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτος ἐκ χρυ-
 σοῦ ὅλος γενόμενος, λίτρας ἔχων ἐξήκοντα, τῶν ἄλλων διαφέρει κατὰ
 πολὺ καὶ τούτῳ δίδωσι τὰ πρωτεῖα καὶ τὸ σεβάσμιον.

45.3 τοῦ θεοῦ: τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ σοφίας edd, cf. Scyl 114.54 τῇ μεγάλῃ ἐκκλησίᾳ 8 τούτῳ edd:
 τοῦτο V 12 πρωτεῖα V

accomplished with industry and munificence, of his offerings to the renowned Church of God is worthy of praise. For the paten has no equal in size from amongst the ancient and holy treasures in the churches crafted since man came into being, nor does such comeliness and beauty flourish upon anything else from amongst all the beautiful and precious things gathered up there. The chalice, too, is in every way appropriate to the paten.

Nor is the circle constructed for illumination, which is called a polykandelon, inferior to either of the other things, but this also is all of gold, weighing sixty litrai, and greatly exceeds the others and gives Michael first place and honour.

1. Index nominum preriorum

Ἀβασγία: terra Abasgorum, in Ponto septentrionali III.39.16	III.22.2 III.22.35 III.23.7 III.25.8
Ἀβασγοί: Abasgi IV.39.29	III.28.1 III.29.1 III.34.5
Ἀβέλ: Biblicus II.23.16	III.37.1 III.37.9 III.38.2
Ἀβεσαλώμ: ὁ Τσαγγότυβος, strategus IV.23.22 IV.23.22	IV.27.15
Ἀβουζάχαρ: dux Hagarenorum III.22.15	Ἀγαρηνός: Hagarenus, i.e. Arabs III.21.4 III.23.20 III.35.2
Ἀβραμιτῶν, ἡ μονὴ τῶν: monasterium Abraamitarum III.11.3	Ἀγροῦ, ἡ μονὴ τοῦ: monasterium Agros Theophanis confessoris I.18.16
Ἀβυδος: urbs Troadis II.13.11	Ἀδριανούπολις: urbs Thraciae II.18.42
Ἀγαρ, οἱ ἔξ: Hagareni, i.e. Arabes II.10.10 III.9.1 III.20.18 III.26.39 III.27.3	Ἀέτιος: patricius, strategus thematis Anatolicorum III.30.13
Ἀγαρῆνοί: Hagareni, i.e. Arabes I.3.8 I.4.12 II.12.1 II.12.18 II.21.3 II.22.8 II.22.11 II.25.7 II.28.1 II.28.10 III.19.1 III.19.18 III.21.4	Ἀθανασία: filia Bardanii strategī I.3.47
	Ἀθανάσιος: nomen monasticum Michael I imperatoris I.10.9
	Ἀθίγγανοι: Athingani II.3.4 II.5.4. II.7.1 II.11.11
	Αἴγιλον: locus Anatoliae IV.35.9

- Αιγύπτιοι: Aegyptii
II.12.20
- Ἀκρίτας: promontorium
II.8.19
- Ἀλεξάνδρεια: urbs Aegypti
I.10.5
- Ἀλέξιος: Alexius Μουσελέ Κρηνίτης, caesar
III.18.6
III.18.18
III.18.27
- Ἀλῆς: dux urbis Tarsi
IV.16.26
IV.16.28
- Ἀμαληκῖται: Amalecites
I.9.14
- Ἄμαρα: urbs Paulicianorum
IV.16.22
- Ἄμαστρις: urbs Paphlagoniae
III.29.21
III.38.8
- Ἄμep: dux urbis Melitenae
III.31.7
IV.16.17
IV.16.25
IV.16.30
IV.23.4
IV.24.5
IV.24.14
IV.24.35
IV.25.2
IV.25.36
IV.25.50
IV.25.54
IV.25.82
IV.36.9
- Ἀμισός: urb54s Bithyniae
IV.25.3
- Ἀμόριον: urbs Phrygiae
II.1. tit.
II.3.3
III.30.4
III.30.8
- III.31.3
III.32.21
III.34.21
III.35.1
III.35.9
- Ἀναργύρων, τὸ τέμενος τῶν
II.14.37
- Ἀναστασία: filia Theodoraе imperatricis
III.5.13
- Ἀναστάσιος: filius adoptatus Thomae
usurpatoris
II.14.28
II.18.43
II.19.52
- Ἀνατέλλοντος, ἡ μονὴ τοῦ: monasterium
quondam Michaelis archangeli, postea Satyri
I.10.28
I.10.40
- Ἀνατολικός, ὁ: thema Anatolicorum
II.11.4
- Ἀνατολικῶν, τὸ θέμα τῶν: thema
Anatolicorum
I.1.6
I.4.32
II.22.4
III.19.8
III.30.14
IV.16.10
IV.25.43
IV.25.47
- Ἀνδρέας: Andrea apostolus
I.10.41
- Ἀνδρέου, ἡ νῆσος τοῦ ἀποστόλου: insula
S. Andreae
II.8.19
- Ἀνζῆς: locus Anatoliae
III.31.13
IV.24.12
- Ἀνθεμίου, ὁ τόπος τοῦ: locus apud Mangana
III.18.34

- Ἀννα: filia Theodoraē imperatricis
III.5.13
- Ἀννα, ἡ ἁγία: ecclesia S. Annae in regio
Deutero Constantinopoleos
IV.34.11
- Ἀννης, εὐκτήριον τῆς ἁγίας: ecclesia
S. Annae apud Palatium Leone VI constructa
III.43.109
- Ἀντίγονος: domesticus Scholarum, filius
Bardae
IV.25.13
IV.41.20
- Ἀντιόχεια: urbs Syriae
II.12.16
- Ἀπόχαψ: amermoumnes Iberiae
II.21.13
II.23.7
- Ἀραβες: Arabes
IV.39.34
- Ἀργαῖας: mons
IV.35.8
- Ἀργαοῦν: urbs Paulicianorum
IV.16.22
- Ἀργυροῦ, ὁ τοῦ: filius Argyri, dux a Theodora
contra Paulicianos missus
IV.16.6
- Ἀριστήριον: camera aedis Chrysotriclini apud
Palatium
III.43.83
- Ἀρμενία: Armenia
Tit.gen. 6
I.tit.
I.1.1
- Ἀρμενιάκος, ὁ: thema Armeniacorum
IV.25.2
- Ἀρμενιάκος: Nicolaus
IV.31.11
- Ἀρμενιάκων, τὸ θέμα τῶν: thema
Armeniacorum
I.3.4
II.11.34
IV.1.17
IV.25.41
- Ἀρμενίων, τὸ θέμα τῶν: thema Armeniorum
I.12.7
III.31.9
- Ἀρμένιοι: Armenii
I.1.2
II.10.27
II.12.20
III.18.6
III.19.8
IV.1.7
IV.16.28
- Ἀρσαβῆρ: pater Theodosiae uxoris Leonis V
I.21.32
- Ἀρσαβῆρ: patricius et magister, frater
Ioannis Grammatici
IV.8.2
IV.22.24
- Ἀσηγηρεῖα: aedes Asecretarum
I.21.26
IV.19.25
- Ἀσία: Asia Minor
II.11.29
II.11.32
II.13.10
II.14.2
II.19.41
II.20bis.2
- Ἀσπαρος, ἡ: cisterna Asparis
IV.18.11
- Ἀσσύριοι: Assyrii
I.1.2
II.12.20
- Αὐξεντίου, τοῦ: mons S. Auxentii
IV.35.11
- Ἀφρική: Africa
II.27.15

Ἀφρικοί: i.e. Arabes ex Africa	IV.18.14
II.28.12	IV.19.7
	IV.19.21
Βαβέκ: ductor Persarum	IV.19.27
III.21.1	IV.20.2
	IV.20.14
Βαβούτζικος: Constantinus, gener Theophili	IV.22.5
imperatoris	IV.22.19
IV.22.24	IV.23.1
	IV.25.11
Βαβούτζικος: Theodosius, patricius, inter	IV.25.85
XLII Martyres Amorii	IV.26.1
III.30.28	IV.26.8
III.37.2	IV.27.77
	IV.29.19
Βαβυλών: Biblica	IV.30.1
II.28.18	IV.30.13
	IV.31.1
Βαγδά, Βαγδάδ: urbs Bagdad	IV.39.13
III.9.19	IV.40.3
III.26.12	IV.41.41
III.34.22	IV.41.51
	IV.42.1
Βαθύνος, ον: ex promontorio Batheos,	
in insula Thaso (?)	Βάρδας: magister, filius Irenae sororis
III.43.54	Theodorae imperatricis
III.43.83	IV.22.28
III.43.110	
III.43.111	Βάρκα: uxor Leonis V imperatoris
	I.9.18
Βάχου, ή μονή τοῦ: monasterium SS Sergii et	
Bachi	Βασίλειος: imperator Basilius I
IV.7.2	II.28.4
	II.28.14
Βαρδάνιος: ὁ Τοῦρκος, strategus	III.27.19
I.1.11	III.27.23
I.2.1	III.43.66
I.2.7	III.43.115
I.3.9	III.43.117
I.3.4.8	IV.8.17
I.4.34	IV.21.30
II.7.6	IV.22.10
II.11.2	IV.43.1
	IV.43.9
Βάρδας: frater Theodorae imperatricis,	IV.44.5
caesar	IV.44.20
III.39.17	IV.44.24
IV.1.6	IV.44.34
IV.3.12	IV.44.38
IV.16.38	IV.44.40
IV.17.6	IV.44.44
IV.18.1	IV.44.46

IV.44.48	IV.13.1
IV.44.55	IV.14.4
	IV.15.30
Βασίλειος: filius Leonis V imperatoris, cuius nomen Constantinus ante tonsuram monasticam	Βούλγαροι: Bulgari
II.1.7	I.Prooem.29
II.7.15	I.5.3
	I.5.6
	I.6.28
Βασίλειος: ὁ παρακοιμώμενος	I.6.43
IV.41.36	I.13.1
IV.41.38	I.13.12
	I.13.30
Βασιλικῖνος: delictum imperatoris Michaelis III	I.20.5
IV.44.11	II.17.1
	II.17.24
Βασιλίσκου, τὰ παλάτια τοῦ: palatium Basilisci	II.17.28
III.44.4	II.18.4
	IV.25.46
Βλαχέρναι: vicus Constantinopoleos	
I.23.3	Βούλγαρος: Bulgarus (Mortagon)
II.14.23	II.17.28
II.14bis.17	
II.15.7	Βρουμάλια: festum
II.15.8	III.44.13
II.16.30	
III.3.3	Βρύου, τὰ παλάτια τοῦ: palatium Bryae
III.4.13	I.10.33
III.7.24	III.9.57
III.26.35	
III.44.18	Βυζάντιον: urbs Constantinopolis
IV.6.18	III.19.20
IV.10.44	IV.27.46
IV.22.2	IV.41.52
Βοιδίτζης: ductor militum	Βύζης, τὸ πτόλισμα/πτολίεθρον τῆς: urbs
III.34.9	Thraciae
III.35.10	II.18.44
	II.19.16
Βόσπορος: Bosporus	II.19.49
III.4.15	
	Βύριδες: portus Thraciae
Βουκελλαρίων, τὸ θέμα τῶν: thema	II.16.26
Bucellarium	
IV.25.41	Βυρσέως, τὸ μοναστήριον τοῦ: monasterium
	Byrseos
Βουκολέων: palatium Constantinopoli	III.18.32
I.11.11	
III.38.16	Βώγωρις: princeps Bulgarorum, baptizatus
	Michael
Βουλγαρία: terra Bulgarorum	IV.13.1
I.1.10	IV.15.2

- Γαζαρηνός: ὁ Κολωνιάτης, socius Thomae usurpatoris
 II.20.16
 II.20.18
 II.20.30
 II.20.38
- Γάζουρος: lacus
 I.1.19
- Γαστρίων, τὸ μοναστήριον τῶν: monasterium Gastriorum
 III.5.10
 IV.22.12
- Γεώργιος: ὁ τὰς στρατιωτικὰς δέλτους ἐπειλημμένος
 III.27.23
- Γίγαντες: Gigantes
 IV.44.23
- Γοργονίτης: cf. Ioannes Gorgonites
- Γορτύνη: urbs Cretae
 II.23.14
- Γρηγόριος: Gregorius theologus Nazianzenus
 II.7.18
- Γρηγόριος: filius Leonis V imperatoris
 II.1.7
- Γρηγόριος: ὁ Πτερωτός
 II.14.10–11
 II.16.1
 II.16.18
- Γρύλος: aulicus apud Michaellem III
 IV.38.7
 IV.38.16
 IV.38.20
 IV.43.13
- Γύριν: fons
 IV.25.38
 IV.25.56
- Δαγισθέα, ὁ οἶκος τοῦ: aedes Constantinopoli
 I.3.20
- Δαζημών: locus
 III.31.10
- Δαλματία: Dalmatia
 II.28.13
- Δαμιανός: κόμης βασιλικοῦ ἵπποστασίου
 II.22.8
 II.22.12
- Δεβελτός: Deultum
 IV.15.29
- Δένδρις: ioculator apud Theophilum
 III.6.3
 III.6.20
 III.6.22
- Δεσποτῶν, ἡ μονή τῶν: monasterium Despotai
 II.7.13
- Δεύτερον, τό: regio Constantinopoleos
 IV.34.11
- Δία: insula
 II.22.15
- Διάβασις: ager
 II.18.14
- Διονύσιος: sanctus
 III.11.4
- Διόνυσος: Dionysus
 IV.38.3
- Δοκίμιος, ὃν (λίθος): ex Docimeio
 III.42.21
 III.43.87
- Δομνίκα: uxor Bardanii strategī
 I.3.46
- Δορύλαον: urbs Phrygiae
 III.30.8
 III.33.5
- Δουκός, ὁ τοῦ: filius Ducis, dux a Theodora contra Paulicianos missus
 IV.16.6

ῥΕβίσσα: locus Paphlagoniae, patria Theodoraē imperatricis III.5.2	Εὐθύμιος: episcopus Sardianus II.8.16 II.8.20 II.28.9
ῥΕβραΐς: Hebraea II.3.11	Εὐκλείδης: Euclides IV.27.31
ῥΕβραῖος: Hebraeus II.3.11	Εὐξείνος: Euxinus II.14.38
Εἰδικόν, τό: aedes apud Palatium IV.21.28	III.11.15 IV.8.4 IV.35.2
Εἰρηναῖος: sanctus III.11.5	Εὐρώπη: Europa II.19.42 II.20bis.2
Εἰρήνη: imperatrix I.15.14 II.10.17	Εὐστράτιος: filius Michael I imperatoris I.10.10 I.10.21
Εἰρήνη: soror Theodoraē imperatricis IV.22.23 IV.22.25	Εὐφήμιος: turmarches in Sicilia II.27.1 II.27.10 II.27.11 II.27.24 II.27.31 II.27.36
ῥΕλαῖος: monasterium κατὰ τὸν ῥΕλαῖαν III.18.32	Εὐφράτης: fluvius III.36.9
ῥΕλεφαντίνη: porta eburnea apud palatium I.25.11	Εὐφροσύνη: uxor secunda Michaelis II imperatoris II.24.25 III.1.34
ῥΕλλάς: thema Elladis II.16.23	Εὐχαΐτων, ἡ πολίχνη τῶν: oppidum Euchaita I.4.8
ῥΕλληνες: Graeci antiqui, i.e. pagani I.10.31	ῥΕφεσος: urbs IV.25.20
ῥΕλληνικός: paganus II.8.34 IV.27.18	Ζάγωρα: nomen bulgaricum Portae ferreae Danubii IV.15.29
ῥΕξαβούλιος: cf. Ioannes Hexaboulis I.8.1 I.21.16 II.19.28	Ζαχαρίας: propheta II.23.17
ῥΕξακίονιον: vicus Constantinopoleos IV.34.8	
ῥΕρως: aedes apud Palatium III.43.44	

- Ζηλίκων, ἡ αἵρεσις τῶν: Zelices, haeretici
 IV.12.1
- Ζῆλιξ: haereticus
 IV.12.2
- Ζήνωνος, ὁ οἶκος τοῦ: aedes Zenonis
 I.3.20
- Ζηχοί: gentes Caucasicae
 II.12.21
- Ζωή: imperatrix
 II.22.2
- Ἡράκλεια: urbs Thraciae
 II.20.2
 II.20.8
- Ἡρακλείου, ἡ μονή τοῦ: monasterium Heraclii
 I.3.26
- Ἡσαΐας: propheta
 III.14.15
- Θάσος: insula
 III.39.13
- Θέκλα: filia Theodorae imperatricis
 III.5.13
 III.44.18
 III.44.19
- Θεόγνωστος: historicus
 II.27.22
- Θεοδήγιος: discipulus Leonis philosophi
 IV.29.18
- Θεοδοσία: uxor imperatoris Leonis V
 I.21.32
- Θεοδόσιος: ὁ Βαβούτζικος, patricius
 III.37.2
 III.37.11
- Θεοδόσιος: frater Alexii Musele
 III.18.41
- Θεοδόσιος: filius Leonis V imperatoris
 II.1.7
 II.1.9
- Θεόδοτος: ὁ κατὰ τὸν Μελισσηνόν, ὁ
 Κασσιτερᾶς patriarcha Constantinopolitanus
 I.11.18
 I.16.12
 I.17.6
 IV.16.11
- Θεοδώρα: uxor imperatoris Theophili
 III.5.1
 III.5.7
 III.5.11
 III.6.1
 III.6.12
 III.8.11
 III.8.13
 III.13.25
 III.18.37
 III.39.16
 IV.1.3
 IV.2.6
 IV.3.22
 IV.11.1
 IV.14.3
 IV.20.3
 IV.22.2
 IV.23.8
 IV.39.1
 IV.42.2
 IV.44.53
- Θεόδωρος: ὁ γραπτός, frater Theophanis
 Grapti
 III.14.1
 IV.11.6
- Θεόδωρος: ὁ Κουφαρᾶς, monachus
 IV.14.15
 IV.14.21
- Θεόδωρος: ὁ Κρατερός, ductor militum, inter
 XLII Martyres Amorii
 III.23.18
 III.23.29
 III.30.17
 III.36.10
 III.36.12
 III.36.16
- Θεόδωρος: ὁ Μωρός
 IV.31.10

Θεόδωρος: discipulus Leonis philosophi	IV.7.13
IV.29.17	IV.7.25
	IV.8.2
Θεοκτίστη: mater Theodoraē imperatricis,	IV.8.15
cogn. Φλωρίνα	IV.11.4
III.5.4	IV.22.20
III.5.9	IV.27.2
	IV.27.83
Θεόκτιστος: magister, ὁ τοῦ κανικλείου	IV.27.95
I.5.10	IV.27.108
I.25.2	
I.25.5	Θεόφιλος: ductor militum, inter XLII
III.27.16.	Martyres Amorii
IV.1.4	III.30.18
IV.18.5	
IV.18.14	Θεόφοβος: gener Theophili imperatoris
IV.18.17	III.19.6
IV.19.3	III.19.10
IV.19.5	III.19.20
IV.19.15	III.20.1
IV.19.22	III.20.12
IV.19.38	III.21.3
IV.20.1	III.21.6
IV.27.77	III.22.8
IV.39.14	III.22.11
IV.39.20	III.22.19
IV.44.48	III.22.33
	III.22.34
Θεοφάνης: confessor, chronographus	III.22.37
Tit.gen.5	III.29.2
I.Prooem.25	III.29.16
I.18.8	III.29.29
I.18.15	III.31.21
	III.32.18
Θεοφάνης: cogn. Graptus, frater Theodori,	III.38.1
episcopus Smyrnae	III.38.12
III.14.1	III.38.21
III.14.15	III.38.22
III.14.24	III.38.26
IV.11.5	III.39.16
IV.11.13	
Θεόφιλος: Theophilus imperator	Θεοσίτης: Thersites Homericus, ioculator
I.10.33	apud Theophilum
II.8.20	III.6.2
II.14bis.5	
II.16.35	Θεσσαλονικέων, ἡ μητρόπολις τῶν: sedes
III.passim	Thessalonicensis
IV.tit.	IV.27.113
IV.1.1	IV.28.17
IV.1.4	
IV.7.6	Θεσσαλονίκη: urbs
	IV.26.20
	IV.28.1

Θετταλικός, ἡ, ὄν: Thessalicus, i.e. ex marmore viridi	II.10.2 II.11.14
II.28.21	II.11.30
III.43.34	II.12.3
III.43.55	II.13.4
III.43.73	II.13.25
III.43.100	II.13.34
	II.14.18
Θετταλός: aedes apud Patriarchatum	II.14.26
IV.3.2	II.16.11
	II.16.14
Θρᾷκες: milites thematis Thracesiorum	II.19.2
II.13.29	II.19.51
IV.24.3	II.20.10
	II.20.17
Θράκη: thema Thracesiorum	II.20.22
I.19.5	II.21.1
II.13.25	II.21.24
II.13.28	II.28.11
II.14bis.45	
II.16.27	Ἰαννής: veneficus, cogn. Ioannis Grammatici
II.20.2	III.12.7
IV.25.45	III.26.4
	III.26.7
Θρακήσιοι, οἱ: milites thematis Thracesiorum	III.26.9
III.39.2	III.26.43
IV.25.9	III.27.12
IV.25.48	III.27.17
IV.41.11	III.27.19
	IV.6.25
Θρακήσιος, ὁ: thema Thracesiorum	IV.26.20
IV.16.40	
IV.22.19	Ἰβηρία: Paeninsula Iberica (Hispania)
IV.36.9	II.21.2
	II.21.8
Θωμισίτης: aedes apud Patriarchatum	
III.14.19	Ἰβηρες: gentes Georgiae
	II.12.21
Θωμάς: de lacu Gazuro, socius Leonis V imperatoris	III.26.10
I.1.18	
I.2.14	Ἰβραήμ
I.3.26	III.19.2
I.12.4	III.22.3
	III.22.13
Θωμάς: patricius, λογοθέτης τοῦ δρόμου	
IV.2.4	Ἰγνάτιος: filius Michael I imperatoris,
IV.36.4	patriarcha Constantinopolitanus
	I.10.15
	I.10.25
Θωμάς: Slavus, usurpator sub Michaelē II imperatore	IV.30.8
II.9.5	IV.31.1
	IV.31.10

- IV.31.22
IV.32.7
IV.38.18
IV.39.3
IV.40.12
- Ἰγνάτιος: monachus in Monte Καλόν
III.12.12
- Ἰγνάτιος: οἰκουμενικός διδάσκαλος
III.43.2
- Ἰερόθεος: sanctus
III.11.5
- Ἰερόν: locus
II.14.38
- Ἰεροσόλυμα: urbs Hierusalem
III.26.11
- Ἰησοῦς: Iesus Christus
II.7.23
III.13.24
- Ἰμέριος: ὁ Χοῖρος, patricius
IV.21.8
- Ἰνδοί: gentes Indiae
II.12.20
- Ἰούδας: Iudas
II.8.32
- Ἰουδαϊκός, ἡ (πίστις), ὄν: Hebraicus
II.3.17
- Ἰουδαῖος: Hebraeus
II.3.3
II.8.22
- Ἰουστινιανός: Iustinianus I imperator
II.28.21
- Ἰουστινιανοῦ, ὁ τρίκλιος τοῦ: aedes apud Palatium Iustiniano II imperatore constructus
III.44.6
- Ἰπποδρόμιον (hippodromus urbis)
IV.7.16
- Ἰππόδρομος
II.1.3 (hippodromus opertus apud Palatium)
III.27.25 (hippodromus urbis)
IV.19.24 (hippodromus opertus apud Palatium)
IV.30.1 (hippodromus opertus apud Palatium)
- Ἰσαυρία: regio Anatoliae
I.16.8
IV.34.15
- Ἰσμαήλ: ameramnounes
III.9.28
III.26.24
III.26.33
- Ἰσμαηλίται: Ismaelitae, i.e. Arabes
I.4.4
III.23.2
III.24.13
III.31.24
III.39.15
IV.17.1
IV.23.4
IV.27.17
IV.33.4
- Ἰσπάνιος, ἰα, ὄν: Hispanicus, cf. Ἰσπάνοι
II.23.2
- Ἰσπάνοι: gentes Musulmanicae Hispaniae
II.21.8
- Ἰωάννης: ὁ Γοργονίτης
IV.31.10
- Ἰωάννης: ὁ Ἐξαβούλιος
I.8.1
II.19.27
- Ἰωάννης: ὁ Σκουτέλοψ
IV.3.10
- Ἰωάννης: monachus in Monte Latro
IV.25.22
IV.25.31
- Ἰωάννης: Ioannes Grammaticus, patriarcha Constaninopoleos
I.20.24

- III.9.4
 III.9.13
 III.9.60
 IV.6.24
 IV.7.27
 IV.7.28
 IV.27.112
 Ἰώβ: Biblicus
 I.8.10
 II.12.17
 Καβάλα: urbs Thraciae
 II.20.18
 Κάβειροι: gentes Caucasicae
 II.12.21
 Καινούργιος: aedes apud Palatium
 III.43.115
 Καλαβρία: regio Italiae
 II.28.1
 Καλομαρία: soror Theodora imperatricis
 IV.22.22
 IV.22.24
 Καλόν: mons
 III.12.12
 Καματερός: Πετρωνᾶς, spatharocandidatus
 III.28.11
 Καμιλᾶς: aedes apud Palatium
 III.43.71
 III.43.73
 III.43.85
 III.44.11
 Καπετωλίτης: Stephanus, *a secretis*
 III.43.41
 Καπνογένης: praefectus
 IV.44.11
 Καππαδοκίας, τὸ θέμα τῆς: thema
 Cappadociae
 III.26.22
 III.26.26
 IV.25.43
 Καρβέας: protomandator, deditus fidei
 Paulicianorum
 IV.16.12
 IV.16.27
 IV.16.36
 IV.23.19
 IV.23.25
 IV.23.27
 Καριανός: aedes apud Palatium
 III.42.5
 III.43.60
 Καριανός, ἡ, ὁ: ex marmore Cariano
 III.42.6
 III.43.97
 III.43.99
 III.43.105
 Καριανοῦ, ὁ οἶκος τοῦ; τὰ ἀνάπτορα ἐν τοῖς
 I.3.21
 III.8.18
 IV.11.2
 IV.22.6
 Κασσιτερᾶς: Theodotus, ὁ κατὰ τὸν
 Μελισσηνόν, patriarcha Constantinopolitanus
 I.11.19
 I.11.43
 I.15.22
 I.17.6
 Κατακύλας: στρατηγός thematis Obsequii
 II.11.33
 II.14.3
 II.16.35
 II.18.20
 Κελάριον: ager
 IV.24.5
 Κηδούκτου, ὁ χώρος τοῦ: locus
 II.17.16
 Κῆποι: locus
 IV.41.12
 Κιλικία: regio Anatoliae
 IV.35.5
 Κολωνεία: thema Coloniae
 IV.25.42
 IV.38.9

Κολωνιάτης: Gazarenos, socius Thomae usurpatoris II.20.17	Κρηταεῖς: Cretenses II.21.26 II.23.23 II.25.11 II.25.28 II.28.11
Κομητᾶς: discipulus Leonis philosophi IV.29.13	
Κοντομύτης: Constantinus patricius, strategus Siciliae III.39.7 IV.22.29 IV.22.30	Κρηῆτες: Cretenses III.39.1 Κρήτη: Creta II.21.33 II.22.4 II.23.2 II.25.1 IV.34.1 IV.39.34 IV.41.11
Κοπρώννυμος: Constantinus V imperator II.8.25 IV.31.4	
Κορμάτοι: inimici Musulmanorum III.25.10	
Κουφαρᾶς: Theodorus, monachus IV.14.2 IV.14.14	Κρητικός, ἡ, ὄν: Cretensis IV.41.1
Κραμβωνιτῶν, ἡ γενεὰ τῶν: gens Crambonitum I.25.34	Κροῦμνος: Crum, Bulgarorum rex I.5.3 I.6.5
Κρασᾶς: aulicus apud Michaelem III imperatorem IV.36.5	Κιβυρραιωτῶν: milites thematis Cibyrreotarum II.25.3
Κρατερός: strategus thematis Cibyrhaeota- rum II.25.2	Κυκλάδες: insulae Cyclades II.14.9 II.14.17 III.39.14 IV.34.4
Κρατερός: Θεόδωρος ὁ, ductor militum, inter XLII Martyres Amorii III.23.18 III.23.29 III.30.18 III.36.10	Κύριζος: locus Anatoliae IV.35.10 Κύριλλος: episcopus Gortynae II.23.14
Κρηνίτισσα, ἡ οἰκία: domus Alexii Musele III.18.8	Κυρίου, ἡ ἐκκλησία τοῦ: ecclesia apud Palatium III.42.4
Κρηνιτῶν, ἡ γενεὰ τῶν: familia, de qua descendit Alexius Musele III.18.5	Κωνσταντῖνος: Constantinus VI imperator, filius Irenae II.10.17 II.24.25
Κρησσοῦ, ἡ, ὄν: Cretensis II.23.11	

- Κωνσταντῖνος: Constantinus VII
 Porphyrogenitus imperator
 Tit.gen.1
 Tit.gen.7
 III.43.82
- Κωνσταντῖνος: filius Leonis V imperatoris,
 cuius nomen monasticus Basilius
 II.1.7
 II.7.14
- Κωνσταντῖνος: ὁ Ἀρμενιάκος
 IV.31.11
- Κωνσταντῖνος: ὁ Βαβούτζικος, gener Theophili imperatoris
 IV.22.24
- Κωνσταντῖνος: drungarius Viglae
 IV.2.22
 IV.41.48
- Κωνσταντῖνος: ὁ Κοντομύτης, patricius, strategus Siciliae
 III.39.7
 IV.22.29
- Κωνσταντῖνος: ὁ κατὰ τὸν Τριφύλλιον
 III.27.20
- Κωνσταντῖνος: logotheta, filius Thomae patricii et logothetae
 IV.36.3
- Κωνσταντῖνος: patricius, inter XLII Martyres Amorii
 III.35.12
 III.36.23
 III.36.26
- Κωνσταντῖνος: servus Constantini patricii, inter XLII Martyres Amorii
 III.35.11
 III.35.14
 III.35.28
- Κωνσταντίνου, ἡ: Constantinopolis
 II.15.3
 III.19.14
 III.20.13
- Κωνσταντινούπολις: Constantinopolis
 I.10.26
 II.21.23
 III.9.35
 III.26.43
 IV.7.8
 IV.29.4
 IV.30.8
 IV.31.22
 IV.32.4
- Κωνσταντῖος: filius adoptatus Thomae usurpatoris
 I.10.25
- Κῶς: insula
 II.25.29
- Λαγοβαρδία: Langobardia
 II.28.2
 III.18.11
- Λάζαρος: iconographus
 III.13.4
- Λαλακάων: fluvius
 IV.25.37
- Λάτρος, τό: mons
 III.39.5
 IV.25.24
- Λανσιακός: aedes apud Palatium
 I.19.15
 III.14.3
 III.14.28
 III.44.5
 III.44.8
 III.44.14
 IV.19.19
 IV.19.21
- Λέοντος, ὁ βουνὸς τοῦ: collis ubi Leo V Bulgaros perdidit
 I.13.29
- Λέσβος: insula
 II.13.8
- Λέων: imperator quidam Leo (V), cuius mortem oraculum Sibyllinum praedicit
 I.22.11

- Λέων: Leo III imperator,
ὁ ἐξ Ἰσαυρίας
I.16.8
- Λέων: Leo V imperator
Tit.gen.5
I.passim
II.1.1
II.2.2
II.7.3
II.7.7
II.7.9
II.10.26
II.11.3
II.11.5
II.14.11
II.14.13
II.17.13
III.1.9
III.10.3
III.10.11
III.19.9
- Λέων: Leo VI imperator
Tit.gen.2
III.12.15
III.43.108
- Λέων: mathematicus, nepos Ioannis
Grammatici
IV.26.19
IV.27.81
IV.27.90
IV.34.12
- Λιβύη: Libya
III.30.3
- Λουκάς: apostolus
III.11.9
- Λοῦλλον: castrum Cappadociae
IV.35.6
- Λυκαονία: Lycaonia
I.3.5
- Μάγγανα, τὰ: vicus Constantinopoleos
I.4.26
III.18.35
- Μαгнаύρα: aedes iuxta Palatium
III.1.12
III.39.4
IV.26.15
IV.29.16
- Μακεδόνες: Macedones, viz. milites thematis
Macedoniae
IV.24.3
- Μακεδονία: thema Macedoniae
I.19.5
IV.25.45
- Μαλαγίνα: regio Bithyniae
I.3.23
IV.36.10
- Μάμαντος, ὁ ναὸς τοῦ: ecclesia S. Mamantis
IV.35.3
IV.35.9
IV.35.14
IV.44.51 (palatium)
- Μάμας: mons
IV.35.9
- Μάνης: Mani, haereticus
II.12.21
- Μαμουν: calipha
IV.27.16
IV.27.52
IV.27.86
- Μανουήλ: Manuel
a) strategus thematis Armeniorum, prius
protostrator, Amalecita
I.9.13
I.12.6
- b) strategus Anaticorum
III.19.6
III.19.7
III.22.5
III.24.14
III.24.22
III.25.6
III.26.12
III.26.16
III.26.38

- c) domesticus Scholarum
 III.31.16
 III.31.17
 III.31.21
 III.32.2
- d) magister
 IV.1.6
 IV.1.11
 IV.10.34
 IV.18.4
 IV.18.7
 IV.19.36
 IV.24.19
 IV.24.28
 IV.24.32
 IV.25.103
- Μαργαρίτης: aedes apud Palatium
 III.43.49
 III.43.57
- Μαρία: filia Theophili imperatoris
 III.5.13
 III.18.4
- Μαρῖνος: pater Theodoraе imperatricis
 III.5.2
- Μαρτινάκης: cognatus Theophili imperatoris
 III.27.8
- Μαρτινάκιοι: progenies Martinacis
 III.27.7
- Μαυριανοῦ, ὁ ἔμβολος τοῦ: porticus Mauriani
 I.15.25
- Μεθόδιος: patriarcha Constantinopolitanus
 II.8.15
 II.8.18
 II.28.9
 III.24.3
 IV.3.23
 IV.5.2
 IV.6.15
 IV.10.2
 IV.10.32
 IV.30.7
- Μεθόδιος: iconographus
 IV.15.6
- Μελισσηνός: Theodotos Melissenos, ὁ
 Κασσιτερᾶς patriarcha Constantinopolitanus
 I.11.18
 IV.16.11
- Μελιτηνή: urbs Melitene
 III.31.8
 IV.16.17
 IV.16.25
- Μέση (sc. ὁδός): platea Constantinopoleos
 III.3.3
- Μεσημβρία: urbs Thraciae
 I.13.7
- Μεσόπατος: aedes apud Palatium
 III.43.91
- Μητροφάνης: episcopus Smyrnae
 IV.10.3
- Μιτυλήνη: insula
 IV.31.15
- Μιχαήλ: archangelus
 I.10.40
 III.9.66
 III.43.43
 III.43.79
- Μιχαήλ: nomen in baptismo Bogoris principis Bulgarorum
 IV.14.24
- Μιχαήλ: syncellus Hierusalemitanus
 III.15.1
- Μιχαήλ: Michael I Rangabe imperator, prius curopalates
 I.Prooem.28
 I.4.23
 I.4.30
 I.5.8
 I.6.12
 I.6.14
 I.6.26
 I.6.30
 I.6.37

I.10.1	Μυσοί: Mysi
I.11.2	III.39.6
I.11.9	
I.11.12	Μυστήριον: spatium in aedibus Triconchi
I.11.41	apud Palatium
III.19.9	III.42.30
IV.30.10	III.43.6
Μιχαήλ: Michael II imperator, ὁ τραυλός	Μώκιλος: locus Anatoliae
I.1.18	IV.35.10
I.2.14	
I.3.19	Μωρός: Theodorus
I.4.33	IV.31.10
I.7.8	
I.9.30	Μωσαϊκός (νόμος), ἡ, ὄν
I.12.2	II.3.9
I.12.6	
I.21.4	Μωσῆς: propheta
I.21.8	II.8.30
I.21.15	
I.24.3	Νέα: Ecclesia Nova
I.24.13	III.43.65
I.24.20	
I.25.1	Νειλῶς, α, ον: Niloticus
II.passim	II.11.26
III.tit.	
III.1.1	Νεοκαισάρεια: urbs Cappadociae
III.1.35	II.20.36
III.10.4	IV.34.
III.18.22	
III.26.40	Νίκη: statua
	IV.34.10
Μιχαήλ: Μιχαήλ III imperator	Νικηφόρος: Nicephorus I imperator
III.18.22	I.1.9
III.43.96	I.3.2
IV.passim	I.3.6
Μοροχαρζανίων, ἡ σειρὰ τῶν: familia	I.3.16
Ioannis Grammatici	I.3.25
IV.6.	I.4.7
	I.4.12
Μορτάγων: rex Bulgarorum	I.4.13
II.17.1	I.4.25
II.17.11	I.10.35
	IV.30.9
Μουσελέ: Alexius	
III.18.6	Νικηφόρος: Nicephorus I patriarcha
	I.17.2
Μουσικός: aedes apud Palatium	I.17.8
III.43.100	I.19.7
III.43.113	II.8.2

Νικήτας: filius Michaelis I imperatoris,
praeses Icanatorum, postea partiarcha
Ignatius

I.10.11

I.10.25

Νικήτας: patricius, dominus prior domi
Theoctistae, monasterii Gastriorum
III.5.11

Νικόλαος: ὁ Σκουτέλοψ
IV.31.10

Νικομήδεια: urbs Nicomedia
I.3.15

Νούμερα: carcer
IV.22.40

Ξέρξης: Perses
IV.25.4

Ὅδηγοί: ecclesia dei genetricis
Constantinopoli
IV.41.3

Ὀλβιανός: στρατηγός thematis
Armeniacorum
II.11.34
II.13.22
II.14.3
II.16.35
II.18.20

Ὀλυμπιονίκης: triumphator
III.36.22

Ὅμηρικός: Homericus
III.6.2

Ὁξεία: vicus Constantinopoleos
III.19.24

Ὀρκώσιον: pagus Troadis
II.13.26

Ὀρμίσδου: τὰ: vicus Constantinopoleos
IV.7.2

Οὔννοι: Hunni, i.e. Bulgari
I.20.4

Ὅψίκιον: thema Obsequii
III.11.33
IV.25.43

Παλατίνος: Σηών ὁ, strategus
IV.23.22

Παλαιστίνη: Palestina
III.30.3

Πάνιον: urbs Thraciae
II.20.2

Πατζινακῖται: gentes Patzinakitai
III.28.7

Πατρίκης: architectus palatii Bryi, patricius
III.9.61

Παυλικιάνοι: Pauliciani
IV.16.3
IV.16.13

Παυλίνου, ὁ οἶκος τοῦ: domus Paulini
Constantinopoli
II.14.36

Παῦλος: apostolus
III.12.5

Παύλου, τὸ εὐκτήριον τοῦ: ecclesia apud
Palatium
III.43.117

Παύλου, ὁ σηκὸς τοῦ θείου: brephotrophium
I.11.31

Παφλαγονίας, τὸ θέμα τῆς: thema
Paphlagoniae
III.5.2
III.28.12
IV.25.42

Πέρσαι: Persae
II.12.20
III.19.11
III.19.13
III.19.15
III.19.22
III.20.11
III.21.1
III.21.8

- III.22.9
 III.22.19
 III.29.10
 III.29.11
 III.29.26
 III.31.11
 III.31.32
 III.32.2
 III.32.18
 III.38.25
 Πέρσης: Perses, pater Theophobi generis
 Theophili imperatoris
 III.19.27
 Περσικός, ἡ, ὄν (τάγμα) legio Persica vocata
 III.21.11
 Περσίς: Persia
 III.19.20
 III.20.7
 III.20.16
 Πέτρος: apostolus
 IV.10.28
 IV.40.10
 Πετρωνᾶς: domesticus
 IV.16.37
 IV.22.4
 IV.22.18
 IV.25.8
 IV.25.39
 IV.25.66
 IV.25.81
 IV.25.82
 IV.25.86
 IV.25.89
 IV.25.90
 IV.25.102
 Πετρωνᾶς: ὁ Καματερός, spatharocandidatus
 III.28.10
 III.28.28
 πεχ: τῆς Χαζαρίας
 III.28.4
 Πηγανούσιος: ex marmore colore rutae
 III.43.99
 Πίδρα: vicus thematis Anaticorum
 I.1.6
 Πλάτη: insula Propontidis
 I.10.7
 Πλάτων: philosophus?
 III.27.26
 Ποντικός, ἡ (πόλις), ὄν: urbs pontica, i.e.
 Amastris
 III.38.8
 Πόντος: Pontus
 IV.33.2
 Πορφύρα: aedes apud Palatium
 III.44.12
 Πόσοντα: locus in Anatolia
 IV.25.35
 IV.25.53
 Πουλχερία: filia Theodoraе imperatricis
 III.5.13
 III.5.25
 Πραιτώριον: carcer
 IV.22.40
 Πρίγκιπος: insula Propontidis
 II.24.24
 Προδρόμου, τὸ εὐκτήριον τοῦ: ecclesia
 S. Ioannis, cognominata τοῦ Φοβεροῦ
 III.11.14
 Προικόνησος: Proconesus
 III.43.8
 III.43.52
 III.43.77
 III.43.87
 III.43.94
 III.43.111
 III.44.15
 IV.34.4
 Προκοπία: uxor Michaelis I imperatoris
 I.9.13
 I.12.9

Προκοπίας, ἡ μονὴ τῆς	II.28.15
I.10.17	III.4.24
	III.9.10
Πρωτεύς: Proteus	III.9.23
I.20.31	III.9.31
	III.17.3
Πρώτη: insula Propontidis	III.17.5
I.3.30	III.19.2
II.1.8	III.20.18
II.7.14	III.21.8
	III.21.12
Πτερωτός: cf. Gregorius Pterotus	III.22.5
	III.22.11
Πτώσοντα: false pro Πόσοντα	III.24.28
IV.25.53	III.25.13
	III.26.20
Πύθων: Pytho	III.26.25
I.11.24	III.26.27
III.27.3	III.26.30
	III.31.4
Πυξίτης: aedes apud Palatium	III.31.26
III.43.37	III.31.29
III.43.39	III.32.4
	III.39.12
Ῥαγαβέ: nomen gentis Michaelis I	IV.7.11
imperatoris	IV.13.4
I.4.25	IV.14.7
	IV.15.6
Ῥωμαϊκός: Romanus	IV.15.29
II.25.24	IV.16.20
III.21.4	IV.16.27
	IV.16.36
Ῥωμαῖοι: Romani	IV.21.4
I.4.12	IV.23.13
I.4.29	IV.23.16
I.5.7	IV.24.2
I.5.16	IV.24.26
I.6.5	IV.25.10
I.6.20	IV.25.11
I.6.23	IV.25.50
I.6.43	IV.25.55
I.13.24	IV.25.60
I.20.18	IV.25.68
II.10.14	IV.26.7
II.10.16	IV.27.64
II.10.26	IV.27.110
II.12.13	IV.33.1
II.17.3	IV.43.5
II.17.15	
II.25.32	Ῥωμαῖος: ex marmore ‘romano’ (purpureo)
II.27.18	III.42.12
II.28.13	III.43.98

Ῥώμη: urbs Roma IV.10.25 IV.32.5	Σάρδεις: urbs Lydiae III.8.16
Ῥώς: Rus' IV.33.1	Σάρκελ: castrum ad fluvium Don III.28.5 III.28.32
Σάβας: nomen monasticum Bardanii strategī I.3.34	Σάτυρος: locus in Bithynia I.10.30
Σαββάτιος: iconoclasta I.15.9	Σάτυρος: templum dei Satyri I.10.31
Σάμαρα (ή): urbs Mesopotamiae III.36.10	Σάτυρος: satyrus IV.38.2
Σάμος: insula in Aegeo IV.35.9	Σατύρου, ή μονή του: monasterium Satyri I.10.27 I.10.29 IV.30.9
Σαμόσατα: urbs Syriae IV.23.6	Σελεύκεια: urbs Mesopotamiae IV.25.43
Σανιάνα: urbs Anatoliae II.20.19 II.20.35	Σεργίου καὶ Βάκχου, ή μονή τῶν: monasterium SS. Sergii et Bacchi Constantinopoli IV.7.2
Σαρακηνικός, ή, όν (οικήματα): III.9.58	Σηών: ό Παλατίνος, strategus IV.23.22 IV.23.27 IV.23.29 IV.23.32
Σαρακηνοί: Saraceni, i.e. Arabes II.12.10 III.9.41 III.9.50 III.9.58 III.22.4 III.24.3 III.26.29 III.30.10 III.31.1 III.31.16 III.31.27 III.32.2 III.38.4 IV.24.34 IV.25.29 IV.27.59 IV.35.4	Σιβυλλιακός (χρησμός), ή, όν: Sibyllinus I.22.4
Σαρακηνός: Saracenus (ameramnounes) III.9.52 III.23.30 III.23.32	Σίγμα: aedes apud Palatium III.42.16 III.43.2 III.43.10 III.43.12 III.43.36 III.43.41 III.43.43
	Σιγριανή: monasterium Sigriane prope Cyzicum Tit.gen.5

- Σιδηρᾶ, ἡ: Porta ferrea (angustiae Danubii)
IV.15.28
- Σικελία: insula
II.23.2
II.27.1
II.27.15
II.27.17
II.28.1
- Σινώπη: urbs Ponti
III.21.4
III.29.12
III.29.21
- Σκλαβογεννής: Slavonicus
II.10.3
- Σκληροῦ, ὁ τοῦ: filius Scleri, socius Amer
ducis Melitenae
IV.16.30
- Σκουτέλοψ: cf. Ioannes Scutelops
- Σκύθαι: Scythae, i.e. Bulgari et Sclavi
I.4.17
I.5.17
- Σκυθία: Scythia
II.19.5
- Σκυθικός, ἡ, ον (ἔθνος)
IV.33.2
- Σκύλα: aedes apud Palatium
I.9.33
II.1.3
IV.19.30
- Σμύρνη: urbs Lydiae
IV.10.4
IV.11.5
- Σκύρος: insula
II.14.8
- Σουδάλης: dux contra Paulicianos a Theodora
missus
IV.16.6
- Σοφία: soror Theodoraе imperatricis
IV.22.24
IV.22.24
- Σοφία: ecclesia S. Sophiae Constantinopoli
IV.10.46
IV.40.6
IV.43.9
- Σταυράκιος: filius imperatoris Nicephori I
I.4.21
I.4.24
- Στέφανος: ὁ Καπετωίτης, *a secretis*
III.43.40
- Στέφανος: magister, filius Irenae sororis
Theodoraе imperatricis
IV.22.27
- Στούδιος
I.9.23
- Στουδίου, ἡ μονὴ τοῦ: monasterium
Studitarum
II.16.7
IV.1.12
- Συμβάτιος: logotheta, gener Bardae
IV.41.23
IV.41.27
- Συμβάτιος: filius Leonis V imperatoris, sub
nomine Constantinus coronatus
II.1.6
- Συράκουσα: urbs Siciliae
II.27.26
- Συρία: Syria
II.20.28
III.9.9
III.9.56
III.29.3
- Σχολαί, αἱ: aedes Scholarum
IV.22.38
- Σωζόπετρα: urbs Syriae
III.29.5

Τάναϊς: fluvius	Φιλομήλιον: urbs Phrygiae
III.28.7	I.2.3
III.28.15	I.3.38
	I.11.47
Ταράσιος: patriarcha Constantinopolitanus	I.15.1
I.15.15	I.21.14
I.24.2	I.24.6
	II.7.2
Ταρσός: urbs Ciliciae	
III.30.6	Φλωρίνα: cognomen Theoctistae matris
III.31.1	Theodoraē imperatricis
IV.16.26	III.5.4
IV.35.6	
Τεφρική: oppidum Paulicianorum	Φοβεροῦ, τὸ εὐκτήριον τοῦ: ecclesia S. Ioannis
IV.16.23	III.11.14
IV.23.20	III.13.20
Τοῦρκοι: Turci	Φοιδεράτων, ἡ ἀρχή / ὁ τουρμάρχης:
III.31.8	dignitas praesidis Foederatum
III.31.25	I.3.19
	I.4.2
	I.12.5
Τοῦρκος: Turcus (Bardanius strategus)	I.21.4
I.1.11	II.11.5
Τρίκογχος: aedes apud Palatium	Φραγγία: Francia
III.42.9	III.37.3
III.42.18	
III.42.27	Φρυγία: regio Anatoliae
III.43.5	II.3.2
III.43.6	
III.43.32	Φωκά, ἡ μονή τοῦ: monasterium S. Phocae
III.43.47	IV.8.4
Τριφύλλιος: Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ κατὰ τὸν	Φωτεινός: protospatharios, proavus Zoaē
III.27.21	imperatricis
	II.22.2
Τροφώνιος: Trophonius	II.22.10
IV.8.7	II.22.15
Τσαγγότυβος: Abesalom strategus	Φώτιος: patriarcha Constantinopolitanus
IV.23.22	IV.22.27
	IV.22.31
	IV.32.2
Ὑατρος: insula Propontidis	IV.32.14
IV.29.5	IV.33.5
Φάρος: Pharus apud Palatium	
I.10.2	Χαγάνος: τῆς Χαζαρίας
I.20.36	III.28.4
I.35.12	
I.35.15	Χαζαρία: terra Chazarorum
	III.28.4

- Χάζαροι II.3.17
 III.28.8 II.8.10
 III.28.8 II.8.11
 II.10.13
 Χάλδοι: gentes Chaldaei in Ponto II.23.22
 II.12.20 III.38.14
 IV.14.10
 IV.15.22
 Χαλκή (sc. πύλη): Porta aerea magni palatii
 I.9.27
 III.13.24 Χριστός
 IV.22.39 I.20.8
 I.22.2
 Χάνδαξ: urbs Cretae II.8.21
 II.23.6 II.10.12
 II.14bis.7
 Χάραξ: promontorium Iberiae II.23.15
 II.21.34 II.23.20
 II.24.23
 Χαρσιανόν: castrum/thema Charsianum in
 Cappadocia III.1.39
 III.11.10
 III.23.2 III.11.19
 IV.25.44 III.13.24
 IV.25.80 III.14.8
 III.35.10
 Χειλᾶς: aurigator III.36.24
 IV.21.14 IV.10.20
 IV.36.5 IV.37.19
 Χερσών: urbs Crimeae
 III.28.13
 III.28.20
 III.28.31
 Χερσωνῖται
 III.28.33
 Χιλιόκωμον: planities in Paphlagonia
 III.32.10
 Χοιρέας: socius Thomae usurpatoris
 II.20.16
 II.20.18
 Χοῖρος: Imerius patricius
 II.21.9
 Χοροσάν: Churasan in Asia
 III.25.14
 Χριστιανός: Christianus
 I.20.12
 I.21.24
 Χρυσή (sc. πύλη): Porta aurea Constanti-
 nopoleos
 IV.34.10
 Χρυσόπολις: urbs Bithyniae
 III.18.31
 III.18.33
 Χρυσοτρίκλινος: aedes apud Palatium
 III.43.81
 Χωνάριον: locus Anatoliae
 IV.24.6
 Ψιχά, τὰ: vicus Constantinopoleos
 IV.3.18
 Ὠκεανός: Oceanus atlanticus
 II.21.3
 Ὠρούφας: drungarius Viglac
 II.26.2
 III.38.12
 III.38.22

2. Index verborum ad res byzantinas spectantium

ἄδυτα, τά (sanctuarium ecclesiae) I.25.26	ἀποκείρω (tonsurare monachum) I.3.45 III.27.9 IV.22.5
ἄετός, ὁ (tunica) I.9.28	ἀρχιερεύς, ὁ I.18.2
ἄληθινοπίπερος, ον III.42.29	ἀσβεστότυρος, ὁ IV.37.11
ἄλουργίς, ἡ I.16.13	ἀσκητήριον, τό (asceterium) II.27.2 II.27.7
ἄμεραμουνής, ὁ III.21.2 III.25.15 III.26.20 III.26.23 III.29.6 III.30.1 III.32.20 III.33.2 IV.16.13 IV.27.17 IV.27.79 IV.27.93	ἀσκητής, ὁ (asceta) III.15.2
ἀναβαθμός, ὁ III.43.8 III.43.35	ἀσηκρῆτις, ὁ III.43.40 IV.12.3 (τῶν ἀσηκρητῶν) IV.19.25 (τῶν ἀσηκρητῶν)
ἀναβάθρα, ἡ III.43.7 III.43.17	αὐγούστα, ἡ II.22.3 III.4.11 III.4.28 III.5.1 III.6.5 III.13.17 III.43.73 III.43.93 III.43.112 IV.1.6 IV.6.11
ἀνδριάς, ὁ IV.7.16 IV.7.17 IV.7.19 IV.7.33	αὐλή, ἡ (βασιλῆιος/βασιλική) I.6.45 I.7.6 I.20.30 II.1.5 IV.14.8
ἀνθύπατος, ὁ III.18.9	

- αὐτοκράτωρ, ὁ
 I.Prooem.9
 I.6.56
 I.9.5
- βαλανεῖον, τό
 I.21.30
 IV.8.5
 IV.37.5
 IV.37.14
- βασίλεια, ἡ (imperatrix)
 IV.11.13
 IV.11.20
- βασιλεύουσα, ἡ
 (Constantinopolis)
 II.13.19
 II.13.34
 III.20.7
 III.23.5
 III.28.20
 III.29.9
 III.37.12
 IV.24.37
 IV.25.84
 IV.27.64
 IV.29.11
 IV.33.7
- βασιλικοπλῶϊμος, ὄν
 III.28.11
- βασιλικός, ἡ, ὄν (οἶκος)
 I.3.20
- βένετος, ὄν (color factionis)
 III.43.22
 III.43.23
 IV.36.3
 IV.36.7
- βεστιάριον, τό
 III.42.7
 III.43.73
 III.43.93
- βῆμα, τό
 III.43.88
- βιβλιοθήκη, ἡ
 I.22.5
- III.14.21
 III.43.81
- βιβλίον, τό (τακτικά καὶ βασιλικά)
 III.43.27
- βίβλος, ἡ
 I.22.4
 III.14.15
 III.14.17
 IV.29.8
 IV.32.14
- βίγλα, ἡ
 III.38.11
 IV.2.21
 IV.41.48
- βίσαλος, ὁ
 III.28.18
- γαλέα, ἡ
 IV.34.2
- γράφωσις, ἡ
 III.42.6
- γρύψ, ὁ (mechanicus)
 IV.21.22
- γυναικωνίτις, ἡ
 III.43.91
 IV.22.44
- δέλτος, ἡ
 III.27.24
- δέξιμον, τό
 III.43.13
- δέσποινα, ἡ
 II.24.11
 II.24.17
 IV.1.8
 IV.3.11
 IV.5.2
 IV.6.1
 IV.9.9
 IV.10.6
 IV.11.11
 IV.15.23

δεσπότης, ὁ	εἰκονομάχοι, οἱ
Tit.gen.2	III.2.7
Tit.gen.3	IV.32.6
δήμαρχος, ὁ	εἰκών, ἡ (icona)
III.43.21	I.9.25
III.43.22	I.15.15
III.43.25	I.15.24
	I.17.1
δίσκος, ὁ (vas liturgicum)	I.20.27
IV.45.4	II.7.24
	II.8.4
δομέστικος, ὁ	II.8.17
III.22.17	II.20.5
III.23.12	III.5.5
III.26.37	III.5.22
III.31.15	III.5.28
III.43.20	III.6.6
III.43.22	III.10.5
III.43.24	III.11.8
IV.16.37	III.12.3
IV.25.86	III.13.21
IV.36.12	III.13.24
IV.41.20	III.14.6
	III.14.18
δορυφόρος, ὁ	III.18.40
I.1.17	III.24.9
II.27.27	III.26.45
III.3.4	III.27.13
	III.27.13
δρόμος, ὁ (officium)	IV.1.9
IV.1.5	IV.1.14
IV.2.23	IV.2.26
IV.36.4	IV.4.5
IV.36.6	IV.4.13
IV.41.22	IV.6.12
	IV.9.4
δρόμων, ὁ	IV.10.47
IV.44.10	IV.10.50
δρουγγάριος, ὁ	ἐκθεσις, ἡ (exhibitio)
III.5.3	IV.21.24
III.38.11	
IV.2.21	ἐξάερος, ον
IV.3.10	III.43.3
IV.41.48	
εἰκονοκαύστης, ὁ	ἐσκούβιτος, ὁ (praeses excubitorum)
I.23.12	III.43.21
	III.43.23
	III.43.24

- εὐριπος, ὁ
IV.7.16
- ζωστός, ἡ (πατρικία), ὄν
III.5.8
- ἡγούμενος, ὁ
IV.7.3
- ἡλιακά, τά
III.4.4
III.43.69
IV.39.28 (τῶν ἡλιακῶν)
- ἡλιακός, ὁ
III.43.63
IV.35.12
- ἡσυχάζω
I.10.7
III.31.6
IV.25.25
- ἡσυχαστήριον, τό
III.10.26
- θέατρον, τό
IV.26.5
- θάλασσα ἡ (tunica)
I.9.29
- θεάνθρωπος, ὄν
II.20bis.7
III.13.24
- θέμα, τό
I.1.6
I.1.11
I.3.3
III.29.24
III.29.26
III.39.48
IV.25.48
IV.41.11
- θεματικός, ἡ, ὄν
II.13.7
II.25.4
- θεολογία
II.7.17
- θυμίαμα, τό
I.18.9
- θυμιατήριον, τό
I.25.27
- ἱεραρχία, ἡ (episcopatus)
I.17.6
- ἱερωσύνη, ἡ
I.17.8
- ἱκανάτοι, οἱ
I.10.12
- ἰνδικτιῶν, ὁ (et abbr. ἰνδ.)
I.3.2
I.4.20
I.4.27
I.12.2
III.1.4
IV.41.45
IV.43.7
IV.44.51
- ἵππασία, ἡ
III.23.9
- καθοσίωσις, ἡ
I.21.5
III.25.3
III.38.5
IV.18.6
- καῖσαρ, ὁ
III.18.10
III.18.17
III.18.21
III.18.23
IV.26.3
IV.40.17
IV.41.17
IV.41.18
IV.41.31
IV.41.34
IV.44.47
- καλάθωσις, ἡ
III.44.7

κανίκλειος, ὁ (caniclinus)	I.25.9
I.25.2	I.25.20
IV.1.5	I.25.24
IV.20.2	III.1.16
IV.39.14	III.16.7
	III.36.14
καπνικόν, τό	IV.4.4
II.11.37	IV.7.3
	IV.38.19
καρτζιμάς, ὁ	
III.43.92	κλουβίον, τό
	III.43.81
κάστρον, τό	
III.28.5	κομβινογράφος, ὁ
	IV.36.7
κατασκοπή, ἡ	
III.44.15	κόμης
	– κόρτης, ὁ
κατεντρύφημα, τό	I.3.20
I.Prooem.8	I.4.33
	– τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ἵπποστασίου, ὁ
κατεπάνω, ὁ	II.22.8
III.28.11	
κελλίον, τό	κονδίτον, τό
IV.25.25	III.43.14
κεντηνάριον, τό	κοσμικός, ἡ. ὄν
III.9.11	IV.32.2
III.34.27	
III.34.33	κουαίστωρ, ὁ
IV.20.22	I.22.10
IV.21.25	
IV.21.32	κουβούκλειον, τό
IV.27.106	III.43.70
	III.43.71
κιβώτιον, τό	III.43.84
IV.10.38	III.43.104
	III.43.116
	III.44.9
κιβωτός, ἡ	III.44.10
IV.10.40	IV.44.18
IV.37.18	
	κουμβάριον, τό
κλεισουράρχης, ὁ	IV.34.2
IV.25.44	
IV.25.80	κουνάριον, τό
	III.43.14
κληρικός, ὄν	
III.27.3	κουροπαλάτης, ὁ
	I.4.23
κλῆρος, ὁ (clerus)	IV.23.3
I.20.30	

- | | |
|---|---|
| κοῦρσον, τό
III.26.29 | λουτρόν, τό (baptisma)
I.12.4
II.3.7 |
| κόρπη, ἡ
I.3.21
I.4.33 | III.36.18
IV.14.24
IV.21.15
IV.22.3 |
| λακαρικόν, τό
III.42.18 | λύτρον, τό (absolutio)
II.2.
III.36.18 |
| λαμπάς, ἡ
I.18.10
IV.10.44
IV.41.4 | μαγαρίζω
III.35.17 |
| λεοντόχασμα, τό
III.43.10 | μάγιστρος, ὁ
I.5.10
II.20.21
III.18.10
III.26.36
IV.1.7
IV.10.34
IV.22.25
IV.22.28
IV.22.32
IV.43.2 |
| λεπτοκάλαμος, ον
III.43.9 | |
| λευκός, ἡ, ὄν (color factionis)
IV.36.5 | |
| λέων, ὁ (mechanicus)
IV.21.22 | |
| λήξις, ἡ (μακαρία),
II.22.3
II.28.3
II.11.15 | μακαρίτης, ὁ
Tit.gen.4
I.18.9
II.8.2
II.8.19
III.14.25
IV.11.13
IV.38.18
IV.39.3
IV.40.12 |
| λιβάδιον, τό
IV.25.38
IV.25.52
IV.25.54 | |
| λίτρα, ἡ
III.16.8
IV.21.8
IV.21.14
IV.21.16
IV.45.11 | μάννα, ἡ
III.6.11 |
| λογothḗtis, ὁ
III.27.15
IV.1.5
IV.2.23
IV.27.76
IV.27.84
IV.36.3
IV.36.4 | μεσοκήπιον, τό
III.14.30
III.43.66 |
| | μεσόπατον, τό
III.43.80
III.44.10 |
| | μητρόπολις, ἡ
IV.27.13 |

μητροπολίτης, ό	III.26.4
II.20.35	III.26.10
IV.2.12	III.27.10
IV.38.7	IV.1.11
	IV.2.1
μιλιαρήσιον, τό	IV.2.24
II.11.37	IV.14.1
II.11.38	IV.15.5
IV.21.33	IV.25.23
	IV.25.28
μοδίολος, ό	IV.25.83
I, 9.19	IV.25.88
	IV.25.94
μονάζω	IV.25.98
I.2.3	IV.30.9
I.3.8	
I.15.2	μονή, ή
I.16.2	I.2.21
III.10.20	I.3.26
III.27.9	I.3.28
IV.8.11	I.10.17
	I.10.27
μοναστήριον, τό	I.10.29
III.10.24	I.10.30
III.18.31	I.10.32
III.18.43	I.10.35
IV.22.11	I.10.38
IV.29.8	I.11.5
	I.18.15
μοναύλιος, ον (βίος)	II.7.12
III.39.5	II.23.12
	II.24.24
μοναχικός, ή, όν	III.1.34
I.10.8	III.5.10
II.27.3	III.5.35
III.18.27	III.11.3
III.18.38	IV.7.1
	IV.8.4
μοναχός, ό (monachus)	IV.8.20
I.2.14	IV.9.4
I.3.33	
I.11.37	μονήρης (βίος), ες
I.16.13	I.10.15
I.16.18	III.18.19
I.24.6	IV.10.9
II.8.12	
II.14.29	μορφή, ή
II.16.6	II.20bis.7
III.10.24	II.28.8
III.11.6	III.11.9
III.12.1	III.13.13
III.13.4	

- μύρον, τό
 II.23.17
 IV.12.4
- νινίον, τό (rupa)
 III.5.28
 III.6.9
 III.6.13
 III.6.24
 III.6.26
 III.6.28
- νούμερος, ό
 IV.22.37
- όθόνη, ή
 III.11.11
 IV.37.15
- οίκουμενικός (διδάσκαλος), ή, όν
 III.43.42
- όλκας, ή
 I.18.8
- όργανον, τό (instrumentum musicale)
 IV.21.28
- παλάτιον, τό
 I.10.33
 II.2.4
 III.4.3
 III.9.65
 III.44.8
 IV.18.10
 IV.35.11
- παντάναξ, ό
 I.25.17
- παπίας, ό
 I.21.38
 I.24.12
 I.24.13
 I.24.19
 I.24.19
 II.2.1
 III.43.62
 IV.35.16
- παρακοιμώμενος, ό
 IV.8.17
 IV.41.36
- πάσχα, τό
 I.17.7
 II.8.34
- πατριαρχεϊον, τό
 IV.3.2
- πατρίκιος, ό
 I.4.31
 I.12.3
 I.12.7
 III.5.11
 III.9.62
 III.18.9
 III.18.41
 III.21.6
 III.30.14
 III.35.12
 III.35.17
 III.35.25
 III.36.23
 III.37.2
 IV.1.6
 IV.2.22
 IV.3.12
 IV.8.2
 IV.21.8
 IV.22.19
 IV.22.25
 IV.25.26
 IV.36.4
- περατικός, ή, όν (τάγματα)
 III.43.18
- πέχ, ό
 III.28.4
- πιπεράτος, ον
 III.42.24
- πλάτανος, ή (aurea)
 IV.21.22
- πολίτευμα, τό
 III.43.18

- πολυκάνδηλον, τό
IV.45.10
- πόρτιξ, ό
III.43.116
- πορφυρογέννητος, ον
Tit.gen.2
III.43.82
- ποτάμιον, τό
III.42.6
III.43.100
- πραιπόσιτος, ό
IV.19.21
- πράσινος, ον
– color factionis
III.43.22
III.43.23
IV.36.3
IV.36.7
– color marmoris
III.43.34
III.43.74
III.43.89
III.43.99
- πρόεδρος, ό (episcopus)
I.10.26
II.8.16
II.23.15
IV.38.10
- προέλευσις, ή
III.43.31
IV.22.21
IV.40.7
- πρόκενσος, ό
III.3.14
- πρόοδος, ή
III.3.16
IV.38.16
- πρωτοακηκηγῆτις, ό
IV.32.3
IV.36.5
- πρωτομανδάτωρ, ό
IV.16.12
- πρωτονοτάριος, ό
IV.36.6
IV.36.11
- πρωτοσπαθάριος, ό
II.22.2
II.22.9
III.28.28
- πρωτοστράτωρ, ό
I.9.14
I.12.6
III.19.10
- πρωτοσύμβουλος, ό
III.35.17
- πρωτότυπον, τό (archetypum iconis)
II.8.26
IV.10.52
- πῦρ, τό (ignis Graecus)
II.14.22
II.21.41
- πυρπολέω
II.16.29
- πυρφόρος (στόλος), ον
II.16.28
- ράβδοῦχος, ό
I.4.30
- ράκοδυτέω
III.26.10
- ρήξ, ό
III.37.3
III.37.8
- ρόδοποιίκλος, η, ον
III.43.50
- ρούσιος, ον (color factionis)
IV.36.5
- σάβανον, τό
IV.37.14

σατούρα, ή	I.4.32
IV.34.2	I.12.7
	I.13.16
σενζάτον, τό	II.5.3
IV.21.31	II.5.5
	II.5.12
σκάμνος, ό	II.14.19
IV.19.34	II.22.10
	II.25.26
σκίμπους, ό	II.27.9
I.24.12	II.27.14
	III.7.2
σπαθαροκανδιδάτος, ό	III.7.7
III.28.10	III.7.15
	III.7.33
σταυρίον, τό	III.7.35
I.3.24	III.7.38
	III.26.26
στέψιμον, τό	III.28.23
II.1.6	III.28.25
	III.28.29
στολή, ή	III.28.34
I.25.14	III.30.13
IV.22.36	III.30.14
IV.36.8	III.32.11
	IV.16.10
στρατηγέω	IV.16.39
II.11.33	IV.22.19
II.14.9	IV.22.29
II.22.3	IV.23.21
IV.1.17	IV.23.24
	IV.25.41
στρατηγέτης, ό	IV.25.43
II.11.28	IV.25.45
II.11.35	IV.25.62
II.25.1	IV.25.81
III.24.15	IV.39.29
	IV.41.22
στρατηγία, ή	στύραξ, ό
III.29.25	III.42.21
στρατηγικός, ή, όν	σύγκελλος, ό
II.14.35	III.9.4
	III.15.1
στρατηγίς, ή	IV.7.7
II.23.2	
II.25.3	
IV.25.9	συγκλητικός, ή, όν
IV.27.13	II.10,6
	II.24.20
στρατηγός, ό (praeses thematis)	IV.2.10
I.2.15	

σύγκλητος (sc. βουλή), ἡ	IV.36.12
I.5.8	IV.41.21
I.9.22	
II.24.7	τάγμα, τό (ἱερόν),
III.4.17	II.14bis.6
III.40.12	
IV.20.19	τάγματα, τά (βασιλικά)
IV.21.27	I.6.41
IV.21.34	III.31.24
IV.37.7	III.33.32
IV.43.5	IV.25.12
IV.44.7	
IV.44.14	τειχιώτης, ὁ
IV.44.48	IV.22.37
συγκοπή, ἡ	τετράσειρος, ον
III.43.52	III.42.25
III.43.84	
III.43.101	τζουκανιστήριον, τό
	III.43.65
σύμβολον, τό	
I.17.9	τουρμάρχης, ὁ
	I.12.6
σύνθημα, τό (vexillum)	II.27.2
IV.19.22	III.5.3
IV.35.14	III.29.25
	IV.23.23
συντακτήριον, τό	
IV.41.4	τρίκλινος, ὁ
	III.14.3
συντουρμάρχης, ὁ	III.43.36
II.27.13	III.43.44
	III.43.49
σφενδόνη, ἡ	III.43.61
III.27.4	III.43.115
	III.44.5
σφραγίς, ἡ (sigillum)	III.44.9
IV.10.39	IV.3.1
σχῆμα, τό (θεῖον, μοναχικόν)	τροπική, ἡ
I.3.33	III.43.8
I.10.8	III.43.20
II.27.3	
III.27.23	τυραννίς, ἡ
	I.21.23
σχολαί, αἱ	
III.22.17	τυραννικός, ἡ, ὄν
III.23.8	II.2.20
III.26.38	II.27.28
III.31.15	
III.43.21	
IV.25.12	

τύραννος, ὁ (usurpator vel imperator indignus)	φροντιστήριον, τό
I.9.2	IV.8.18
I.9.21	
I.17.4	χαγάνος, ὁ
II.17.14	III.28.4
II.20.2	
II.20.9	χειρονομέω
III.10.33	III.16.7
III.11.12	
III.12.2	χειροτονέω
III.13.2	III.16.7
III.13.23	III.26.43
IV.44.7	IV.28.114
τύραννος (χείρ), ον	χειροτονία, ἡ
IV.5.4	III.12.13
	IV.28.1
υἱωνός, ὁ	
I.Prooem.2.6	χελάνδιον, τό
	III.28.11
ύπαρχικός, ἡ, ὄν	
IV.44.12	χερνιβόξεστον, τό
	III.9.18
ύπογραφεύς, ὁ	
IV.27.12	χρονογραφία, ἡ
	Tit.gen.1
ύποστράτηγος, ὁ	
I.6.1	χρυσοβούλλιον, τό
IV.23.23	II.20.20
	III.26.6
φατρία, ἡ	III.26.14
IV.38.1	
φατριάρχης, ὁ	χρυσοκατάστικτος, ον
IV.3.1	III.43.74
φιάλη, ἡ	χρυσοὔφαντος, ον
III.43.3	IV.21.27
III.43.5	IV.38.4
III.43.13	
III.43.66	ψευδοπατριάρχης, ὁ
	IV.43.13
φοινικοβαφής, ἐς	ψωμός, ὁ
I.9.27	IV.37.10
φοινικός, ἡ, ὄν	ώμοφόριον, τό
I.24.20	IV.38.5
φωταγωγία, ἡ	
IV.45.9	

3. Index grammaticus

1. articulum

1.1) ut demonstrativum: τοῦ μὲν II.2.12, τῶν ὧν ἐρωτώμεθα III.4.21–22, κατὰ τῶν ὧν ἐπεθύμει III.26.24, τὸν ὅστις IV.23.16, τὸ ὃ ἔφερε σάβανον IV.37.14, τὰ ἃ εἶχε IV.37.17, τῶν ὧν εἶχε IV.38.1, τοῖς οἷς ἐβούλοντο μεταλαμβάνειν IV.38.14–15, τοῦ μὲν ... ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὰ ὧτα IV.44.29–30.

1.2) cum infinitivo

1.2.1) τό + inf. (syntagma nominale ut obiectum directum, subiectum, sive syntagma appositionum): τὸ μὴ ... καταφωρᾶν I.11.6–7, τὸ ἀκρωτηριάζεσθαι ... καὶ ... τίθεσθαι I.14.4–5, τὸ μὴ διωχθῆναι ἐξόπισθεν II.16.17, τὸ ἀπελάσαι καὶ ... ποιῆσαι III.1.33–34, τὸ μὴ δὲ προσκυνεῖσθαι ... τὸ μὴ δὲ ... τυποῦσθαι τε καὶ μορφάζεσθαι III.10.11–12, τὸ ζῆν III.13.2, εἰς αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἐναγούσας, τὸ προσκυνεῖσθαι αὐτάς III.14.12–13, τὸ χειρονομεῖν III.16.7, τὸ ... ἐποχυρῶσαι ... καὶ ... διασῶσαι III.30.12–13, τὸ σώζεσθαι III.32.8, τὸ ... εἶναι III.36.24–25, ἔχον καὶ αἴτιον τὸ ... βούλεσθαι ... μήτε ... συνυπάγεσθαι IV.44.25–26.

1.2.2) τοῦ μὴ + inf: a) oratio adiectiva: τοῦ ... ἀκριβολογῆσαι I.11.20–21, τοῦ φιλοπλουτεῖν II.11.23, τοῦ φρονεῖν ... ἀπαλλάττεται II.20.9–10, νόμον ... τοῦ μὴ ... κατατολμᾶν III.17.6–7, ἄθλον ... τοῦ μὴ ... προσκυνεῖν III.26.44–45, ἀπώπειραν ... τοῦ ... ἀποστῆσαι καὶ ... παλιννοστήσαι III.33.5–6, δέει τοῦ μὴ παροφθῆναι IV.35.17, ἡμέρας τοῦ μέλλειν IV.41.6.

b) oratio finalis: τοῦ μὴ ... γενέσθαι I.6.46–47, πείθειν τοῦ μὴ ... πορεύεσθαι II.3.24–26, πείσαι τοῦ ... ἀποβαλεῖν III.18.28–29, ἐφετὸν τοῦ ... ἐννοῆσαι ... προσχωρῆσαι III.20.17–19, παρήναι ... καὶ ... κατεδέσμει ... τοῦ μήτε ... τυχεῖν μήτε ... III.27.16–17, τοῦ μὴ πλησιᾶσαι ... ἀγωνιζόμενος IV.35.19–20.

1.2.3) causale sive instrumentale: a) τῷ + inf.: τῷ ... βούλεσθαι I.5.9, τῷ μὴ ... φρονεῖν I.6.22, τῷ ... διοικονομῆσαι I.19.1–2, τῷ γε μὴ πεισθῆναι I.20.47, τῷ ... μέλλειν III.9.3, τῷ μὴ δὲ ... βούλεσθαι III.10.32–33, τῷ σφόδρα παρρησιασθῆναι III.11.12–13, τῷ διαφέρειν ... τῷ καὶ ... ὀφθῆναι III.25.15–16, τῷ βάλλεσθαι III.31.30, τῷ πλήθος ἀνηρῆσθαι III.34.5, τῷ ... γενέσθαι III.38.26–27, εἴτε ... τῷ ... εἶναι ... εἴτε καὶ τῷ διαφέρειν IV.7.4–5, τῷ συμπεφράχθαι IV.25.72–73, τῷ ... χαρίζεσθαι IV.39.15, τῷ παρουσιάζειν καὶ ... ἴστασθαι IV.41.30.

b) διὰ τὸ + inf.: διὰ τὸ ... εἶναι I.10.31–32, διὰ τὸ ... εἶναι I.10.35–36, διὰ τὸ ... εἶναι II.1.4, διὰ τὸ ... εἶναι II.2.2–3, διὰ τὸ ... ἔχειν III.42.5–6, διὰ τὸ ... διανέμειν III.44.12–13, διὰ τὸ ... ἀπαλλαγῆναι IV.39.35–36.

c) τοῦ ἔνεκα + inf.: τοῦ ... ἔνεκεν ... διαλύειν καὶ ... ποιεῖν III.24.5–6.

d) ἐκ τοῦ + inf.: ἐκ τοῦ ... ἡρῆσθαι II.10.12, ἐκ τοῦ μὴ βούλεσθαι II.20.4, ἐκ τοῦ διανεμηθῆναι II.26.4, ἐκ τοῦ ... ἡττᾶσθαι III.37.10.

e) ἀπὸ τοῦ + inf.: ἀπὸ τοῦ ... ἀνάπτειν ... καὶ ... χειραγωγεῖν I.10.3–4.

1.2.4) temporale: a) ἅμα τῷ + inf.: ἅμα ... τῷ ... ἐποφθῆναι II.14.32–33, ἅμα τῷ συρραγῆναι II.18.26, ἅμα ... τῷ πυθέσθαι II.19.50–51, ἅμα τῷ ... καταλαβεῖν III.28.13, ἅμα τῷ πιστεῦσαι III.38.23, ἅμα τῷ ... κληθῆναι IV.31.26, ἅμα τῷ ... ἰδεῖν IV.35.7.

b) ἐν τῷ + inf.: ἐν τῷ μέλλειν IV.19.18, ἐν τῷ μέλλειν IV.31.12.

c) μετὰ τὸ + inf.: μετὰ τὸ ... ἀφαιρεθῆναι II.7.15–16.

1.2.5) directivum: a) πρὸς τὸ + inf.: πρὸς τὸ μονάζειν III.27.9.

b) εἰς τὸ + inf. εἰς τὸ μηδὲν εἶναι IV.7.38.

2. substantiva

2.1) casus

2.1.1) nominativus: a) nominativus pendens cf. 6.4.2.

b) pro vocativo cf. ὦ λαὸς καὶ κληρὸς ἐμός III.1.6, ὦ οὗτος III.1.26, ὦ ποιμήν IV.25.90.

c) neutra in ι(ν): κῦρι II.20.34, γυβέριν II.20.35, Γύριν IV.25.56.

2.1.2) accusativus: absolutus: μόνους ἐξιόντας τοὺς ἀνθρώπους III.4.26.

2.1.3) genitivus: absolutus passim, cf. 6.4.1.

2.1.4) dativus: a) agens cum perf. passivo: τῆς σοὶ πεποθημένης βασιλείας I.2.20, τούτῳ λελόγιστο I.2.32, ἡμῖν δεδήλωται II.1.2, μοι ... εἴρηται II.7.2–3, μοι δεδήλωται II.12.24, τῶν ... ἑαυτῷ ἡμαρτημένων II.16.9, ἔγνωστο ... αὐτῷ II.19.8, ἐμοί ... νενόμισται II.21.46–47, τῶν ἡμῖν εἰρημένων III.1.35–36, τῶν εἰρημένων τοῖς πατράσιν III.11.4, τῶν ... ἡμῖν εἰρημένων III.26.18, ἡμῖν κατανάλωται III.34.33–34, ἡμῖν εἰρημένος III.43.2, τῷ Θεοφίλῳ ἐξωκοδόμηται III.43.36–37, ἡμῖν ... εἴρηται III.43.69–70; cum perf. activo: τῷ Θεοφίλῳ ἀνεστηκώς III.43.50; cum aor. pasivo: τὰ ... πραχθέντα Μιχαὴλ τῷ Τραυλῷ III.1.1, ἡγαπήθη αὐτῷ τε τῷ ἄρχοντι καὶ τῇ γερουσίᾳ αὐτοῦ III.25.21, τῷ Θεοφίλῳ κατεσκευάσθησαν III.43.29–30; cum imperf. passivo: ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ αὐτῇ III.5.19, οἷς ὑβρίζετο III.348.

b) absolutus, cf. τοῦτο γὰρ αὐτῷ διὰ σπουδῆς ἔχοντι καὶ μελετῶντι III.35.19.

2.1.6) congruentia casuum: a) dativi cum dativo et accusativo: τῷ Μανουὴλ πρὸς τὸν Θεόκτιστον, ἀμφοτέροις ἐπιτροπεύουσι IV.18.4–5.

b) dativi cum nominativo: Δένδεραι ὄνομα τούτῳ ... φθεγγόμενος καὶ ... κινῶν καὶ ... ἐν-δαιατώμενος III.6.3–4.

c) acusativi cum nominativo: καὶ πρὸς θεὸν εὐχὰς ἰκετηρίους παρεκάλει τοῦτον ἀναπέμψειν, τὰ αὐτοῦ διαβήματα κατευθυνούσας καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν ἐπιβραβεύουσας αὐτῷ I.2.4–6.

2.2) numerus

2.2.1) dualis: τῷ χεῖρε I.24.10–11, τῷ χεῖρε II.20.14, ἐν χερσίν III.23.29, τῷ χεῖρε IV.10.28.

2.2.2) congruentia ad sensum (cf. 4.3.1.c): ταύτην (=πολυχειρίαν) ἀπέστελλεν ... ὡς πανταχόθεν ἀντιστησομένους καὶ τὸν ἐχθρὸν ἐκνικήσοντας III.30.15–16, μὴ δυνάμενος ὁ ... στρατός ... κλίναντες ... κατέλιπον III.31.29–31, τοῦ τοσοῦτου λαοῦ ... ἐμοὶ προσμεινάντων III.32.8.

2.3) genus

2.3.1) **masculus pro neutro**: τὸν πολὺν ὄνειδον II.10.8–9, IV.18.18.

2.3.3) **concordantia ad sensum**: γυναίκα ... ἐρχομένη IV.37.4–5.

3. adiectiva

3.1) **neutrum cum articulo pro nomine abstracto**: τὸ φοβερόν καὶ ἄγριον ... αὐτῶν pro τὴν φοβερότητα καὶ ἀγριότητα αὐτῶν I.5.17–18, τὸ προπετὲς ἐκείνου καὶ αὐθαδὲς pro τὴν προπέτειαν ἐκείνου καὶ αὐθάδειαν I.6.14–15, τὸ κακόγνωμον pro τὴν κακογνωμοσύνην II.2.12, τὸ ... ἄφοβον pro τὴν ἀφοβίαν II.2.14, τὸ ... καθαρὸν pro τὴν καθαρότητα II.3.15, τὸ καρτερικὸν pro τὴν καρτερικότητα II.4.9, τὸ βέβαιον pro τὴν βεβαίωσιν II.10.2, τὸ ... ὦμόν pro ἡ ὠμότης II.10.18, τὸ εὐπροσήγορον καὶ ἀστεῖον pro ἡ εὐπροσηγορία καὶ ἡ ἀστειότης II.11.16–17, τὸ ἐπαινετὸν pro τὴν ἐπαίνεσιν III.1.32, τὸ φιλήκοον ... καὶ φιλοδικαίον pro τὴν φιληκοίαν καὶ δικαιοσύνην III.7.21, τὸ φιλαπέχθημον pro τὴν φιλαπεχθημοσύνην III.7.43, τὸ δραστήριον pro τὴν δραστηριότητα III.9.7, τὸ μεγαλόδωρον pro τὴν μεγαλοδωρίαν III.9.48, τὸ ... φιλόστοργον pro τὴν φιλοστοργίαν III.18.10, τὸ ... ἔκκριτον καὶ φιλόθεον pro τὴν ἔκκρισιν καὶ φιλοθείαν III.24.10–11, τὸ καταδιώκον pro τὴν καταδίωξιν III.31.26, διὰ τὸ νέον pro τὴν νεότητα IV.27.16, τὸ εὐσχημον ... τε καὶ σεμνὸν pro εὐσχημοσύνην τε καὶ σεμνότητα IV.31.25–26, ἀνήμερόν τε καὶ ἄγροικον pro ἀνημερότητα τε καὶ ἀγριότητα IV.33.2, τὸ σεβάσιμον pro τὴν σεβασμιότητα IV.45.12.

3.2) reflexivum

3.2.1) **οἰκεῖος ut refl. dir.**: τοῖς οἰκείοις ὄροις ἐμμένειν I.6.10, τὴν οἰκίαν ἐπιγινώσκοντος ἀσθένειαν I.6.12–13, τὴν οἰκίαν προδεδωκότων παράταξιν I.6.41–42, τὰ οἰκεῖα προμηθευμένων I.15.21, διὰ ... τοῦ οἰκεῖου υἱοῦ ... παραδίδωσι II.8.20, διήλθε ... τὰ τοῦ οἰκεῖου στοιχεῖα ὀνόματος II.18.41–42, τοῦ ... βουλευμάτος οὐ διήμαρτε τοῦ οἰκεῖου II.12.14–15, πρὸς τὸ οἰκεῖον στρατόπεδον ... ἀπεδίδρασκον II.15.24, οἰκείαις οὕτως χερσὶν ἀνεστήλωσεν III.13.22–23, τὸ οἰκεῖον ἐνηχεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς ὥσιν ἀνάθεμα IV.10.46, περὶ οἰκείας αὐτοῦ πρεσβεύειν ἀδελφῆς IV.14.6–7; τὸ οἰκεῖον δοῦναι ἐτέροις IV.27.109.

3.2.2) **ἴδιος ut refl. dir.**: ἰδίους ... παραδόντες γεννήτορας I.1.2–3, ἐν τῷ ἰδίῳ οἴκῳ I.3.46–47, θυμὸν ἴδιον ἀποπιμπλῶν II.11.5–6.

3.3) gradus comparationis

3.3.1) **positivum ut comparativum** (cf. 6.4.3): τῶν ἄλλων Ἀγαρηῶν οὗτοι δὴ εὐφυεῖς II.25.7–8, λείψαι καὶ εὐπρόσιτος τῶν λοιπῶν IV.25.65.

3.3.2) **comparativum sive superlativum adverbialiter usurpatum in accusativo**: a) **comparativum sing.**: e.g. θρασύτερον II.7.3, II.10.30, IV.13.1, ῥαθυμότερον III.10.30, σπουδαιότερον IV.29.9–10.

b) **comparativum plur.**: e.g. σοφώτερα ἢ βασιλικώτερα βουλευσάμενος I.24.9, ταῦτόν δὲ εἶναι δυνατώτερα εἰπεῖν III.12.7.

c) **superlativum plur.**: e.g. ἀνασπούδαστα καὶ ὥς ἔτυχε θέουσα I.21.33.

3.4) **ταῦτόν ut neutrum**: II.6.10, II.14.22, II.14bis.24, II.15.14, II.27.30, III.12.7, III.32.18, III.37.6, IV.18.14, IV.25.4, IV.27.39, IV.41.8, sed cf. ταὐτὸ τοῦτο II.16.16–17.

4. pronomina

4.1) personalia

4.1.1) αὐτός: a) *ut refl. indir. passim.*

b) *ut refl. dir.:* αὐτῷ ... συγγνώμην αἰτούμενος I.3.22–23, παρὰ πλευράν αὐτοῦ τιθεῖς I.20.23–24, ἐξήρτυον αὐτοῖς τὴν σωτήριον I.24.22, τὸ φίλον αὐτῷ I.25.17, δίδωσι τὴν αὐτοῦ II.3.13–14, μὴ τῆς αἰρέσεως αὐτοῦ ... πορεύεσθαι II.3.25–26, τὰς περὶ αὐτοῦ προρρήσεις φοβούμενος II.11.7, ἀξιόμαχον κρίνας αὐτὸν II.17.28, ἐκταθῆναι τὴν αὐτῶν ... διατριβὴν II.18.30, τὴν κατ' αὐτοὺς ... πλευράν ... ὀρῶντες II.21.5–6, τῆς αὐτοῦ ἄχρι ἐπανόδου III.7.30, αὐτοῦ ... διδάσκαλον III.9.4–5, τῶν κατ' αὐτὸν ἀπάντων III.9.8, αὐτοῦ κατενώπιον III.9.45, καθηγητὴν αὐτοῦ γεγονότα III.12.8, τῆς αὐτοῦ γνώμης III.13.6, τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν III.26.26, τῆς γνώμης αὐτῶν III.29.15, τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς III.32.9, αὐτοῦ τὴν ψυχὴν III.32.15, τῆς πατρίδος αὐτοῦ III.33.7, τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν III.35.28, τῶν αὐτοῦ ... φλυαριῶν III.36.5–6, παρ' ... αὐτοῦ τὸν βίον III.41.3–4, παρ' ... αὐτοῦ τὴν ζωὴν III.41.9, τὴν ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ ἔθνους αὐτοῦ καθυψίσταται ἐπανάστασιν IV.15.19, ἐν κόλποις περιάγων αὐτοῦ IV.15.20–21, κτίζειν ἐπιχειροῦσιν αὐτοῖς IV.16.21, τὴν κατ' αὐτὸν ἐλαύνων ὁ Βάρδας ὁδὸν IV.20.13–14, τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς αὐτῶν κίνδυνον IV.24.18, οὐκ ὀλίγους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ... καταλιπὼν IV.39.35, εἰς τὸ πρόσωπον ἐγχαράττων αὐτοῦ IV.41.29.

c) *pleonasticum:* περὶ οἰκείας αὐτοῦ πρεσβεύειν ἀδελφῆς IV.14.6–7.

4.1.2) σφεῖς *ut refl. dir.:* τοῖς σφῶν οἴκοις I.25.10, τὴν σφῶν ... ἀνδρείαν II.13.32.4.1.3) ἐμὲν *pro* ἐμὲ IV.4.12 (cf. ἐμένα in hodierno sermone Graeco)4.1.4) *encliticum:* a) μου/μοι/με *passim.*

b) σου/σοι/σε *passim.*

c) οἱ *dat. sing.:* οἱ ... διηπείλει I.7.9, ἀμείβεσθαι οἱ I.15.2, τῶν ὁμοφρόνων οἱ I.20.22, οἱ γε δὴ οἱ συνωμόται I.25.7–8, φανῆναι οἱ IV.10.30.

4.2) reflexiva

4.2.1) αὐτός *ut refl. cf. 4.1.1*4.2.2) ἑαυτός: a) *ut refl. passim.*

b) *non refl., sensu 'propriū':* e.g. μετὰ τῶν ἑαυτῆς παιδῶν III.7.40–41, ὁ ... τὴν ἑαυτοῦ φωράσας κακίαν IV.23.30, τοῦτον ἡσυχάζοντα καὶ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ κελλίου μήποτε ἐξερχόμενον IV.25.25.

c) *cum alio pronomine:* ἑαυτοῖς ἐκείνοις IV.39.12.

4.3) relativa

4.3.1) *concordantia relativī cum antecedenti:* a) *in casu cum antecedenti expresso:* ῥημάτων καὶ ἀπειλῶν ὧν ... ἀπέπεμπε I.6.5, τοῦ ... οὗ ἐφῆδρευε τόπου I.13.13, θεὸς δὲ οἷος πρόπος ἐκείνου I.20.47–48, μέχρι τῆς ἥς εἰώθει ἡμέρας III.4.12–13, τῶν ὧν ἐρωτώμεθα III.4.21–22, τῆς ἥς εἶχεν ἀρχῆς III.7.8, κατὰ τῶν ὧν ἐπεθύμει III.26.24, τῶν ὧν προσεκαλεῖτο ἔθνων III.37.7, τῶν ὧν εἶχε IV.38.1, ταῖς αἷς ἐπεχειρεῖ δουλείαις μὴ κατευσδοῦμενος IV.39.21, τῶν ὧν ἔφερεν ἀναθημάτων ... κατασκευὴ IV.45.2.

b) *in casu cum antecedenti omisso:* ἐφάνη καλὸν ... οἷς γὰρ ... ὀρῶσιν I.5.12–17, ἥ μὴ προσεδόκων ἐκείνοι II.15.16.

c) *ad sensum:* τοῦ ἔθνους ... οὗς IV.15.19.

4.3.2) concordantia antecedentis cum relativo: τὸ ὃ ἔφερε σάβανον ... χρησάμενος IV.37.14.

4.3.3) permutatio casuum inter relativum et antecedentem: τὴν παρ' ὧν ἐπεπόνθει δεινὰ ἐκδίκησιν IV.40–12–13.

4.3.4) ut demonstrativum in initio clausulae: a) **neutrum**, praecipue in clausulis ut ὃ (sive ὅπερ) καὶ γέγονεν I.7.11, II.16.32, II.20.27, III.18.37, III.26.31, III.27.23, IV.1.20, IV.33.9 et ὃ καὶ συνέβη I.18.16, II.12.9, III.22.27, sed etiam in aliis tum in singulari cum in plurali, cf. ἐφ' οἷς I.9.17, ἐξ οὐπερ καὶ I.10.32–33, ἃ καὶ ... I.14.5, ὑπὲρ ὧν I.19.7, ἃ καὶ II.12.1, ἃ δὴ II.13.2, ὃ καὶ II.18.19, ὃ καὶ II.19.12, ὃ καὶ ... ἐστὶν III.43.62, ὃ καὶ ... ἐστὶν III.43.72–73, ὃ καὶ ... λέγεται III.43.90–91, ὃ καὶ ... ἐφάνη IV.10.47, ὃ μὴ γένηται IV.13.6, ὃ καὶ ... IV.16.5, ὃ καὶ ... IV.25.13.

b) **masculinum et femeninum**, praecipue cum καὶ, tum postea (cf. οἷς καὶ I.20.25, ἧς καὶ I.26.7, οὓς καὶ II.1.7, οἷς καὶ II.3.21, ᾧ καὶ II.10.1, οἷ καὶ II.22.10, οὗ καὶ II.23.16, ᾧ καὶ II.23.21, ὅς καὶ III.9.56, ὧν καὶ III.11.16, ᾧ καὶ III.23.24, ἐφ' ὧν καὶ III.29.25, οὗ καὶ III.43.32, ἣν καὶ IV.10.4, ἣ καὶ IV.39.7–8 etc.) cum antea (cf. καὶ ὅς I.2.15, καὶ ὅς I.12.9, καὶ ὅς III.23.23, καὶ ὅς IV.14.20, καὶ ὅς IV.35.8, etc.), sed etiam sine adverbio quia procul ab antecedenti (cf. ὃν I.18.11, οἷς τε γὰρ I.20.14, ᾧ II.14.15, ὅς II.22.5, ὅς δὴ III.9.19, οἷς III.27.13, ὧν III.28.9, ὅς III.28.13, οἷς III.31.29, ὅς ἐπεὶ IV.28.1) aut iuxta nomen sive pronomen (cf. καθ' ἣν τροπὴν καὶ II.22.14–15, ὅς εἰπὲρ τις III.1.30 etc.).

4.3.5) ut coniunctio: ἐφ' οἷς sive οἷς cf. 9.2.

4.4) demonstrativa

4.4.1) ut reflexiva: cf. e.g. ξενῶνα τὴν ἐκείνου φέροντα προσηγορίαν III.8.7, τῇ αἰρέσει τούτου συμπαράμενοντα III.9.6.

4.5) indefinita: του pro τινος: ἐκ του κατὰ θάλατταν ὄντος χωρίου II.13.26, οὐδέ του κατὰ τοὺς πύργους ἰσταμένου ἀνδρὸς II.14bis.35, cf. etiam ὅτου III.4.18, III.11.18, III.28.30, IV.27.69.

5. verba: tempora

5.1) praesens

5.1.2) praesens historicum saepissime usitatum.

5.1.3) periphrasticum cum εἰμί et participio praesenti: ἐκστηλιτεύουσαι (ellipsis verbi substantivi) II.8.44, ἐστὶν ... ἐποχοῦμενος IV.25.27, ἵνα ... εἴη ὑπεραγόμενος IV.31.27, πλησιάζον [cf. πλησιάζει IV.36.10] καὶ γειτονούν ... ἐστὶν IV.35.6.

5.2) imperfectum

5.2.1) irrealis: a) **in orat. principali cum ἄν:** οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν ... ἤλθες ... οὐδὲ ... ἐπλήρους III.36.13–15, κἂν ἔλαβεν IV.24.15.

b) **in orat. principali sine ἄν:** ἐβουλόμην IV.27.97.

c) **in clausula conditionali + apodosis cum ἄν:** ἀπεβίω δ' ἂν ... εἰ μὴ ... κατεβίβαζε καὶ ... παρεμυθεῖτο IV.31.8–14.

d) in clausula conditionalis + apodosis sine ἄν: ἦν, εἰ ... εἴχομεν II.9.13–15.

e) in clausula conditionalis sine apodosis: κἂν ἦν III.40.16.

5.2.2) *iterativum pro optativo*: εἰ μὴ ... ἐκοινώνει, οὐδὲ ... ἡξίου IV.38.8–9.

5.2.3) *periphrasticum cum εἰμί et participio praesenti* (interdum ellipsi verbi substantivi ἦν): εἶεν ... φρονούντες II.19.26–27, ἦν ... σκώπτουσα καὶ διελέγχουσα ... καὶ ... ποιοῦσα III.5.33–36, ἥμην ἀτενίζουσα III.6.19, ἦν διοικῶν III.28.26–27, ἦν ... συνισταμένη III.31.21, ἦν ὑπηρετῶν III.35.12, ἦν ... ἐπιτροπεύων καὶ διοικῶν IV.23.1, ἀπομαχομένη IV.24.16, μέλλων IV.25.89, ἀναγόμενος IV.34.2.

5.3) *futurum*

5.3.1) *periphrasticum: a) cum μέλλω et infinitivo praesenti*: μέλλουσιν ... διασπᾶν καὶ ... καταπολεμεῖν I.6.34–35, μέλλοι ... καταψηφίζεσθαι I.17.3, ἔμελλε βεβαίου II.20.6, μέλλουσι ... διαβιβάζεσθαι I.20.13, ἀποκείρεσθαι μέλλοντος I.22.3–4, μέλλοντος παραδίδεσθαι I.22.13, ἔμελλε ... καταπειράζειν II.14bis.16–17, συνέρχεσθαι ἔμελλον II.15.20, μέλλειν ὁρᾶσθαι III.9.3, τῶν μέλλοντων βασιλεύειν III.27.2, μέλλουσιν ... ἀναχωρεῖν III.34.10, μέλλετε ἀποφοιτᾶν III.34.12, μέλλειν ... ἐξέρχεσθαι IV.19.18–19, μέλλων ἀποδημεῖν IV.25.89, μέλλειν σιτίζεσθαι IV.31.12, μέλλοντος ἐκπηδᾶν IV.36.2–3, μέλλειν ... ἀπαίρειν IV.41.6–7.

b) *cum μέλλω et infinitivo futuri*: ἔμελλε ... κρατήσειν II.14bis.20–21, ἔμελλε ... <στήσεσθαι> II.20bis.1, ἱππιάσεσθαι μέλλοντος IV.35.14.

c) *cum μέλλω et infinitivo aoristi*: ἔμελλε ... ἐνσκηνησάι I.7.7, ἔμελλε στήναι I.9.27, ἔμελλεν ... δεῖξαι I.21.6–7, μέλλων ... μετασχεῖν I.21.35–36, μέλλοι ... προελθεῖν II.13.18–19.

d) *cum εἰμί et participio futuri*: εἶεν διακωλύσοντας IV.19.27–28.

5.3.2) *pro subiunctivo in temporalis*: μέχρις ἂν ... ἐξεργάσεται ... ἐκλήψεται III.9.49–51.

5.3.3) *pro optativo sive subiunctivo in oratione obliqua*: εἴ ... πείσει III.36.10–11.

5.4) *aoristus*

5.4.1) *sine augmento*: κατανάλισκεν IV.21.16–17, κατανάλωσε IV.21.18.

5.4.2) *irrealis: a) in oratione principali cum ἂν + adversativa cum ἄλλὰ*: ἂν ... <ἡγάγετο> III.1.38–39, διέφυγεν ἂν III.34.1, ἔτυχε δ' ἂν IV.30.3, κἂν παρήλθε καὶ ... ἐξέφυγε IV.41.34.

b) *in oratione principali cum ἄν*: ἂν εἶδέν III.3.14, οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν ... ἦλθες III.36.13–14, εἶπεν ἂν IV.38.2, κἂν ἀπώλετο IV.44.33.

c) *in oratione principali sine ἂν + adversativa (cum ἄλλὰ)*: ἐξετραγώδησε III.40.7, συν-ἀπώλετο IV.44.34.

d) in clausula conditionalis + apodosis sine ἄν: εἰ ἤκουσαν ... ἔφησαν IV.37.21–22.

e) in clausula conditionalis + apodosis cum ἄν: τάχα ἂν ... κατεῖπεν, εἰ μὴ ... ἔφη II.19.27–28, τάχα δ' ἂν ... ἔλαβον ... εἰ μὴ ... ἀντέστρεψεν ... καὶ ... ἀπέτεκεν II.25.14–16, κἂν ἀπώλοντο ... εἰ μὴ ... εἰργάσατο ... περιεποίησε καὶ ... ἐνέδωκεν III.31.34–38, κἂν ἔλαβε ... καὶ ... ἐστράτευσεν ... εἰ μὴ ... προέφθασεν III.37.6–11.

f) in clausula consecutiva cum ἄν: τοσοῦτον ... ὥς ... ἂν ... διήλθε II.8.39–41.

5.4.3) *pro subiunctivo in oratione temporalis*: ὅταν μὴ ... ἡδύνατο II.3.28–29.

5.5) perfectum

5.5.1) **sine augmento**: ἀπαλλαγμένον I.24.16, κατανάλωται III.34.33–34.

5.5.2) **periphrasticum**: a) **cum εἰμί**: σεσημασμένον ἐστὶ IV.10.38.

b) **cum ἔχω**: cf. ἔτι τοὺς πόδας ... δεδεμένους ἔχων II.2.1–2, συνεπόμενον ἔχων IV.38.17.

5.6) plusquamperfectum

5.6.1) **cum augmento**: ἐγεγόνει I.3.41, ἐτέθαπτο I.10.21, ἀνηρπάκει I.19.17, ἐγεγένητο I.21.25, ἐπετέτραπτο I.25.4, ἐκεκρατήκει II.10.27, διεβεβόητο II.11.12, κατελέλειπτο II.13.14, ἐκεκράγει II.13.18, ἐδέδεκτο II.13.25, ἐπεδέδεικτο II.14.25, ἐπέπρακτο II.14.26, ἀπεκέκλειστο II.16.13, ἐξετέτατο II.18.32, ἔγνωστο II.19.8, κατεδήδοτο II.19.18, ἐξήπτο II.19.44, ἤκουστο II.21.2, ἐμμένυντο II.21.49, ἐγεγόνει II.23.7, ἐσφαγίαστο II.23.16, ἐπέπειστο II.24.12, ἐγεγόνει III.1.13, εἴθιστο III.7.24, ἀπηγγέλκει III.9.30, ἀπέσταλτό III.14.20, ἐγεγήθει III.19.32, ἐγεγόνει II.22.4, ἠύζητο III.30.11, ἡσχόλητο III.32.1, ἦνωντο III.33.1, 3, ἐγκατείλεξο III.36.14, ἀπεδέδεκτο III.37.8, ἐδεδίδει III.40.3, ἤκουστο IV.9.8, ἐτεθρύλητο IV.16.1, ἐδέδοτο IV.16.38, εἴθιστο IV.22.1, διεσέσωστο IV.24.37, προκατεστόρεστο IV.25.6, ἐφεστήκει IV.28.13.

5.6.2) **sine augmento**: ἀκηκόει I.11.30, λελόγιστο I.23.2, συγκεχώρητο I.25.4, λελόγιστο II.11.14, γεγέννητο II.11.25, λελόγιστο II.14.25, προδέδοτο καὶ ... ἀποκέκλειστο II.20.30–31, τετίμητο III.5.9, σέσωστο III.7.3, σέσωστο III.22.20, ἐκσέσωστο IV.23.18, εὐτρέπιστο IV.41.27, σέσωστο IV.44.43.

5.6.3) **periphrasticum**: a) **cum εἰμί et participio aoristi**: υἰοθετησάμενος ἦν II.7.8, δεξιωσάμενος <ἦν> II.20.31, ἀνελόντες <ἦσαν> III.1.28, ἦν ... ἐξωνησαμένη III.5.11, θεσπίσας ἦν III.10.11, εἶη τις ... ὠνομασμένος III.19.20, ἦν δοθεὶς III.19.21, ἦν ... παραρρυνεῖσα IV.26.13, υἰοθετησάμενος ἦν IV.37.4.

b) **cum εἰμί et participio perfecti**: μετηλλαχώς ἦν II.10.19–20, πεπηρωμένος ... ἦν II.11.15, εἶη ... νενικηκώς II.16.22, ἦν ... κευωρηκυῖα IV.26.13.

c) **cum τύγχανω et participio perfecti**: ἥρημένος ἐτύγχανε II.16.14.

d) **cum ἔχω et participio aoristi**: εἶχε στραφεῖς IV.37.14.

5.6.4) **iterativum**: εἰ ἐγεγόνει I.3.41.

5.7) congruentia temporum

5.7.1) **praesens ind. cum aoristo ind.** (in coordinatione): κάτεισιν ... καὶ ... ἐνειργάσατο I.13.21–24, διήμαρτε ... ἀλλὰ ... μεταλαγχάνει II.12.15, χρώνται ... καὶ ... ἐσκέδαστό II.18.39–40, ἐφάνη ... ἀλλὰ καὶ ... χωροῦσι II.21.36–37, ἀναγράφεται καὶ ... ἐγκατέστησε καὶ ... προσέταξε III.21.10–11.

5.7.2) **praesens ind. cum perfecto ind.** (tam in coordinatione quam in subordinatione): ὥς ... ἐπανείληφεν ... μὲν ... ἐγκαταλέγει ... δὲ ... ἐγκαθιστᾷ I.12.1–6, ἐπεὶ ... ἀκήκοεν ... ἀπάνεισι ... χωρεῖ I.13.11–15, ὥς ... ἀκήκοε ... προσχωρεῖ ... καὶ ... γίνεται II.18.7–9, ἀνήρτηνται καὶ ... γίνονται II.20.29, ἔρχεται καὶ ... τέθεικε III.21.5, ὥς ... ἀκήκοε ... γίνεται κακείθεν ... παραγίνονται IV.16.14–18.

5.7.3) **imperfectum sive plusquamperfectum ind. cum praesenti ind.** (tam in coordinatione quam in subordinatione, cf. 9.8 ἄρτι): ἀνακοινοῦται ... καὶ ... παρεκάλει I.2.4–5, καθ-

υπερτερει μὲν ... δὲ ... ἔπειπον I.6.42–44, ὥς ... ἡγγιζε καὶ ... ἔμελλε ... ἀπαμφίνυνται καὶ ... ἐπαμπύσχεται I.9.25–32, ἐδόκει ... καὶ ... φησί I.11.23–24, ἔπραττεν καὶ ... λαμβάνει I.15.1, ἀναγορεύει ... καὶ ... ἡξίου I.17.1–2, ἐπεὶ ... ἐξηχεῖτό τε καὶ διεβεβόητο ... φησὶν I.20.35–38, ἐπεὶ ... ἐγεγένητο ... καὶ ... ἦν καταχειροτονεῖται I.21.24–27, ἐπετέτραπτο ... καὶ συγκεχώρητο ... καὶ ... φησὶν I.25.4–5, ἔχουσιν ... καὶ ... ἐσπούδαζε II.8.25–26, ἐλαύνει ... δισχυρίζετο II.8.27–30, ἐπεὶ ... ἦν ... γίνεται II.10.8–10, ἐπεὶ ... ἀπήτουν ... καὶ ... εἰσποιοῖται II.10.20–23, ἐπεὶ ... διήκουεν ... κινεῖ II.11.4–8, ἐπεὶ ἐνεργάσατο κατελείπειτο δὲ ... καὶ ... ἦν ... ἐπιτρέπει II.13.12–16, ἄρτι ... ἐδέδεκτο ... ὅτε δὴ ... ἦν ... διαπεραιοῦται II.13.25–28, ἐξήει ... καὶ περιγίνεται ... καὶ ... ἀναιρεῖ II.16.19–20, ἐπεὶ ... ἐδόκει ... ἀπαίρει μὲν ... δὲ ... παρατάσσεται καὶ ἀνταγωνίζεται II.17.19–29, ἐπεὶ ... ἦσαν ... ἡττάται ... καὶ ... ποιεῖ μὲν πάσχει δὲ II.18.1–2, ἐπεὶ ... ἦν ... εὕρισκον καὶ ... συνάγονται II.18.2–4, ἐπεὶ ... κατεδήδοτο ἄχρι δὲ ... ἐχώρει ... λαμβάνουσί τε ... καὶ προσάγουσι II.19.17–21, ἐπεὶ ... ἦγετο ... ἀλλάσσεται II.23.1–2, ἐπεὶ ... εἶχεν ... ἀφαρπάζει ... καὶ ... ὑπηγάγετο II.27.4–8, ὥς ... διεβεβαίον ... παρίσθησι III.7.34–36, ἔφερον ... καὶ ... γίνεται ... καὶ ... λαμβάνει III.7.37–39, ἐπεὶ ... ἐβούλετο ... κρίνει III.9.1–4, ἐπεὶ ἀπηγγέλκει ἅπεισι III.9.29–30, ὑποκρίνεται καὶ ... ἐζήτη III.14.12, ἐπεὶ ... ἐδηλοῦτό τε καὶ ἐγνωρίζετο, προσέτι μὴν καὶ ... ἐμαρτύρει ... ποιοῦσι ... καὶ ... σαφηνίζουσιν III.19.24–30: ἐπεὶ περ ... εὕρισκε ... ποιεῖ III.19.33–34, ἐπεὶ ... ἐλάβανεν μὴνυει III.26.17–19, κατανεύει ... καὶ ... ἐξέπειπεν III.26.24–25, ὥς ... ἐγίνοντο ... ποιεῖται ... καὶ ... ἐδίδασκεν III.26.25–27, ποιεῖ καὶ ... ἡξίου III.32.5–6, ἅμα ... εἰσῆει ... καὶ ... φησι III.36.21–23, ἐπεὶ ... ἦν ... χωρεῖ III.38.6–8, ἐπεὶ ... ἐνεδίδωσαν, ... ἐπιχειροῦσιν ... καὶ ... κατάρχουσι IV.16.20–23, ἐνηυλίζετο, καὶ ... περικυκλοῖ IV.24.14–15, ὥς ... διήκουον καὶ ... χειροῦται ... καὶ ... δίδωσι IV.25.78–81, μὲν ... λέγεται ἐτελεύτα δὲ IV.25.101–102, ὥς ... ἥώρα ... φησὶν IV.27.35–37, ὥς ... ἐδόκει ... ποιεῖ IV.31.14–15, ἐλέγετό τε καὶ ὀνομάζεται IV.38.9, ὑπέστρεφε καὶ ... υἱοποιοῖται καὶ ... ἀξιοῖ IV.43.1–2, ἐπεὶ ... ἦν καὶ ... ἡσθάνετο καὶ ... διήκουεν ... καὶ ... ἐπιτίθησι καὶ ... ἀναδείκνυσί τε καὶ ἀναγορεύει IV.43.2–8.

5.7.4) imperfecti ind. cum plusquamperfecto ind. (tam in coordinatione quam in subordinatione): ἐβδελύσσετό τε καὶ ... λελόγιστο II.11.14, ἐξετέτατο ... καὶ ... ἐδόκουν II.18.32–33, ἐγνώστο ... καὶ ... ἐλάβανεν II.19.8, ἐπεὶ ... ἦκουστο ... ἦτον II.21.1–14, ἐτετελείωτο καὶ ... ὑπέλαμπε II.21.31, ὥς ἐμέμνητο καὶ ... ὠλιγώρων II.21.48–49, ἐπεὶ ... ἐχώρει ... ἐσφαγιάστο II.23.15–16, ἐπέπειστο ... καὶ ... ἀπήτει II.24.12–14, ἐγεγόνει καὶ ... ἐτόλμα III.1.13–14, κατεστέφετο καὶ ... τετίμητο III.5–8–9, σέσωστο καὶ ... ἐρρύετο III.7.3–4, ἐγεγόνει καὶ ... ἔδει II.22.4, ἠῤῥητο καὶ ... ἐπήγετο III.30.11, ἐπεὶ ... ἐδεδίει ... ἔφη III.40.1–6, εἶχε ... τε καὶ ἐτεβύλητο IV.16.1, ὥς ... κατεσκήνητο, ... ἦει IV.24.4–6, ὅτε ... διεσέσωστο ... ἐπανήρχετο IV.24.36–38, ἐσπούδαζέ τε καὶ πεφιλοτίμητο IV.26.16, ἐπεὶ ... ἀνέτελλε καὶ ... ἐφেষτήκει IV.28.12–13.

5.7.5) imperfectum ind. in temporali cum aoristo ind. in principali (cf. 9.8): ὥς ... ἐδεῖτο ... καὶ ... ἔδει ... προσῆγγισεν ... ἐγένετο I.18.1–5, ὥς ... ἐνεδίδου ... ἐξέβρασε ... ἠπειλήσε I.21.17–19, ἐπεὶ ... διέπεισεν μάλλον μὲν ... ἐπλύνετο ... ἐγκατέπηξε ... καὶ ... ἐπήλθε II.14.34–39, ὥς ... ἐφαίνετο ... ἀνεθάρρησέ II.14bis.36–39, ὥς ... ὑπέλαμπε καὶ ... ἐδίδοτο ... καὶ ... ἔμελλε ... ἦλθεν II.15.7–9, ἐπεὶ περ ... ἐδόκει ... συνέβαλον II.25.5–8, ἐπεὶ ... μὲν ... εὕρισκε ... δὲ διήκουεν ... ἐκέλευσεν II.25.27–29, ἐπεὶ ... ἐτόλμα ... ἔλεξεν III.1.13–15, ἐπεὶ ... ἀνεμάνθανεν ... μὲν ἀπέλυσεν ... δὲ ... ἐναπεκρύβη III.13.15–18, ὥς ... ἀνεδιδάσκετο ... ἔφη III.14.22–27, ἐπεὶ ... ἔφερε καὶ ... ὑπὴν ἐθέσπισεν III.17.1–2, ἐπεὶ ... ἐξέλιπον ... ἀλλὰ ... ἐφέρετο ... ἔδοξε III.19.15–21, ἐπεὶ περ ἐγεγόνει καὶ ... ἔδει ... ἔφη III.22.3–5, ἐπεὶ ... ἐτελείτο, προηγῖτο δὲ ... ἐκέλευσέ III.23.11–14, ὥς ... ἡμάρτανεν ... διέκοψε III.24.25–26, ὥς ... καθωμολόγει ... ἔφη III.35.14–15, ὥς ... προέκυπτεν, ... ἔγνω IV.19.22–23, ἐπεὶ ... ἡμάρτανεν, ... εἶλετο IV.22.33–34, ὥς ... ἐγένοντο ... καὶ ... συνέπιπτε ..., ἔγνω IV.24.34–35, ὥς ... εὕρισκεν ..., ἔγνω IV.25.63–64, ἐπεὶ ... ἐδήλου ... ἦλθεν IV.35.15–16.

5.7.6) aoristus ind. cum perfecto sive plusquamperfecto ind. (tam in coordinatione quam in subordinatione): ἠνδραγάθησεν καὶ ... πεποίηκε I.3.9–10, ὥς ... διακήκοεν ... ᾤθη I.13.1–5, εἶξε ... καὶ ... ἐπακήκοεν II.7.19–20, ἐνείργασατο κατελέλειπτο δὲ II.13.13–14, ἐπεὶ ... ὑπέταξε διεπεραιώθη δὲ ... ἐξήπτο ... καὶ ἐπεφύσητο II.19.41–45, ἀπέστη ... καὶ γεγόνασιν II.28.13–14, ἐπεὶ ἔφθασεν ... καὶ ... γέγονε III.1.19–20, ἐπεὶ ... ἐνενόησεν ... διέγνωκεν III.13.1–5, ἀπέσταλτό ... καὶ ... ἦγαγεν III.14.20–21, ὥς ... ἐγέννησεν ... καὶ ... μετέλλαξεν ... τετίμηκεν III.18.22–24, γέγονε ... καὶ ... ἡρμόσατο III.19.11–12, κατεκρήμνισε καὶ ... δέδωκεν III.23.30–31, δέικοι καὶ ... ἐγεγονέει III.24.26, ὥς ἡσχόλητο ... διήκουσε III.32.1–3, ἦκουσεν αὐτοῦ καὶ δέδωκεν IV.15.27, ὥς ... ἀκήκοεν ἔγνω IV.25.49–50, ὥς ... ἡρτύθη ... εὐτρέπιστο IV.41.25–27.

5.7.7) aoristus ind. in temporali cum imperfecto sive praesentis ind. in principali (cf. 9.8 ὥς): ὥς ... ἐθέασατο ... παρεκελεύετο I.2.13–15, ὥς ... ἔγνωσαν ... ἐνείργαζοντο ... διεπείραζε I.6.35–38, ὥς ... ἐπείσεν ... ἐξεβοήθει I.13.6–7, ἐπεῖπερ ... ἐπεμαρτύρησεν ... ἦγε I.19.18–19, ὥς ... διήκουσαν ... συρράπτουσιν I.25.8–9, ὥς εὖρον ... ἔσπευδον II.20.27–28, ὥς ... ἐφάνη ... ἐπεραίνετο II.21.35–38, ὥς ... ἔγνωσαν ... προσέρχονται II.27.29–30, ὥς ... διήκουσεν καὶ ... ἦν ... λέγεται III.4.11–12, ἐπεῖπερ ... ἔστη ... ἡρώτα III.4.15–17, ὥς ἐξανέστη ... ἀπῆι ... καὶ ... διεξῆι III.6.14–16, ἐπεὶ ... ἀπέτυχε ... ἦγε III.7.4–6, ἐπεὶ ... ἦγαγεν ... ἡμάρτανεν καὶ ... ἀνείλιπτεν III.14.20–22, ἐπεὶ ... ἐδεήθη καὶ ... ἐγένετο, ... ἔλεγε III.18.33–35, ἐπεὶ ... ἀνιμάνθανεν ... τομᾶ καὶ ... μετατίθεται III.25.5–8, ἐπεὶ ... ἐνεποίησε ... καὶ ... κατέστη ... ἐδόκει III.26.1–2, ὥς ... ἀπεφοίβασέ ... καὶ ἐμαντεύσατο ... ἀπέκειρεν III.27.6–10, ἐπεῖπερ ... ἐνέδωκάν τε καὶ ἠύξησαν ... ἐδόκει III.29.21–23, ἐπεὶ ... ἐπέστη ... ἐφαίνετο III.31.1–3, ὥς ... ἐγίνετο ... ἐπεθύμει III.31.12–13, ὥς ... ἐγένοντο ... ἐπειράτο III.36.8–10, ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ... κελύει III.38.17–18, ἀράμενοι ... ἐδήουν ... καὶ ἡχυμαλῶτιζον III.39.1–2, ἐπεὶ ... ἔσχεν ... τιμᾶ ... καθίστησι IV.7.7–8, ὥς ... ἐπῆρθετο ... ἐδείκνυε IV.10.19–23, ὥς ... ὑπέσθηλε μετακαλεῖται IV.15.4–5, ἐπειδὴ ... ἔσχεν ... μεταλαγχάνει IV.15.16–18, ἐπεὶ ... μετετέθη ... γράφει ... καὶ ἀξιοῖ IV.15.22–24, ὥς ἦσθετο ... ἀνέκλειεν καὶ ... ἐπλήρου IV.20.3–5, ὥς ... ἀφίκετο, ... ἀποκείρουσί ... καὶ ... περιορίζουσιν IV.22.4–7, ὥς ... ἐπέβησαν ... ἄγονται, καὶ ... ἐπεχείρουν IV.23.6–8, ὥς ... ἔλαβεν ..., ἡρώτα IV.23.26–27, ὥς ... ἀπηγόρευσεν ... καὶ ... ἀπέφηνεν, ἡρώτα IV.23.28–29, ἐπεὶ ... παρέδραμεν (καὶ ... ἦκουε ...) ἐξῆι IV.24.1–4, ὥς ... ἐπυνθάνετο ... φησὶν IV.24.23–25, ὅτε ... ἐγένοντο ... ἡγάπα IV.24.29–31, μόλις ... παρήλθε ... καὶ ... ἐξεπόρθη τε καὶ κατεδουλαγῶγει IV.25.1–3, ὥς ... ἦκουσε ... προσήδρευεν IV.25.17–20, ἐπεὶ ... ἐξήσκησεν ... ἐπαίδευεν IV.27.3–9, ὥς ... ἐγένετο ... ζωορεῖται καὶ ... δίδοται IV.27.14–16, ὥς ... ἀνέμαθεν ... εἰσκαλεῖται ... καὶ ... ἐπυνθάνετο IV.27.23–25, ἐπεὶ ... ἐποίησατο ... ἔλεγεν IV.27.25–27, ὥς ... ἔφθασε (καὶ ... ἔστηκεν) ... κατηνάγκαζε IV.27.64–66, ἐπεὶ διέγνω ... ἐκτίθησιν ... καὶ ... ἀξιοῖ IV.27.86–90, ἐπεὶ ... ἐγένετο εἶχε μὲν ... εἶχε δὲ IV.28.1–2, ὥς ... εἶδεν ... ἐξῆρχε τε ... τε ἔκρουε ... καὶ ... ἐβαλλε IV.38.19–23, ὥς ... ἀφίκοντο καὶ ... ἐγένοντο ... ἀνεφαίνοντο IV.40.7–8, ὥς ... ἐχώρησαν ... ὁρώσιν IV.40.9–10, ὥς ... ἐξῆσαν καὶ ... ἐπέβησαν ... κατεπήγνυνον IV.41.11–13.

5.7.8) aoristus ind. cum imperfecto ind. (in coordinatione): ἐκρέμαντο ... καὶ ... ἐσάλευον I.2.1–2, ἐπληρώθη ... καὶ ... ἐξῆι I.2.11–12, εἶχετο ... καὶ ... ἐπέτρεπεν I.3.30–32, κατεξανίσταντο καὶ ... ᾤοντο I.13.20, ἥρτητο καὶ ἐκρέματο I.16.17, ὑπέσαινεν καὶ ... ἐκαπήλευσε I.20.1–2, ἔθρεψε ... καὶ ... ἀπῆι I.24.17–18, μὲν ... ἀπέωσατο ... δὲ ... διεσπούδαζεν I.25.24–27, ἔσπευδε ... καὶ παρέστη II.5.2–3, μετετίθετο ... καὶ ... οὐ διέλιπεν II.7.25–26, μὲν ἀπέδρα ... δὲ ... εἰσέφρηνεν II.10.5–6, διέπτεσεν μᾶλλον μὲν ... ἐπλύνετο II.14.34–35, ἀνεθάρρησέ ... καὶ ... ἐχρήτο II.14bis.39–40, περιεδονήθη μὲν ... καὶ ... κατεκτυπήθη ... δὲ ... ἐξώπλιζεν II.17.17–19, ἐσκέδαστό τε καὶ διεφέρετο II.18.40, ἐπεφύσητο καὶ ... ἐξέπλει II.19.45, ἀπέστελλε ... δὲ ... ἐγκατέφλεξε II.21.39–42, ἐπυνθάνοντο καὶ ... ἦλθον II.21.44–45, ἐνέκλιναν ἀλλὰ ... ἐδείκνυνον II.25.10–11, ἀπῆι ... καὶ ... ἐγένετο II.27.26–28, ἐδέξατο καὶ ... κατήκουεν II.27.31, ἐγένετο καὶ ... ἐποιοῦντο καὶ ... ἔσειον III.9.37–39, ἐξέλιπον ... ἀλλὰ καὶ ... ἐφέρετο III.19.17–19, ἔφησε ... καὶ ... ἐβούλετο III.22.5–8, ἀνεχώρησεν ... ἐξαπέστειλλεν III.22.15–16,

ἴσχυσε ... καὶ ... κατεπαλαίετο III.25.1–3, ἀπέκειρε καὶ ... ἐναπέδειξεν III.27.9–10, ἔμειναν ... καὶ ... ἐπανέστρεφον III.28.2–3, ἀνήνεγκε ... καὶ ... ἐδόκει III.31.15–16, ἐγένοντο ... καὶ ... συνέπιπτε IV.24.34, ἔγνω ... καὶ ... ἔσπευδεν IV.25.38–39, ἐπετρόπευεν καὶ ... ἠθέλησεν IV.26.8–9, παρίππασεν καὶ ... προέκοπτον IV.27.10–11, ἐκέλευσε καὶ ... ὑπισχνεῖτο IV.27.62, ἠύξησε ... καὶ ... διήγειρεν IV.28.17–18, παρήνει ... καὶ ... ἐπέδωκεν IV.41.9–10, ἔλαθε ... καὶ ... ἐνομίζετο IV.44.8–9, ἀφῆκε μὲν ... διημάρτανε δὲ IV.44.42–43.

5.7.9) perfectum ind. cum imperfecto ind. (tam in coordinatione quam in subordinatione): ἦγε ... δὲ ... προστέταχεν I.19.19–21, ἐπεὶ ... ὤετο ... κέκρικε II.11.4–7, μὲν ... ἐπέτρεπε ... δὲ ... πεποίηκεν II.14.15–18, ἐπεὶ ... διέγνωκεν ... ἐξαπέστελλεν III.12.6–8, ἐπεὶ ... διακήκοεν ... ἐδέετο III.18.17–19, πεποίηκε καὶ ... ἐποίει III.37.13–14, ὥς ... διακήκοεν ... ἀπήντα IV.25.26–27, ἐπεὶ ... καθεώρακε ... ἐχῶρει IV.25.73–76.

5.7.10) perfectum cum plusquamperfecto: προκατεστόρεστο ἀλλ' ... κεκώλυκεν IV.25.67.

6: verba: modi

6.1) subiunctivus (cf. 9.6 ἴνα, ὥς)

6.1.1) voluntativus: ἀγάγω I.16.4, προσβῶμεν II.8.44, κατανεύσητε IV.31.26–27.

6.1.2) finalis (etiam cum praeterito in clausula principali): ἴνα ... σώζη I.9.9, ἴν' ... ἐκκρουσθῇ καὶ ... ἰαθῇ I.21.3–4, ἴνα μὴ ... φιλονεικῶ II.6.3, ἴνα μὴ ... νομίζη ... καὶ ... ποιῇ ... μήτε ... οἰηθῇ II.6.8–11, ἴνα μὴ ... σχῇ II.10.15–16, ἴν' ... μὴ ... δόξη ... καὶ ... γένηται II.17.25–27, ὥς ἂν ... νεανιεύσεται III.1.7, ἴνα μὴ ... δόξη III.1.20–21, ὥς ἂν ... ἀχθῇ III.9.39–40, ἴν' ... γένωμαι καὶ ... ἐπαναδράμω III.26.28–30, ἴνα μὴ ... γένησθε III.35.18, ἴνα μὴ ... ἐναποτεχθῇ III.35.25–26, ἴνα ... δῶη III.36.18–19, ἴνα ... δηλώσῃ IV.7.1, ὥς ἂν ... γένηται IV.7.28.

6.1.3) eventualis sive timoris sine ἂν: εἰ μόνον ... δοθῶσιν I.5.4–5, μὴ ... μάθωσιν I.5.19–20, ὅπως ... μετόσχη I.7.6, εἰ ... παράσχη I.11.8–9, ὅτε ... γένηται I.11.21, εἰ μὴ ... καταστή I.21.11–12, μὴ ... γένηται I.21.36–37, εἰ μὴ ... γένηται I.25.6, ὅτε μὴ ... βούλονται II.19.48, εἰ ... φωραθῇ III.17.4, εἰ ... ἐπιθῇται III.42.34–35, εἰ ... γένηται IV.27.58.

6.1.4) eventualis cum ἂν passim.

6.2) optativus (cf. 9.6 ἴνα, ὥς)

6.2.1) potentialis: a) sine ἂν in oratione principali: τί ... δρᾶσαιμεν I.6.18, καλέσαιμι I.15.5, τις ... θαυμάσειεν II.2.11–12, αὐτὸς εἴποιμι II.6.5, ἔχοι III.1.30, ἀποστερήσοι III.10.9–10, καταλάβοις III.14.24, ἐκτελοῖη ... χωροῖη III.36.20–21, ἴδοι τις ... ἴδοις μὲν ... ἴδοις δὲ III.43.46, 49, 53, ἐπιλίποι IV.32.14, μακρὸν εἴη λέγειν IV.34.14.

b) sine ἂν in protasi cum apodosi in futuro: εἰ γὰρ ... νικήσειεν ἔψεται III.31.5–6, εἰ ... εἴποι ... (εἰ ... ἐπιθῇται ...) γενήσεται III.42.32–35.

c) sine ἂν in protasi cum apodosi in imperativo: εἰ ... ἔχοις ... ἀποπτήδησον I.2.9–10.

d) cum ἂν passim.

6.2.2) cupitivus: ἐμφραχθείη III.14.9, ἀπρονέμοιεν IV.17.10, ἴδοιμι ... ἴδοιμι IV.20–11–12, γένοιτο IV.24.25.

6.2.3) obliquus (etiam cum praesenti historico et perfecto in principali, cf. 9.6 ἵνα): ὥς οὐ δέοι I.2.7, εἰ μὴ ... προσδέξοιτο I.7.9–10, εἰ ... ἐπίθοιτο I.9.18–19, τίς τε εἴη I.11.22, κατευμοιρήσειεν I.11.27, εἴ γε μὴ μέλλοι I.17.3, καταστοχάζοιτο II.6.20, εἴ γε ... μὴ ... ποιήσοιτο ... ἀλλὰ συγχωρήσοι II.11.4–6, ἥ μέλλοι II.13.18, εἴ ... ἀναγκάζοιτο II.14bis.9–10, ὃ τι ... πράξειεν II.14bis.11, εἰ μόνον δὴ μετατάξοιτο καὶ μὴ βουληθεῖεν II.15.10–11, ὅτι δὴ καὶ παρακαλοῖντο II.15.13–14, ὥς εἴη ... νενικηκώς II.16.22, ὥς ... προσβάλλοι II.16.24, εἴ τι γένοιτο II.17.9–10, εἰ ... εἴεν ... φρονούντες II.19.26–27, ὥς εἴη II.21.27, εἰ μὴ ... γένοιτο II.24.9–10, ὥς ... μὴ παύσαιντο ... ἀλλὰ ... ἔχοιεν II.24.14–16, εἰ ... φωράσοι II.27.9, εἰ ... παράσχοι II.27.16–17, εἴη καὶ ... φέροι III.4.10, φωραθείη III.4.30, ὥς ... εἴη III.5.28–29, ὅπως ... χορηγοίη III.7.22, ὥς ... εἴη III.7.27, ὥς εἴη III.9.13, ὅπως ἔχοι III.9.26, εἴ που ... τύχοιεν III.10.5, εἰ ... μετέχοι III.19.16–17, ὥς εἴη III.19.20, ὅτε ... δεήσειεν III.22.9, εἰ μὴ ... ἀγάγοι III.23.28–29, εἰ μὴ ... συνεπακολουθήσειεν III.24.31, ὥς μέλλοι III.25.7, ὥς ... ἔχοι III.26.20, τίνες εἴεν ὧν ἡ βασιλεία διαρκέσειεν III.27.5, εἴγε ... ἐπακολουθοίη IV.7.14–15, ἡνίκα ... κελεύσειεν IV.7.22, εἰ ... συμφήσειεν IV.10.5, & βούλοιο IV.15.8, ὥς βούλοιο IV.16.4, εἰ ... γένοιτο IV.18.9, εἰ ... ἔχοι ... καὶ ... ἔχοι IV.23.27–28, ἦντινα ... βούλοιο IV.27.9, ἔχοι IV.27.32, τίς ... εἴη ... καὶ ὅτου ... ἔνεκεν διαπράττειτο IV.27.68–69, ὅπως δὴ σωθεῖεν IV.24.24.

6.2.4) iterativus: εἰ ... τύχοιεν III.43.20, εἰ ... τύχοιεν III.43.24.

6.2.5) finalis: cf. 9.6 ὥς + ἄν.

6.3) infinitivum

6.3.1) historicum: φάναι I.18.15, εἰπεῖν I.23.5, διακοῦσαι I.24.3, συγχωρῆσαι III.18.29, τρωθῆναι ... καὶ ... ἀνακραγεῖν IV.27.93–94.

6.3.2) cum particula modali: ἄν ... καλὸν ἔλεγεν εἶναι I.6.49–50, ἄν ... ὑπελάμβανε κραταιοῦσθαι II.10.21–22.

6.3.3) finale: cf. πειεῖν I.23.7.

6.3.4) cum articulo: cf. 1.2.

6.4) participium

6.4.1) genitivus absolutus: a) sine subiecto expresso: προμηθευμένων καὶ προδιοικουμένων I.15.21–22, μὴ ὑπισχνουμένου δὲ ἀλλ' ἀπαναινομένου I.16.8–9, προστιθέντων III.4.21, λέγοντος III.4.24, ἀναπολογήτων μενόντων III.4.25, διαβάντος III.6.11, προσπεσόντων ἀλλήλοισι III.24.12, φιλούσης IV.20.24, ἀγωνιζομένων καὶ δεδιότων IV.24.18.

b) cum ὥς in valore causali: ὥς ἀδῆλου ὄντος τοῦ μέλλοντος I.6.15–16, ὥς ... μέλλοντος I.22.11–13, ὥς σφετεριζομένου τοῦ Θεοφόβου III.22.1, ὥς μηδαμοῦ ... τῆς ψυχῆς ... δυναμένης ἀλλ' ... ζητούσης III.40.2–3, ὥς ... δύο ὄντων αὐτῶν IV.15.24–25, ὥς ... χορηγομένης τῆς ὠφελείας IV.17.12–13, ὥς μὴ ... τολμώντος ... τινός IV.23.13–14, ὥς ... αὐτοῦ ... ἔχοντος IV.27.22–23.

c) cum καὶ ὥς in valore concessivo: καὶ ὥς σιγόντων II.4.11.

d) cum ὥς in valore completivo sive explicativo: ὥς καὶ αὐτοῦ γε προενισχημένου I.17.12, ὥς Λέοντος ... παραδίδοσθαι I.22.11–13.

e) cum ἅτε καὶ in valore causali (cf. 9.2 cum participio in nominativo): ἅτε καὶ πολλῶν ... ἀποτυγχανόντων καὶ αἰτίων γινομένων II.6.12, ἅτε ... τούτου παραδεδομένου II.8, ἅτε δὴ

καὶ χειμῶνος ὄντος ἑξαίσιου II.14bis.27–28, ἅτε ... τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἐλαττούμενου καὶ μὴ ... δυναμένου II.16.38–40.

f) cum ἄρτι in valore temporalis: ἄρτι Κρούμνου ... ὑποκρινομένου καὶ ... ζητοῦντος I.5.3–4, ἄρτι ... ἐκστρατεύσαντος καὶ συστειλάντος ... καὶ ... καταναγκάζοντος I.6.8–10, ἄρτι ... ἀρχομένης φυλακῆς I.25.10–11, ἄρτι ... τούτου ἀναιρεθέντος II.14.11–12, ἄρτι ... συγκροτοῦντος καὶ ... ἐπαφιέντος τοῦ ἀποστατικοῦ πλοῖμου II.15.20–21, ἄρτι ... τοῦ κατὰ τὸν Θωμᾶν ἄρξαντος νεωτερισμοῦ II.21.1, ἄρτι ... ἐκβοηθουσῶν τε καὶ πλεουσῶν (τῶν νεῶν) II.21.23–24, ἄρτι ... τοῦ πνεύματος ἐπακμάζοντος κάκεινων ... γενομένων II.21.40–41, ἄρτι ... τοῦ ἡλίου ... ἐφαπλοῦντος II.25.9, νυκτὸς ἄρτι γενομένης III.22.23, ἄρτι ... τοῦ ἕαρος ἱσταμένου καὶ ... ὀπλίζοντος III.24.1–2, ἄρτι δὲ τῆς χειμερινῆς γειτνιαζούσης III.43.59–60, ἄρτι τελούντος αὐτοῦ IV.23.5, ἄρτι ... Μεθοδίου μετηλλαχότος IV.30.7.

6.4.2) nominativus pendens: cf. e.g. οἱ μακάριοι ... εἰπόντες ... καὶ ... καταβαλόντες III.14.9–10, ἡ μὲν γὰρ πέμψασά τινας τῶν ἐπ' ἐξουσίας ... τοὺς μὲν ξύλω ἀνῆρτων, τοὺς δὲ ξίφει παρεδίδουν IV.16.5–8, ὁ μὲν Θεόκτιστος νῦν μὲν ... σφαττόμενος, νῦν δὲ ... μὴ κατευδοῦμενος IV.39.20–22.

6.4.3) participium ut comparativum (cfr. 3.3): οἷς καὶ πολλάκις ... ἐφαίνετο σεμνυνόμενος τε καὶ καλλωπιζόμενος ἢ τῷ ἑαυτοῦ διαδήματι II.3.21–23; στεργόμενος αὐτῷ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων διαφερόντως II.8.23–24.

6.5) congruentia modorum

6.5.1) optativus cum futuro ind.: cf. e.g. εἰ ... ἀναγορεύσει ... καὶ ... παράσχοι II.27.16–17, ἔχοι ... ἀλλ' ... στήσεται III.1.30–31, ἵνα μὴ ... ἔχοι ... ἀπορραπίσοι ... ποιήσεται IV.18.17–20, μὲν γένοιτο ... δὲ μελήσει IV.24.24–25.

6.5.2) optativus cum praesenti ind.: cf. e.g. ἔστι καὶ ... ἔχοι IV.27.33–34.

6.5.3) optativus cum subiunctivo: cf. e.g. ἵνα μὴ ... νομίζῃ ... καὶ ... ποιῇ ... μήτε ... οἰήθῃ ... ἀλλὰ ... κατατιϋτο II.6.8–13, εἰ ... εἴποι ... εἰ ... ἐπιθῇται III.42.32–35, ἵνα μήτε ... ἀπολιμπάνοιτο μήτ' ... ποιήσῃ IV.35.20–22.

6.5.4) participium aoristi cum imperfecto sive praesenti ind. aut participium praesentis cum aoristo ind. passim.

7. adverbia

7.1) syntaxis sive usus

7.1.1) ut conjunctiones temporales: cf. ἅμα, ἄρτι, οὕτω in 9.8.

7.1.2) conjunctio ut adverbium: a) **ὅτε δὴ καὶ** = τότε in initio clausulae: ὅτε δὴ καὶ λέγεται I.18.8, ὅτε δὴ καὶ ἀπογνοὺς ... ἐδέσμει I.25.31–33, ὅτε δὴ καὶ ... ἡγησάμενος ... εἰσῆει III.24.14–18, ὅτε δὴ καὶ ... γενόμενος ... λέγεται IV.19.36–37, ὅτε δὴ καὶ ... λέγεται IV.25.4–5, ὅτε δὴ καὶ ... σχῶν ... ὑπέστρεψεν IV.29.11.

b) **ἡνίκα καὶ** = τηνικαῦτα: ἡνίκα καὶ ... ἀνανεῶν ... εἶχε I.4.32–35.

7.1.3) relativum ut demonstrativum: **ἐνθα δὴ καὶ**: I.1.7, II.18.24, sed cf. I.3.31, II.14.36, III.5.10. **ὅθεν** passim.

7.1.4) ὥς/ὥσει + numerales: ὥσει χιλιάδων δέκα II.14.19, ὥς τῶν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἄχρι χιλιάδων III.23.4–5, ὥς εἰς τρεῖς μυριάδας III.29.22, ὥσει χιλιάδας δέκα III.31.8; ὥσει χιλιάδες ἑβδομήκοντα III.34.6; ὥσει δέκα μυριάδες IV.16.8; ἀργυρίου δὲ ὥσει τριῶν IV.20.22–23.

7.2) enclitica

7.2.1) που, πη: cf. e.g. ἐκέισέ που II.7.18, παιδοτριβεῖσθαί που II.8.36, ὦδέ πη III.27.26, ἐνδότερόν που III.42.45, ἀποσκευάσασθαί που IV.7.13.

7.2.2) πως: e.g. γέγονέ πως I.3.7, θρασύτερόν πως I.14.1, II.7.3, ἐκέλευσέ πως III.23.14, ἐπεθείασέ πως IV.20.11.

8. praepositiones

8.1) praepositiones propriae usum classicum sequentes, sed cf. ἀπὸ τὸ ἀρκτῶν IV.25.36–37.

rare dativo utuntur, cf. e.g. **παρὰ** + dat. in solis octo casibus: παρὰ Ῥωμαίοις II.10.15–16, παρὰ Πέρσαις III.20.11, III.38.25, παρὰ θεῶ IV.4.9, IV.6.14, παρὰ φίλοις IV.27.105, παρὰ πᾶσιν IV.27.111, παρὰ πολλοῖς IV.30.3.

ἐπὶ + dat. saepe in libris III–IV sed in I–II in solis septem casibus: ἐπὶ γενναιότητι καὶ ... κραταιότητι I.1.8–9, ἐπὶ τῷ Φιλομηλίῳ I.15.1–2, ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐναρχθεῖσιν I.20.38–39, ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ II.3.28, ἐπὶ τούτῳ II.20.13–14, II.27.14, ἐπὶ τῇ ... ἀπωλείᾳ II.27.20–21.

ἀμφί omnino deest.

ἐς (ionica forma) pro εἰς: ἐς ὕστερον II.7.27, ἐς βασιλέα II.17.3, ἐς χεῖρας II.1.18, ἐς μάχην II.25.6, ἐς αὖριον III.35.26–27, sed apud libros I et IV deest.

8.2) praepositiones impropriae: **ἄμα** + dat. passim, cf. 1.2.4.

ἄνευ semel: ἄνευ γυναικὸς II.24.10.

ἐκτός cum genitívo: ἐκτός παραπετάσματος II.9.11, ἐκτός τοῦ ... στρατηγοῦντος II.11.33, τοῦ βίου γενέσθαι ἐκτός III.34.38, ἐτέρων ... ἐκτός IV.37.2.

ἔξω (sive ἔξωθεν) cum genitívo et γίγνομαι: τοῦ βίου ἔξω γενόμενος I.1018–19, τοῦ βίου ἤδη γινόμενος ἔξω IV.41.9–10, ἔξω γενομένων τοῦ πάθους II.16.30, τοῦ βίου ἔξωθεν γίνονται II.20.29, ἔξω γέγονε τοῦ καιροῦ III.1.20, τοῦ ... θρόνου ἔξω γενοῦ IV.2.28, ἔξω τούτων γενέσθαι IV.24.22–23, τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ προνοίας τε καὶ χειρὸς ἔξω γενέσθαι IV.39.8–9, τοῦ βίου ἤδη γινόμενος ἔξω IV.41.9–10 (sed cf. ἐκ τοῦ βίου ἔξω γενέσθαι III.37.11, τῆς εὐτελείας ἐκείνης καὶ πενίας ἔξω παρήγαγε IV.27.82–83).

χωρὶς post genitívo in solis tribus casibus: τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν χωρὶς I.3.4, λόγου καταλειπτομένης χωρὶς II.20.26–27, ὀφθαλμῶν ποιῆσαι χωρὶς III.25.7–8.

9. coniunctiones

9.1) adversativae: **ἀλλά, δέ, πλὴν** passim

9.2) causales (cf. 1.2.3): **ἅτε** cum participio (cum gen. absol. cf. 6.4.1.e): ἅτε ... ἀγαπῶν ... καὶ ... ὀνειροπολῶν I.1.13–15, ἅτε ... προσφερόμενος I.4.5, ἅτε ... δεδιότες I.5.19–20, ἅτε ... θέλων I.10.12–13, ἅτε ... καὶ συνουξηθεὶς καὶ ... γαννύμενος I.21.9–10, ἅτε ... λαθόντες I.25.13–14, ἅτε ... μετεσχηκῶς II.11.10–11, ἅτε ... σχολάζοντα καὶ ... ἀμοιροῦντα II.16.3,

ἄτε ... ὁρμώμενος II.19.43–44, ἄτε ... ἰδὼν III.23.31–32, ἄτε ... διαφέρων III.25.11–12, ἄτε ... μελετήσας IV.39.26–27.

ἐπεί: *passim*, cf. 5.7.

ἐφ' οἷς sive οἷς: οἷς γὰρ ... ἐνήσκησεν I.14.7, οἷς ... ἄγει I.21.35, οἷς ... διήρχετο II.2.15–17, οὐκ ἐφ' οἷς ... ἐξέχεεν ... ἀλλ' ἐφ' οἷς ... ἐκχέεται II.2.17–20, οἷς ... ἤθελε II.28.7–8, οἷς οὐκ ἔδεισαν III.1.27, οἷς ... ἐλάμβανεν III.2.9–10, οἷς ... ἔκρινεν III.18.29–30, οἷς ... ἦλθεν III.28.21, οἷς ... ἐπείθετο III.33.9, οἷς ... πορεύομαι III.40.13–14, ἐφ' οἷς αὐτὸν ἐβασίλευσα IV.44.20.

ὥς: ὥς μὴ προδεωκόσιν II.11.36.

ὅτι *passim*.

9.3) completivae: ὥς introducens orationes rectas et obliquas in optativo sive in infinitivo *passim*, sed cf. ὥς οἶα IV.6.5 et ὥς ὅτι IV.25.27.

ὅτι *passim*.

9.4) conditionales: εἰ *passim*.

ἀλλὰ ut protasin introducens: κἂν ἔλαβεν ... ἀλλ' ... διέσωσεν IV.24.15–17, ἔτυχε δ' ἂν ... ἀλλὰ ... ἠνέγκατο IV.30.3–7, κἂν παρῆλθεν καὶ ... ἐξέφυγε ... ἀλλὰ ... ἐδήλου ... καὶ ἀπελέγετο ... καὶ ... καθώπλιζεν IV.41.34–38, συναπώλετο ... ἀλλ' ἑκαρτέρει καὶ ἔμενε IV.44.34–35.

9.5) consecutivae:

ὥς + inf.: ὥς ... ἀνεγείραί τε καὶ κατασκευάσαι I.3.14, ὥς ... ἐπιζῆσαι I.4.21–22, ὥς ... αἰσθῆσθαι I.9.35, ὥς ... αἰρῆσαι ... καὶ ... διασωθῆναι I.13.25–26, ὥς ... εἶναι I.19.6, ὥς ... ἀπορράσαι ... καὶ ... προελθεῖν I.25.36–38, ὥς ... συγχωρεῖν II.8.36, ὥς ... δεηθῆναι II.13.35, ὥς ... ἐπεκτεῖναι II.14.7–8, ὥς ... ἐπαναγκάσαι ... καὶ ... βουλεύεσθαι II.14bis.40–42, ὥς ... ἐγκατοικῆσαι II.23.10, ὥς ... ὑποστρέψαι καὶ ... διασωθῆναι II.25.25–26, ὥς ... ἐπαπειλῆσαι III.4.28–29, ὥς ... λέγειν III.6.23, ὥς ... ἐνιδεῖν III.27.18–20, ὥς ... θεσπίσαι τε καὶ κηρῦξαι III.30.2–3, ὥς μήτε ... αὐγάζεσθαι, ἀλλ' ... γινώσκεσθαι τε ... καὶ ... ἀπολαύειν ... καὶ ... διαγίνειν III.35.5–8, ὥς ... ἐκτελεῖν III.43.30–32, ὥς ... ἀποτεμεῖν IV.7.23–24, ὥς < ... ἐλπίζειν > ἢ ... κατεπίγεσθαι IV.28.5–6, ὥς ... ἐπαρκέσαι IV.28.13; ὥς + impf. cf. τοσοῦτον ὥς μὴ ... ἐδόκει I.20.3.

ὅτι + praes. ind. cf. εἰς τοσοῦτον ἦκε θάρρους ... ὅτι ... συναθροίζεται II.18.9–17.

9.6) finales (cf. 1.2.2.b): ἵνα: ἵνα cum subi. cf. 6.1.2. ἵνα cum optativo: ἵν' ... σχοίη I.7.2, ἵνα ... κατατιγῶτο II.6.8–13, ἵνα μὴ ... ἀναφέροι II.6.20–21, ἵνα μήτε ... ἔχοι ... μήτε ... καταναγκάσει II.8.36–39, ἵνα ... ἔχοιμεν II.9.8–9, ἵν' ... διδοί<η> II.18.45–46, ἵν' ... εἴη II.20bis.6, ἵνα ... γίνοιτο III.3.7, ἵνα ... νομίζοιτο IV.4.7, ἵνα μὴ ... ἔχοι ... καὶ ... ἀπορραπίσαι IV.18.17–19, ἵνα ... ἀπολιμπάνοιτο IV.35.20–21,

ὥς: ὥς + ἂν cum subi. cf. 6.1.2; ὥς cum opt. sine ἂν: ὥς εἴη III.9.13 (cf. 6.2.3); cum opt. + ἂν: ὥς ἂν ... διαβιβάζοντο I.21.12–13, ὥς ἂν εἶεν II.16.31, ὥς ἂν ἔχοιεν ... καὶ μὴ ... κωλύοντο III.3.5–6, ὥς ἂν ... εὐμοιρήσειαν III.20.19, ὥς ἂν ... μετακάλειοιτο καὶ ... ποιήσειεν III.26.2–3, ὥς ἂν ... κινδυνεύοι IV.10.19–20. ὥς cum inf. (sed cf. 9.5 ad usum consecutivum) ὥς ... συναπορρέειν III.13.8, ὥς ... θεῖναι ... καὶ ... δοῦναι III.18.24–25. ὥς cum part. fut. cf. e.g. ὥς ... κατεργασόμενος I.20.45–46; ὥς ... ἀντιστησόμενος καὶ ... ἐκνικήσοντας III.30.15–16; ὥς ... περιληψόμενος IV.26.11.

9.7) modales: ὅπως modale *passim*.

ὥς modale cum part. sive indicativo *passim*.

ἄτε cum part. sive adiectivo (sed cf. 9.2 ad usum causalem): ἄτε δὴ καὶ φυγάδες I.1.4, ἄτε ... νηπιάζουσα III.5.26.

9.8) temporales (periphraseis cum articulo sive relativo, cf. 1.2.4): ἅμα cum inf. cf. 1.2.4.a; cum part. ἅμα μὲν ... ἀποδιδράσκων ... ἅμα δὲ ... βουλόμενος II.19.4–6, ἅμα λέγων II.23.6, βρέμων ἅμα II.25.4, ἅμα ... ἐμβάλλουσα III.5.18–19, ἅμα ... ἀνελίττων III.14.15, ἅμα ... ζητούντες IV.6.12; cum impf. sive praes. simultaneitatem exprimens: ἅμα διεξήκει III.6.16, ἅμα ... γίνεται III.7.38–39, ἅμα ἐδίδασκεν III.26.27, ἅμα ... ἐγυμνοῦντο III.32.13, ἅμα ... εἰσῆκει III.36.21–22, ἅμα ... ἐδίδουσαν IV.6.14–15; ἅμα διηγείτο IV.10.24, ἅμα ἀπέλυε ... καὶ ἅμα ἐδίδου IV.23.32–33, ἅμα προσετίθει IV.25.32, ἅμα ... ἐκέλευεν IV.25.58–59; ἅμα ... διηνοίγετο IV.27.44; ἅμα ... ἐδίδου IV.27.74, ἅμα ... δίδωσι IV.27.78–79; cum indic. aor. cf. ἅμα ... κατέπαυσεν IV.5.1.

ἄρτι cf. cum genitivo 6.4.1.f; cum part. aor.: ἄρτι μὲν ... ἄρτι δὲ ... ἀπορρνέντες ... καὶ ... ἀπενεγκάμενοι I.3.18–21, ἄρτι καταλαβὼν III.9.19–20, ἄρτι ... προβὰς III.9.25, ἄρτι ... ἐγκελευσάμενος III.10.23–24, ἄρτι ... ἀναδραμὼν καὶ ... πλησθεὶς III.12.1–2, ἄρτι ... γενόμενος ... καὶ ... φωνήσας III.35.9–12; cum part. perfecti sive praesentis: ἄρτι ... ἀνηγορευμένος I.18.1–2, ἄρτι ἐληλυθὼς III.9.56, ἄρτι ... καταστρατηγῶν IV.24.5–6, ἄρτι ἐξανatéλλουσα IV.25.59, ἄρτι τὸ πέρως κατειληφὸτα IV.27.12; cum imperfecto indicativo in temporali + καὶ cum tempore imperfectivo: ἄρτι γοῦν ... ἐτάττετο καὶ ... ἀλλάσσεται I.3.5–7, ἄρτι γοῦν ἀνηγορεύετο ... καὶ ... ὑφεῖρπον I.7.1–2, ἄρτι γοῦν κατηγγέλλετο ... καὶ ... ἀπήντα καὶ ... ἐδέχετο I.9.21–24, ἄρτι ὑπέλαμπε καὶ ... γίνεται I.25.1, ἄρτι ... ἐδέδεκτο ... καὶ ... διαπεραιούται II.13.25–28, ἄρτι ... ἐπλησίαζε καὶ ... κατήγετό τε καὶ προσωρμίζετο II.21.34–35, ἄρτι γὰρ ... ἐπλησίαζον, καὶ ... ἔφη III.26.31–32, ἄρτι ... καθωπλίζετο καὶ ... εἰσῆκει IV.41.1–3, ἄρτι ... ἐξῆκει ... καὶ ἐδίδου IV.41.27–28.

ἄχρι/ἄχρις: cum praesenti: ἄχρι ... εὐμοιροῦμεν III.4.20; cum imperfecto: ἄχρις οὗ ... ἐξαπέστειλλεν III.9.55–56, ἄχρι ... ἔκειτο III.13.14.

ἐπεὶ sive ἐπεὶ περ cum impf. et indic. aor. in temporali et principali, passim; cum impf. ind. in temporali et aoristo ind. in principali cf. 5.7.5; cum aor. ind. in temporali et tempore imperfectivo in principali cf. 5.7.7; cum imperfecto sive plusquamperfecto in temporali et praesenti in principali cf. 5.7.3.

ἕως: ἕως ... ἐγένετο I.3.44–45, ἕως ... ὑπελάμβανε IV.24.9–10.

ἥνίκα cum opt. in uno dumtaxat casu: ἥνίκα τούτοις κελεύσειεν IV.7.22.

μέχρις: + ἄν cum subiunctivo: μέχρις ἄν ... γένηται I.17.10–11, μέχρις ἄν ... γένηται IV.2.29–30, sed cf. μέχρις ἄν ... ἐξεργάζεται ... ἐκλήφεται III.9.49–51; + ἄν cum opt.: μέχρις ἄν ... ἀποφθάναιτο IV.19.30–31; + ὅτου + ind.: μέχρις ὅτου ... ἐκηδεύθησάν τε καὶ ... ἐτιμήθησαν III.11.18–20.

ὅταν passim.

οὕτω cum imperfecto sive aoristo in temporali + καὶ cum tempore imperfectivo in principali cf. οὕτω ... ἐλάμβανε, καὶ ... ἦν I.6.52–53, οὕτω ... ἔσχον ... καὶ ... ἐμήνυνεν I.9.1–2.

πρὶν cum subi. cf. πρὶν ἀλλαχοῦ μεταστῶσιν IV.5.9.

ὥς cum aoristo sive impf. in temporali et principali passim, sed cf. 5.7.7; cum tempore praeterito in temporali et praesenti in principali cf. 5.7.3.

4. Index locorum

A. Sacra Scriptura

Vetus Testamentum

Gn 3.18: I.18.4

Ex 3.8: II.21.28–29

Iob

2.4–6: I.8.10

5.16: III.14.9–10

Ps

7.13: I.20.48–49

36.23: I.2.5–6

50.12: IV.2.28

62.12: III.14.9–10

81.6: III.10.7–10

102.5: IV.6.22–23

Prov

8.15–16: II.24.19

23.31: IV.31.5

Is

40.18–19: I.20.33–35

52–53: III.14.13–14

Ez 33.11: IV.40.4–5

Os 8.4: II.6.22–23

Novum testamentum

Matt

7.6: I.20.14–16

7.15: I.8.7

7.17–20: IV.27.53

8.33: I.21.1–2

13.25: IV.19.7–8

16.19: IV.5.6–7

18.8: I.20.20

23.35–36: II.23.16–17

Luc 11.50–51: II.23.16–17

Acta 16.16: I.11.24 et III.27.3–4

I Pet 1.7: I.8.7–8

Heb 6.10: III.13.24–25

B. Caeteri autores

Aelius Aristides Πρὸς Πλάτωνα ὑπὲρ τῶν
τεττάρων (ed. Dindorf, vol. II) 309: I.15.17

Andreas Cretensis (ed. Follieri III.86): II.7.23

Anonymus prof. epistulae (ed. Markopoulos)
30, ln. 44: IV.10.7

109, ln. 12: III.9.39

Apostolius cf. Michael Apostolius et Arsenius
Apostolius

Arsenius Apostolius, Paroemiae (ed. von
Leutsch, Corpus paroemiographorum
Graecorum, vol. II)

cent. XVIII sect. 66c: I.5.14–15

Arethas

Opera Minora (ed. Westerink) no. 76
p. 124.2: I.5.22

Schol. in Arist. (ed. Share, Commentaria
in Aristotelem Byzantina, vol. I) schol.
214, ln. 39: I.21.12–13

Cantica

Analecta hymnica graeca,

Canones Septembris (ed. Debiassi

Gonzato et Schirò)

dies 22, canon 27, oda 3, ln. 4:

II.14.15–16

dies 9, canon 13, oda 4, ln. 10:

I.11.35–36

Canones Decembris (ed. Kominis et
Schirò)

dies 17, canon 27, oda 7, ln. 1:

I.25.17–18

dies 6, canon 10, oda 9, ln. 1:

III.16.2–3

Canones Februari (ed. Schirò et

Tomadakis)

dies 8, canon 9, oda 4, ln. 73:

III.36.18–19

Canones Martii (ed. Schirò et Tomad-
akis)

dies 14, canon 17, oda 5, ln. 10:

I.11.35–36

Follieri I.486 et V.1.272: III.16.9

Follieri III.86 cf. Andreas

Cretensis

Cassius Dio Historiae Romanae (ed. Boisse-
vain) 39.45.4 ln. 4: I.13.25–26

Chrysocephalus (ed. von Leutsch, Corpus
paroemiographorum Graecorum, vol. II)
cent. VII sect. 4: III.26.2

Diodorus Siculus (ed. Fischer et Vogel)

11.23.3: II.25.25–26

12.48.3: I.13.1–2

- Dioegenianus Paroemiae (ed. Schneidewin et von Leutsch, *Corpus paroemiographorum Graecorum*, vols. I–II)
 cent. I sect. 12: I.11.3
 cent. V sect. 16: I.21.3–4
 cent. VI sect. 42: III.39.6
 cent. VII sect. 60: I.5.22
- Dionysius Halicarnassensis, *Antiquitates Romanae* (ed. Jacoby) 14.9.3: I.7.4–5.
- Etymologicum Magnum (ed. Kallierges)
 p. 49, ln. 15 et p. 362, ln. 24–26: III.33.9, IV.41.36–37
 p. 607, ln. 10: I.5.14–15
- Euripides *Aeolus fragm.* Nauck 15.2: IV.44.17
- Eusebius Comm. in Isaiam (ed. Ziegler, *Eusebii Werke* vol. IX) 2.58: I.20.20
- Flavius Iosephus *Ant. Iud.* (ed. Niese) 2.344: II.25.25–26
- Georgius Monachus (ed. de Boor et Wirth)
 p. 777 ln. 12–14: III.12.11
 p. 802 ln. 14–15: IV.3.1
- Gregorius Nazianzenus
Carmina dogmatica, PG 37, col. 445 ln. 12: I.8.7–8
Carmina moralia, PG 37, col. 568 ln. 3, col. 914 ln. 11 et col. 967 ln. 5: I.8.7–8
Carmina de se ipso, PG 37, col. 1345 ln. 4: I.8.7–8
Epist. (ed. Gallay) 30 sect. 1: I.11.35–36
In laudem Athanasii, PG 35, col. 1.097: IV.6.27
- Herodotus
 7.35: IV.25.4–5
 8.6: I.13.25–26
- Hesychius (ed. Latte et Hansen)
 E no. 123: III.27.26
 E no. 5023: III.33.9, IV.41.36–37
 Π no. 388: III.9.39
- Homerus
Ilias
 1.201: IV.29.21–22
 10.173: III.33.9, IV.41.36–37
 13.636: IV.44.1
Odyssea
 1.1: IV.23.9
 9.34: I.5.14–15
 19.547: IV.40.20
- Hymni liturgici, cf. cantica
- Ioannes Chrysostomus *In Genesim* PG 53
 p. 158: I.20.20
- Ioannes Grammaticus *Adversus Manichaeos* (ed. Richard, *Corpus Chirst. Ser. Gr. 1*)
 hom. 1, ln. 275: I.8.7
- Leo Sapiens, *Tactica* (ed. Dennis) 2.32: I.6.49–50
- Mantissa proverbiorum (ed. von Leutsch, *Corpus paroemiographorum Graecorum*, vol. II)
 cent. I sect. 48: II.15.12
 cent. II sect. 28: III.39.6
- Michael Apostolius, *Paroemiae* (ed. von Leutsch, *Corpus paroemiographorum Graecorum*, vol. II)
 cent. II sect. 99: III.26.2
 cent. XI sect. 83: III.39.6
 cent. XIII sect. 34a: I.13.25–26
- Nicephorus *Refutatio et eversio cap. 4*, ln. 39: I.8.7
- Nicetas David *Laudatio in Greg. Theol.* (ed. Rizzo) 12.77: IV.40.20
- Pausanias, *Synagoge* Π no. 5: III.9.39
- Photius
Lexicon (ed. Theodoridis)
 E no. 20: I.11.24, III.27.3–4
 E no. 334: IV.8.7
 E no. 901: I.11.3
 E no. 1651: III.33.9, IV.41.36–37
 H no. 136: I.21.1–2
 M no. 632: III.39.6
 Π no. 165: III.9.39
- Bibliotheca (ed. Henry)
 cod. 248 p. 438a: I.15.17
 cod. 242, p. 339a: III.9.39, III.26.2
- Epistulae* (ed. Laourdas et Westerink)
 no. 165, ln. 51: III.12.11
- Plutarchus
Cato Minor 59.1–2: I.9.7–8
De liberis educandis 2D: IV.44.36–38
De vitioso pudore 536A: I.16.17–18
Paroimiai cent. I sect. 51: IV.8.7
Regum et imperat. apophth. 187D: I.6.49–50
- Polybius I 2: I.11.5–9
- Suda (ed. Adler)
 Γ no. 491: IV.31.5
 E no. 45: I.11.24, III.27.3–4
 E no. 1266: I.11.3
 EI no. 315 et 321: II.15.12
 EI no. 323: IV.8.7
 H no. 259: I.21.3–4
 Λ no. 218: IV.31.5

- Π no. 3251: I.13.25–26
 Π no. 221: III.9.39
 Π no. 222: III.26.2
 Σ no. 256: I.11.3
 Τ no. 1065: IV.8.7
 Υ no. 342: IV.31.5
 Syrianus Magister, *Rhetorica militaris* (ed.
 Eramo) 43.3–4: III.24.17–18
 Theodoretus, *Interpr. in xiv epist. Pauli*, vol.
 82, p. 705, ln. 19: IV.10.7
 Theodorus Studites *epist.* (ed. Fatouros), no.
 489, ln. 12–38: III.11.3–7
 Theognis 1.557: III.33.9, IV.41.36–37
 Xenophon *Oecon.* 7.40: II.15.12
 Zenobius *Paroemiae* (ed. Schneidewin et von
 Leutsch, *Corpus paroemiographorum*
 Graecorum, vol. I)
 cent. III sect. 70: I.11.3
 cent. II sect. 6: II.15.12
 Zonaras (ed. Dindorf) 15.27: III.16.9